PUZZLER

Did you know that the CD inside this player spins at different speeds, depending on which song is playing? Why would such a strange characteristic be incorporated into the design of every CD player? *(George Semple)*

chapter

10 Rotation of a Rigid Object About a Fixed Axis

Chapter Outline

When an extended object, such as a wheel, rotates about its axis, the motion cannot be analyzed by treating the object as a particle because at any given time different parts of the object have different linear velocities and linear accelerations. For this reason, it is convenient to consider an extended object as a large number of particles, each of which has its own linear velocity and linear acceleration.

In dealing with a rotating object, analysis is greatly simplified by assuming that the object is rigid. A **rigid object** is one that is nondeformable—that is, it is an object in which the separations between all pairs of particles remain constant. All real bodies are deformable to some extent; however, our rigid-object model is useful in many situations in which deformation is negligible.

Rigid object

In this chapter, we treat the rotation of a rigid object about a fixed axis, which is commonly referred to as *pure rotational motion.*

10.1 ANGULAR DISPLACEMENT, VELOCITY, AND ACCELERATION

Figure 10.1 illustrates a planar (flat), rigid object of arbitrary shape confined to the xy plane and rotating about a fixed axis through O. The axis is perpendicular to the plane of the figure, and O is the origin of an xy coordinate system. Let us look at the motion of only one of the millions of "particles" making up this object. A particle at P is at a fixed distance r from the origin and rotates about it in a circle of radius r. (In fact, *every* particle on the object undergoes circular motion about O.) It is convenient to represent the position of P with its polar coordinates (r, θ), where r is the distance from the origin to P and θ is measured *counterclockwise* from some preferred direction—in this case, the positive x axis. In this representation, the only coordinate that changes in time is the angle θ; r remains constant. (In cartesian coordinates, both x and y vary in time.) As the particle moves along the circle from the positive x axis ($\theta = 0$) to P, it moves through an arc of length s, which is related to the angular position θ through the relationship

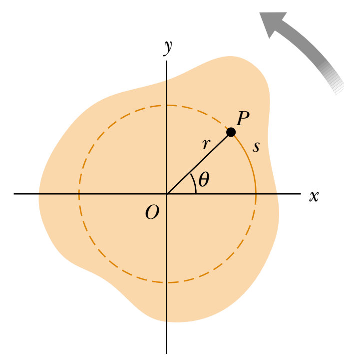


Figure 10.1 A rigid object rotating about a fixed axis through O perpendicular to the plane of the figure. (In other words, the axis of rotation is the z axis.) A particle at P rotates in a circle of radius r centered at O.

$$s = r\theta \qquad \textbf{(10.1a)}$$

$$\theta = \frac{s}{r} \qquad \textbf{(10.1b)}$$

It is important to note the units of θ in Equation 10.1b. Because θ is the ratio of an arc length and the radius of the circle, it is a pure number. However, we commonly give θ the artificial unit **radian** (rad), where

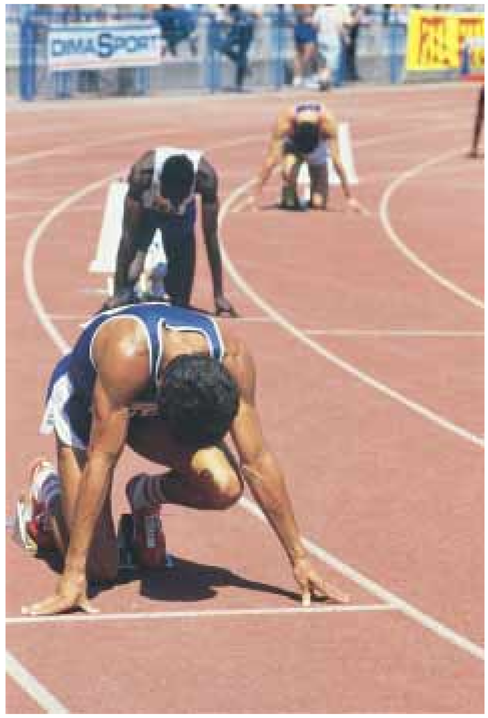
Radian

one radian is the angle subtended by an arc length equal to the radius of the arc.

Because the circumference of a circle is $2\pi r$, it follows from Equation 10.1b that 360° corresponds to an angle of $2\pi r/r$ rad $= 2\pi$ rad (one revolution). Hence, 1 rad $= 360°/2\pi \approx 57.3°$. To convert an angle in degrees to an angle in radians, we use the fact that 2π rad $= 360°$:

$$\theta \text{ (rad)} = \frac{\pi}{180°}\,\theta \text{ (deg)}$$

For example, 60° equals $\pi/3$ rad, and 45° equals $\pi/4$ rad.



In a short track event, such as a 200-m or 400-m sprint, the runners begin from staggered positions on the track. Why don't they all begin from the same line?

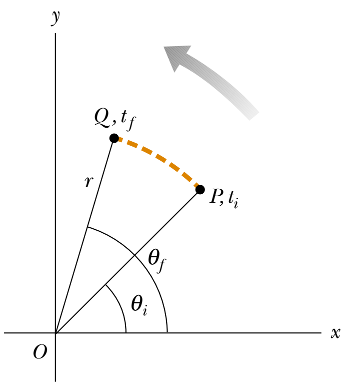


Figure 10.2 A particle on a rotating rigid object moves from P to Q along the arc of a circle. In the time interval $\Delta t = t_f - t_i$, the radius vector sweeps out an angle $\Delta\theta = \theta_f - \theta_i$.

As the particle in question on our rigid object travels from position P to position Q in a time Δt as shown in Figure 10.2, the radius vector sweeps out an angle $\Delta\theta = \theta_f - \theta_i$. This quantity $\Delta\theta$ is defined as the **angular displacement** of the particle:

$$\Delta\theta = \theta_f - \theta_i \tag{10.2}$$

We define the **average angular speed $\overline{\omega}$** (omega) as the ratio of this angular displacement to the time interval Δt:

Average angular speed

$$\overline{\omega} \equiv \frac{\theta_f - \theta_i}{t_f - t_i} = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t} \tag{10.3}$$

In analogy to linear speed, the **instantaneous angular speed ω** is defined as the limit of the ratio $\Delta\theta/\Delta t$ as Δt approaches zero:

Instantaneous angular speed

$$\omega \equiv \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\theta}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\theta}{dt} \tag{10.4}$$

Angular speed has units of radians per second (rad/s), or rather second^{-1} (s^{-1}) because radians are not dimensional. We take ω to be positive when θ is increasing (counterclockwise motion) and negative when θ is decreasing (clockwise motion).

If the instantaneous angular speed of an object changes from ω_i to ω_f in the time interval Δt, the object has an angular acceleration. The **average angular acceleration $\overline{\alpha}$** (alpha) of a rotating object is defined as the ratio of the change in the angular speed to the time interval Δt:

Average angular acceleration

$$\overline{\alpha} \equiv \frac{\omega_f - \omega_i}{t_f - t_i} = \frac{\Delta\omega}{\Delta t} \tag{10.5}$$

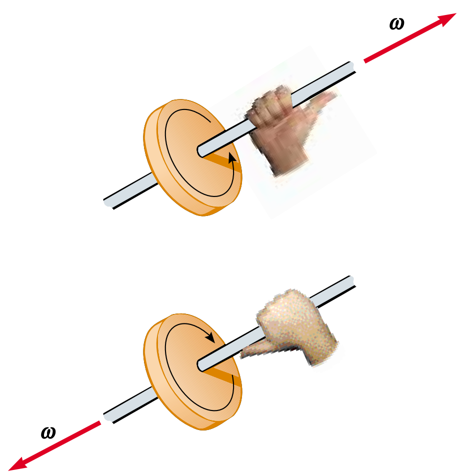


Figure 10.3 The right-hand rule for determining the direction of the angular velocity vector.

In analogy to linear acceleration, the **instantaneous angular acceleration** is defined as the limit of the ratio $\Delta\omega/\Delta t$ as Δt approaches zero:

Instantaneous angular acceleration

$$\alpha \equiv \lim_{\Delta t \to 0} \frac{\Delta\omega}{\Delta t} = \frac{d\omega}{dt} \tag{10.6}$$

Angular acceleration has units of radians per second squared (rad/s^2), or just second^{-2} (s^{-2}). Note that α is positive when the rate of counterclockwise rotation is increasing or when the rate of clockwise rotation is decreasing.

When rotating about a fixed axis, every particle on a rigid object rotates through the same angle and has the same angular speed and the same angular acceleration. That is, the quantities θ, ω, and α characterize the rotational motion of the entire rigid object. Using these quantities, we can greatly simplify the analysis of rigid-body rotation.

Angular position (θ), angular speed (ω), and angular acceleration (α) are analogous to linear position (x), linear speed (v), and linear acceleration (a). The variables θ, ω, and α differ dimensionally from the variables x, v, and a only by a factor having the unit of length.

We have not specified any direction for ω and α. Strictly speaking, these variables are the magnitudes of the angular velocity and the angular acceleration vectors $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$, respectively, and they should always be positive. Because we are considering rotation about a fixed axis, however, we can indicate the directions of the vectors by assigning a positive or negative sign to ω and α, as discussed earlier with regard to Equations 10.4 and 10.6. For rotation about a fixed axis, the only direction that uniquely specifies the rotational motion is the direction along the axis of rotation. Therefore, the directions of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ are along this axis. If an object rotates in the xy plane as in Figure 10.1, the direction of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is out of the plane of the diagram when the rotation is counterclockwise and into the plane of the diagram when the rotation is clockwise. To illustrate this convention, it is convenient to use the *right-hand rule* demonstrated in Figure 10.3. When the four fingers of the right hand are wrapped in the direction of rotation, the extended right thumb points in the direction of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$. The direction of $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ follows from its definition $d\boldsymbol{\omega}/dt$. It is the same as the direction of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ if the angular speed is increasing in time, and it is antiparallel to $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ if the angular speed is decreasing in time.

Quick Quiz 10.1

Describe a situation in which $\omega < 0$ and $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ are antiparallel.

10.2 ROTATIONAL KINEMATICS: ROTATIONAL MOTION WITH CONSTANT ANGULAR ACCELERATION

7.2 In our study of linear motion, we found that the simplest form of accelerated motion to analyze is motion under constant linear acceleration. Likewise, for rotational motion about a fixed axis, the simplest accelerated motion to analyze is motion under constant angular acceleration. Therefore, we next develop kinematic relationships for this type of motion. If we write Equation 10.6 in the form $d\omega = \alpha\, dt$, and let $t_i = 0$ and $t_f = t$, we can integrate this expression directly:

$$\omega_f = \omega_i + \alpha t \qquad \text{(for constant } \alpha\text{)} \tag{10.7}$$

Substituting Equation 10.7 into Equation 10.4 and integrating once more we obtain

Rotational kinematic equations

$$\theta_f = \theta_i + \omega_i t + \tfrac{1}{2}\alpha t^2 \qquad \text{(for constant } \alpha\text{)} \tag{10.8}$$

If we eliminate t from Equations 10.7 and 10.8, we obtain

$$\omega_f^2 = \omega_i^2 + 2\alpha(\theta_f - \theta_i) \qquad \text{(for constant } \alpha\text{)} \tag{10.9}$$

Notice that these kinematic expressions for rotational motion under constant angular acceleration are of the same form as those for linear motion under constant linear acceleration with the substitutions $x \rightarrow \theta$, $v \rightarrow \omega$, and $a \rightarrow \alpha$. Table 10.1 compares the kinematic equations for rotational and linear motion.

EXAMPLE 10.1 Rotating Wheel

A wheel rotates with a constant angular acceleration of $3.50\ \text{rad/s}^2$. If the angular speed of the wheel is 2.00 rad/s at $t_i = 0$, (a) through what angle does the wheel rotate in 2.00 s?

Solution We can use Figure 10.2 to represent the wheel, and so we do not need a new drawing. This is a straightforward application of an equation from Table 10.1:

$$\begin{aligned}\theta_f - \theta_i &= \omega_i t + \tfrac{1}{2}\alpha t^2 = (2.00\ \text{rad/s})(2.00\ \text{s}) \\ &\quad + \tfrac{1}{2}(3.50\ \text{rad/s}^2)(2.00\ \text{s})^2 \\ &= 11.0\ \text{rad} = (11.0\ \text{rad})(57.3°/\text{rad}) = \boxed{630°} \\ &= \frac{630°}{360°/\text{rev}} = \boxed{1.75\ \text{rev}}\end{aligned}$$

(b) What is the angular speed at $t = 2.00$ s?

Solution Because the angular acceleration and the angular speed are both positive, we can be sure our answer must be greater than 2.00 rad/s.

$$\begin{aligned}\omega_f &= \omega_i + \alpha t = 2.00\ \text{rad/s} + (3.50\ \text{rad/s}^2)(2.00\ \text{s}) \\ &= \boxed{9.00\ \text{rad/s}}\end{aligned}$$

We could also obtain this result using Equation 10.9 and the results of part (a). Try it! You also may want to see if you can formulate the linear motion analog to this problem.

Exercise Find the angle through which the wheel rotates between $t = 2.00$ s and $t = 3.00$ s.

Answer 10.8 rad.

TABLE 10.1 Kinematic Equations for Rotational and Linear Motion Under Constant Acceleration

Rotational Motion About a Fixed Axis	Linear Motion
$\omega_f = \omega_i + \alpha t$	$v_f = v_i + at$
$\theta_f = \theta_i + \omega_i t + \frac{1}{2}\alpha t^2$	$x_f = x_i + v_i t + \frac{1}{2}at^2$
$\omega_f^2 = \omega_i^2 + 2\alpha(\theta_f - \theta_i)$	$v_f^2 = v_i^2 + 2a(x_f - x_i)$

10.3 ANGULAR AND LINEAR QUANTITIES

In this section we derive some useful relationships between the angular speed and acceleration of a rotating rigid object and the linear speed and acceleration of an arbitrary point in the object. To do so, we must keep in mind that when a rigid object rotates about a fixed axis, as in Figure 10.4, every particle of the object moves in a circle whose center is the axis of rotation.

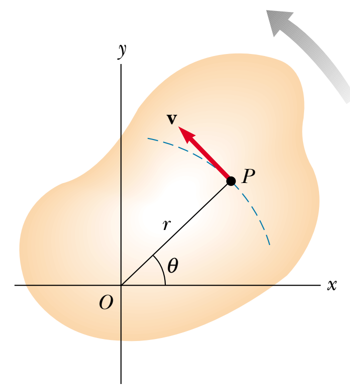


Figure 10.4 As a rigid object rotates about the fixed axis through O, the point P has a linear velocity **v** that is always tangent to the circular path of radius r.

We can relate the angular speed of the rotating object to the tangential speed of a point P on the object. Because point P moves in a circle, the linear velocity vector **v** is always tangent to the circular path and hence is called *tangential velocity.* The magnitude of the tangential velocity of the point P is by definition the tangential speed $v = ds/dt$, where s is the distance traveled by this point measured along the circular path. Recalling that $s = r\theta$ (Eq. 10.1a) and noting that r is constant, we obtain

$$v = \frac{ds}{dt} = r\frac{d\theta}{dt}$$

Because $d\theta/dt = \omega$ (see Eq. 10.4), we can say

Relationship between linear and angular speed

$$v = r\omega \qquad \textbf{(10.10)}$$

That is, the tangential speed of a point on a rotating rigid object equals the perpendicular distance of that point from the axis of rotation multiplied by the angular speed. Therefore, although every point on the rigid object has the same *angular* speed, not every point has the same *linear* speed because r is not the same for all points on the object. Equation 10.10 shows that the linear speed of a point on the rotating object increases as one moves outward from the center of rotation, as we would intuitively expect. The outer end of a swinging baseball bat moves much faster than the handle.

QuickLab

Spin a tennis ball or basketball and watch it gradually slow down and stop. Estimate α and a_t as accurately as you can.

We can relate the angular acceleration of the rotating rigid object to the tangential acceleration of the point P by taking the time derivative of v:

$$a_t = \frac{dv}{dt} = r\frac{d\omega}{dt}$$

Relationship between linear and angular acceleration

$$a_t = r\alpha \qquad \textbf{(10.11)}$$

That is, the tangential component of the linear acceleration of a point on a rotating rigid object equals the point's distance from the axis of rotation multiplied by the angular acceleration.

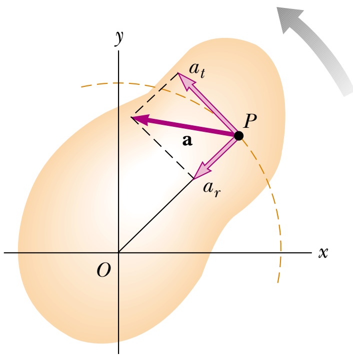


Figure 10.5 As a rigid object rotates about a fixed axis through O, the point P experiences a tangential component of linear acceleration a_t and a radial component of linear acceleration a_r. The total linear acceleration of this point is $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}_t + \mathbf{a}_r$.

In Section 4.4 we found that a point rotating in a circular path undergoes a centripetal, or radial, acceleration $\mathbf{a}_r$ of magnitude v^2/r directed toward the center of rotation (Fig. 10.5). Because $v = r\omega$ for a point P on a rotating object, we can express the radial acceleration of that point as

$$a_r = \frac{v^2}{r} = r\omega^2 \tag{10.12}$$

The total linear acceleration vector of the point is $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}_t + \mathbf{a}_r$. ($\mathbf{a}_t$ describes the change in how fast the point is moving, and $\mathbf{a}_r$ represents the change in its direction of travel.) Because $\mathbf{a}$ is a vector having a radial and a tangential component, the magnitude of $\mathbf{a}$ for the point P on the rotating rigid object is

$$a = \sqrt{a_t{}^2 + a_r{}^2} = \sqrt{r^2\alpha^2 + r^2\omega^4} = r\sqrt{\alpha^2 + \omega^4} \tag{10.13}$$

Quick Quiz 10.2

When a wheel of radius R rotates about a fixed axis, do all points on the wheel have (a) the same angular speed and (b) the same linear speed? If the angular speed is constant and equal to ω, describe the linear speeds and linear accelerations of the points located at (c) $r = 0$, (d) $r = R/2$, and (e) $r = R$, all measured from the center of the wheel.

EXAMPLE 10.2 CD Player

On a compact disc, audio information is stored in a series of pits and flat areas on the surface of the disc. The information is stored digitally, and the alternations between pits and flat areas on the surface represent binary ones and zeroes to be read by the compact disc player and converted back to sound waves. The pits and flat areas are detected by a system consisting of a laser and lenses. The length of a certain number of ones and zeroes is the same everywhere on the disc, whether the information is near the center of the disc or near its outer edge. In order that this length of ones and zeroes always passes by the laser–lens system in the same time period, the linear speed of the disc surface at the location of the lens must be constant. This requires, according to Equation 10.10, that the angular speed vary as the laser–lens system moves radially along the disc. In a typical compact disc player, the disc spins counterclockwise (Fig. 10.6), and the constant speed of the surface at the point of the laser–lens system is 1.3 m/s. (a) Find the angular speed of the disc in revolutions per minute when information is being read from the innermost first track ($r = 23$ mm) and the outermost final track ($r = 58$ mm).

Solution Using Equation 10.10, we can find the angular speed; this will give us the required linear speed at the position of the inner track,

$$\omega_i = \frac{v}{r_i} = \frac{1.3 \text{ m/s}}{2.3 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}} = 56.5 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$= (56.5 \text{ rad/s})\left(\frac{1}{2\pi} \text{ rev/rad}\right)(60 \text{ s/min})$$

$$= 5.4 \times 10^2 \text{ rev/min}$$

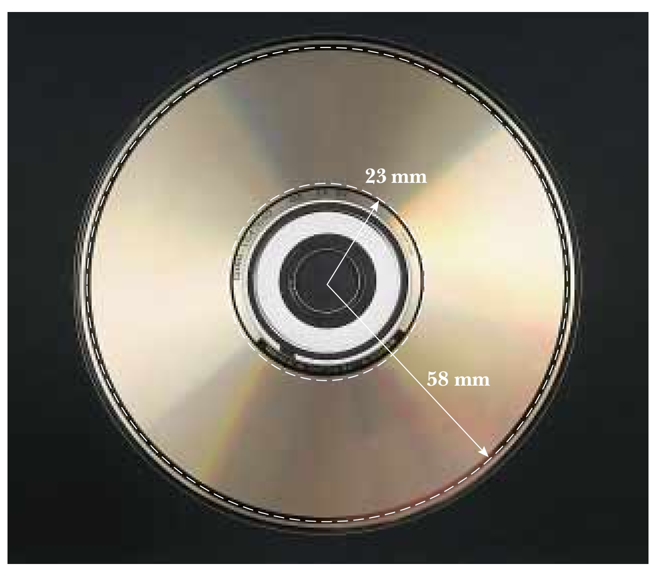


Figure 10.6 A compact disc.

For the outer track,

$$\omega_f = \frac{v}{r_f} = \frac{1.3 \text{ m/s}}{5.8 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}} = 22.4 \text{ rad/s}$$

$$= \boxed{2.1 \times 10^2 \text{ rev/min}}$$

The player adjusts the angular speed ω of the disc within this range so that information moves past the objective lens at a constant rate. These angular velocity values are positive because the direction of rotation is counterclockwise.

(b) The maximum playing time of a standard music CD is 74 minutes and 33 seconds. How many revolutions does the disc make during that time?

Solution We know that the angular speed is always decreasing, and we assume that it is decreasing steadily, with α constant. The time interval t is (74 min)(60 s/min) + 33 s = 4 473 s. We are looking for the angular position θ_f, where we set the initial angular position $\theta_i = 0$. We can use Equation 10.3, replacing the average angular speed $\overline{\omega}$ with its mathematical equivalent $(\omega_i + \omega_f)/2$:

$$\theta_f = \theta_i + \tfrac{1}{2}(\omega_i + \omega_f)t$$
$$= 0 + \tfrac{1}{2}(540 \text{ rev/min} + 210 \text{ rev/min})$$
$$(1 \text{ min}/60 \text{ s})(4\,473 \text{ s})$$
$$= \boxed{2.8 \times 10^4 \text{ rev}}$$

(c) What total length of track moves past the objective lens during this time?

Solution Because we know the (constant) linear velocity and the time interval, this is a straightforward calculation:

$$x_f = v_i t = (1.3 \text{ m/s})(4\,473 \text{ s}) = \boxed{5.8 \times 10^3 \text{ m}}$$

More than 3.6 miles of track spins past the objective lens!

(d) What is the angular acceleration of the CD over the 4 473-s time interval? Assume that α is constant.

Solution We have several choices for approaching this problem. Let us use the most direct approach by utilizing Equation 10.5, which is based on the definition of the term we are seeking. We should obtain a negative number for the angular acceleration because the disc spins more and more slowly in the positive direction as time goes on. Our answer should also be fairly small because it takes such a long time—more than an hour—for the change in angular speed to be accomplished:

$$\alpha = \frac{\omega_f - \omega_i}{t} = \frac{22.4 \text{ rad/s} - 56.5 \text{ rad/s}}{4\,473 \text{ s}}$$

$$= \boxed{-7.6 \times 10^{-3} \text{ rad/s}^2}$$

The disc experiences a very gradual decrease in its rotation rate, as expected.

10.4 ROTATIONAL ENERGY

7.3 Let us now look at the kinetic energy of a rotating rigid object, considering the object as a collection of particles and assuming it rotates about a fixed z axis with an angular speed ω (Fig. 10.7). Each particle has kinetic energy determined by its mass and linear speed. If the mass of the ith particle is m_i and its linear speed is v_i, its kinetic energy is

$$K_i = \tfrac{1}{2} m_i v_i^2$$

To proceed further, we must recall that although every particle in the rigid object has the same angular speed ω, the individual linear speeds depend on the distance r_i from the axis of rotation according to the expression $v_i = r_i \omega$ (see Eq. 10.10). The *total* kinetic energy of the rotating rigid object is the sum of the kinetic energies of the individual particles:

$$K_R = \sum_i K_i = \sum_i \tfrac{1}{2} m_i v_i^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} \sum_i m_i r_i^2 \omega^2$$

We can write this expression in the form

$$K_R = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\sum_i m_i r_i^2\right)\omega^2 \tag{10.14}$$

where we have factored ω^2 from the sum because it is common to every particle.

web

If you want to learn more about the physics of CD players, visit the Special Interest Group on CD Applications and Technology at **www.sigcat.org**

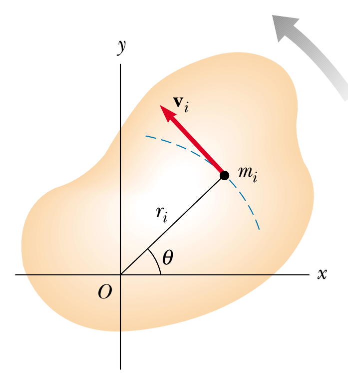


Figure 10.7 A rigid object rotating about a z axis with angular speed ω. The kinetic energy of the particle of mass m_i is $\frac{1}{2}m_i v_i^2$. The total kinetic energy of the object is called its rotational kinetic energy.

We simplify this expression by defining the quantity in parentheses as the **moment of inertia I:**

Moment of inertia

$$I \equiv \sum_i m_i r_i^{\,2} \qquad \textbf{(10.15)}$$

From the definition of moment of inertia, we see that it has dimensions of ML^2 ($kg \cdot m^2$ in SI units).[1] With this notation, Equation 10.14 becomes

Rotational kinetic energy

$$K_R = \tfrac{1}{2} I\omega^2 \qquad \textbf{(10.16)}$$

Although we commonly refer to the quantity $\frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$ as **rotational kinetic energy,** it is not a new form of energy. It is ordinary kinetic energy because it is derived from a sum over individual kinetic energies of the particles contained in the rigid object. However, the mathematical form of the kinetic energy given by Equation 10.16 is a convenient one when we are dealing with rotational motion, provided we know how to calculate I.

It is important that you recognize the analogy between kinetic energy associated with linear motion $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$ and rotational kinetic energy $\frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$. The quantities I and ω in rotational motion are analogous to m and v in linear motion, respectively. (In fact, I takes the place of m every time we compare a linear-motion equation with its rotational counterpart.) The moment of inertia is a measure of the resistance of an object to changes in its rotational motion, just as mass is a measure of the tendency of an object to resist changes in its linear motion. Note, however, that mass is an intrinsic property of an object, whereas I depends on the physical arrangement of that mass. Can you think of a situation in which an object's moment of inertia changes even though its mass does not?

EXAMPLE 10.3 The Oxygen Molecule

Consider an oxygen molecule (O_2) rotating in the xy plane about the z axis. The axis passes through the center of the molecule, perpendicular to its length. The mass of each oxygen atom is 2.66×10^{-26} kg, and at room temperature the average separation between the two atoms is $d = 1.21 \times 10^{-10}$ m (the atoms are treated as point masses). (a) Calculate the moment of inertia of the molecule about the z axis.

Solution This is a straightforward application of the definition of I. Because each atom is a distance $d/2$ from the z axis, the moment of inertia about the axis is

$$I = \sum_i m_i r_i^{\,2} = m\left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^2 + m\left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}md^2$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}(2.66 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{kg})(1.21 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{m})^2$$

$$= \boxed{1.95 \times 10^{-46}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2}$$

This is a very small number, consistent with the minuscule masses and distances involved.

(b) If the angular speed of the molecule about the z axis is 4.60×10^{12} rad/s, what is its rotational kinetic energy?

Solution We apply the result we just calculated for the moment of inertia in the formula for K_R:

$$K_R = \tfrac{1}{2} I\omega^2$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}(1.95 \times 10^{-46}\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2)(4.60 \times 10^{12}\ \text{rad/s})^2$$

$$= \boxed{2.06 \times 10^{-21}\ \text{J}}$$

[1] Civil engineers use moment of inertia to characterize the elastic properties (rigidity) of such structures as loaded beams. Hence, it is often useful even in a nonrotational context.

EXAMPLE 10.4 Four Rotating Masses

Four tiny spheres are fastened to the corners of a frame of negligible mass lying in the xy plane (Fig. 10.8). We shall assume that the spheres' radii are small compared with the dimensions of the frame. (a) If the system rotates about the y axis with an angular speed ω, find the moment of inertia and the rotational kinetic energy about this axis.

Solution First, note that the two spheres of mass m, which lie on the y axis, do not contribute to I_y (that is, $r_i = 0$ for these spheres about this axis). Applying Equation 10.15, we obtain

$$I_y = \sum_i m_i r_i^2 = Ma^2 + Ma^2 = \boxed{2Ma^2}$$

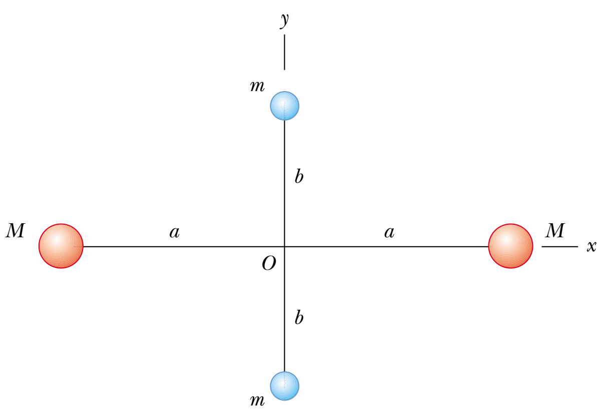


Figure 10.8 The four spheres are at a fixed separation as shown. The moment of inertia of the system depends on the axis about which it is evaluated.

Therefore, the rotational kinetic energy about the y axis is

$$K_R = \tfrac{1}{2}I_y\omega^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(2Ma^2)\omega^2 = \boxed{Ma^2\omega^2}$$

The fact that the two spheres of mass m do not enter into this result makes sense because they have no motion about the axis of rotation; hence, they have no rotational kinetic energy. By similar logic, we expect the moment of inertia about the x axis to be $I_x = 2mb^2$ with a rotational kinetic energy about that axis of $K_R = mb^2\omega^2$.

(b) Suppose the system rotates in the xy plane about an axis through O (the z axis). Calculate the moment of inertia and rotational kinetic energy about this axis.

Solution Because r_i in Equation 10.15 is the *perpendicular* distance to the axis of rotation, we obtain

$$I_z = \sum_i m_i r_i^2 = Ma^2 + Ma^2 + mb^2 + mb^2 = \boxed{2Ma^2 + 2mb^2}$$

$$K_R = \tfrac{1}{2}I_z\omega^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(2Ma^2 + 2mb^2)\omega^2 = \boxed{(Ma^2 + mb^2)\omega^2}$$

Comparing the results for parts (a) and (b), we conclude that the moment of inertia and therefore the rotational kinetic energy associated with a given angular speed depend on the axis of rotation. In part (b), we expect the result to include all four spheres and distances because all four spheres are rotating in the xy plane. Furthermore, the fact that the rotational kinetic energy in part (a) is smaller than that in part (b) indicates that it would take less effort (work) to set the system into rotation about the y axis than about the z axis.

10.5 CALCULATION OF MOMENTS OF INERTIA

7.5 We can evaluate the moment of inertia of an extended rigid object by imagining the object divided into many small volume elements, each of which has mass Δm. We use the definition $I = \sum_i r_i^2 \Delta m_i$ and take the limit of this sum as $\Delta m \rightarrow 0$. In this limit, the sum becomes an integral over the whole object:

$$I = \lim_{\Delta m_i \rightarrow 0} \sum_i r_i^2 \Delta m_i = \int r^2\, dm \qquad \textbf{(10.17)}$$

It is usually easier to calculate moments of inertia in terms of the volume of the elements rather than their mass, and we can easily make that change by using Equation 1.1, $\rho = m/V$, where ρ is the density of the object and V is its volume. We want this expression in its differential form $\rho = dm/dV$ because the volumes we are dealing with are very small. Solving for $dm = \rho\, dV$ and substituting the result

into Equation 10.17 gives

$$I = \int \rho r^2\, dV$$

If the object is homogeneous, then ρ is constant and the integral can be evaluated for a known geometry. If ρ is not constant, then its variation with position must be known to complete the integration.

The density given by $\rho = m/V$ sometimes is referred to as *volume density* for the obvious reason that it relates to volume. Often we use other ways of expressing density. For instance, when dealing with a sheet of uniform thickness t, we can define a *surface density* $\sigma = \rho t$, which signifies *mass per unit area*. Finally, when mass is distributed along a uniform rod of cross-sectional area A, we sometimes use *linear density* $\lambda = M/L = \rho A$, which is the *mass per unit length*.

EXAMPLE 10.5 Uniform Hoop

Find the moment of inertia of a uniform hoop of mass M and radius R about an axis perpendicular to the plane of the hoop and passing through its center (Fig. 10.9).

Solution All mass elements dm are the same distance $r = R$ from the axis, and so, applying Equation 10.17, we obtain for the moment of inertia about the z axis through O:

$$I_z = \int r^2\, dm = R^2 \int dm = \boxed{MR^2}$$

Note that this moment of inertia is the same as that of a single particle of mass M located a distance R from the axis of rotation.

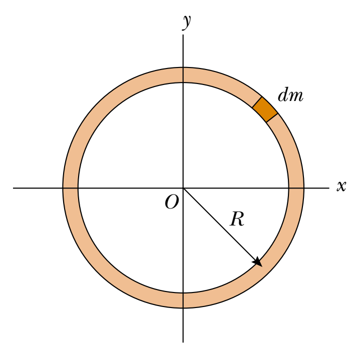


Figure 10.9 The mass elements dm of a uniform hoop are all the same distance from O.

Quick Quiz 10.3

(a) Based on what you have learned from Example 10.5, what do you expect to find for the moment of inertia of two particles, each of mass $M/2$, located anywhere on a circle of radius R around the axis of rotation? (b) How about the moment of inertia of four particles, each of mass $M/4$, again located a distance R from the rotation axis?

EXAMPLE 10.6 Uniform Rigid Rod

Calculate the moment of inertia of a uniform rigid rod of length L and mass M (Fig. 10.10) about an axis perpendicular to the rod (the y axis) and passing through its center of mass.

Solution The shaded length element dx has a mass dm equal to the mass per unit length λ multiplied by dx:

$$dm = \lambda\, dx = \frac{M}{L}\, dx$$

Substituting this expression for dm into Equation 10.17, with $r = x$, we obtain

$$I_y = \int r^2\, dm = \int_{-L/2}^{L/2} x^2 \frac{M}{L}\, dx = \frac{M}{L}\int_{-L/2}^{L/2} x^2\, dx$$

$$= \frac{M}{L}\left[\frac{x^3}{3}\right]_{-L/2}^{L/2} = \boxed{\tfrac{1}{12}ML^2}$$

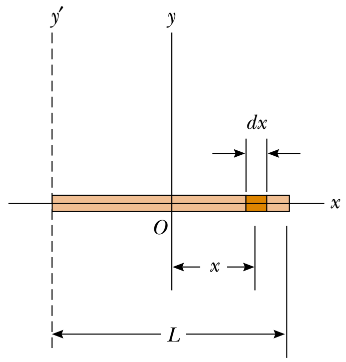


Figure 10.10 A uniform rigid rod of length L. The moment of inertia about the y axis is less than that about the y' axis. The latter axis is examined in Example 10.8.

EXAMPLE 10.7 Uniform Solid Cylinder

A uniform solid cylinder has a radius R, mass M, and length L. Calculate its moment of inertia about its central axis (the z axis in Fig. 10.11).

Solution It is convenient to divide the cylinder into many cylindrical shells, each of which has radius r, thickness dr, and length L, as shown in Figure 10.11. The volume dV of each shell is its cross-sectional area multiplied by its length: $dV = dA \cdot L = (2\pi r\ dr)L$. If the mass per unit volume is ρ, then the mass of this differential volume element is $dm = \rho dV = \rho 2\pi r L\ dr$. Substituting this expression for dm into Equation 10.17, we obtain

$$I_z = \int r^2\ dm = 2\pi\rho L \int_0^R r^3\ dr = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\rho L R^4$$

Because the total volume of the cylinder is $\pi R^2 L$, we see that $\rho = M/V = M/\pi R^2 L$. Substituting this value for ρ into the above result gives

$$(1) \qquad I_z = \boxed{\tfrac{1}{2}MR^2}$$

Note that this result does not depend on L, the length of the cylinder. In other words, it applies equally well to a long cylinder and a flat disc. Also note that this is exactly half the value we would expect were all the mass concentrated at the outer edge of the cylinder or disc. (See Example 10.5.)

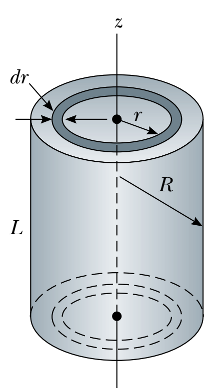


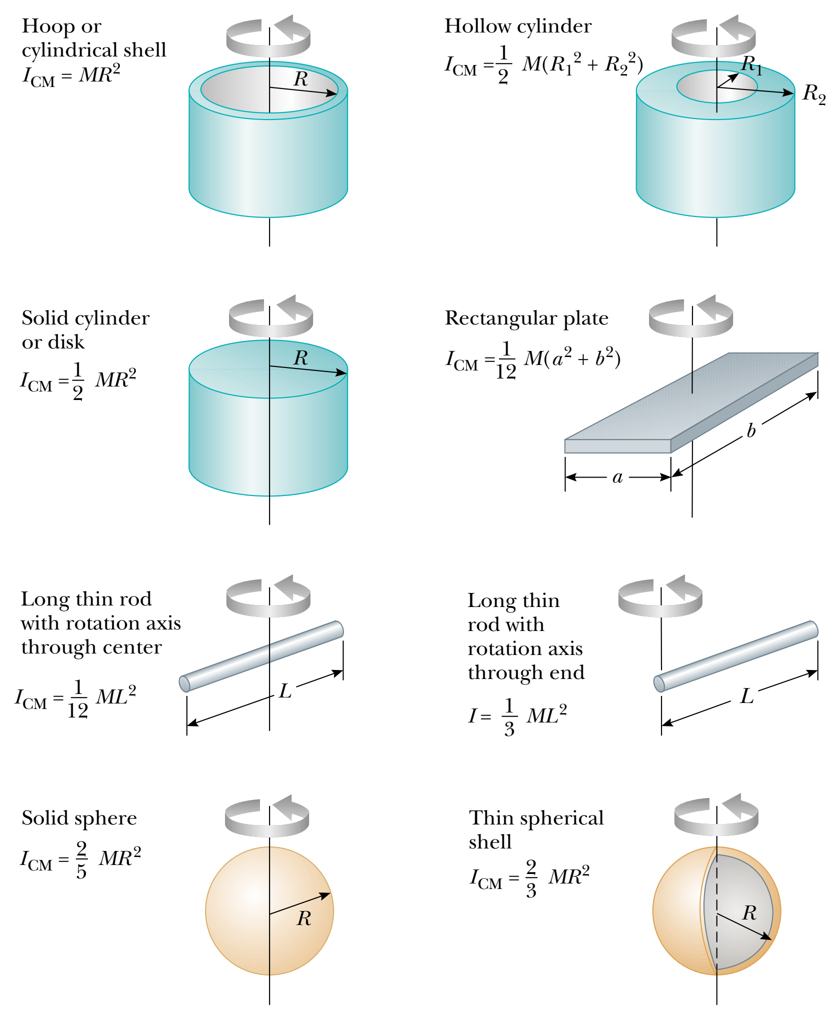
Figure 10.11 Calculating I about the z axis for a uniform solid cylinder.

Table 10.2 gives the moments of inertia for a number of bodies about specific axes. The moments of inertia of rigid bodies with simple geometry (high symmetry) are relatively easy to calculate provided the rotation axis coincides with an axis of symmetry. The calculation of moments of inertia about an arbitrary axis can be cumbersome, however, even for a highly symmetric object. Fortunately, use of an important theorem, called the **parallel-axis theorem,** often simplifies the calculation. Suppose the moment of inertia about an axis through the center of mass of an object is I_{CM}. The parallel-axis theorem states that the moment of inertia about any axis parallel to and a distance D away from this axis is

$$I = I_{CM} + MD^2 \qquad \textbf{(10.18)}$$

Parallel-axis theorem

TABLE 10.2 Moments of Inertia of Homogeneous Rigid Bodies with Different Geometries



Proof of the Parallel-Axis Theorem *(Optional)*. Suppose that an object rotates in the xy plane about the z axis, as shown in Figure 10.12, and that the coordinates of the center of mass are x_{CM}, y_{CM}. Let the mass element dm have coordinates x, y. Because this element is a distance $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ from the z axis, the moment of inertia about the z axis is

$$I = \int r^2 \, dm = \int (x^2 + y^2) \, dm$$

However, we can relate the coordinates x, y of the mass element dm to the coordinates of this same element located in a coordinate system having the object's center of mass as its origin. If the coordinates of the center of mass are x_{CM}, y_{CM} in the original coordinate system centered on O, then from Figure 10.12a we see that the relationships between the unprimed and primed coordinates are $x = x' + x_{CM}$

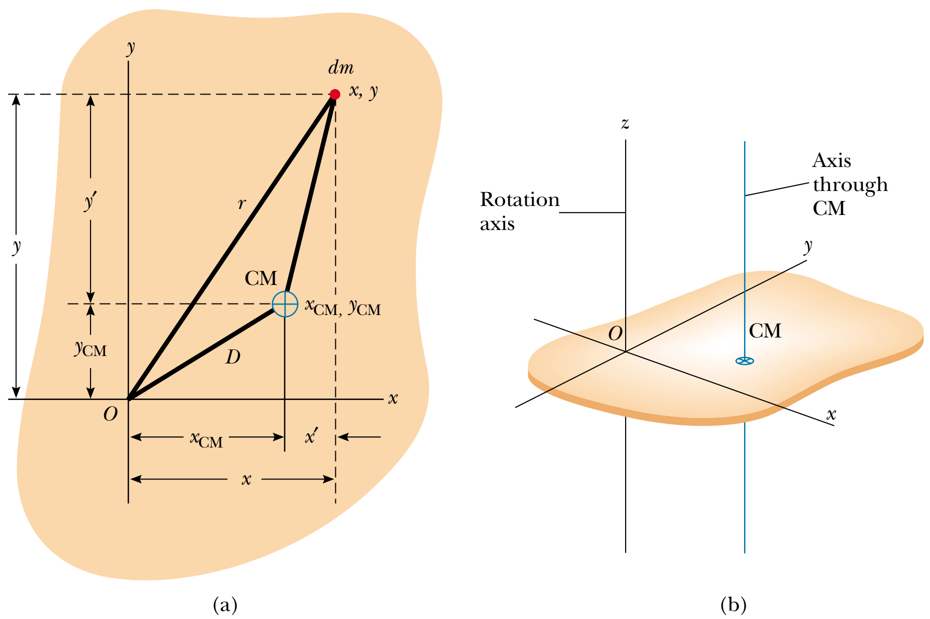


Figure 10.12 (a) The parallel-axis theorem: If the moment of inertia about an axis perpendicular to the figure through the center of mass is I_{CM}, then the moment of inertia about the z axis is $I_z = I_{CM} + MD^2$. (b) Perspective drawing showing the z axis (the axis of rotation) and the parallel axis through the CM.

and $y = y' + y_{CM}$. Therefore,

$$I = \int [(x' + x_{CM})^2 + (y' + y_{CM})^2]\, dm$$

$$= \int [(x')^2 + (y')^2]\, dm + 2x_{CM} \int x'\, dm + 2y_{CM} \int y'\, dm + ({x_{CM}}^2 + {y_{CM}}^2) \int dm$$

The first integral is, by definition, the moment of inertia about an axis that is parallel to the z axis and passes through the center of mass. The second two integrals are zero because, by definition of the center of mass, $\int x'\, dm = \int y'\, dm = 0$. The last integral is simply MD^2 because $\int dm = M$ and $D^2 = {x_{CM}}^2 + {y_{CM}}^2$. Therefore, we conclude that

$$I = I_{CM} + MD^2$$

EXAMPLE 10.8 Applying the Parallel-Axis Theorem

Consider once again the uniform rigid rod of mass M and length L shown in Figure 10.10. Find the moment of inertia of the rod about an axis perpendicular to the rod through one end (the y'axis in Fig. 10.10).

Solution Intuitively, we expect the moment of inertia to be greater than $I_{CM} = \frac{1}{12}ML^2$ because it should be more difficult to change the rotational motion of a rod spinning about an axis at one end than one that is spinning about its center. Because the distance between the center-of-mass axis and the y' axis is $D = L/2$, the parallel-axis theorem gives

$$I = I_{CM} + MD^2 = \frac{1}{12} ML^2 + M\left(\frac{L}{2}\right)^2 = \boxed{\frac{1}{3} ML^2}$$

So, it is four times more difficult to change the rotation of a rod spinning about its end than it is to change the motion of one spinning about its center.

Exercise Calculate the moment of inertia of the rod about a perpendicular axis through the point $x = L/4$.

Answer $I = \frac{7}{48} ML^2$.

10.6 TORQUE

7.6

Why are a door's doorknob and hinges placed near opposite edges of the door? This question actually has an answer based on common sense ideas. The harder we push against the door and the farther we are from the hinges, the more likely we are to open or close the door. When a force is exerted on a rigid object pivoted about an axis, the object tends to rotate about that axis. The tendency of a force to rotate an object about some axis is measured by a vector quantity called **torque** $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ (tau).

Consider the wrench pivoted on the axis through O in Figure 10.13. The applied force $\mathbf{F}$ acts at an angle ϕ to the horizontal. We define the magnitude of the torque associated with the force $\mathbf{F}$ by the expression

Definition of torque

$$\tau \equiv rF \sin \phi = Fd \tag{10.19}$$

where r is the distance between the pivot point and the point of application of $\mathbf{F}$ and d is the perpendicular distance from the pivot point to the line of action of $\mathbf{F}$. (The *line of action* of a force is an imaginary line extending out both ends of the vector representing the force. The dashed line extending from the tail of $\mathbf{F}$ in Figure 10.13 is part of the line of action of $\mathbf{F}$.) From the right triangle in Figure 10.13 that has the wrench as its hypotenuse, we see that $d = r \sin \phi$. This quantity d is called the **moment arm** (or *lever arm*) of $\mathbf{F}$.

Moment arm

It is very important that you recognize that *torque is defined only when a reference axis is specified.* Torque is the product of a force and the moment arm of that force, and moment arm is defined only in terms of an axis of rotation.

In Figure 10.13, the only component of $\mathbf{F}$ that tends to cause rotation is $F \sin \phi$, the component perpendicular to r. The horizontal component $F \cos \phi$, because it passes through O, has no tendency to produce rotation. From the definition of torque, we see that the rotating tendency increases as $\mathbf{F}$ increases and as d increases. This explains the observation that it is easier to close a door if we push at the doorknob rather than at a point close to the hinge. We also want to apply our push as close to perpendicular to the door as we can. Pushing sideways on the doorknob will not cause the door to rotate.

If two or more forces are acting on a rigid object, as shown in Figure 10.14, each tends to produce rotation about the pivot at O. In this example, $\mathbf{F}_2$ tends to

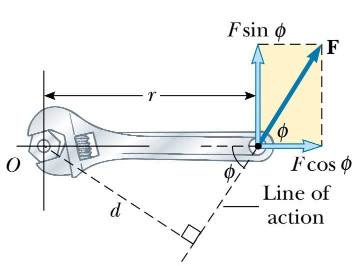


Figure 10.13 The force $\mathbf{F}$ has a greater rotating tendency about O as F increases and as the moment arm d increases. It is the component $F \sin \phi$ that tends to rotate the wrench about O.

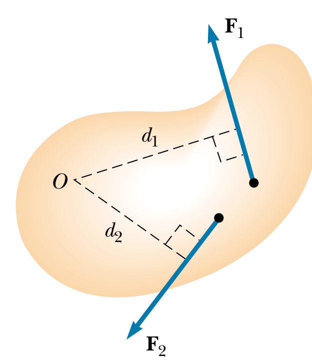


Figure 10.14 The force $\mathbf{F}_1$ tends to rotate the object counterclockwise about O, and $\mathbf{F}_2$ tends to rotate it clockwise.

rotate the object clockwise, and $\mathbf{F}_1$ tends to rotate it counterclockwise. We use the convention that the sign of the torque resulting from a force is positive if the turning tendency of the force is counterclockwise and is negative if the turning tendency is clockwise. For example, in Figure 10.14, the torque resulting from $\mathbf{F}_1$, which has a moment arm d_1, is positive and equal to $+F_1 d_1$; the torque from $\mathbf{F}_2$ is negative and equal to $-F_2 d_2$. Hence, the net torque about O is

$$\sum \tau = \tau_1 + \tau_2 = F_1 d_1 - F_2 d_2$$

Torque should not be confused with force. Forces can cause a change in linear motion, as described by Newton's second law. Forces can also cause a change in rotational motion, but the effectiveness of the forces in causing this change depends on both the forces and the moment arms of the forces, in the combination that we call *torque*. Torque has units of force times length—newton · meters in SI units—and should be reported in these units. Do not confuse torque and work, which have the same units but are very different concepts.

EXAMPLE 10.9 The Net Torque on a Cylinder

A one-piece cylinder is shaped as shown in Figure 10.15, with a core section protruding from the larger drum. The cylinder is free to rotate around the central axis shown in the drawing. A rope wrapped around the drum, which has radius R_1, exerts a force $\mathbf{F}_1$ to the right on the cylinder. A rope wrapped around the core, which has radius R_2, exerts a force $\mathbf{F}_2$ downward on the cylinder. (a) What is the net torque acting on the cylinder about the rotation axis (which is the z axis in Figure 10.15)?

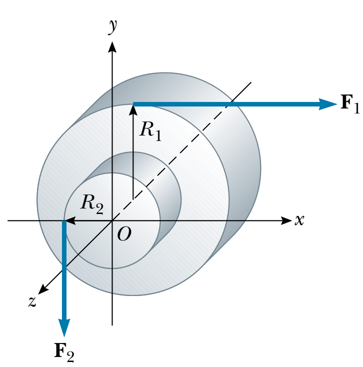


Figure 10.15 A solid cylinder pivoted about the z axis through O. The moment arm of $\mathbf{F}_1$ is R_1, and the moment arm of $\mathbf{F}_2$ is R_2.

Solution The torque due to $\mathbf{F}_1$ is $-R_1F_1$ (the sign is negative because the torque tends to produce clockwise rotation). The torque due to $\mathbf{F}_2$ is $+R_2F_2$ (the sign is positive because the torque tends to produce counterclockwise rotation). Therefore, the net torque about the rotation axis is

$$\sum \tau = \tau_1 + \tau_2 = \boxed{-R_1F_1 + R_2F_2}$$

We can make a quick check by noting that if the two forces are of equal magnitude, the net torque is negative because $R_1 > R_2$. Starting from rest with both forces acting on it, the cylinder would rotate clockwise because $\mathbf{F}_1$ would be more effective at turning it than would $\mathbf{F}_2$.

(b) Suppose $F_1 = 5.0$ N, $R_1 = 1.0$ m, $F_2 = 15.0$ N, and $R_2 = 0.50$ m. What is the net torque about the rotation axis, and which way does the cylinder rotate from rest?

$$\sum \tau = -(5.0 \text{ N})(1.0 \text{ m}) + (15.0 \text{ N})(0.50 \text{ m}) = \boxed{2.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}}$$

Because the net torque is positive, if the cylinder starts from rest, it will commence rotating counterclockwise with increasing angular velocity. (If the cylinder's initial rotation is clockwise, it will slow to a stop and then rotate counterclockwise with increasing angular speed.)

10.7 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN TORQUE AND ANGULAR ACCELERATION

7.6 In this section we show that the angular acceleration of a rigid object rotating about a fixed axis is proportional to the net torque acting about that axis. Before discussing the more complex case of rigid-body rotation, however, it is instructive

first to discuss the case of a particle rotating about some fixed point under the influence of an external force.

Consider a particle of mass m rotating in a circle of radius r under the influence of a tangential force $\mathbf{F}_t$ and a radial force $\mathbf{F}_r$, as shown in Figure 10.16. (As we learned in Chapter 6, the radial force must be present to keep the particle moving in its circular path.) The tangential force provides a tangential acceleration $\mathbf{a}_t$, and

$$F_t = ma_t$$

The torque about the center of the circle due to $\mathbf{F}_t$ is

$$\tau = F_t r = (ma_t) r$$

Because the tangential acceleration is related to the angular acceleration through the relationship $a_t = r\alpha$ (see Eq. 10.11), the torque can be expressed as

$$\tau = (mr\alpha) r = (mr^2)\alpha$$

Recall from Equation 10.15 that mr^2 is the moment of inertia of the rotating particle about the z axis passing through the origin, so that

Figure 10.16 A particle rotating in a circle under the influence of a tangential force $\mathbf{F}_t$. A force $\mathbf{F}_r$ in the radial direction also must be present to maintain the circular motion.

Relationship between torque and angular acceleration

$$\tau = I\alpha \tag{10.20}$$

That is, **the torque acting on the particle is proportional to its angular acceleration,** and the proportionality constant is the moment of inertia. It is important to note that $\tau = I\alpha$ is the rotational analog of Newton's second law of motion, $F = ma$.

Now let us extend this discussion to a rigid object of arbitrary shape rotating about a fixed axis, as shown in Figure 10.17. The object can be regarded as an infinite number of mass elements dm of infinitesimal size. If we impose a cartesian coordinate system on the object, then each mass element rotates in a circle about the origin, and each has a tangential acceleration $\mathbf{a}_t$ produced by an external tangential force $d\mathbf{F}_t$. For any given element, we know from Newton's second law that

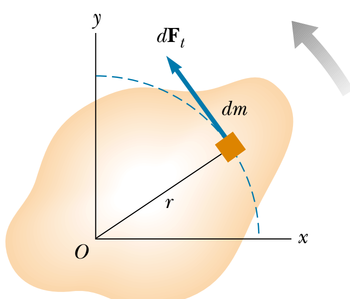


Figure 10.17 A rigid object rotating about an axis through O. Each mass element dm rotates about O with the same angular acceleration α, and the net torque on the object is proportional to α.

$$dF_t = (dm)\, a_t$$

The torque $d\tau$ associated with the force $d\mathbf{F}_t$ acts about the origin and is given by

$$d\tau = r\, dF_t = (r\, dm)\, a_t$$

Because $a_t = r\alpha$, the expression for $d\tau$ becomes

$$d\tau = (r\, dm) r\alpha = (r^2\, dm)\alpha$$

It is important to recognize that although each mass element of the rigid object may have a different linear acceleration $\mathbf{a}_t$, they all have the *same* angular acceleration α. With this in mind, we can integrate the above expression to obtain the net torque about O due to the external forces:

$$\sum \tau = \int (r^2\, dm)\alpha = \alpha \int r^2\, dm$$

where α can be taken outside the integral because it is common to all mass elements. From Equation 10.17, we know that $\int r^2\, dm$ is the moment of inertia of the object about the rotation axis through O, and so the expression for $\Sigma\tau$ becomes

Torque is proportional to angular acceleration

$$\sum \tau = I\alpha \tag{10.21}$$

Note that this is the same relationship we found for a particle rotating in a circle (see Eq. 10.20). So, again we see that the net torque about the rotation axis is pro-

portional to the angular acceleration of the object, with the proportionality factor being I, a quantity that depends upon the axis of rotation and upon the size and shape of the object. In view of the complex nature of the system, it is interesting to note that the relationship $\Sigma\tau = I\alpha$ is strikingly simple and in complete agreement with experimental observations. The simplicity of the result lies in the manner in which the motion is described.

Although each point on a rigid object rotating about a fixed axis may not experience the same force, linear acceleration, or linear speed, each point experiences the same angular acceleration and angular speed at any instant. Therefore, at any instant the rotating rigid object as a whole is characterized by specific values for angular acceleration, net torque, and angular speed.

Every point has the same ω and α

Finally, note that the result $\Sigma\tau = I\alpha$ also applies when the forces acting on the mass elements have radial components as well as tangential components. This is because the line of action of all radial components must pass through the axis of rotation, and hence all radial components produce zero torque about that axis.

QuickLab

Tip over a child's tall tower of blocks. Try this several times. Does the tower "break" at the same place each time? What affects where the tower comes apart as it tips? If the tower were made of toy bricks that snap together, what would happen? (Refer to Conceptual Example 10.11.)

EXAMPLE 10.10 Rotating Rod

A uniform rod of length L and mass M is attached at one end to a frictionless pivot and is free to rotate about the pivot in the vertical plane, as shown in Figure 10.18. The rod is released from rest in the horizontal position. What is the initial angular acceleration of the rod and the initial linear acceleration of its right end?

Solution We cannot use our kinematic equations to find α or a because the torque exerted on the rod varies with its position, and so neither acceleration is constant. We have enough information to find the torque, however, which we can then use in the torque–angular acceleration relationship (Eq. 10.21) to find α and then a.

The only force contributing to torque about an axis through the pivot is the gravitational force $M\mathbf{g}$ exerted on the rod. (The force exerted by the pivot on the rod has zero torque about the pivot because its moment arm is zero.) To compute the torque on the rod, we can assume that the gravitational force acts at the center of mass of the rod, as shown in Figure 10.18. The torque due to this force about an axis through the pivot is

$$\tau = Mg\left(\frac{L}{2}\right)$$

With $\Sigma\tau = I\alpha$, and $I = \frac{1}{3}ML^2$ for this axis of rotation (see Table 10.2), we obtain

$$\alpha = \frac{\tau}{I} = \frac{Mg(L/2)}{1/3\,ML^2} = \boxed{\frac{3g}{2L}}$$

All points on the rod have this angular acceleration.

To find the linear acceleration of the right end of the rod, we use the relationship $a_t = r\alpha$ (Eq. 10.11), with $r = L$:

$$a_t = L\alpha = \boxed{\tfrac{3}{2}g}$$

This result—that $a_t > g$ for the free end of the rod—is rather interesting. It means that if we place a coin at the tip of the rod, hold the rod in the horizontal position, and then release the rod, the tip of the rod falls faster than the coin does!

Other points on the rod have a linear acceleration that is less than $\frac{3}{2}g$. For example, the middle of the rod has an acceleration of $\frac{3}{4}g$.

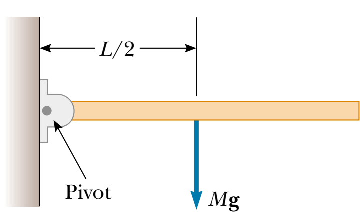


Figure 10.18 The uniform rod is pivoted at the left end.

CONCEPTUAL EXAMPLE 10.11 Falling Smokestacks and Tumbling Blocks

When a tall smokestack falls over, it often breaks somewhere along its length before it hits the ground, as shown in Figure 10.19. The same thing happens with a tall tower of children's toy blocks. Why does this happen?

Solution As the smokestack rotates around its base, each higher portion of the smokestack falls with an increasing tangential acceleration. (The tangential acceleration of a given point on the smokestack is proportional to the distance of that portion from the base.) As the acceleration increases, higher portions of the smokestack experience an acceleration greater than that which could result from gravity alone; this is similar to the situation described in Example 10.10. This can happen only if these portions are being pulled downward by a force in addition to the gravitational force. The force that causes this to occur is the shear force from lower portions of the smokestack. Eventually the shear force that provides this acceleration is greater than the smokestack can withstand, and the smokestack breaks.

Figure 10.19 A falling smokestack.

EXAMPLE 10.12 Angular Acceleration of a Wheel

A wheel of radius R, mass M, and moment of inertia I is mounted on a frictionless, horizontal axle, as shown in Figure 10.20. A light cord wrapped around the wheel supports an object of mass m. Calculate the angular acceleration of the wheel, the linear acceleration of the object, and the tension in the cord.

Solution The torque acting on the wheel about its axis of rotation is $\tau = TR$, where T is the force exerted by the cord on the rim of the wheel. (The gravitational force exerted by the Earth on the wheel and the normal force exerted by the axle on the wheel both pass through the axis of rotation and thus produce no torque.) Because $\sum \tau = I\alpha$, we obtain

$$\sum \tau = I\alpha = TR$$

$$(1) \qquad \alpha = \frac{TR}{I}$$

Now let us apply Newton's second law to the motion of the object, taking the downward direction to be positive:

$$\sum F_y = mg - T = ma$$

$$(2) \qquad a = \frac{mg - T}{m}$$

Equations (1) and (2) have three unknowns, α, a, and T. Because the object and wheel are connected by a string that does not slip, the linear acceleration of the suspended object is equal to the linear acceleration of a point on the rim of the

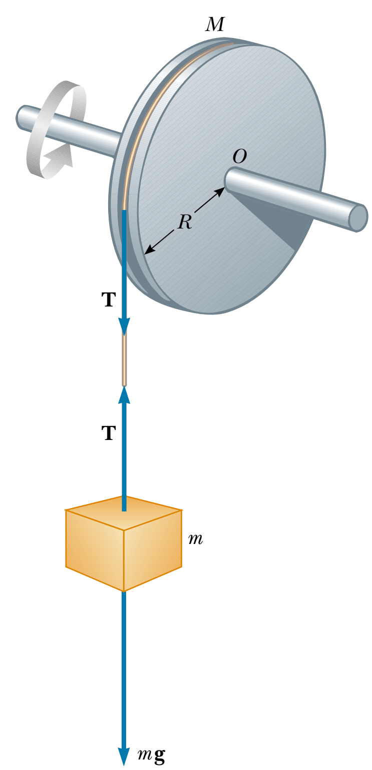


Figure 10.20 The tension in the cord produces a torque about the axle passing through O.

wheel. Therefore, the angular acceleration of the wheel and this linear acceleration are related by $a = R\alpha$. Using this fact together with Equations (1) and (2), we obtain

$$(3) \qquad a = R\alpha = \frac{TR^2}{I} = \frac{mg - T}{m}$$

$$(4) \qquad \boxed{T = \frac{mg}{1 + \dfrac{mR^2}{I}}}$$

Substituting Equation (4) into Equation (2), and solving for a and α, we find that

$$a = \boxed{\frac{g}{1 + I/mR^2}}$$

$$\alpha = \frac{a}{R} = \boxed{\frac{g}{R + I/mR}}$$

Exercise The wheel in Figure 10.20 is a solid disk of $M = 2.00$ kg, $R = 30.0$ cm, and $I = 0.090\,0\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. The suspended object has a mass of $m = 0.500$ kg. Find the tension in the cord and the angular acceleration of the wheel.

Answer 3.27 N; 10.9 rad/s^2.

EXAMPLE 10.13 Atwood's Machine Revisited

Two blocks having masses m_1 and m_2 are connected to each other by a light cord that passes over two identical, frictionless pulleys, each having a moment of inertia I and radius R, as shown in Figure 10.21a. Find the acceleration of each block and the tensions T_1, T_2, and T_3 in the cord. (Assume no slipping between cord and pulleys.)

Solution We shall define the downward direction as positive for m_1 and upward as the positive direction for m_2. This allows us to represent the acceleration of both masses by a single variable a and also enables us to relate a positive a to a positive (counterclockwise) angular acceleration α. Let us write Newton's second law of motion for each block, using the free-body diagrams for the two blocks as shown in Figure 10.21b:

$$(1) \qquad m_1g - T_1 = m_1a$$

$$(2) \qquad T_3 - m_2g = m_2a$$

Next, we must include the effect of the pulleys on the motion. Free-body diagrams for the pulleys are shown in Figure 10.21c. The net torque about the axle for the pulley on the left is $(T_1 - T_2)R$, while the net torque for the pulley on the right is $(T_2 - T_3)R$. Using the relation $\Sigma\tau = I\alpha$ for each pulley and noting that each pulley has the same angular acceleration α, we obtain

$$(3) \qquad (T_1 - T_2)R = I\alpha$$

$$(4) \qquad (T_2 - T_3)R = I\alpha$$

We now have four equations with four unknowns: a, T_1, T_2, and T_3. These can be solved simultaneously. Adding Equations (3) and (4) gives

$$(5) \qquad (T_1 - T_3)R = 2I\alpha$$

Adding Equations (1) and (2) gives

$$T_3 - T_1 + m_1g - m_2g = (m_1 + m_2)a$$

$$(6) \qquad T_1 - T_3 = (m_1 - m_2)g - (m_1 + m_2)a$$

Substituting Equation (6) into Equation (5), we have

$$[(m_1 - m_2)g - (m_1 + m_2)a]R = 2I\alpha$$

Because $\alpha = a/R$, this expression can be simplified to

$$(m_1 - m_2)g - (m_1 + m_2)a = 2I\frac{a}{R^2}$$

$$(7) \qquad \boxed{a = \frac{(m_1 - m_2)g}{m_1 + m_2 + 2\dfrac{I}{R^2}}}$$

This value of a can then be substituted into Equations (1)

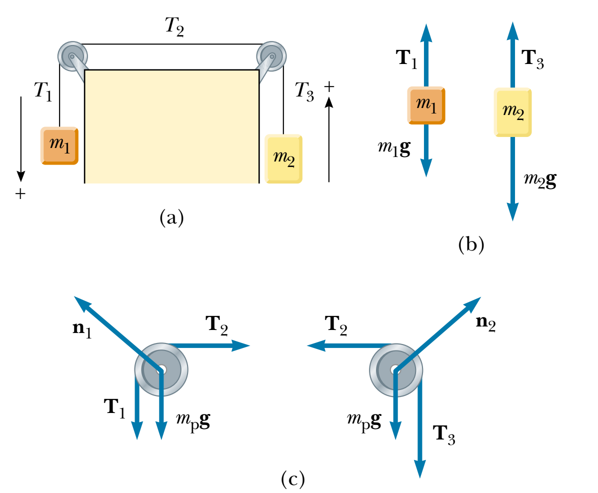


Figure 10.21 (a) Another look at Atwood's machine. (b) Free-body diagrams for the blocks. (c) Free-body diagrams for the pulleys, where $m_p\mathbf{g}$ represents the force of gravity acting on each pulley.

and (2) to give T_1 and T_3. Finally, T_2 can be found from Equation (3) or Equation (4). Note that if $m_1 > m_2$, the acceleration is positive; this means that the left block accelerates downward, the right block accelerates upward, and both pulleys accelerate counterclockwise. If $m_1 < m_2$, then all the values are negative and the motions are reversed. If $m_1 = m_2$, then no acceleration occurs at all. You should compare these results with those found in Example 5.9 on page 129.

10.8 WORK, POWER, AND ENERGY IN ROTATIONAL MOTION

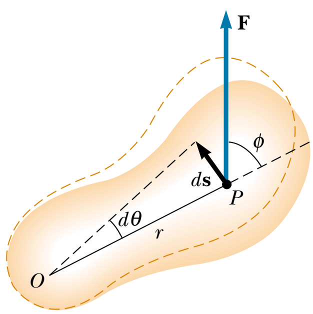


Figure 10.22 A rigid object rotates about an axis through O under the action of an external force **F** applied at P.

In this section, we consider the relationship between the torque acting on a rigid object and its resulting rotational motion in order to generate expressions for the power and a rotational analog to the work–kinetic energy theorem. Consider the rigid object pivoted at O in Figure 10.22. Suppose a single external force **F** is applied at P, where **F** lies in the plane of the page. The work done by **F** as the object rotates through an infinitesimal distance $ds = r\,d\theta$ in a time dt is

$$dW = \mathbf{F}\cdot d\mathbf{s} = (F\sin\phi)r\,d\theta$$

where $F\sin\phi$ is the tangential component of **F**, or, in other words, the component of the force along the displacement. Note that *the radial component of* **F** *does no work because it is perpendicular to the displacement.*

Because the magnitude of the torque due to **F** about O is defined as $rF\sin\phi$ by Equation 10.19, we can write the work done for the infinitesimal rotation as

$$dW = \tau\,d\theta \tag{10.22}$$

The rate at which work is being done by **F** as the object rotates about the fixed axis is

$$\frac{dW}{dt} = \tau\frac{d\theta}{dt}$$

Because dW/dt is the instantaneous power $\mathcal{P}$ (see Section 7.5) delivered by the force, and because $d\theta/dt = \omega$, this expression reduces to

Power delivered to a rigid object

$$\mathcal{P} = \frac{dW}{dt} = \tau\omega \tag{10.23}$$

This expression is analogous to $\mathcal{P} = Fv$ in the case of linear motion, and the expression $dW = \tau\,d\theta$ is analogous to $dW = F_x\,dx$.

Work and Energy in Rotational Motion

In studying linear motion, we found the energy concept—and, in particular, the work–kinetic energy theorem—extremely useful in describing the motion of a system. The energy concept can be equally useful in describing rotational motion. From what we learned of linear motion, we expect that when a symmetric object rotates about a fixed axis, the work done by external forces equals the change in the rotational energy.

To show that this is in fact the case, let us begin with $\sum\tau = I\alpha$. Using the chain rule from the calculus, we can express the resultant torque as

$$\sum\tau = I\alpha = I\frac{d\omega}{dt} = I\frac{d\omega}{d\theta}\frac{d\theta}{dt} = I\frac{d\omega}{d\theta}\,\omega$$

TABLE 10.3 Useful Equations in Rotational and Linear Motion

Rotational Motion About a Fixed Axis	Linear Motion
Angular speed $\omega = d\theta/dt$	Linear speed $v = dx/dt$
Angular acceleration $\alpha = d\omega/dt$	Linear acceleration $a = dv/dt$
Resultant torque $\Sigma\tau = I\alpha$	Resultant force $\Sigma F = ma$
If $\alpha =$ constant $\begin{cases} \omega_f = \omega_i + \alpha t \\ \theta_f - \theta_i = \omega_i t + \frac{1}{2}\alpha t^2 \\ \omega_f^{\,2} = \omega_i^{\,2} + 2\alpha(\theta_f - \theta_i) \end{cases}$	If $a =$ constant $\begin{cases} v_f = v_i + at \\ x_f - x_i = v_i t + \frac{1}{2}at^2 \\ v_f^{\,2} = v_i^{\,2} + 2a(x_f - x_i) \end{cases}$
Work $W = \int_{\theta_i}^{\theta_f} \tau\, d\theta$	Work $W = \int_{x_i}^{x_f} F_x\, dx$
Rotational kinetic energy $K_R = \frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$	Kinetic energy $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$
Power $\mathcal{P} = \tau\omega$	Power $\mathcal{P} = Fv$
Angular momentum $L = I\omega$	Linear momentum $p = mv$
Resultant torque $\Sigma\tau = dL/dt$	Resultant force $\Sigma F = dp/dt$

Rearranging this expression and noting that $\Sigma\tau\, d\theta = dW$, we obtain

$$\sum \tau\, d\theta = dW = I\omega\, d\omega$$

Integrating this expression, we get for the total work done by the net external force acting on a rotating system

$$\sum W = \int_{\theta_i}^{\theta_f} \sum \tau\, d\theta = \int_{\omega_i}^{\omega_f} I\omega\, d\omega = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega_f^{\,2} - \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega_i^{\,2} \qquad \textbf{(10.24)}$$

Work–kinetic energy theorem for rotational motion

where the angular speed changes from ω_i to ω_f as the angular position changes from θ_i to θ_f. That is,

> the net work done by external forces in rotating a symmetric rigid object about a fixed axis equals the change in the object's rotational energy.

Table 10.3 lists the various equations we have discussed pertaining to rotational motion, together with the analogous expressions for linear motion. The last two equations in Table 10.3, involving angular momentum L, are discussed in Chapter 11 and are included here only for the sake of completeness.

Quick Quiz 10.4

For a hoop lying in the xy plane, which of the following requires that more work be done by an external agent to accelerate the hoop from rest to an angular speed ω: (a) rotation about the z axis through the center of the hoop, or (b) rotation about an axis parallel to z passing through a point P on the hoop rim?

EXAMPLE 10.14 Rotating Rod Revisited

A uniform rod of length L and mass M is free to rotate on a frictionless pin passing through one end (Fig 10.23). The rod is released from rest in the horizontal position. (a) What is its angular speed when it reaches its lowest position?

Solution The question can be answered by considering the mechanical energy of the system. When the rod is horizontal, it has no rotational energy. The potential energy relative to the lowest position of the center of mass of the rod (O') is $MgL/2$. When the rod reaches its lowest position, the energy is entirely rotational energy, $\frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$, where I is the moment of inertia about the pivot. Because $I = \frac{1}{3}ML^2$ (see Table 10.2) and because mechanical energy is constant, we have $E_i = E_f$ or

$$\tfrac{1}{2}MgL = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(\tfrac{1}{3}ML^2)\omega^2$$

$$\omega = \boxed{\sqrt{\frac{3g}{L}}}$$

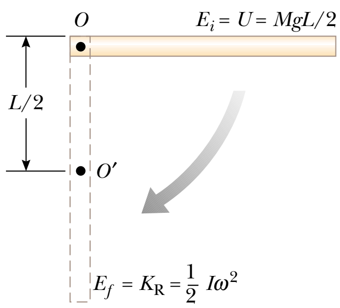


Figure 10.23 A uniform rigid rod pivoted at O rotates in a vertical plane under the action of gravity.

(b) Determine the linear speed of the center of mass and the linear speed of the lowest point on the rod when it is in the vertical position.

Solution These two values can be determined from the relationship between linear and angular speeds. We know ω from part (a), and so the linear speed of the center of mass is

$$v_{CM} = r\omega = \frac{L}{2}\omega = \boxed{\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{3gL}}$$

Because r for the lowest point on the rod is twice what it is for the center of mass, the lowest point has a linear speed equal to

$$2v_{CM} = \boxed{\sqrt{3gL}}$$

EXAMPLE 10.15 Connected Cylinders

Consider two cylinders having masses m_1 and m_2, where $m_1 \neq m_2$, connected by a string passing over a pulley, as shown in Figure 10.24. The pulley has a radius R and moment of inertia I about its axis of rotation. The string does not slip on the pulley, and the system is released from rest. Find the linear speeds of the cylinders after cylinder 2 descends through a distance h, and the angular speed of the pulley at this time.

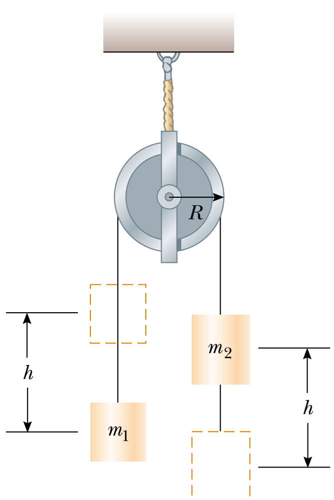


Figure 10.24

Solution We are now able to account for the effect of a massive pulley. Because the string does not slip, the pulley rotates. We neglect friction in the axle about which the pulley rotates for the following reason: Because the axle's radius is small relative to that of the pulley, the frictional torque is much smaller than the torque applied by the two cylinders, provided that their masses are quite different. Mechanical energy is constant; hence, the increase in the system's kinetic energy (the system being the two cylinders, the pulley, and the Earth) equals the decrease in its potential energy. Because $K_i = 0$ (the system is initially at rest), we have

$$\Delta K = K_f - K_i = (\tfrac{1}{2}m_1 v_f{}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}m_2 v_f{}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega_f{}^2) - 0$$

where v_f is the same for both blocks. Because $v_f = R\omega_f$, this expression becomes

$$\Delta K = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(m_1 + m_2 + \frac{I}{R^2}\right)v_f{}^2$$

From Figure 10.24, we see that the system loses potential energy as cylinder 2 descends and gains potential energy as cylinder 1 rises. That is, $\Delta U_2 = -m_2gh$ and $\Delta U_1 = m_1gh$. Applying the principle of conservation of energy in the form $\Delta K + \Delta U_1 + \Delta U_2 = 0$ gives

$$\tfrac{1}{2}\left(m_1 + m_2 + \frac{I}{R^2}\right)v_f^{\,2} + m_1gh - m_2gh = 0$$

$$v_f = \left[\frac{2(m_2 - m_1)gh}{\left(m_1 + m_2 + \dfrac{I}{R^2}\right)}\right]^{1/2}$$

Because $v_f = R\omega_f$, the angular speed of the pulley at this instant is

$$\omega_f = \frac{v_f}{R} = \frac{1}{R}\left[\frac{2(m_2 - m_1)gh}{\left(m_1 + m_2 + \dfrac{I}{R^2}\right)}\right]^{1/2}$$

Exercise Repeat the calculation of v_f, using $\Sigma\tau = I\alpha$ applied to the pulley and Newton's second law applied to the two cylinders. Use the procedures presented in Examples 10.12 and 10.13.

SUMMARY

If a particle rotates in a circle of radius r through an angle θ (measured in radians), the arc length it moves through is $s = r\theta$.

The **angular displacement** of a particle rotating in a circle or of a rigid object rotating about a fixed axis is

$$\Delta\theta = \theta_f - \theta_i \qquad \textbf{(10.2)}$$

The **instantaneous angular speed** of a particle rotating in a circle or of a rigid object rotating about a fixed axis is

$$\omega = \frac{d\theta}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(10.4)}$$

The **instantaneous angular acceleration** of a rotating object is

$$\alpha = \frac{d\omega}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(10.6)}$$

When a rigid object rotates about a fixed axis, every part of the object has the same angular speed and the same angular acceleration.

If a particle or object rotates about a fixed axis under constant angular acceleration, one can apply equations of kinematics that are analogous to those for linear motion under constant linear acceleration:

$$\omega_f = \omega_i + \alpha t \qquad \textbf{(10.7)}$$

$$\theta_f = \theta_i + \omega_i t + \tfrac{1}{2}\alpha t^2 \qquad \textbf{(10.8)}$$

$$\omega_f^{\,2} = \omega_i^{\,2} + 2\alpha(\theta_f - \theta_i) \qquad \textbf{(10.9)}$$

A useful technique in solving problems dealing with rotation is to visualize a linear version of the same problem.

When a rigid object rotates about a fixed axis, the angular position, angular speed, and angular acceleration are related to the linear position, linear speed, and linear acceleration through the relationships

$$s = r\theta \qquad \textbf{(10.1a)}$$

$$v = r\omega \qquad \textbf{(10.10)}$$

$$a_t = r\alpha \qquad \textbf{(10.11)}$$

You must be able to easily alternate between the linear and rotational variables that describe a given situation.

The **moment of inertia of a system of particles** is

$$I \equiv \sum_i m_i r_i^2 \tag{10.15}$$

If a rigid object rotates about a fixed axis with angular speed ω, its **rotational energy** can be written

$$K_R = \tfrac{1}{2} I\omega^2 \tag{10.16}$$

where I is the moment of inertia about the axis of rotation.

The **moment of inertia of a rigid object** is

$$I = \int r^2\, dm \tag{10.17}$$

where r is the distance from the mass element dm to the axis of rotation.

The magnitude of the **torque** associated with a force **F** acting on an object is

$$\tau = Fd \tag{10.19}$$

where d is the moment arm of the force, which is the perpendicular distance from some origin to the line of action of the force. Torque is a measure of the tendency of the force to change the rotation of the object about some axis.

If a rigid object free to rotate about a fixed axis has a **net external torque** acting on it, the object undergoes an angular acceleration α, where

$$\sum \tau = I\alpha \tag{10.21}$$

The rate at which work is done by an external force in rotating a rigid object about a fixed axis, or the **power** delivered, is

$$\mathcal{P} = \tau\omega \tag{10.23}$$

The net work done by external forces in rotating a rigid object about a fixed axis equals the change in the rotational kinetic energy of the object:

$$\sum W = \tfrac{1}{2} I\omega_f^2 - \tfrac{1}{2} I\omega_i^2 \tag{10.24}$$

QUESTIONS

1. What is the angular speed of the second hand of a clock? What is the direction of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ as you view a clock hanging vertically? What is the magnitude of the angular acceleration vector $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ of the second hand?
2. A wheel rotates counterclockwise in the xy plane. What is the direction of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$? What is the direction of $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ if the angular velocity is decreasing in time?
3. Are the kinematic expressions for θ, ω, and α valid when the angular displacement is measured in degrees instead of in radians?
4. A turntable rotates at a constant rate of 45 rev/min. What is its angular speed in radians per second? What is the magnitude of its angular acceleration?
5. Suppose $a = b$ and $M > m$ for the system of particles described in Figure 10.8. About what axis (x, y, or z) does the moment of inertia have the smallest value? the largest value?
6. Suppose the rod in Figure 10.10 has a nonuniform mass distribution. In general, would the moment of inertia about the y axis still equal $ML^2/12$? If not, could the moment of inertia be calculated without knowledge of the manner in which the mass is distributed?
7. Suppose that only two external forces act on a rigid body, and the two forces are equal in magnitude but opposite in direction. Under what condition does the body rotate?
8. Explain how you might use the apparatus described in Example 10.12 to determine the moment of inertia of the wheel. (If the wheel does not have a uniform mass density, the moment of inertia is not necessarily equal to $\frac{1}{2}MR^2$.)

9. Using the results from Example 10.12, how would you calculate the angular speed of the wheel and the linear speed of the suspended mass at $t = 2$ s, if the system is released from rest at $t = 0$? Is the expression $v = R\omega$ valid in this situation?
10. If a small sphere of mass M were placed at the end of the rod in Figure 10.23, would the result for ω be greater than, less than, or equal to the value obtained in Example 10.14?
11. Explain why changing the axis of rotation of an object changes its moment of inertia.
12. Is it possible to change the translational kinetic energy of an object without changing its rotational energy?
13. Two cylinders having the same dimensions are set into rotation about their long axes with the same angular speed. One is hollow, and the other is filled with water. Which cylinder will be easier to stop rotating? Explain your answer.
14. Must an object be rotating to have a nonzero moment of inertia?
15. If you see an object rotating, is there necessarily a net torque acting on it?
16. Can a (momentarily) stationary object have a nonzero angular acceleration?
17. The polar diameter of the Earth is slightly less than the equatorial diameter. How would the moment of inertia of the Earth change if some mass from near the equator were removed and transferred to the polar regions to make the Earth a perfect sphere?

PROBLEMS

1, 2, 3 = straightforward, intermediate, challenging   □ = full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide*
WEB = solution posted at **http://www.saunderscollege.com/physics/**   = Computer useful in solving problem   = Interactive Physics
□ = paired numerical/symbolic problems

Section 10.2 Rotational Kinematics: Rotational Motion with Constant Angular Acceleration

1. A wheel starts from rest and rotates with constant angular acceleration and reaches an angular speed of 12.0 rad/s in 3.00 s. Find (a) the magnitude of the angular acceleration of the wheel and (b) the angle (in radians) through which it rotates in this time.
2. What is the angular speed in radians per second of (a) the Earth in its orbit about the Sun and (b) the Moon in its orbit about the Earth?
3. An airliner arrives at the terminal, and its engines are shut off. The rotor of one of the engines has an initial clockwise angular speed of 2 000 rad/s. The engine's rotation slows with an angular acceleration of magnitude 80.0 rad/s^2. (a) Determine the angular speed after 10.0 s. (b) How long does it take for the rotor to come to rest?
4. (a) The positions of the hour and minute hand on a clock face coincide at 12 o'clock. Determine all other times (up to the second) at which the positions of the hands coincide. (b) If the clock also has a second hand, determine all times at which the positions of all three hands coincide, given that they all coincide at 12 o'clock.
5. WEB An electric motor rotating a grinding wheel at 100 rev/min is switched off. Assuming constant negative acceleration of magnitude 2.00 rad/s^2, (a) how long does it take the wheel to stop? (b) Through how many radians does it turn during the time found in part (a)?
6. A centrifuge in a medical laboratory rotates at a rotational speed of 3 600 rev/min. When switched off, it rotates 50.0 times before coming to rest. Find the constant angular acceleration of the centrifuge.
7. The angular position of a swinging door is described by $\theta = 5.00 + 10.0t + 2.00t^2$ rad. Determine the angular position, angular speed, and angular acceleration of the door (a) at $t = 0$ and (b) at $t = 3.00$ s.
8. The tub of a washer goes into its spin cycle, starting from rest and gaining angular speed steadily for 8.00 s, when it is turning at 5.00 rev/s. At this point the person doing the laundry opens the lid, and a safety switch turns off the washer. The tub smoothly slows to rest in 12.0 s. Through how many revolutions does the tub turn while it is in motion?
9. A rotating wheel requires 3.00 s to complete 37.0 revolutions. Its angular speed at the end of the 3.00-s interval is 98.0 rad/s. What is the constant angular acceleration of the wheel?
10. (a) Find the angular speed of the Earth's rotation on its axis. As the Earth turns toward the east, we see the sky turning toward the west at this same rate.
(b) *The rainy Pleiads wester*
And seek beyond the sea
The head that I shall dream of
That shall not dream of me.

A. E. Housman (*© Robert E. Symons)*

Cambridge, England, is at longitude 0°, and Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, is at longitude 107° west. How much time elapses after the Pleiades set in Cambridge until these stars fall below the western horizon in Saskatoon?

Section 10.3 Angular and Linear Quantities

11. Make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the number of revolutions through which a typical automobile tire

turns in 1 yr. State the quantities you measure or estimate and their values.

12. The diameters of the main rotor and tail rotor of a single-engine helicopter are 7.60 m and 1.02 m, respectively. The respective rotational speeds are 450 rev/min and 4 138 rev/min. Calculate the speeds of the tips of both rotors. Compare these speeds with the speed of sound, 343 m/s.

Figure P10.12 *(Ross Harrrison Koty/Tony Stone Images)*

13. A racing car travels on a circular track with a radius of 250 m. If the car moves with a constant linear speed of 45.0 m/s, find (a) its angular speed and (b) the magnitude and direction of its acceleration.

14. A car is traveling at 36.0 km/h on a straight road. The radius of its tires is 25.0 cm. Find the angular speed of one of the tires, with its axle taken as the axis of rotation.

15. A wheel 2.00 m in diameter lies in a vertical plane and rotates with a constant angular acceleration of 4.00 rad/s^2. The wheel starts at rest at $t = 0$, and the radius vector of point P on the rim makes an angle of 57.3° with the horizontal at this time. At $t = 2.00$ s, find (a) the angular speed of the wheel, (b) the linear speed and acceleration of the point P, and (c) the angular position of the point P.

16. A discus thrower accelerates a discus from rest to a speed of 25.0 m/s by whirling it through 1.25 rev. Assume the discus moves on the arc of a circle 1.00 m in radius. (a) Calculate the final angular speed of the discus. (b) Determine the magnitude of the angular acceleration of the discus, assuming it to be constant. (c) Calculate the acceleration time.

Figure P10.16 *(Bruce Ayers/Tony Stone Images)*

17. A car accelerates uniformly from rest and reaches a speed of 22.0 m/s in 9.00 s. If the diameter of a tire is 58.0 cm, find (a) the number of revolutions the tire makes during this motion, assuming that no slipping occurs. (b) What is the final rotational speed of a tire in revolutions per second?

18. A 6.00-kg block is released from A on the frictionless track shown in Figure P10.18. Determine the radial and tangential components of acceleration for the block at P.

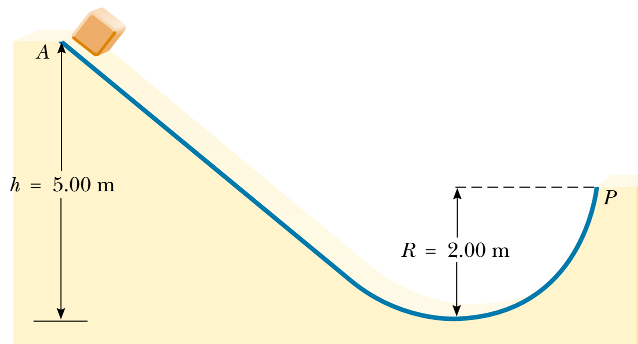


Figure P10.18

WEB 19. A disc 8.00 cm in radius rotates at a constant rate of 1 200 rev/min about its central axis. Determine (a) its angular speed, (b) the linear speed at a point 3.00 cm from its center, (c) the radial acceleration of a point on the rim, and (d) the total distance a point on the rim moves in 2.00 s.

20. A car traveling on a flat (unbanked) circular track accelerates uniformly from rest with a tangential acceleration of 1.70 m/s^2. The car makes it one quarter of the way around the circle before it skids off the track. Determine the coefficient of static friction between the car and track from these data.

21. A small object with mass 4.00 kg moves counterclockwise with constant speed 4.50 m/s in a circle of radius 3.00 m centered at the origin. (a) It started at the point with cartesian coordinates (3 m, 0). When its angular displacement is 9.00 rad, what is its position vector, in cartesian unit-vector notation? (b) In what quadrant is the particle located, and what angle does its position vector make with the positive x axis? (c) What is its velocity vector, in unit–vector notation? (d) In what direction is it moving? Make a sketch of the position and velocity vectors. (e) What is its acceleration, expressed in unit–vector notation? (f) What total force acts on the object? (Express your answer in unit vector notation.)

22. A standard cassette tape is placed in a standard cassette player. Each side plays for 30 min. The two tape wheels of the cassette fit onto two spindles in the player. Suppose that a motor drives one spindle at a constant angular speed of ~ 1 rad/s and that the other spindle is free to rotate at any angular speed. Estimate the order of magnitude of the thickness of the tape.

Section 10.4 Rotational Energy

23. Three small particles are connected by rigid rods of negligible mass lying along the y axis (Fig. P10.23). If the system rotates about the x axis with an angular speed of 2.00 rad/s, find (a) the moment of inertia about the x axis and the total rotational kinetic energy evaluated from $\frac{1}{2}I\omega^2$ and (b) the linear speed of each particle and the total kinetic energy evaluated from $\Sigma\frac{1}{2}m_iv_i^{\,2}$.

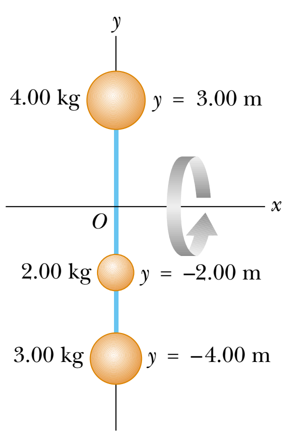


Figure P10.23

24. The center of mass of a pitched baseball (3.80-cm radius) moves at 38.0 m/s. The ball spins about an axis through its center of mass with an angular speed of 125 rad/s. Calculate the ratio of the rotational energy to the translational kinetic energy. Treat the ball as a uniform sphere.

WEB 25. The four particles in Figure P10.25 are connected by rigid rods of negligible mass. The origin is at the center of the rectangle. If the system rotates in the xy plane about the z axis with an angular speed of 6.00 rad/s, calculate (a) the moment of inertia of the system about the z axis and (b) the rotational energy of the system.

26. The hour hand and the minute hand of Big Ben, the famous Parliament tower clock in London, are 2.70 m long and 4.50 m long and have masses of 60.0 kg and 100 kg, respectively. Calculate the total rotational kinetic energy of the two hands about the axis of rotation. (You may model the hands as long thin rods.)

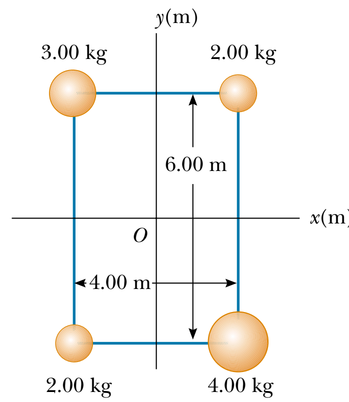


Figure P10.25

Figure P10.26 Problems 26 and 74. *(John Lawrence/Tony Stone Images)*

27. Two masses M and m are connected by a rigid rod of length L and of negligible mass, as shown in Figure P10.27. For an axis perpendicular to the rod, show that the system has the minimum moment of inertia when the axis passes through the center of mass. Show that this moment of inertia is $I = \mu L^2$, where $\mu = mM/(m + M)$.

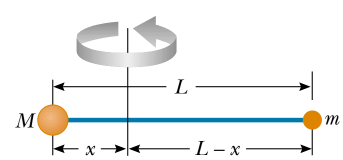


Figure P10.27

Section 10.5 Calculation of Moments of Inertia

28. Three identical thin rods, each of length L and mass m, are welded perpendicular to each other, as shown in Figure P10.28. The entire setup is rotated about an axis

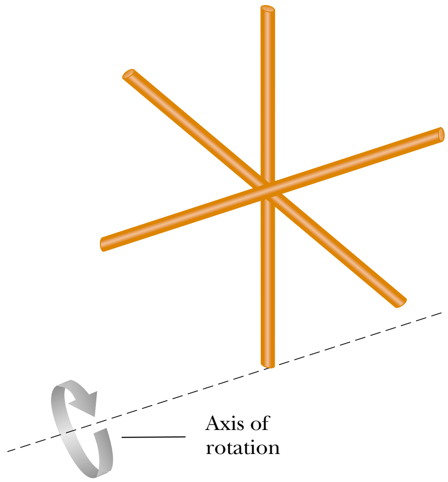


Figure P10.28

that passes through the end of one rod and is parallel to another. Determine the moment of inertia of this arrangement.

29. Figure P10.29 shows a side view of a car tire and its radial dimensions. The rubber tire has two sidewalls of uniform thickness 0.635 cm and a tread wall of uniform thickness 2.50 cm and width 20.0 cm. Suppose its density is uniform, with the value $1.10 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$. Find its moment of inertia about an axis through its center perpendicular to the plane of the sidewalls.

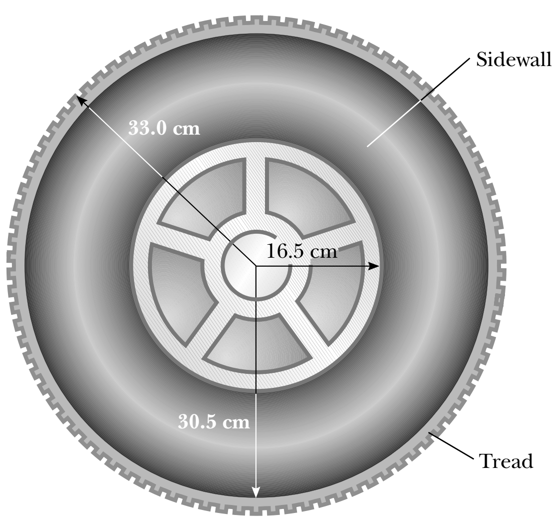


Figure P10.29

30. Use the parallel-axis theorem and Table 10.2 to find the moments of inertia of (a) a solid cylinder about an axis parallel to the center-of-mass axis and passing through the edge of the cylinder and (b) a solid sphere about an axis tangent to its surface.

31. *Attention! About face!* Compute an order-of-magnitude estimate for the moment of inertia of your body as you stand tall and turn around a vertical axis passing through the top of your head and the point halfway between your ankles. In your solution state the quantities you measure or estimate and their values.

Section 10.6 Torque

32. Find the mass m needed to balance the 1 500-kg truck on the incline shown in Figure P10.32. Assume all pulleys are frictionless and massless.

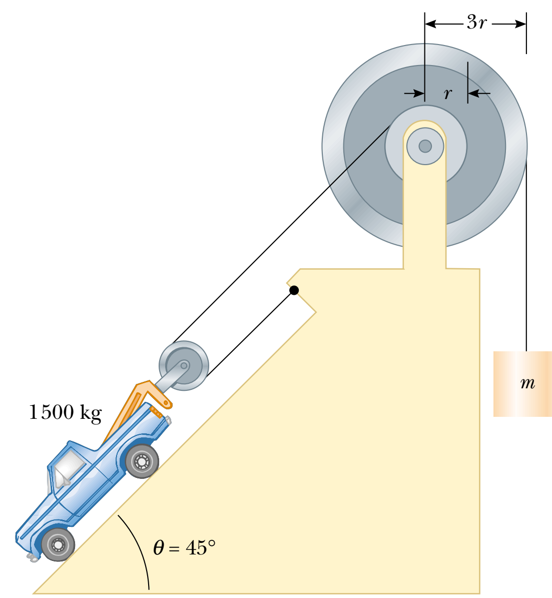


Figure P10.32

WEB **33.** Find the net torque on the wheel in Figure P10.33 about the axle through O if $a = 10.0$ cm and $b = 25.0$ cm.

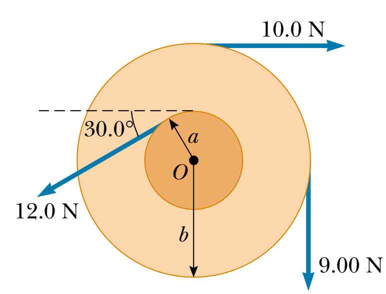


Figure P10.33

34. The fishing pole in Figure P10.34 makes an angle of 20.0° with the horizontal. What is the torque exerted by

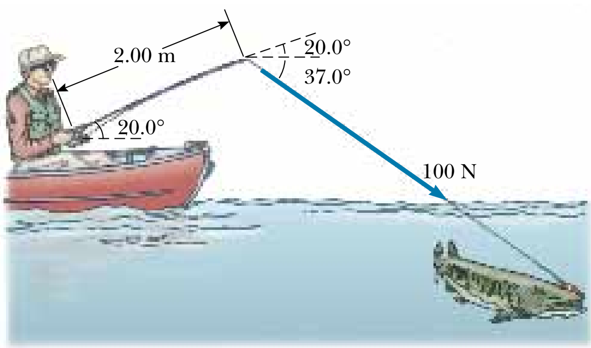


Figure P10.34

the fish about an axis perpendicular to the page and passing through the fisher's hand?

35. The tires of a 1 500-kg car are 0.600 m in diameter, and the coefficients of friction with the road surface are $\mu_s = 0.800$ and $\mu_k = 0.600$. Assuming that the weight is evenly distributed on the four wheels, calculate the maximum torque that can be exerted by the engine on a driving wheel such that the wheel does not spin. If you wish, you may suppose that the car is at rest.

36. Suppose that the car in Problem 35 has a disk brake system. Each wheel is slowed by the frictional force between a single brake pad and the disk-shaped rotor. On this particular car, the brake pad comes into contact with the rotor at an average distance of 22.0 cm from the axis. The coefficients of friction between the brake pad and the disk are $\mu_s = 0.600$ and $\mu_k = 0.500$. Calculate the normal force that must be applied to the rotor such that the car slows as quickly as possible.

Section 10.7 Relationship Between Torque and Angular Acceleration

WEB **37.** A model airplane having a mass of 0.750 kg is tethered by a wire so that it flies in a circle 30.0 m in radius. The airplane engine provides a net thrust of 0.800 N perpendicular to the tethering wire. (a) Find the torque the net thrust produces about the center of the circle. (b) Find the angular acceleration of the airplane when it is in level flight. (c) Find the linear acceleration of the airplane tangent to its flight path.

38. The combination of an applied force and a frictional force produces a constant total torque of 36.0 N·m on a wheel rotating about a fixed axis. The applied force acts for 6.00 s; during this time the angular speed of the wheel increases from 0 to 10.0 rad/s. The applied force is then removed, and the wheel comes to rest in 60.0 s. Find (a) the moment of inertia of the wheel, (b) the magnitude of the frictional torque, and (c) the total number of revolutions of the wheel.

39. A block of mass $m_1 = 2.00$ kg and a block of mass $m_2 = 6.00$ kg are connected by a massless string over a pulley in the shape of a disk having radius $R = 0.250$ m and mass $M = 10.0$ kg. These blocks are allowed to move on a fixed block–wedge of angle $\theta = 30.0°$, as shown in Figure P10.39. The coefficient of kinetic friction for both blocks is 0.360. Draw free-body diagrams of both blocks and of the pulley. Determine (a) the acceleration of the two blocks and (b) the tensions in the string on both sides of the pulley.

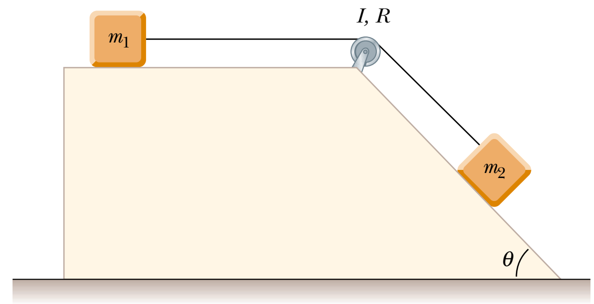


Figure P10.39

40. A potter's wheel—a thick stone disk with a radius of 0.500 m and a mass of 100 kg—is freely rotating at 50.0 rev/min. The potter can stop the wheel in 6.00 s by pressing a wet rag against the rim and exerting a radially inward force of 70.0 N. Find the effective coefficient of kinetic friction between the wheel and the rag.

41. A bicycle wheel has a diameter of 64.0 cm and a mass of 1.80 kg. Assume that the wheel is a hoop with all of its mass concentrated on the outside radius. The bicycle is placed on a stationary stand on rollers, and a resistive force of 120 N is applied tangent to the rim of the tire. (a) What force must be applied by a chain passing over a 9.00-cm-diameter sprocket if the wheel is to attain an acceleration of 4.50 rad/s^2? (b) What force is required if the chain shifts to a 5.60-cm-diameter sprocket?

Section 10.8 Work, Power, and Energy in Rotational Motion

42. A cylindrical rod 24.0 cm long with a mass of 1.20 kg and a radius of 1.50 cm has a ball with a diameter of 8.00 cm and a mass of 2.00 kg attached to one end. The arrangement is originally vertical and stationary, with the ball at the top. The apparatus is free to pivot about the bottom end of the rod. (a) After it falls through 90°, what is its rotational kinetic energy? (b) What is the angular speed of the rod and ball? (c) What is the linear speed of the ball? (d) How does this compare with the speed if the ball had fallen freely through the same distance of 28 cm?

43. A 15.0-kg mass and a 10.0-kg mass are suspended by a pulley that has a radius of 10.0 cm and a mass of 3.00 kg (Fig. P10.43). The cord has a negligible mass and causes the pulley to rotate without slipping. The pulley

rotates without friction. The masses start from rest 3.00 m apart. Treating the pulley as a uniform disk, determine the speeds of the two masses as they pass each other.

44. A mass m_1 and a mass m_2 are suspended by a pulley that has a radius R and a mass M (see Fig. P10.43). The cord has a negligible mass and causes the pulley to rotate without slipping. The pulley rotates without friction. The masses start from rest a distance d apart. Treating the pulley as a uniform disk, determine the speeds of the two masses as they pass each other.

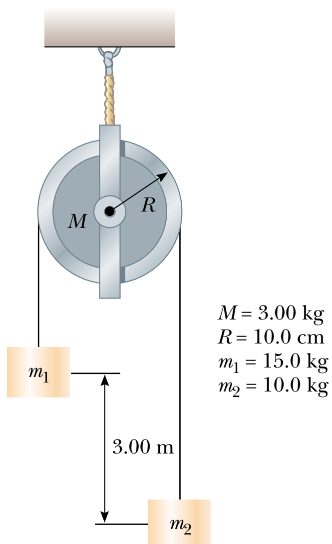


Figure P10.43 Problems 43 and 44.

45. A weight of 50.0 N is attached to the free end of a light string wrapped around a reel with a radius of 0.250 m and a mass of 3.00 kg. The reel is a solid disk, free to rotate in a vertical plane about the horizontal axis passing through its center. The weight is released 6.00 m above the floor. (a) Determine the tension in the string, the acceleration of the mass, and the speed with which the weight hits the floor. (b) Find the speed calculated in part (a), using the principle of conservation of energy.

46. A constant torque of 25.0 N·m is applied to a grindstone whose moment of inertia is 0.130 kg·m^2. Using energy principles, find the angular speed after the grindstone has made 15.0 revolutions. (Neglect friction.)

47. This problem describes one experimental method of determining the moment of inertia of an irregularly shaped object such as the payload for a satellite. Figure P10.47 shows a mass m suspended by a cord wound around a spool of radius r, forming part of a turntable supporting the object. When the mass is released from rest, it descends through a distance h, acquiring a speed

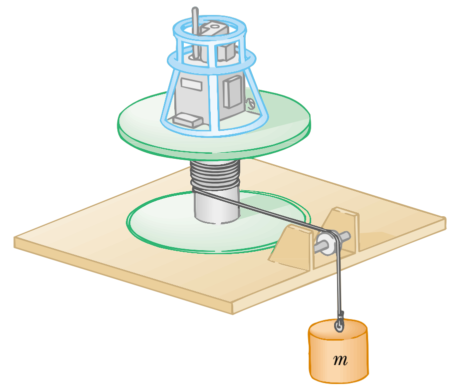


Figure P10.47

v. Show that the moment of inertia I of the equipment (including the turntable) is $mr^2(2gh/v^2 - 1)$.

48. A bus is designed to draw its power from a rotating flywheel that is brought up to its maximum rate of rotation (3 000 rev/min) by an electric motor. The flywheel is a solid cylinder with a mass of 1 000 kg and a diameter of 1.00 m. If the bus requires an average power of 10.0 kW, how long does the flywheel rotate?

49. (a) A uniform, solid disk of radius R and mass M is free to rotate on a frictionless pivot through a point on its rim (Fig. P10.49). If the disk is released from rest in the position shown by the blue circle, what is the speed of its center of mass when the disk reaches the position indicated by the dashed circle? (b) What is the speed of the lowest point on the disk in the dashed position? (c) Repeat part (a), using a uniform hoop.

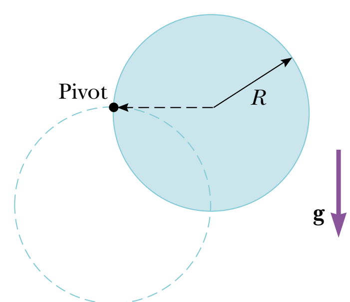


Figure P10.49

50. A horizontal 800-N merry-go-round is a solid disk of radius 1.50 m and is started from rest by a constant horizontal force of 50.0 N applied tangentially to the cylinder. Find the kinetic energy of the solid cylinder after 3.00 s.

ADDITIONAL PROBLEMS

51. Toppling chimneys often break apart in mid-fall (Fig. P10.51) because the mortar between the bricks cannot

withstand much shear stress. As the chimney begins to fall, shear forces must act on the topmost sections to accelerate them tangentially so that they can keep up with the rotation of the lower part of the stack. For simplicity, let us model the chimney as a uniform rod of length ℓ pivoted at the lower end. The rod starts at rest in a vertical position (with the frictionless pivot at the bottom) and falls over under the influence of gravity. What fraction of the length of the rod has a tangential acceleration greater than $g \sin \theta$, where θ is the angle the chimney makes with the vertical?

Figure P10.51 A building demolition site in Baltimore, MD. At the left is a chimney, mostly concealed by the building, that has broken apart on its way down. Compare with Figure 10.19. *(Jerry Wachter/Photo Researchers, Inc.)*

52. Review Problem. A mixing beater consists of three thin rods: Each is 10.0 cm long, diverges from a central hub, and is separated from the others by 120°. All turn in the same plane. A ball is attached to the end of each rod. Each ball has a cross-sectional area of 4.00 cm^2 and is shaped so that it has a drag coefficient of 0.600. Calculate the power input required to spin the beater at 1 000 rev/min (a) in air and (b) in water.

53. A grinding wheel is in the form of a uniform solid disk having a radius of 7.00 cm and a mass of 2.00 kg. It starts from rest and accelerates uniformly under the action of the constant torque of 0.600 N·m that the motor exerts on the wheel. (a) How long does the wheel take to reach its final rotational speed of 1 200 rev/min? (b) Through how many revolutions does it turn while accelerating?

54. The density of the Earth, at any distance r from its center, is approximately

$$\rho = [14.2 - 11.6\, r/R] \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

where R is the radius of the Earth. Show that this density leads to a moment of inertia $I = 0.330MR^2$ about an axis through the center, where M is the mass of the Earth.

55. A 4.00-m length of light nylon cord is wound around a uniform cylindrical spool of radius 0.500 m and mass 1.00 kg. The spool is mounted on a frictionless axle and is initially at rest. The cord is pulled from the spool with a constant acceleration of magnitude 2.50 m/s^2. (a) How much work has been done on the spool when it reaches an angular speed of 8.00 rad/s? (b) Assuming that there is enough cord on the spool, how long does it take the spool to reach this angular speed? (c) Is there enough cord on the spool?

56. A flywheel in the form of a heavy circular disk of diameter 0.600 m and mass 200 kg is mounted on a frictionless bearing. A motor connected to the flywheel accelerates it from rest to 1 000 rev/min. (a) What is the moment of inertia of the flywheel? (b) How much work is done on it during this acceleration? (c) When the angular speed reaches 1 000 rev/min, the motor is disengaged. A friction brake is used to slow the rotational rate to 500 rev/min. How much energy is dissipated as internal energy in the friction brake?

57. A shaft is turning at 65.0 rad/s at time zero. Thereafter, its angular acceleration is given by

$$\alpha = -10 \text{ rad/s}^2 - 5t \text{ rad/s}^3$$

where t is the elapsed time. (a) Find its angular speed at $t = 3.00$ s. (b) How far does it turn in these 3 s?

58. For any given rotational axis, the *radius of gyration* K of a rigid body is defined by the expression $K^2 = I/M$, where M is the total mass of the body and I is its moment of inertia. Thus, the radius of gyration is equal to the distance between an imaginary point mass M and the axis of rotation such that I for the point mass about that axis is the same as that for the rigid body. Find the radius of gyration of (a) a solid disk of radius R, (b) a uniform rod of length L, and (c) a solid sphere of radius R, all three of which are rotating about a central axis.

59. A long, uniform rod of length L and mass M is pivoted about a horizontal, frictionless pin passing through one end. The rod is released from rest in a vertical position, as shown in Figure P10.59. At the instant the rod is horizontal, find (a) its angular speed, (b) the magnitude of its angular acceleration, (c) the x and y components of the acceleration of its center of mass, and (d) the components of the reaction force at the pivot.

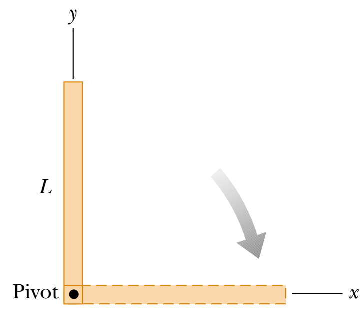


Figure P10.59

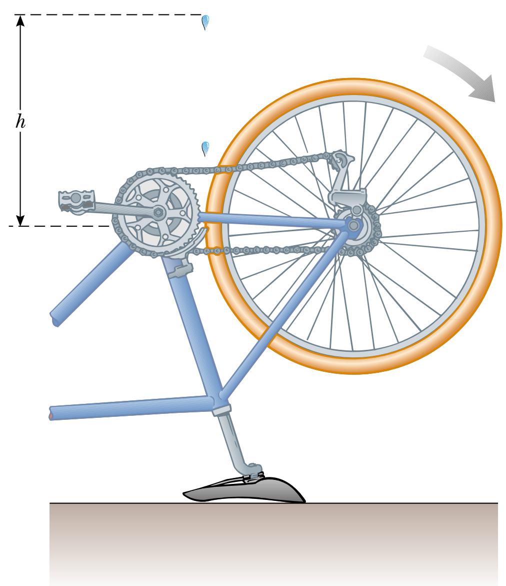


Figure P10.60 Problems 60 and 61.

60. A bicycle is turned upside down while its owner repairs a flat tire. A friend spins the other wheel, of radius 0.381 m, and observes that drops of water fly off tangentially. She measures the height reached by drops moving vertically (Fig. P10.60). A drop that breaks loose from the tire on one turn rises $h = 54.0$ cm above the tangent point. A drop that breaks loose on the next turn rises 51.0 cm above the tangent point. The height to which the drops rise decreases because the angular speed of the wheel decreases. From this information, determine the magnitude of the average angular acceleration of the wheel.

61. A bicycle is turned upside down while its owner repairs a flat tire. A friend spins the other wheel of radius R and observes that drops of water fly off tangentially. She measures the height reached by drops moving vertically (see Fig. P10.60). A drop that breaks loose from the tire on one turn rises a distance h_1 above the tangent point. A drop that breaks loose on the next turn rises a distance $h_2 < h_1$ above the tangent point. The height to which the drops rise decreases because the angular speed of the wheel decreases. From this information, determine the magnitude of the average angular acceleration of the wheel.

62. The top shown in Figure P10.62 has a moment of inertia of 4.00×10^{-4} kg·m^2 and is initially at rest. It is free to rotate about the stationary axis AA'. A string, wrapped around a peg along the axis of the top, is pulled in such a manner that a constant tension of 5.57 N is maintained. If the string does not slip while it is unwound from the peg, what is the angular speed of the top after 80.0 cm of string has been pulled off the peg?

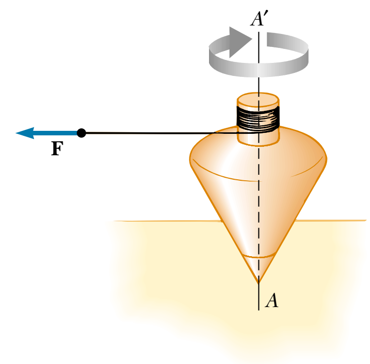


Figure P10.62

63. A cord is wrapped around a pulley of mass m and of radius r. The free end of the cord is connected to a block of mass M. The block starts from rest and then slides down an incline that makes an angle θ with the horizontal. The coefficient of kinetic friction between block and incline is μ. (a) Use energy methods to show that the block's speed as a function of displacement d down the incline is

$$v = [4gdM(m + 2M)^{-1}(\sin\theta - \mu\cos\theta)]^{1/2}$$

(b) Find the magnitude of the acceleration of the block in terms of μ, m, M, g, and θ.

64. (a) What is the rotational energy of the Earth about its spin axis? The radius of the Earth is 6 370 km, and its mass is 5.98×10^{24} kg. Treat the Earth as a sphere of moment of inertia $\frac{2}{5}MR^2$. (b) The rotational energy of the Earth is decreasing steadily because of tidal friction. Estimate the change in one day, given that the rotational period increases by about 10 μs each year.

65. The speed of a moving bullet can be determined by allowing the bullet to pass through two rotating paper disks mounted a distance d apart on the same axle (Fig. P10.65). From the angular displacement $\Delta\theta$ of the two

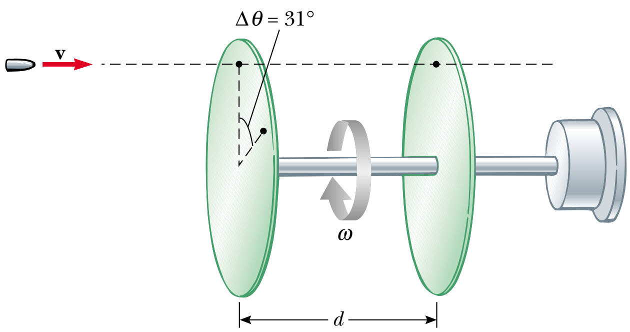


Figure P10.65

bullet holes in the disks and the rotational speed of the disks, we can determine the speed v of the bullet. Find the bullet speed for the following data: $d = 80$ cm, $\omega = 900$ rev/min, and $\Delta\theta = 31.0°$.

66. A wheel is formed from a hoop and n equally spaced spokes extending from the center of the hoop to its rim. The mass of the hoop is M, and the radius of the hoop (and hence the length of each spoke) is R. The mass of each spoke is m. Determine (a) the moment of inertia of the wheel about an axis through its center and perpendicular to the plane of the wheel and (b) the moment of inertia of the wheel about an axis through its rim and perpendicular to the plane of the wheel.

67. A uniform, thin, solid door has a height of 2.20 m, a width of 0.870 m, and a mass of 23.0 kg. Find its moment of inertia for rotation on its hinges. Are any of the data unnecessary?

68. A uniform, hollow, cylindrical spool has inside radius $R/2$, outside radius R, and mass M (Fig. P10.68). It is mounted so that it rotates on a massless horizontal axle. A mass m is connected to the end of a string wound around the spool. The mass m falls from rest through a distance y in time t. Show that the torque due to the frictional forces between spool and axle is

$$\tau_f = R[m(g - 2y/t^2) - M(5y/4t^2)]$$

69. An electric motor can accelerate a Ferris wheel of moment of inertia $I = 20\,000$ kg·m^2 from rest to 10.0 rev/min in 12.0 s. When the motor is turned off, friction causes the wheel to slow down from 10.0 to 8.00 rev/min in 10.0 s. Determine (a) the torque generated by the motor to bring the wheel to 10.0 rev/min and (b) the power that would be needed to maintain this rotational speed.

70. The pulley shown in Figure P10.70 has radius R and moment of inertia I. One end of the mass m is connected to a spring of force constant k, and the other end is fastened to a cord wrapped around the pulley. The pulley axle and the incline are frictionless. If the pulley is wound counterclockwise so that the spring is stretched a distance d from its unstretched position and is then released from rest, find (a) the angular speed of the pulley when the spring is again unstretched and (b) a numerical value for the angular speed at this point if $I = 1.00$ kg·m^2, $R = 0.300$ m, $k = 50.0$ N/m, $m = 0.500$ kg, $d = 0.200$ m, and $\theta = 37.0°$.

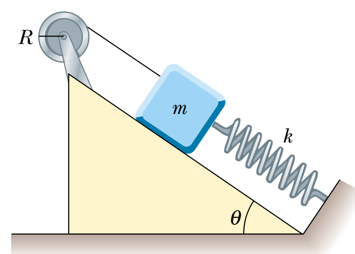


Figure P10.70

71. Two blocks, as shown in Figure P10.71, are connected by a string of negligible mass passing over a pulley of radius 0.250 m and moment of inertia I. The block on the frictionless incline is moving upward with a constant acceleration of 2.00 m/s^2. (a) Determine T_1 and T_2, the tensions in the two parts of the string. (b) Find the moment of inertia of the pulley.

72. A common demonstration, illustrated in Figure P10.72, consists of a ball resting at one end of a uniform board

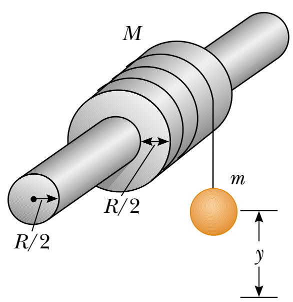


Figure P10.68

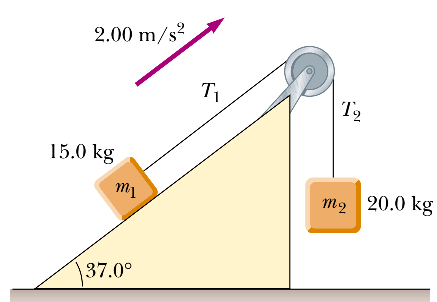


Figure P10.71

of length ℓ, hinged at the other end, and elevated at an angle θ. A light cup is attached to the board at r_c so that it will catch the ball when the support stick is suddenly removed. (a) Show that the ball will lag behind the falling board when θ is less than 35.3° ; and that (b) the ball will fall into the cup when the board is supported at this limiting angle and the cup is placed at

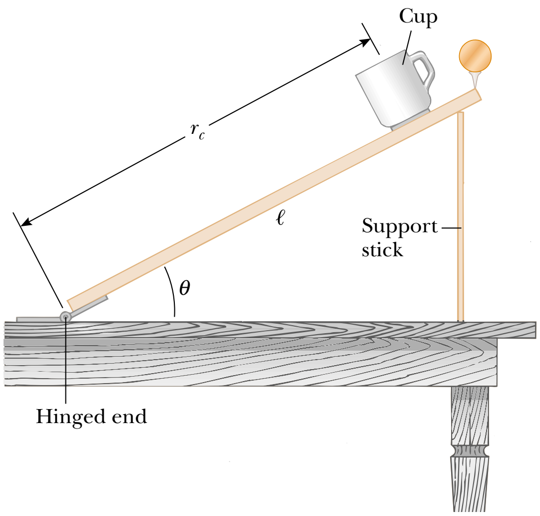


Figure P10.72

$$r_c = \frac{2\,\ell}{3\cos\theta}$$

(c) If a ball is at the end of a 1.00-m stick at this critical angle, show that the cup must be 18.4 cm from the moving end.

73. As a result of friction, the angular speed of a wheel changes with time according to the relationship

$$d\theta/dt = \omega_0 e^{-\sigma t}$$

where ω_0 and σ are constants. The angular speed changes from 3.50 rad/s at $t = 0$ to 2.00 rad/s at $t = 9.30$ s. Use this information to determine σ and ω_0. Then, determine (a) the magnitude of the angular acceleration at $t = 3.00$ s, (b) the number of revolutions the wheel makes in the first 2.50 s, and (c) the number of revolutions it makes before coming to rest.

74. The hour hand and the minute hand of Big Ben, the famous Parliament tower clock in London, are 2.70 m long and 4.50 m long and have masses of 60.0 kg and 100 kg, respectively (see Fig. P10.26). (a) Determine the total torque due to the weight of these hands about the axis of rotation when the time reads (i) 3:00, (ii) 5:15, (iii) 6:00, (iv) 8:20, and (v) 9:45. (You may model the hands as long thin rods.) (b) Determine all times at which the total torque about the axis of rotation is zero. Determine the times to the nearest second, solving a transcendental equation numerically.

Answers to Quick Quizzes

10.1 The fact that ω is negative indicates that we are dealing with an object that is rotating in the clockwise direction. We also know that when $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ are antiparallel, ω must be decreasing—the object is slowing down. Therefore, the object is spinning more and more slowly (with less and less angular speed) in the clockwise, or negative, direction. This has a linear analogy to a sky diver opening her parachute. The velocity is negative—downward. When the sky diver opens the parachute, a large upward force causes an upward acceleration. As a result, the acceleration and velocity vectors are in opposite directions. Consequently, the parachutist slows down.

10.2 (a) Yes, all points on the wheel have the same angular speed. This is why we use angular quantities to describe rotational motion. (b) No, not all points on the wheel have the same linear speed. (c) $v = 0$, $a = 0$. (d) $v = R\omega/2$, $a = a_r = v^2/(R/2) = R\omega^2/2$ (a_t is zero at all points because ω is constant). (e) $v = R\omega$, $a = R\omega^2$.

10.3 (a) $I = MR^2$. (b) $I = MR^2$. The moment of inertia of a system of masses equidistant from an axis of rotation is always the sum of the masses multiplied by the square of the distance from the axis.

10.4 (b) Rotation about the axis through point P requires more work. The moment of inertia of the hoop about the center axis is $I_{CM} = MR^2$, whereas, by the parallel-axis theorem, the moment of inertia about the axis through point P is $I_P = I_{CM} + MR^2 = MR^2 + MR^2 = 2MR^2$.

PUZZLER

One of the most popular early bicycles was the penny–farthing, introduced in 1870. The bicycle was so named because the size relationship of its two wheels was about the same as the size relationship of the penny and the farthing, two English coins. When the rider looks down at the top of the front wheel, he sees it moving forward faster than he and the handlebars are moving. Yet the center of the wheel does not appear to be moving at all relative to the handlebars. How can different parts of the rolling wheel move at different linear speeds? *(© Steve Lovegrove/Tasmanian Photo Library)*

chapter 11

Rolling Motion and Angular Momentum

Chapter Outline

In the preceding chapter we learned how to treat a rigid body rotating about a fixed axis; in the present chapter, we move on to the more general case in which the axis of rotation is not fixed in space. We begin by describing such motion, which is called *rolling motion.* The central topic of this chapter is, however, angular momentum, a quantity that plays a key role in rotational dynamics. In analogy to the conservation of linear momentum, we find that the angular momentum of a rigid object is always conserved if no external torques act on the object. Like the law of conservation of linear momentum, the law of conservation of angular momentum is a fundamental law of physics, equally valid for relativistic and quantum systems.

11.1 ROLLING MOTION OF A RIGID OBJECT

7.7 In this section we treat the motion of a rigid object rotating about a moving axis. In general, such motion is very complex. However, we can simplify matters by restricting our discussion to a homogeneous rigid object having a high degree of symmetry, such as a cylinder, sphere, or hoop. Furthermore, we assume that the object undergoes rolling motion along a flat surface. We shall see that if an object such as a cylinder rolls without slipping on the surface (we call this *pure rolling motion*), a simple relationship exists between its rotational and translational motions.

Suppose a cylinder is rolling on a straight path. As Figure 11.1 shows, the center of mass moves in a straight line, but a point on the rim moves in a more complex path called a *cycloid.* This means that the axis of rotation remains parallel to its initial orientation in space. Consider a uniform cylinder of radius R rolling without slipping on a horizontal surface (Fig. 11.2). As the cylinder rotates through an angle θ, its center of mass moves a linear distance $s = R\theta$ (see Eq. 10.1a). Therefore, the linear speed of the center of mass for pure rolling motion is given by

$$v_{\text{CM}} = \frac{ds}{dt} = R\frac{d\theta}{dt} = R\omega \qquad \textbf{(11.1)}$$

where ω is the angular velocity of the cylinder. Equation 11.1 holds whenever a cylinder or sphere rolls without slipping and is the **condition for pure rolling**

Figure 11.1 One light source at the center of a rolling cylinder and another at one point on the rim illustrate the different paths these two points take. The center moves in a straight line (green line), whereas the point on the rim moves in the path called a *cycloid* (red curve). *(Henry Leap and Jim Lehman)*

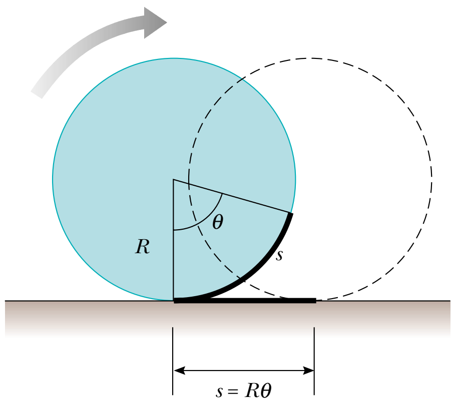


Figure 11.2 In pure rolling motion, as the cylinder rotates through an angle θ, its center of mass moves a linear distance $s = R\theta$.

motion. The magnitude of the linear acceleration of the center of mass for pure rolling motion is

$$a_{\mathrm{CM}} = \frac{dv_{\mathrm{CM}}}{dt} = R\frac{d\omega}{dt} = R\alpha \tag{11.2}$$

where α is the angular acceleration of the cylinder.

The linear velocities of the center of mass and of various points on and within the cylinder are illustrated in Figure 11.3. A short time after the moment shown in the drawing, the rim point labeled P will have rotated from the six o'clock position to, say, the seven o'clock position, the point Q will have rotated from the ten o'clock position to the eleven o'clock position, and so on. Note that the linear velocity of any point is in a direction perpendicular to the line from that point to the contact point P. At any instant, the part of the rim that is at point P is at rest relative to the surface because slipping does not occur.

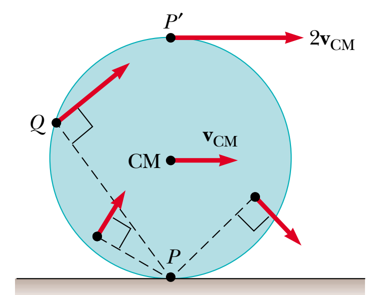


Figure 11.3 All points on a rolling object move in a direction perpendicular to an axis through the instantaneous point of contact P. In other words, all points rotate about P. The center of mass of the object moves with a velocity $\mathbf{v}_{\mathrm{CM}}$, and the point P' moves with a velocity $2\mathbf{v}_{\mathrm{CM}}$.

All points on the cylinder have the same angular speed. Therefore, because the distance from P' to P is twice the distance from P to the center of mass, P' has a speed $2v_{\mathrm{CM}} = 2R\omega$. To see why this is so, let us model the rolling motion of the cylinder in Figure 11.4 as a combination of translational (linear) motion and rotational motion. For the pure translational motion shown in Figure 11.4a, imagine that the cylinder does not rotate, so that each point on it moves to the right with speed v_{CM}. For the pure rotational motion shown in Figure 11.4b, imagine that a rotation axis through the center of mass is stationary, so that each point on the cylinder has the same rotational speed ω. The combination of these two motions represents the rolling motion shown in Figure 11.4c. Note in Figure 11.4c that the top of the cylinder has linear speed $v_{\mathrm{CM}} + R\omega = v_{\mathrm{CM}} + v_{\mathrm{CM}} = 2v_{\mathrm{CM}}$, which is greater than the linear speed of any other point on the cylinder. As noted earlier, the center of mass moves with linear speed v_{CM} while the contact point between the surface and cylinder has a linear speed of zero.

7.2 We can express the total kinetic energy of the rolling cylinder as

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}I_P\omega^2 \tag{11.3}$$

where I_P is the moment of inertia about a rotation axis through P. Applying the parallel-axis theorem, we can substitute $I_P = I_{\mathrm{CM}} + MR^2$ into Equation 11.3 to obtain

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}I_{\mathrm{CM}}\omega^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}MR^2\omega^2$$

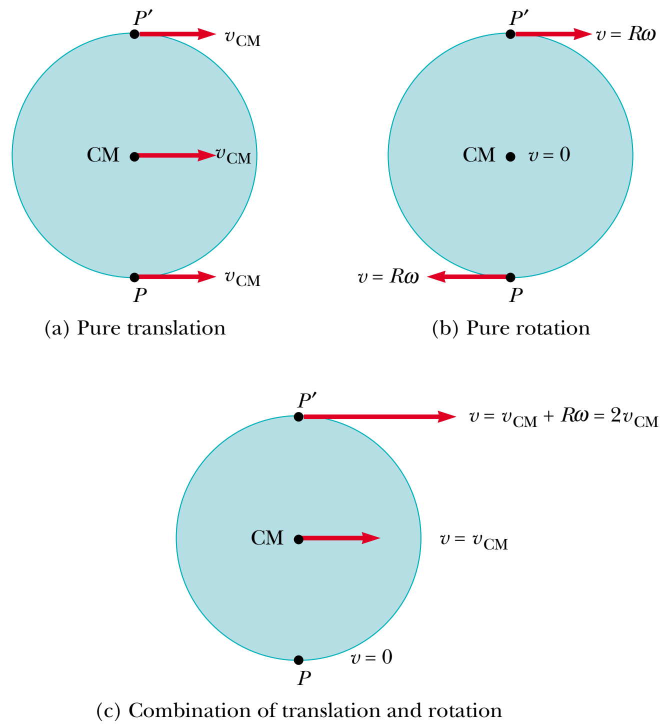


Figure 11.4 The motion of a rolling object can be modeled as a combination of pure translation and pure rotation.

Total kinetic energy of a rolling body

or, because $v_{CM} = R\omega$,

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}I_{CM}\omega^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}M{v_{CM}}^2 \quad \textbf{(11.4)}$$

The term $\frac{1}{2}I_{CM}\omega^2$ represents the rotational kinetic energy of the cylinder about its center of mass, and the term $\frac{1}{2}M{v_{CM}}^2$ represents the kinetic energy the cylinder would have if it were just translating through space without rotating. Thus, we can say that the **total kinetic energy of a rolling object is the sum of the rotational kinetic energy about the center of mass and the translational kinetic energy of the center of mass.**

We can use energy methods to treat a class of problems concerning the rolling motion of a sphere down a rough incline. (The analysis that follows also applies to the rolling motion of a cylinder or hoop.) We assume that the sphere in Figure 11.5 rolls without slipping and is released from rest at the top of the incline. Note that accelerated rolling motion is possible only if a frictional force is present between the sphere and the incline to produce a net torque about the center of mass. Despite the presence of friction, no loss of mechanical energy occurs because the contact point is at rest relative to the surface at any instant. On the other hand, if the sphere were to slip, mechanical energy would be lost as motion progressed.

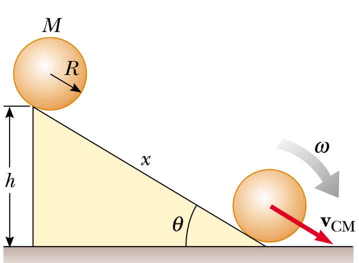


Figure 11.5 A sphere rolling down an incline. Mechanical energy is conserved if no slipping occurs.

Using the fact that $v_{CM} = R\omega$ for pure rolling motion, we can express Equation 11.4 as

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}I_{CM}\left(\frac{v_{CM}}{R}\right)^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}M{v_{CM}}^2$$

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(\frac{I_{CM}}{R^2} + M\right){v_{CM}}^2 \quad \textbf{(11.5)}$$

By the time the sphere reaches the bottom of the incline, work equal to Mgh has been done on it by the gravitational field, where h is the height of the incline. Because the sphere starts from rest at the top, its kinetic energy at the bottom, given by Equation 11.5, must equal this work done. Therefore, the speed of the center of mass at the bottom can be obtained by equating these two quantities:

$$\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{I_{CM}}{R^2} + M\right){v_{CM}}^2 = Mgh$$

$$v_{CM} = \left(\frac{2gh}{1 + I_{CM}/MR^2}\right)^{1/2} \tag{11.6}$$

Quick Quiz 11.1

Imagine that you slide your textbook across a gymnasium floor with a certain initial speed. It quickly stops moving because of friction between it and the floor. Yet, if you were to start a basketball rolling with the same initial speed, it would probably keep rolling from one end of the gym to the other. Why does a basketball roll so far? Doesn't friction affect its motion?

EXAMPLE 11.1 Sphere Rolling Down an Incline

For the solid sphere shown in Figure 11.5, calculate the linear speed of the center of mass at the bottom of the incline and the magnitude of the linear acceleration of the center of mass.

Solution The sphere starts from the top of the incline with potential energy $U_g = Mgh$ and kinetic energy $K = 0$. As we have seen before, if it fell vertically from that height, it would have a linear speed of $\sqrt{2gh}$ at the moment before it hit the floor. After rolling down the incline, the linear speed of the center of mass must be less than this value because some of the initial potential energy is diverted into rotational kinetic energy rather than all being converted into translational kinetic energy. For a uniform solid sphere, $I_{CM} = \frac{2}{5}MR^2$ (see Table 10.2), and therefore Equation 11.6 gives

$$v_{CM} = \left(\frac{2gh}{1 + \dfrac{2/5MR^2}{MR^2}}\right)^{1/2} = \boxed{\left(\frac{10}{7}\,gh\right)^{1/2}}$$

which is less than $\sqrt{2gh}$.

To calculate the linear acceleration of the center of mass, we note that the vertical displacement is related to the displacement x along the incline through the relationship $h = x \sin\theta$. Hence, after squaring both sides, we can express the equation above as

$${v_{CM}}^2 = \frac{10}{7}\,gx\sin\theta$$

Comparing this with the expression from kinematics, ${v_{CM}}^2 = 2a_{CM}x$ (see Eq. 2.12), we see that the acceleration of the center of mass is

$$a_{CM} = \boxed{\frac{5}{7}\,g\sin\theta}$$

These results are quite interesting in that both the speed and the acceleration of the center of mass are *independent* of the mass and the radius of the sphere! That is, **all homogeneous solid spheres experience the same speed and acceleration on a given incline.**

If we repeated the calculations for a hollow sphere, a solid cylinder, or a hoop, we would obtain similar results in which only the factor in front of $g\sin\theta$ would differ. The constant factors that appear in the expressions for v_{CM} and a_{CM} depend only on the moment of inertia about the center of mass for the specific body. In all cases, the acceleration of the center of mass is *less* than $g\sin\theta$, the value the acceleration would have if the incline were frictionless and no rolling occurred.

EXAMPLE 11.2 Another Look at the Rolling Sphere

In this example, let us use dynamic methods to verify the results of Example 11.1. The free-body diagram for the sphere is illustrated in Figure 11.6.

Solution Newton's second law applied to the center of mass gives

$$\text{(1)}\qquad \Sigma F_x = Mg\sin\theta - f = Ma_{CM}$$

$$\Sigma F_y = n - Mg\cos\theta = 0$$

where x is measured along the slanted surface of the incline.

Now let us write an expression for the torque acting on the sphere. A convenient axis to choose is the one that passes

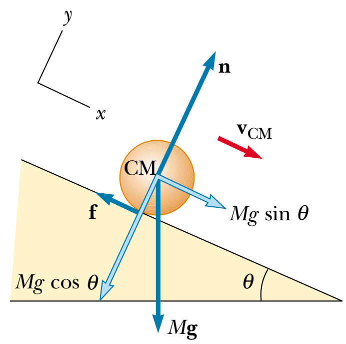


Figure 11.6 Free-body diagram for a solid sphere rolling down an incline.

through the center of the sphere and is perpendicular to the plane of the figure.[1] Because **n** and $M\mathbf{g}$ go through the center of mass, they have zero moment arm about this axis and thus do not contribute to the torque. However, the force of static friction produces a torque about this axis equal to fR in the clockwise direction; therefore, because τ is also in the clockwise direction,

$$\tau_{CM} = fR = I_{CM}\alpha$$

Because $I_{CM} = \frac{2}{5}MR^2$ and $\alpha = a_{CM}/R$, we obtain

$$(2) \qquad f = \frac{I_{CM}\alpha}{R} = \left(\frac{\frac{2}{5}MR^2}{R}\right)\frac{a_{CM}}{R} = \frac{2}{5}Ma_{CM}$$

Substituting Equation (2) into Equation (1) gives

$$a_{CM} = \boxed{\frac{5}{7}g\sin\theta}$$

which agrees with the result of Example 11.1.

Note that $\Sigma\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ applies only if $\Sigma\mathbf{F}$ is the net external force exerted on the sphere and **a** is the acceleration of its center of mass. In the case of our sphere rolling down an incline, even though the frictional force does not change the total kinetic energy of the sphere, it does contribute to $\Sigma\mathbf{F}$ and thus decreases the acceleration of the center of mass. As a result, the final translational kinetic energy is less than it would be in the absence of friction. As mentioned in Example 11.1, some of the initial potential energy is converted to rotational kinetic energy.

QuickLab

Hold a basketball and a tennis ball side by side at the top of a ramp and release them at the same time. Which reaches the bottom first? Does the outcome depend on the angle of the ramp? What if the angle were 90° (that is, if the balls were in free fall)?

Quick Quiz 11.2

Which gets to the bottom first: a ball rolling without sliding down incline A or a box sliding down a frictionless incline B having the same dimensions as incline A?

11.2 THE VECTOR PRODUCT AND TORQUE

2.7 Consider a force **F** acting on a rigid body at the vector position **r** (Fig. 11.7). **The origin *O* is assumed to be in an inertial frame, so Newton's first law is valid in this case.** As we saw in Section 10.6, the *magnitude* of the torque due to this force relative to the origin is, by definition, $rF\sin\phi$, where ϕ is the angle between **r** and **F**. The axis about which **F** tends to produce rotation is perpendicular to the plane formed by **r** and **F**. If the force lies in the xy plane, as it does in Figure 11.7, the torque $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ is represented by a vector parallel to the z axis. The force in Figure 11.7 creates a torque that tends to rotate the body counterclockwise about the z axis; thus the direction of $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ is toward increasing z, and $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ is therefore in the positive z direction. If we reversed the direction of **F** in Figure 11.7, then $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ would be in the negative z direction.

The torque $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ involves the two vectors **r** and **F**, and its direction is perpendicular to the plane of **r** and **F**. We can establish a mathematical relationship between $\boldsymbol{\tau}$, **r**, and **F**, using a new mathematical operation called the **vector product,** or **cross product:**

Torque

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} \equiv \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} \qquad \textbf{(11.7)}$$

[1] Although a coordinate system whose origin is at the center of mass of a rolling object is not an inertial frame, the expression $\tau_{CM} = I\alpha$ still applies in the center-of-mass frame.

We now give a formal definition of the vector product. Given any two vectors **A** and **B**, the **vector product** $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ is defined as a third vector **C**, the magnitude of which is $AB \sin \theta$, where θ is the angle between **A** and **B**. That is, if **C** is given by

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} \qquad \textbf{(11.8)}$$

then its magnitude is

$$C \equiv AB \sin \theta \qquad \textbf{(11.9)}$$

The quantity $AB \sin \theta$ is equal to the area of the parallelogram formed by **A** and **B**, as shown in Figure 11.8. The *direction* of **C** is perpendicular to the plane formed by **A** and **B**, and the best way to determine this direction is to use the right-hand rule illustrated in Figure 11.8. The four fingers of the right hand are pointed along **A** and then "wrapped" into **B** through the angle θ. The direction of the erect right thumb is the direction of $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{C}$. Because of the notation, $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ is often read "**A** cross **B**"; hence, the term *cross product*.

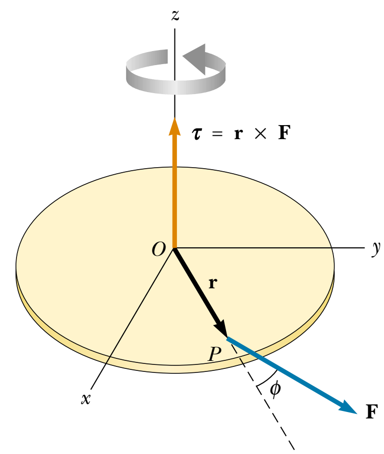


Figure 11.7 The torque vector $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ lies in a direction perpendicular to the plane formed by the position vector **r** and the applied force vector **F**.

Some properties of the vector product that follow from its definition are as follows:

Properties of the vector product

1. Unlike the scalar product, the vector product is *not* commutative. Instead, the order in which the two vectors are multiplied in a cross product is important:

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A} \qquad \textbf{(11.10)}$$

   Therefore, if you change the order of the vectors in a cross product, you must change the sign. You could easily verify this relationship with the right-hand rule.
2. If **A** is parallel to **B** ($\theta = 0°$ or $180°$), then $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = 0$; therefore, it follows that $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{A} = 0$.
3. If **A** is perpendicular to **B**, then $|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}| = AB$.
4. The vector product obeys the distributive law:

$$\mathbf{A} \times (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{C} \qquad \textbf{(11.11)}$$

5. The derivative of the cross product with respect to some variable such as t is

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) = \mathbf{A} \times \frac{d\mathbf{B}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt} \times \mathbf{B} \qquad \textbf{(11.12)}$$

   where it is important to preserve the multiplicative order of **A** and **B**, in view of Equation 11.10.

It is left as an exercise to show from Equations 11.9 and 11.10 and from the definition of unit vectors that the cross products of the rectangular unit vectors **i**,

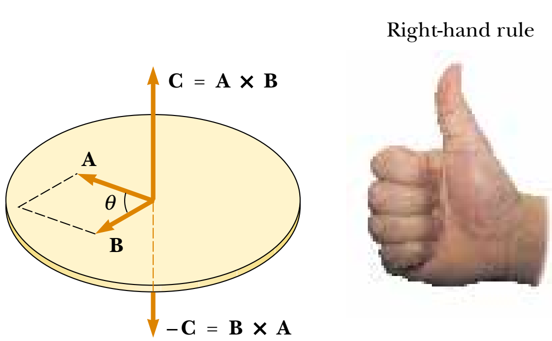


Figure 11.8 The vector product $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ is a third vector **C** having a magnitude $AB \sin \theta$ equal to the area of the parallelogram shown. The direction of **C** is perpendicular to the plane formed by **A** and **B**, and this direction is determined by the right-hand rule.

$\mathbf{j}$, and $\mathbf{k}$ obey the following rules:

Cross products of unit vectors

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{k} = 0 \quad \textbf{(11.13a)}$$

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = -\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{k} \quad \textbf{(11.13b)}$$

$$\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{i} \quad \textbf{(11.13c)}$$

$$\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = -\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{j} \quad \textbf{(11.13d)}$$

Signs are interchangeable in cross products. For example, $\mathbf{A} \times (-\mathbf{B}) = -\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ and $\mathbf{i} \times (-\mathbf{j}) = -\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j}$.

The cross product of any two vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ can be expressed in the following determinant form:

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ A_x & A_y & A_z \\ B_x & B_y & B_z \end{vmatrix} = \mathbf{i}\begin{vmatrix} A_y & A_z \\ B_y & B_z \end{vmatrix} - \mathbf{j}\begin{vmatrix} A_x & A_z \\ B_x & B_z \end{vmatrix} + \mathbf{k}\begin{vmatrix} A_x & A_y \\ B_x & B_y \end{vmatrix}$$

Expanding these determinants gives the result

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = (A_yB_z - A_zB_y)\mathbf{i} - (A_xB_z - A_zB_x)\mathbf{j} + (A_xB_y - A_yB_x)\mathbf{k} \quad \textbf{(11.14)}$$

EXAMPLE 11.3 The Cross Product

Two vectors lying in the xy plane are given by the equations $\mathbf{A} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$. Find $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ and verify that $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$.

Solution Using Equations 11.13a through 11.13d, we obtain

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = (2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}) \times (-\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$$

$$= 2\mathbf{i} \times 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{j} \times (-\mathbf{i}) = 4\mathbf{k} + 3\mathbf{k} = \boxed{7\mathbf{k}}$$

(We have omitted the terms containing $\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j}$ because, as Equation 11.13a shows, they are equal to zero.)

We can show that $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$, since

$$\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A} = (-\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) \times (2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$$

$$= -\mathbf{i} \times 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{j} \times 2\mathbf{i} = -3\mathbf{k} - 4\mathbf{k} = \boxed{-7\mathbf{k}}$$

Therefore, $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$.

As an alternative method for finding $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$, we could use Equation 11.14, with $A_x = 2$, $A_y = 3$, $A_z = 0$ and $B_x = -1$, $B_y = 2$, $B_z = 0$:

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = (0)\mathbf{i} - (0)\mathbf{j} + [(2)(2) - (3)(-1)]\mathbf{k} = 7\mathbf{k}$$

Exercise Use the results to this example and Equation 11.9 to find the angle between $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$.

Answer 60.3°

11.3 ANGULAR MOMENTUM OF A PARTICLE

7.8

Imagine a rigid pole sticking up through the ice on a frozen pond (Fig. 11.9). A skater glides rapidly toward the pole, aiming a little to the side so that she does not hit it. As she approaches a point beside the pole, she reaches out and grabs the pole, an action that whips her rapidly into a circular path around the pole. Just as the idea of linear momentum helps us analyze translational motion, a rotational analog—*angular momentum*—helps us describe this skater and other objects undergoing rotational motion.

To analyze the motion of the skater, we need to know her mass and her velocity, as well as her position relative to the pole. In more general terms, consider a

particle of mass m located at the vector position $\mathbf{r}$ and moving with linear velocity $\mathbf{v}$ (Fig. 11.10).

The instantaneous angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$ of the particle relative to the origin O is defined as the cross product of the particle's instantaneous position vector $\mathbf{r}$ and its instantaneous linear momentum $\mathbf{p}$:

$$\mathbf{L} \equiv \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p} \tag{11.15}$$

Angular momentum of a particle

The SI unit of angular momentum is $\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}$. It is important to note that both the magnitude and the direction of $\mathbf{L}$ depend on the choice of origin. Following the right-hand rule, note that the direction of $\mathbf{L}$ is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{p}$. In Figure 11.10, $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ are in the xy plane, and so $\mathbf{L}$ points in the z direction. Because $\mathbf{p} = m\mathbf{v}$, the magnitude of $\mathbf{L}$ is

$$L = mvr \sin \phi \tag{11.16}$$

where ϕ is the angle between $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{p}$. It follows that L is zero when $\mathbf{r}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{p}$ ($\phi = 0$ or $180°$). In other words, when the linear velocity of the particle is along a line that passes through the origin, the particle has zero angular momentum with respect to the origin. On the other hand, if $\mathbf{r}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{p}$ ($\phi = 90°$), then $L = mvr$. At that instant, the particle moves exactly as if it were on the rim of a wheel rotating about the origin in a plane defined by $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{p}$.

Figure 11.9 As the skater passes the pole, she grabs hold of it. This causes her to swing around the pole rapidly in a circular path.

Quick Quiz 11.3

Recall the skater described at the beginning of this section. What would be her angular momentum relative to the pole if she were skating directly toward it?

In describing linear motion, we found that the net force on a particle equals the time rate of change of its linear momentum, $\Sigma\mathbf{F} = d\mathbf{p}/dt$ (see Eq. 9.3). We now show that the net torque acting on a particle equals the time rate of change of its angular momentum. Let us start by writing the net torque on the particle in the form

$$\sum \boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{r} \times \sum \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{r} \times \frac{d\mathbf{p}}{dt} \tag{11.17}$$

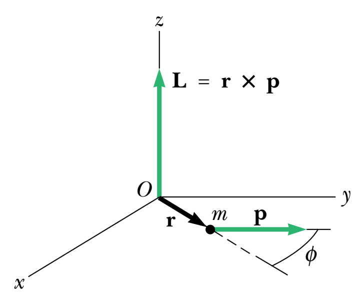


Figure 11.10 The angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$ of a particle of mass m and linear momentum $\mathbf{p}$ located at the vector position $\mathbf{r}$ is a vector given by $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}$. The value of $\mathbf{L}$ depends on the origin about which it is measured and is a vector perpendicular to both $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{p}$.

Now let us differentiate Equation 11.15 with respect to time, using the rule given by Equation 11.12:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{L}}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}) = \mathbf{r} \times \frac{d\mathbf{p}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} \times \mathbf{p}$$

Remember, it is important to adhere to the order of terms because $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$. The last term on the right in the above equation is zero because $\mathbf{v} = d\mathbf{r}/dt$ is parallel to $\mathbf{p} = m\mathbf{v}$ (property 2 of the vector product). Therefore,

$$\frac{d\mathbf{L}}{dt} = \mathbf{r} \times \frac{d\mathbf{p}}{dt} \tag{11.18}$$

Comparing Equations 11.17 and 11.18, we see that

$$\sum \boldsymbol{\tau} = \frac{d\mathbf{L}}{dt} \tag{11.19}$$

The net torque equals time rate of change of angular momentum

which is the rotational analog of Newton's second law, $\Sigma\mathbf{F} = d\mathbf{p}/dt$. Note that torque causes the angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$ to change just as force causes linear momentum $\mathbf{p}$ to change. This rotational result, Equation 11.19, states that

the net torque acting on a particle is equal to the time rate of change of the particle's angular momentum.

It is important to note that Equation 11.19 is valid only if $\Sigma\boldsymbol{\tau}$ and $\mathbf{L}$ are measured about the same origin. (Of course, the same origin must be used in calculating all of the torques.) Furthermore, **the expression is valid for any origin fixed in an inertial frame.**

Angular Momentum of a System of Particles

The total angular momentum of a system of particles about some point is defined as the vector sum of the angular momenta of the individual particles:

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{L}_1 + \mathbf{L}_2 + \cdots + \mathbf{L}_n = \sum_i \mathbf{L}_i$$

where the vector sum is over all n particles in the system.

Because individual angular momenta can change with time, so can the total angular momentum. In fact, from Equations 11.18 and 11.19, we find that the time rate of change of the total angular momentum equals the vector sum of all torques acting on the system, both those associated with internal forces between particles and those associated with external forces. However, the net torque associated with all internal forces is zero. To understand this, recall that Newton's third law tells us that internal forces between particles of the system are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. If we assume that these forces lie along the line of separation of each pair of particles, then the torque due to each action–reaction force pair is zero. That is, the moment arm d from O to the line of action of the forces is equal for both particles. In the summation, therefore, we see that the net internal torque vanishes. We conclude that the total angular momentum of a system can vary with time only if a net external torque is acting on the system, so that we have

$$\sum \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{ext}} = \sum_i \frac{d\mathbf{L}_i}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}\sum_i \mathbf{L}_i = \frac{d\mathbf{L}}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(11.20)}$$

That is,

the time rate of change of the total angular momentum of a system about some origin in an inertial frame equals the net external torque acting on the system about that origin.

Note that Equation 11.20 is the rotational analog of Equation 9.38, $\Sigma\mathbf{F}_{\text{ext}} = d\mathbf{p}/dt$, for a system of particles.

EXAMPLE 11.4 Circular Motion

A particle moves in the xy plane in a circular path of radius r, as shown in Figure 11.11. (a) Find the magnitude and direction of its angular momentum relative to O when its linear velocity is $\mathbf{v}$.

Solution You might guess that because the linear momentum of the particle is always changing (in direction, not magnitude), the direction of the angular momentum must also change. In this example, however, this is not the case. The magnitude of $\mathbf{L}$ is given by

$$L = mvr \sin 90° = \boxed{mvr} \qquad \text{(for } \mathbf{r} \text{ perpendicular to } \mathbf{v}\text{)}$$

This value of L is constant because all three factors on the right are constant. The direction of $\mathbf{L}$ also is constant, even though the direction of $\mathbf{p} = m\mathbf{v}$ keeps changing. You can visualize this by sliding the vector $\mathbf{v}$ in Figure 11.11 parallel to itself until its tail meets the tail of $\mathbf{r}$ and by then applying the right-hand rule. (You can use $\mathbf{v}$ to determine the direction of $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}$ because the direction of $\mathbf{p}$ is the same as the direction of $\mathbf{v}$.) Line up your fingers so that they point along $\mathbf{r}$ and wrap your fingers into the vector $\mathbf{v}$. Your thumb points upward and away from the page; this is the direction of $\mathbf{L}$. Hence, we can write the vector expression $\mathbf{L} = (mvr)\mathbf{k}$. If the particle were to move clockwise, $\mathbf{L}$ would point downward and into the page.

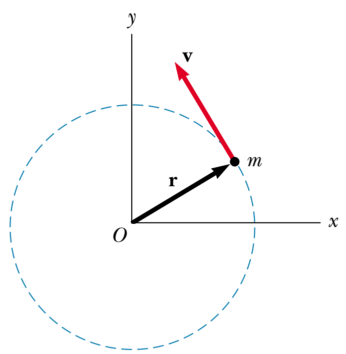


Figure 11.11 A particle moving in a circle of radius r has an angular momentum about O that has magnitude mvr. The vector $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p}$ points *out* of the diagram.

(b) Find the magnitude and direction of $\mathbf{L}$ in terms of the particle's angular speed ω.

Solution Because $v = r\omega$ for a particle rotating in a circle, we can express L as

$$L = mvr = mr^2\omega = \boxed{I\omega}$$

where I is the moment of inertia of the particle about the z axis through O. Because the rotation is counterclockwise, the direction of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is along the z axis (see Section 10.1). The direction of $\mathbf{L}$ is the same as that of $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, and so we can write the angular momentum as $\mathbf{L} = I\boldsymbol{\omega} = I\omega\mathbf{k}$.

Exercise A car of mass 1 500 kg moves with a linear speed of 40 m/s on a circular race track of radius 50 m. What is the magnitude of its angular momentum relative to the center of the track?

Answer $3.0 \times 10^6\ \text{kg} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{s}$

11.4 ANGULAR MOMENTUM OF A ROTATING RIGID OBJECT

Consider a rigid object rotating about a fixed axis that coincides with the z axis of a coordinate system, as shown in Figure 11.12. Let us determine the angular momentum of this object. Each particle of the object rotates in the xy plane about the z axis with an angular speed ω. The magnitude of the angular momentum of a particle of mass m_i about the origin O is $m_i v_i r_i$. Because $v_i = r_i\omega$, we can express the magnitude of the angular momentum of this particle as

$$L_i = m_i r_i^2 \omega$$

The vector $\mathbf{L}_i$ is directed along the z axis, as is the vector $\boldsymbol{\omega}$.

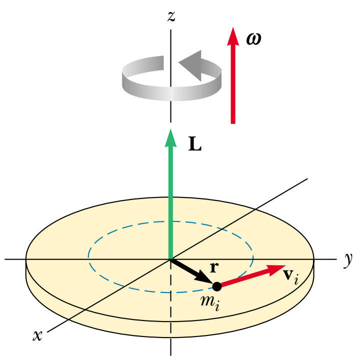


Figure 11.12 When a rigid body rotates about an axis, the angular momentum **L** is in the same direction as the angular velocity $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, according to the expression $\mathbf{L} = I\boldsymbol{\omega}$.

We can now find the angular momentum (which in this situation has only a z component) of the whole object by taking the sum of L_i over all particles:

$$L_z = \sum_i m_i r_i^2 \omega = \left(\sum_i m_i r_i^2\right)\omega$$

$$L_z = I\omega \qquad \textbf{(11.21)}$$

where I is the moment of inertia of the object about the z axis.

Now let us differentiate Equation 11.21 with respect to time, noting that I is constant for a rigid body:

$$\frac{dL_z}{dt} = I\frac{d\omega}{dt} = I\alpha \qquad \textbf{(11.22)}$$

where α is the angular acceleration relative to the axis of rotation. Because dL_z/dt is equal to the net external torque (see Eq. 11.20), we can express Equation 11.22 as

$$\sum \tau_{\text{ext}} = \frac{dL_z}{dt} = I\alpha \qquad \textbf{(11.23)}$$

That is, the net external torque acting on a rigid object rotating about a fixed axis equals the moment of inertia about the rotation axis multiplied by the object's angular acceleration relative to that axis.

Equation 11.23 also is valid for a rigid object rotating about a moving axis provided the moving axis (1) passes through the center of mass and (2) is a symmetry axis.

You should note that if a symmetrical object rotates about a fixed axis passing through its center of mass, you can write Equation 11.21 in vector form as $\mathbf{L} = I\boldsymbol{\omega}$, where **L** is the total angular momentum of the object measured with respect to the axis of rotation. Furthermore, the expression is valid for any object, regardless of its symmetry, if **L** stands for the component of angular momentum along the axis of rotation.[2]

EXAMPLE 11.5 Bowling Ball

Estimate the magnitude of the angular momentum of a bowling ball spinning at 10 rev/s, as shown in Figure 11.13.

Solution We start by making some estimates of the relevant physical parameters and model the ball as a uniform solid sphere. A typical bowling ball might have a mass of 6 kg and a radius of 12 cm. The moment of inertia of a solid sphere about an axis through its center is, from Table 10.2,

$$I = \tfrac{2}{5}MR^2 = \tfrac{2}{5}(6\text{ kg})(0.12\text{ m})^2 = 0.035\text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$$

Therefore, the magnitude of the angular momentum is

[2] In general, the expression $\mathbf{L} = I\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is not always valid. If a rigid object rotates about an arbitrary axis, **L** and $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ may point in different directions. In this case, the moment of inertia cannot be treated as a scalar. Strictly speaking, $\mathbf{L} = I\boldsymbol{\omega}$ applies only to rigid objects of any shape that rotate about one of three mutually perpendicular axes (called *principal axes*) through the center of mass. This is discussed in more advanced texts on mechanics.

$$L = I\omega = (0.035 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)(10 \text{ rev/s})(2\pi \text{ rad/rev})$$
$$= 2.2 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}$$

Because of the roughness of our estimates, we probably want to keep only one significant figure, and so $L \approx \boxed{2 \text{ kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}.}$

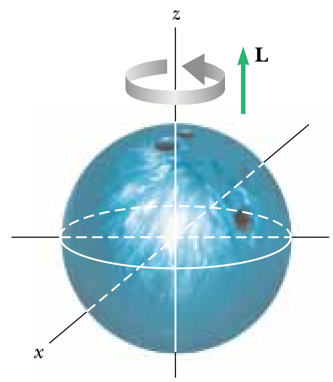


Figure 11.13 A bowling ball that rotates about the z axis in the direction shown has an angular momentum **L** in the positive z direction. If the direction of rotation is reversed, **L** points in the negative z direction.

EXAMPLE 11.6 Rotating Rod

A rigid rod of mass M and length ℓ is pivoted without friction at its center (Fig. 11.14). Two particles of masses m_1 and m_2 are connected to its ends. The combination rotates in a vertical plane with an angular speed ω. (a) Find an expression for the magnitude of the angular momentum of the system.

Solution This is different from the last example in that we now must account for the motion of more than one object. The moment of inertia of the system equals the sum of the moments of inertia of the three components: the rod and the two particles. Referring to Table 10.2 to obtain the expression for the moment of inertia of the rod, and using the expression $I = mr^2$ for each particle, we find that the total moment of inertia about the z axis through O is

$$I = \frac{1}{12}M\ell^2 + m_1\left(\frac{\ell}{2}\right)^2 + m_2\left(\frac{\ell}{2}\right)^2$$
$$= \frac{\ell^2}{4}\left(\frac{M}{3} + m_1 + m_2\right)$$

Therefore, the magnitude of the angular momentum is

$$L = I\omega = \boxed{\frac{\ell^2}{4}\left(\frac{M}{3} + m_1 + m_2\right)\omega}$$

(b) Find an expression for the magnitude of the angular acceleration of the system when the rod makes an angle θ with the horizontal.

Solution If the masses of the two particles are equal, then the system has no angular acceleration because the net torque on the system is zero when $m_1 = m_2$. If the initial angle θ is exactly $\pi/2$ or $-\pi/2$ (vertical position), then the rod will be in equilibrium. To find the angular acceleration of the system at any angle θ, we first calculate the net torque on the system and then use $\Sigma\tau_{\text{ext}} = I\alpha$ to obtain an expression for α.

The torque due to the force $m_1 g$ about the pivot is

$$\tau_1 = m_1 g \frac{\ell}{2}\cos\theta \qquad (\boldsymbol{\tau}_1 \text{ out of page})$$

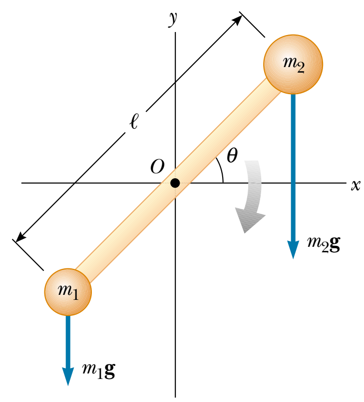


Figure 11.14 Because gravitational forces act on the rotating rod, there is in general a net nonzero torque about O when $m_1 \neq m_2$. This net torque produces an angular acceleration given by $\alpha = \Sigma\tau_{\text{ext}}/I$.

The torque due to the force $m_2 g$ about the pivot is

$$\tau_2 = -m_2 g \frac{\ell}{2}\cos\theta \qquad (\boldsymbol{\tau}_2 \text{ into page})$$

Hence, the net torque exerted on the system about O is

$$\sum \tau_{\text{ext}} = \tau_1 + \tau_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(m_1 - m_2)g\ell\cos\theta$$

The direction of $\Sigma\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{ext}}$ is out of the page if $m_1 > m_2$ and is into the page if $m_2 > m_1$.

To find α, we use $\Sigma\tau_{\text{ext}} = I\alpha$, where I was obtained in part (a):

$$\alpha = \frac{\Sigma\tau_{\text{ext}}}{I} = \boxed{\frac{2(m_1 - m_2)g\cos\theta}{\ell(M/3 + m_1 + m_2)}}$$

Note that α is zero when θ is $\pi/2$ or $-\pi/2$ (vertical position) and is a maximum when θ is 0 or π (horizontal position).

Exercise If $m_2 > m_1$, at what value of θ is ω a maximum?

Answer $\theta = -\pi/2$.

EXAMPLE 11.7 Two Connected Masses

A sphere of mass m_1 and a block of mass m_2 are connected by a light cord that passes over a pulley, as shown in Figure 11.15. The radius of the pulley is R, and the moment of inertia about its axle is I. The block slides on a frictionless, horizontal surface. Find an expression for the linear acceleration of the two objects, using the concepts of angular momentum and torque.

Solution We need to determine the angular momentum of the system, which consists of the two objects and the pulley. Let us calculate the angular momentum about an axis that coincides with the axle of the pulley.

At the instant the sphere and block have a common speed v, the angular momentum of the sphere is m_1vR, and that of the block is m_2vR. At the same instant, the angular momentum of the pulley is $I\omega = Iv/R$. Hence, the total angular momentum of the system is

$$(1) \qquad L = m_1vR + m_2vR + I\frac{v}{R}$$

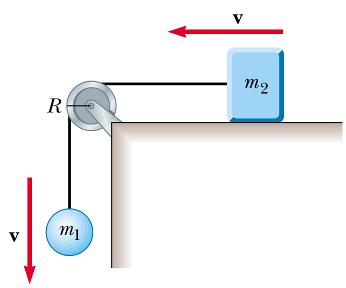


Figure 11.15

Now let us evaluate the total external torque acting on the system about the pulley axle. Because it has a moment arm of zero, the force exerted by the axle on the pulley does not contribute to the torque. Furthermore, the normal force acting on the block is balanced by the force of gravity $m_2\mathbf{g}$, and so these forces do not contribute to the torque. The force of gravity $m_1\mathbf{g}$ acting on the sphere produces a torque about the axle equal in magnitude to m_1gR, where R is the moment arm of the force about the axle. (Note that in this situation, the tension is *not* equal to m_1g.) This is the total external torque about the pulley axle; that is, $\Sigma\tau_{\text{ext}} = m_1gR$. Using this result, together with Equation (1) and Equation 11.23, we find

$$\sum \tau_{\text{ext}} = \frac{dL}{dt}$$

$$m_1gR = \frac{d}{dt}\left[(m_1 + m_2)Rv + I\frac{v}{R}\right]$$

$$(2) \qquad m_1gR = (m_1 + m_2)R\frac{dv}{dt} + \frac{I}{R}\frac{dv}{dt}$$

Because $dv/dt = a$, we can solve this for a to obtain

$$a = \boxed{\frac{m_1g}{(m_1 + m_2) + I/R^2}}$$

You may wonder why we did not include the forces that the cord exerts on the objects in evaluating the net torque about the axle. The reason is that these forces are internal to the system under consideration, and we analyzed the system as a whole. Only external torques contribute to the change in the system's angular momentum.

11.5 CONSERVATION OF ANGULAR MOMENTUM

7.9 In Chapter 9 we found that the total linear momentum of a system of particles remains constant when the resultant external force acting on the system is zero. We have an analogous conservation law in rotational motion:

Conservation of angular momentum

The total angular momentum of a system is constant in both magnitude and direction if the resultant external torque acting on the system is zero.

This follows directly from Equation 11.20, which indicates that if

$$\sum \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{ext}} = \frac{d\mathbf{L}}{dt} = 0 \qquad \textbf{(11.24)}$$

then

$$\mathbf{L} = \text{constant} \qquad \textbf{(11.25)}$$

For a system of particles, we write this conservation law as $\Sigma\,\mathbf{L}_n = \text{constant}$, where the index n denotes the nth particle in the system.

If the mass of an object undergoes redistribution in some way, then the object's moment of inertia changes; hence, its angular speed must change because $L = I\omega$. In this case we express the conservation of angular momentum in the form

$$\mathbf{L}_i = \mathbf{L}_f = \text{constant} \qquad \textbf{(11.26)}$$

If the system is an object rotating about a *fixed* axis, such as the z axis, we can write $L_z = I\omega$, where L_z is the component of $\mathbf{L}$ along the axis of rotation and I is the moment of inertia about this axis. In this case, we can express the conservation of angular momentum as

$$I_i\omega_i = I_f\omega_f = \text{constant} \qquad \textbf{(11.27)}$$

This expression is valid both for rotation about a fixed axis and for rotation about an axis through the center of mass of a moving system as long as that axis remains parallel to itself. We require only that the net external torque be zero.

Although we do not prove it here, there is an important theorem concerning the angular momentum of an object relative to the object's center of mass:

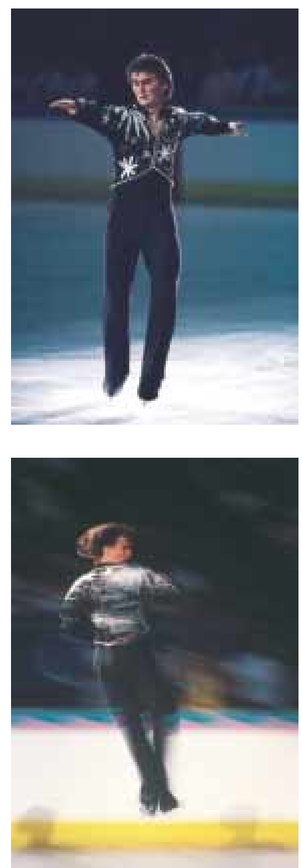
The resultant torque acting on an object about an axis through the center of mass equals the time rate of change of angular momentum regardless of the motion of the center of mass.

This theorem applies even if the center of mass is accelerating, provided $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ and $\mathbf{L}$ are evaluated relative to the center of mass.

In Equation 11.26 we have a third conservation law to add to our list. We can now state that the energy, linear momentum, and angular momentum of an isolated system all remain constant:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} K_i + U_i &= K_f + U_f \\ \mathbf{p}_i &= \mathbf{p}_f \\ \mathbf{L}_i &= \mathbf{L}_f \end{aligned}\right\} \quad \text{For an isolated system}$$

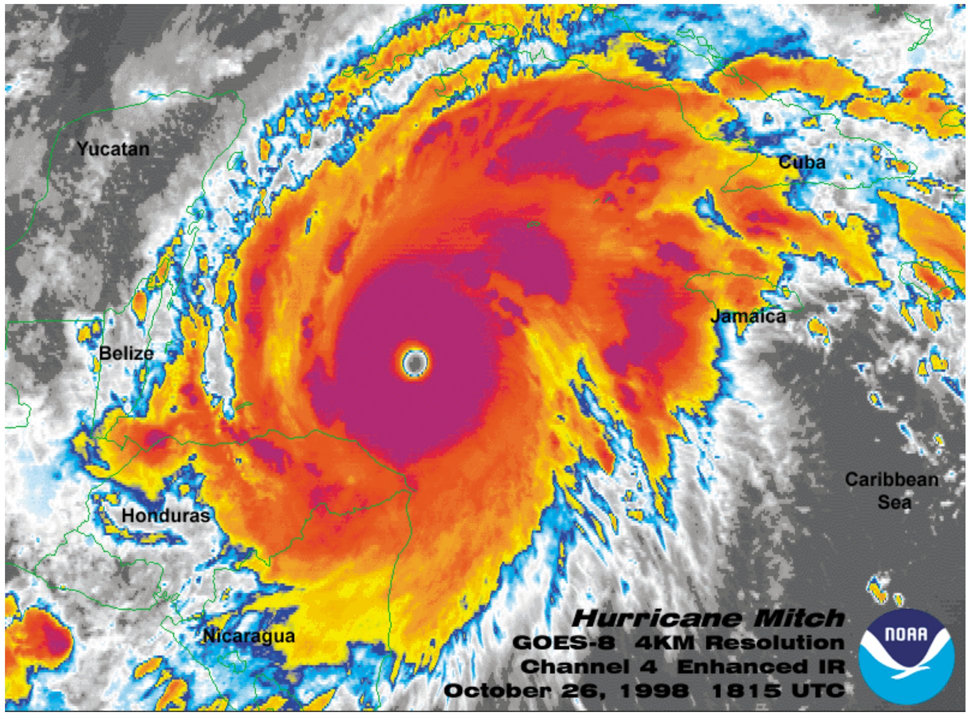
There are many examples that demonstrate conservation of angular momentum. You may have observed a figure skater spinning in the finale of a program. The angular speed of the skater increases when the skater pulls his hands and feet close to his body, thereby decreasing I. Neglecting friction between skates and ice, no external torques act on the skater. The change in angular speed is due to the fact that, because angular momentum is conserved, the product $I\omega$ remains constant, and a decrease in the moment of inertia of the skater causes an increase in the angular speed. Similarly, when divers or acrobats wish to make several somersaults, they pull their hands and feet close to their bodies to rotate at a higher rate. In these cases, the external force due to gravity acts through the center of mass and hence exerts no torque about this point. Therefore, the angular momentum about the center of mass must be conserved—that is, $I_i\omega_i = I_f\omega_f$. For example, when divers wish to double their angular speed, they must reduce their moment of inertia to one-half its initial value.



Angular momentum is conserved as figure skater Todd Eldredge pulls his arms toward his body. *(© 1998 David Madison)*

Quick Quiz 11.4

A particle moves in a straight line, and you are told that the net torque acting on it is zero about some unspecified point. Decide whether the following statements are true or false: (a) The net force on the particle must be zero. (b) The particle's velocity must be constant.



A color-enhanced, infrared image of Hurricane Mitch, which devastated large areas of Honduras and Nicaragua in October 1998. The spiral, nonrigid mass of air undergoes rotation and has angular momentum. *(Courtesy of NOAA)*

EXAMPLE 11.8 Formation of a Neutron Star

A star rotates with a period of 30 days about an axis through its center. After the star undergoes a supernova explosion, the stellar core, which had a radius of 1.0×10^4 km, collapses into a neutron star of radius 3.0 km. Determine the period of rotation of the neutron star.

Solution The same physics that makes a skater spin faster with his arms pulled in describes the motion of the neutron star. Let us assume that during the collapse of the stellar core, (1) no torque acts on it, (2) it remains spherical, and (3) its mass remains constant. Also, let us use the symbol T for the period, with T_i being the initial period of the star and T_f being the period of the neutron star. The period is the length of time a point on the star's equator takes to make one complete circle around the axis of rotation. The angular speed of a star is given by $\omega = 2\pi/T$. Therefore, because I is proportional to r^2, Equation 11.27 gives

$$T_f = T_i\left(\frac{r_f}{r_i}\right)^2 = (30 \text{ days})\left(\frac{3.0 \text{ km}}{1.0 \times 10^4 \text{ km}}\right)^2$$

$$= 2.7 \times 10^{-6} \text{ days} = \boxed{0.23 \text{ s}}$$

Thus, the neutron star rotates about four times each second; this result is approximately the same as that for a spinning figure skater.

EXAMPLE 11.9 The Merry-Go-Round

A horizontal platform in the shape of a circular disk rotates in a horizontal plane about a frictionless vertical axle (Fig. 11.16). The platform has a mass $M = 100$ kg and a radius $R = 2.0$ m. A student whose mass is $m = 60$ kg walks slowly from the rim of the disk toward its center. If the angular speed of the system is 2.0 rad/s when the student is at the rim, what is the angular speed when he has reached a point $r = 0.50$ m from the center?

Solution The speed change here is similar to the increase in angular speed of the spinning skater when he pulls his arms inward. Let us denote the moment of inertia of the platform as I_p and that of the student as I_s. Treating the student as a point mass, we can write the initial moment of inertia I_i of the system (student plus platform) about the axis of rotation:

$$I_i = I_{pi} + I_{si} = \tfrac{1}{2}MR^2 + mR^2$$

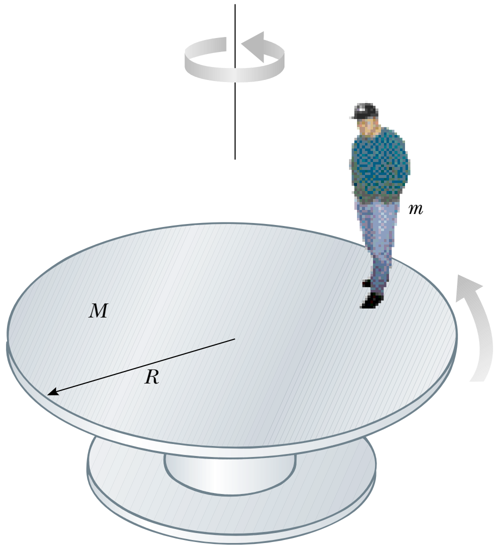


Figure 11.16 As the student walks toward the center of the rotating platform, the angular speed of the system increases because the angular momentum must remain constant.

When the student has walked to the position $r < R$, the moment of inertia of the system reduces to

$$I_f = I_{pf} + I_{sf} = \tfrac{1}{2}MR^2 + mr^2$$

Note that we still use the greater radius R when calculating I_{pf} because the radius of the platform has not changed. Because no external torques act on the system about the axis of rotation, we can apply the law of conservation of angular momentum:

$$I_i\omega_i = I_f\omega_f$$

$$\left(\tfrac{1}{2}MR^2 + mR^2\right)\omega_i = \left(\tfrac{1}{2}MR^2 + mr^2\right)\omega_f$$

$$\omega_f = \left(\frac{\tfrac{1}{2}MR^2 + mR^2}{\tfrac{1}{2}MR^2 + mr^2}\right)\omega_i$$

$$\omega_f = \left(\frac{200 + 240}{200 + 15}\right)(2.0\text{ rad/s}) = \boxed{4.1\text{ rad/s}}$$

As expected, the angular speed has increased.

Exercise Calculate the initial and final rotational energies of the system.

Answer $K_i = 880$ J; $K_f = 1.8 \times 10^3$ J.

Quick Quiz 11.5

Note that the rotational energy of the system described in Example 11.9 increases. What accounts for this increase in energy?

EXAMPLE 11.10 The Spinning Bicycle Wheel

In a favorite classroom demonstration, a student holds the axle of a spinning bicycle wheel while seated on a stool that is free to rotate (Fig. 11.17). The student and stool are initially at rest while the wheel is spinning in a horizontal plane with an initial angular momentum $\mathbf{L}_i$ that points upward. When the wheel is inverted about its center by 180°, the student and stool start rotating. In terms of $\mathbf{L}_i$, what are the magnitude and the direction of $\mathbf{L}$ for the student plus stool?

Figure 11.17 The wheel is initially spinning when the student is at rest. What happens when the wheel is inverted?

Solution The system consists of the student, the wheel, and the stool. Initially, the total angular momentum of the system $\mathbf{L}_i$ comes entirely from the spinning wheel. As the wheel is inverted, the student applies a torque to the wheel, but this torque is internal to the system. No external torque is acting on the system about the vertical axis. Therefore, the angular momentum of the system is conserved. Initially, we have

$$\mathbf{L}_{\text{system}} = \mathbf{L}_i = \mathbf{L}_{\text{wheel}} \qquad \text{(upward)}$$

After the wheel is inverted, we have $\mathbf{L}_{\text{inverted wheel}} = -\mathbf{L}_i$. For angular momentum to be conserved, some other part of the system has to start rotating so that the total angular momentum remains the initial angular momentum $\mathbf{L}_i$. That other part of the system is the student plus the stool she is sitting on. So, we can now state that

$$\mathbf{L}_f = \mathbf{L}_i = \mathbf{L}_{\text{student+stool}} - \mathbf{L}_i$$

$$\mathbf{L}_{\text{student+stool}} = \boxed{2\mathbf{L}_i}$$

EXAMPLE 11.11 Disk and Stick

A 2.0-kg disk traveling at 3.0 m/s strikes a 1.0-kg stick that is lying flat on nearly frictionless ice, as shown in Figure 11.18. Assume that the collision is elastic. Find the translational speed of the disk, the translational speed of the stick, and the rotational speed of the stick after the collision. The moment of inertia of the stick about its center of mass is $1.33\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$.

Solution Because the disk and stick form an isolated system, we can assume that total energy, linear momentum, and angular momentum are all conserved. We have three unknowns, and so we need three equations to solve simultaneously. The first comes from the law of the conservation of linear momentum:

$$p_i = p_f$$

$$m_{\text{d}}v_{\text{d}i} = m_{\text{d}}v_{\text{d}f} + m_{\text{s}}v_{\text{s}}$$

$$(2.0\ \text{kg})(3.0\ \text{m/s}) = (2.0\ \text{kg})v_{\text{d}f} + (1.0\ \text{kg})v_{\text{s}}$$

$$(1) \qquad 6.0\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m/s} - (2.0\ \text{kg})v_{\text{d}f} = (1.0\ \text{kg})v_{\text{s}}$$

Now we apply the law of conservation of angular momentum, using the initial position of the center of the stick as our reference point. We know that the component of angular momentum of the disk along the axis perpendicular to the plane of the ice is negative (the right-hand rule shows that $\mathbf{L}_{\text{d}}$ points into the ice).

$$L_i = L_f$$

$$-rm_{\text{d}}v_{\text{d}i} = -rm_{\text{d}}v_{\text{d}f} + I\omega$$

$$-(2.0\ \text{m})(2.0\ \text{kg})(3.0\ \text{m/s}) = -(2.0\ \text{m})(2.0\ \text{kg})v_{\text{d}f} + (1.33\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)\omega$$

$$-12\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s} = -(4.0\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m})v_{\text{d}f} + (1.33\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2)\omega$$

$$(2) \qquad -9.0\ \text{rad/s} + (3.0\ \text{rad/m})v_{\text{d}f} = \omega$$

We used the fact that radians are dimensionless to ensure consistent units for each term.

Finally, the elastic nature of the collision reminds us that kinetic energy is conserved; in this case, the kinetic energy consists of translational and rotational forms:

$$K_i = K_f$$

$$\tfrac{1}{2}m_{\text{d}}v_{\text{d}i}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m_{\text{d}}v_{\text{d}f}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}m_{\text{s}}v_{\text{s}}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega^2$$

$$\tfrac{1}{2}(2.0\ \text{kg})(3.0\ \text{m/s})^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(2.0\ \text{kg})v_{\text{d}f}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}(1.0\ \text{kg})v_{\text{s}}^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}(1.33\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s})\omega^2$$

$$(3) \qquad 54\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2 = 6.0v_{\text{d}f}^2 + 3.0v_{\text{s}}^2 + (4.0\ \text{m}^2)\omega^2$$

In solving Equations (1), (2), and (3) simultaneously, we find that $v_{\text{d}f} = 2.3$ m/s, $v_{\text{s}} = 1.3$ m/s, and $\omega = -2.0$ rad/s. These values seem reasonable. The disk is moving more slowly than it was before the collision, and the stick has a small translational speed. Table 11.1 summarizes the initial and final values of variables for the disk and the stick and verifies the conservation of linear momentum, angular momentum, and kinetic energy.

Exercise Verify the values in Table 11.1.

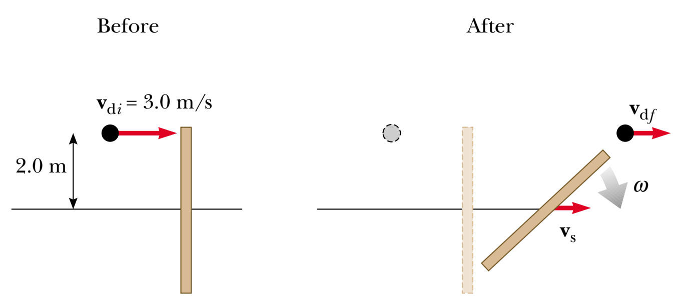


Figure 11.18 Overhead view of a disk striking a stick in an elastic collision, which causes the stick to rotate.

TABLE 11.1 Comparison of Values in Example 11.11 Before and After the Collision[a]

	v (m/s)	ω (rad/s)	p (kg·m/s)	L (kg·m²/s)	K_{trans} (J)	K_{rot} (J)
Before						
Disk	3.0	—	6.0	−12	9.0	—
Stick	0	0	0	0	0	0
Total	—	—	6.0	−12	9.0	0
After						
Disk	2.3	—	4.7	−9.3	5.4	—
Stick	1.3	−2.0	1.3	−2.7	0.9	2.7
Total	—	—	6.0	−12	6.3	2.7

[a] Notice that linear momentum, angular momentum, and total kinetic energy are conserved.

Optional Section

11.6 THE MOTION OF GYROSCOPES AND TOPS

A very unusual and fascinating type of motion you probably have observed is that of a top spinning about its axis of symmetry, as shown in Figure 11.19a. If the top spins very rapidly, the axis rotates about the z axis, sweeping out a cone (see Fig. 11.19b). The motion of the axis about the vertical—known as **precessional motion**—is usually slow relative to the spin motion of the top.

Precessional motion

It is quite natural to wonder why the top does not fall over. Because the center of mass is not directly above the pivot point O, a net torque is clearly acting on the top about O—a torque resulting from the force of gravity $M\mathbf{g}$. The top would certainly fall over if it were not spinning. Because it is spinning, however, it has an angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$ directed along its symmetry axis. As we shall show, the motion of this symmetry axis about the z axis (the precessional motion) occurs because the torque produces a change in the *direction* of the symmetry axis. This is an excellent example of the importance of the directional nature of angular momentum.

The two forces acting on the top are the downward force of gravity $M\mathbf{g}$ and the normal force $\mathbf{n}$ acting upward at the pivot point O. The normal force produces no torque about the pivot because its moment arm through that point is zero. However, the force of gravity produces a torque $\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{r} \times M\mathbf{g}$ about O, where the direction of $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{r}$ and $M\mathbf{g}$. By necessity, the vector $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ lies in a horizontal xy plane perpendicular to the angular momentum vector. The net torque and angular momentum of the top are related through Equation 11.19:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \frac{d\mathbf{L}}{dt}$$

From this expression, we see that the nonzero torque produces a change in angular momentum $d\mathbf{L}$—a change that is in the same direction as $\boldsymbol{\tau}$. Therefore, like the torque vector, $d\mathbf{L}$ must also be at right angles to $\mathbf{L}$. Figure 11.19b illustrates the resulting precessional motion of the symmetry axis of the top. In a time Δt, the change in angular momentum is $\Delta\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{L}_f - \mathbf{L}_i = \boldsymbol{\tau}\,\Delta t$. Because $\Delta\mathbf{L}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{L}$, the magnitude of $\mathbf{L}$ does not change ($|\mathbf{L}_i| = |\mathbf{L}_f|$). Rather, what is changing is the *direction* of $\mathbf{L}$. Because the change in angular momentum $\Delta\mathbf{L}$ is in the direction of $\boldsymbol{\tau}$, which lies in the xy plane, the top undergoes precessional motion.

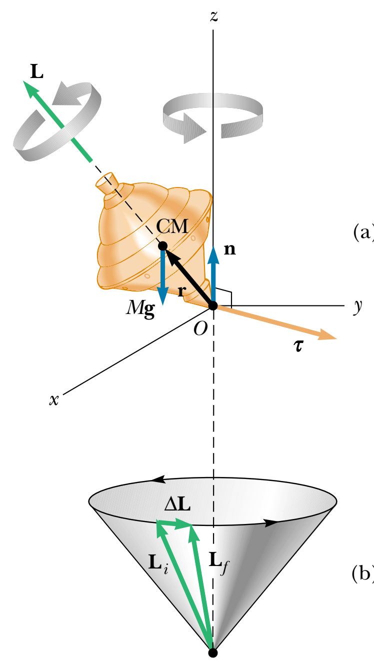


Figure 11.19 Precessional motion of a top spinning about its symmetry axis. (a) The only external forces acting on the top are the normal force $\mathbf{n}$ and the force of gravity $M\mathbf{g}$. The direction of the angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$ is along the axis of symmetry. The right-hand rule indicates that $\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{r} \times M\mathbf{g}$ is in the xy plane. (b). The direction of $\Delta\mathbf{L}$ is parallel to that of $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ in part (a). The fact that $\mathbf{L}_f = \Delta\mathbf{L} + \mathbf{L}_i$ indicates that the top precesses about the z axis.

The essential features of precessional motion can be illustrated by considering the simple gyroscope shown in Figure 11.20a. This device consists of a wheel free to spin about an axle that is pivoted at a distance h from the center of mass of the wheel. When given an angular velocity $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ about the axle, the wheel has an angular momentum $\mathbf{L} = I\boldsymbol{\omega}$ directed along the axle as shown. Let us consider the torque acting on the wheel about the pivot O. Again, the force $\mathbf{n}$ exerted by the support on the axle produces no torque about O, and the force of gravity $M\mathbf{g}$ produces a torque of magnitude Mgh about O, where the axle is perpendicular to the support. The direction of this torque is perpendicular to the axle (and perpendicular to $\mathbf{L}$), as shown in Figure 11.20a. This torque causes the angular momentum to change in the direction perpendicular to the axle. Hence, the axle moves in the direction of the torque—that is, in the horizontal plane.

To simplify the description of the system, we must make an assumption: The total angular momentum of the precessing wheel is the sum of the angular momentum $I\boldsymbol{\omega}$ due to the spinning and the angular momentum due to the motion of

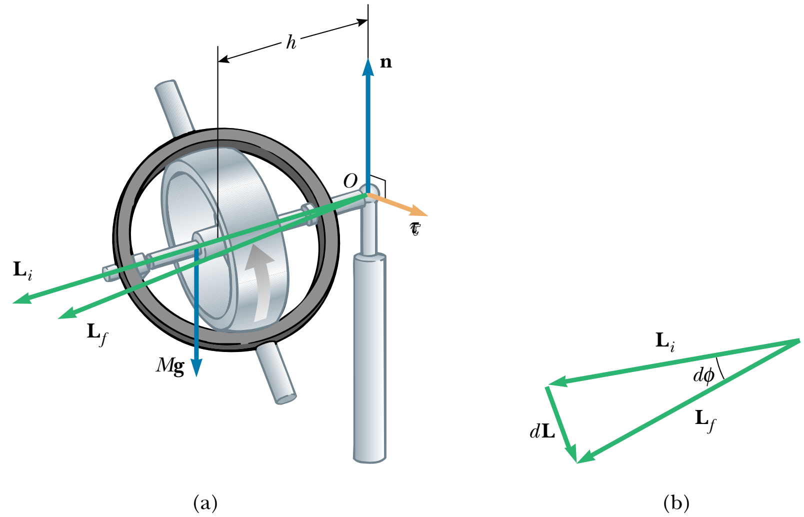
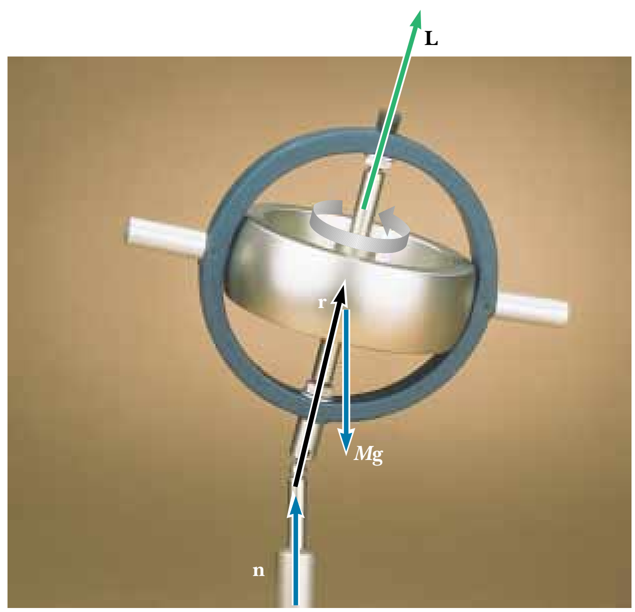


Figure 11.20 (a) The motion of a simple gyroscope pivoted a distance h from its center of mass. The force of gravity $M\mathbf{g}$ produces a torque about the pivot, and this torque is perpendicular to the axle. (b) This torque results in a change in angular momentum $d\mathbf{L}$ in a direction perpendicular to the axle. The axle sweeps out an angle $d\phi$ in a time dt.



This toy gyroscope undergoes precessional motion about the vertical axis as it spins about its axis of symmetry. The only forces acting on it are the force of gravity $M\mathbf{g}$ and the upward force of the pivot $\mathbf{n}$. The direction of its angular momentum $\mathbf{L}$ is along the axis of symmetry. The torque and $\Delta\mathbf{L}$ are directed into the page. *(Courtesy of Central Scientific Company)*

the center of mass about the pivot. In our treatment, we shall neglect the contribution from the center-of-mass motion and take the total angular momentum to be just $I\boldsymbol{\omega}$. In practice, this is a good approximation if $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is made very large.

In a time dt, the torque due to the gravitational force changes the angular momentum of the system by $d\mathbf{L} = \boldsymbol{\tau}\, dt$. When added vectorially to the original total

angular momentum $I\boldsymbol{\omega}$, this additional angular momentum causes a shift in the direction of the total angular momentum.

The vector diagram in Figure 11.20b shows that in the time dt, the angular momentum vector rotates through an angle $d\phi$, which is also the angle through which the axle rotates. From the vector triangle formed by the vectors $\mathbf{L}_i$, $\mathbf{L}_f$, and $d\mathbf{L}$, we see that

$$\sin(d\phi) \approx d\phi = \frac{dL}{L} = \frac{(Mgh)\,dt}{L}$$

where we have used the fact that, for small values of any angle θ, $\sin\theta \approx \theta$. Dividing through by dt and using the relationship $L = I\omega$, we find that the rate at which the axle rotates about the vertical axis is

$$\omega_p = \frac{d\phi}{dt} = \frac{Mgh}{I\omega} \tag{11.28}$$

Precessional frequency

The angular speed ω_p is called the **precessional frequency.** This result is valid only when $\omega_p \ll \omega$. Otherwise, a much more complicated motion is involved. As you can see from Equation 11.28, the condition $\omega_p \ll \omega$ is met when $I\omega$ is great compared with Mgh. Furthermore, note that the precessional frequency decreases as ω increases—that is, as the wheel spins faster about its axis of symmetry.

Quick Quiz 11.6

How much work is done by the force of gravity when a top precesses through one complete circle?

Optional Section

11.7 ANGULAR MOMENTUM AS A FUNDAMENTAL QUANTITY

We have seen that the concept of angular momentum is very useful for describing the motion of macroscopic systems. However, the concept also is valid on a submicroscopic scale and has been used extensively in the development of modern theories of atomic, molecular, and nuclear physics. In these developments, it was found that the angular momentum of a system is a fundamental quantity. The word *fundamental* in this context implies that angular momentum is an intrinsic property of atoms, molecules, and their constituents, a property that is a part of their very nature.

To explain the results of a variety of experiments on atomic and molecular systems, we rely on the fact that the angular momentum has discrete values. These discrete values are multiples of the fundamental unit of angular momentum $\hbar = h/2\pi$, where h is called Planck's constant:

$$\text{Fundamental unit of angular momentum} = \hbar = 1.054 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}$$

Let us accept this postulate without proof for the time being and show how it can be used to estimate the angular speed of a diatomic molecule. Consider the O_2 molecule as a rigid rotor, that is, two atoms separated by a fixed distance d and rotating about the center of mass (Fig. 11.21). Equating the angular momentum to the fundamental unit $\hbar$, we can estimate the lowest angular speed:

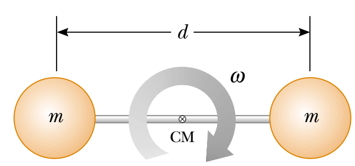


Figure 11.21 The rigid-rotor model of a diatomic molecule. The rotation occurs about the center of mass in the plane of the page.

$$I_{CM}\omega \approx \hbar \qquad \text{or} \qquad \omega \approx \frac{\hbar}{I_{CM}}$$

In Example 10.3, we found that the moment of inertia of the O_2 molecule about this axis of rotation is $1.95 \times 10^{-46}\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2$. Therefore,

$$\omega \approx \frac{\hbar}{I_{\text{CM}}} = \frac{1.054 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{s}}{1.95 \times 10^{-46}\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2} = 5.41 \times 10^{11}\ \text{rad/s}$$

Actual angular speeds are multiples of this smallest possible value.

This simple example shows that certain classical concepts and models, when properly modified, might be useful in describing some features of atomic and molecular systems. A wide variety of phenomena on the submicroscopic scale can be explained only if we assume discrete values of the angular momentum associated with a particular type of motion.

The Danish physicist Niels Bohr (1885–1962) accepted and adopted this radical idea of discrete angular momentum values in developing his theory of the hydrogen atom. Strictly classical models were unsuccessful in describing many properties of the hydrogen atom. Bohr postulated that the electron could occupy only those circular orbits about the proton for which the orbital angular momentum was equal to $n\hbar$, where n is an integer. That is, he made the bold assumption that orbital angular momentum is quantized. From this simple model, the rotational frequencies of the electron in the various orbits can be estimated (see Problem 43).

SUMMARY

The **total kinetic energy** of a rigid object rolling on a rough surface without slipping equals the rotational kinetic energy about its center of mass, $\frac{1}{2}I_{\text{CM}}\omega^2$, plus the translational kinetic energy of the center of mass, $\frac{1}{2}Mv_{\text{CM}}{}^2$:

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}I_{\text{CM}}\omega^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}Mv_{\text{CM}}{}^2 \qquad \textbf{(11.4)}$$

The **torque** $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ due to a force $\mathbf{F}$ about an origin in an inertial frame is defined to be

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} \equiv \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} \qquad \textbf{(11.7)}$$

Given two vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, the **cross product** $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ is a vector $\mathbf{C}$ having a magnitude

$$C \equiv AB\sin\theta \qquad \textbf{(11.9)}$$

where θ is the angle between $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$. The direction of the vector $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$, and this direction is determined by the right-hand rule.

The **angular momentum** $\mathbf{L}$ of a particle having linear momentum $\mathbf{p} = m\mathbf{v}$ is

$$\mathbf{L} \equiv \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p} \qquad \textbf{(11.15)}$$

where $\mathbf{r}$ is the vector position of the particle relative to an origin in an inertial frame.

The **net external torque** acting on a particle or rigid object is equal to the time rate of change of its angular momentum:

$$\sum \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{ext}} = \frac{d\mathbf{L}}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(11.20)}$$

The *z component* of **angular momentum** of a rigid object rotating about a fixed *z* axis is

$$L_z = I\omega \qquad \textbf{(11.21)}$$

where I is the moment of inertia of the object about the axis of rotation and ω is its angular speed.

The **net external torque** acting on a rigid object equals the product of its moment of inertia about the axis of rotation and its angular acceleration:

$$\sum \tau_{\text{ext}} = I\alpha \tag{11.23}$$

If the net external torque acting on a system is zero, then the total angular momentum of the system is constant. Applying this **law of conservation of angular momentum** to a system whose moment of inertia changes gives

$$I_i\omega_i = I_f\omega_f = \text{constant} \tag{11.27}$$

QUESTIONS

1. Is it possible to calculate the torque acting on a rigid body without specifying a center of rotation? Is the torque independent of the location of the center of rotation?
2. Is the triple product defined by $\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C})$ a scalar or a vector quantity? Explain why the operation $(\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B}) \times \mathbf{C}$ has no meaning.
3. In some motorcycle races, the riders drive over small hills, and the motorcycles become airborne for a short time. If a motorcycle racer keeps the throttle open while leaving the hill and going into the air, the motorcycle tends to nose upward. Why does this happen?
4. If the torque acting on a particle about a certain origin is zero, what can you say about its angular momentum about that origin?
5. Suppose that the velocity vector of a particle is completely specified. What can you conclude about the direction of its angular momentum vector with respect to the direction of motion?
6. If a single force acts on an object, and the torque caused by that force is nonzero about some point, is there any other point about which the torque is zero?
7. If a system of particles is in motion, is it possible for the total angular momentum to be zero about some origin? Explain.
8. A ball is thrown in such a way that it does not spin about its own axis. Does this mean that the angular momentum is zero about an arbitrary origin? Explain.
9. In a tape recorder, the tape is pulled past the read-and-write heads at a constant speed by the drive mechanism. Consider the reel from which the tape is pulled—as the tape is pulled off it, the radius of the roll of remaining tape decreases. How does the torque on the reel change with time? How does the angular speed of the reel change with time? If the tape mechanism is suddenly turned on so that the tape is quickly pulled with a great force, is the tape more likely to break when pulled from a nearly full reel or a nearly empty reel?
10. A scientist at a hotel sought assistance from a bellhop to carry a mysterious suitcase. When the unaware bellhop rounded a corner carrying the suitcase, it suddenly moved away from him for some unknown reason. At this point, the alarmed bellhop dropped the suitcase and ran off. What do you suppose might have been in the suitcase?
11. When a cylinder rolls on a horizontal surface as in Figure 11.3, do any points on the cylinder have only a vertical component of velocity at some instant? If so, where are they?
12. Three objects of uniform density—a solid sphere, a solid cylinder, and a hollow cylinder—are placed at the top of an incline (Fig. Q11.12). If they all are released from rest at the same elevation and roll without slipping, which object reaches the bottom first? Which reaches it last? You should try this at home and note that the result is independent of the masses and the radii of the objects.

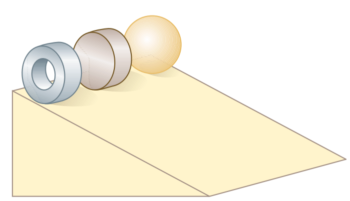


Figure Q11.12 Which object wins the race?

13. A mouse is initially at rest on a horizontal turntable mounted on a frictionless vertical axle. If the mouse begins to walk around the perimeter, what happens to the turntable? Explain.
14. Stars originate as large bodies of slowly rotating gas. Because of gravity, these regions of gas slowly decrease in size. What happens to the angular speed of a star as it shrinks? Explain.
15. Often, when a high diver wants to execute a flip in midair, she draws her legs up against her chest. Why does this make her rotate faster? What should she do when she wants to come out of her flip?
16. As a tether ball winds around a thin pole, what happens to its angular speed? Explain.

17. Two solid spheres—a large, massive sphere and a small sphere with low mass—are rolled down a hill. Which sphere reaches the bottom of the hill first? Next, a large, low-density sphere and a small, high-density sphere having the same mass are rolled down the hill. Which one reaches the bottom first in this case?
18. Suppose you are designing a car for a coasting race—the cars in this race have no engines; they simply coast down a hill. Do you want to use large wheels or small wheels? Do you want to use solid, disk-like wheels or hoop-like wheels? Should the wheels be heavy or light?
19. Why do tightrope walkers carry a long pole to help themselves keep their balance?
20. Two balls have the same size and mass. One is hollow, whereas the other is solid. How would you determine which is which without breaking them apart?
21. A particle is moving in a circle with constant speed. Locate one point about which the particle's angular momentum is constant and another about which it changes with time.
22. If global warming occurs over the next century, it is likely that some polar ice will melt and the water will be distributed closer to the equator. How would this change the moment of inertia of the Earth? Would the length of the day (one revolution) increase or decrease?

PROBLEMS

1, 2, 3 = straightforward, intermediate, challenging ☐ = full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide*
WEB = solution posted at **http://www.saunderscollege.com/physics/** = Computer useful in solving problem = Interactive Physics
☐ = paired numerical/symbolic problems

Section 11.1 Rolling Motion of a Rigid Object

WEB 1. A cylinder of mass 10.0 kg rolls without slipping on a horizontal surface. At the instant its center of mass has a speed of 10.0 m/s, determine (a) the translational kinetic energy of its center of mass, (b) the rotational energy about its center of mass, and (c) its total energy.

2. A bowling ball has a mass of 4.00 kg, a moment of inertia of 1.60×10^{-2} kg·m^2, and a radius of 0.100 m. If it rolls down the lane without slipping at a linear speed of 4.00 m/s, what is its total energy?
3. A bowling ball has a mass M, a radius R, and a moment of inertia $\frac{2}{5}MR^2$. If it starts from rest, how much work must be done on it to set it rolling without slipping at a linear speed v? Express the work in terms of M and v.

4. A uniform solid disk and a uniform hoop are placed side by side at the top of an incline of height h. If they are released from rest and roll without slipping, determine their speeds when they reach the bottom. Which object reaches the bottom first?
5. (a) Determine the acceleration of the center of mass of a uniform solid disk rolling down an incline making an angle θ with the horizontal. Compare this acceleration with that of a uniform hoop. (b) What is the minimum coefficient of friction required to maintain pure rolling motion for the disk?
6. A ring of mass 2.40 kg, inner radius 6.00 cm, and outer radius 8.00 cm rolls (without slipping) up an inclined plane that makes an angle of $\theta = 36.9°$ (Fig. P11.6). At the moment the ring is at position $x = 2.00$ m up the plane, its speed is 2.80 m/s. The ring continues up the plane for some additional distance and then rolls back down. It does not roll off the top end. How far up the plane does it go?

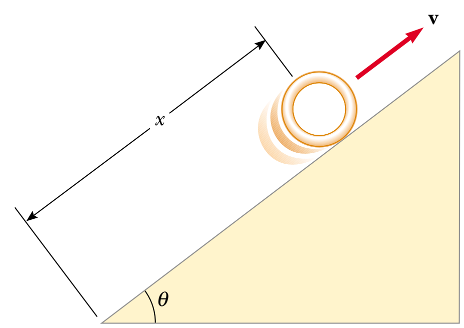


Figure P11.6

7. A metal can containing condensed mushroom soup has a mass of 215 g, a height of 10.8 cm, and a diameter of 6.38 cm. It is placed at rest on its side at the top of a 3.00-m-long incline that is at an angle of 25.0° to the horizontal and is then released to roll straight down. Assuming energy conservation, calculate the moment of inertia of the can if it takes 1.50 s to reach the bottom of the incline. Which pieces of data, if any, are unnecessary for calculating the solution?
8. A tennis ball is a hollow sphere with a thin wall. It is set rolling without slipping at 4.03 m/s on the horizontal section of a track, as shown in Figure P11.8. It rolls around the inside of a vertical circular loop 90.0 cm in diameter and finally leaves the track at a point 20.0 cm below the horizontal section. (a) Find the speed of the ball at the top of the loop. Demonstrate that it will not fall from the track. (b) Find its speed as it leaves the track. (c) Suppose that static friction between the ball and the track was negligible, so that the ball slid instead of rolling. Would its speed

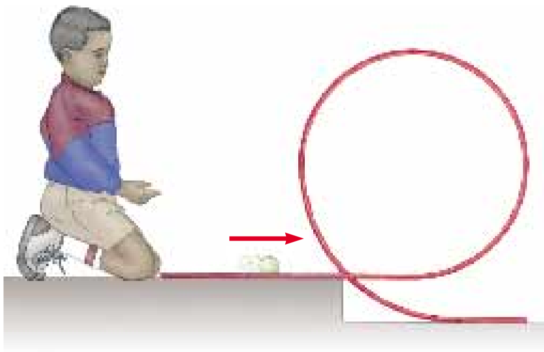


Figure P11.8

then be higher, lower, or the same at the top of the loop? Explain.

Section 11.2 The Vector Product and Torque

9. Given $\mathbf{M} = 6\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{N} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$, calculate the vector product $\mathbf{M} \times \mathbf{N}$.

10. The vectors 42.0 cm at 15.0° and 23.0 cm at 65.0° both start from the origin. Both angles are measured counterclockwise from the *x* axis. The vectors form two sides of a parallelogram. (a) Find the area of the parallelogram. (b) Find the length of its longer diagonal.

WEB **11.** Two vectors are given by $\mathbf{A} = -3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{B} = 2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$. Find (a) $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ and (b) the angle between **A** and **B**.

12. For the vectors $\mathbf{A} = -3\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{B} = 6\mathbf{i} - 10\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k}$, evaluate the expressions (a) $\cos^{-1}(\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B}/AB)$ and (b) $\sin^{-1}(|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}|/AB)$. (c) Which give(s) the angle between the vectors?

13. A force of $\mathbf{F} = 2.00\mathbf{i} + 3.00\mathbf{j}$ N is applied to an object that is pivoted about a fixed axis aligned along the *z* coordinate axis. If the force is applied at the point $\mathbf{r} = (4.00\mathbf{i} + 5.00\mathbf{j} + 0\mathbf{k})$ m, find (a) the magnitude of the net torque about the *z* axis and (b) the direction of the torque vector $\boldsymbol{\tau}$.

14. A student claims that she has found a vector **A** such that $(2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}) \times \mathbf{A} = (4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k})$. Do you believe this claim? Explain.

15. Vector **A** is in the negative *y* direction, and vector **B** is in the negative *x* direction. What are the directions of (a) $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ and (b) $\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$?

16. A particle is located at the vector position $\mathbf{r} = (\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j})$ m, and the force acting on it is $\mathbf{F} = (3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j})$ N. What is the torque about (a) the origin and (b) the point having coordinates (0, 6) m?

17. If $|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}| = \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B}$, what is the angle between **A** and **B**?

18. Two forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ act along the two sides of an equilateral triangle, as shown in Figure P11.18. Point *O* is the intersection of the altitudes of the triangle. Find a third force $\mathbf{F}_3$ to be applied at *B* and along *BC* that will make the total torque about the point *O* be zero. Will the total torque change if $\mathbf{F}_3$ is applied not at *B*, but rather at any other point along *BC*?

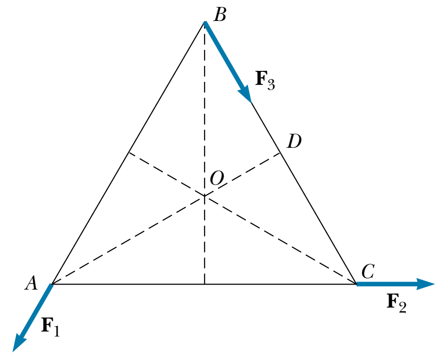


Figure P11.18

Section 11.3 Angular Momentum of a Particle

19. A light, rigid rod 1.00 m in length joins two particles—with masses 4.00 kg and 3.00 kg—at its ends. The combination rotates in the *xy* plane about a pivot through the center of the rod (Fig. P11.19). Determine the angular momentum of the system about the origin when the speed of each particle is 5.00 m/s.

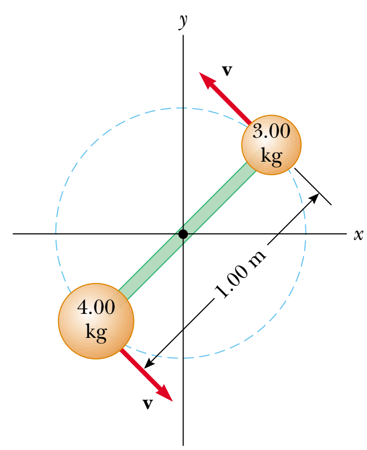


Figure P11.19

20. A 1.50-kg particle moves in the *xy* plane with a velocity of $\mathbf{v} = (4.20\mathbf{i} - 3.60\mathbf{j})$ m/s. Determine the particle's angular momentum when its position vector is $\mathbf{r} = (1.50\mathbf{i} + 2.20\mathbf{j})$ m.

WEB **21.** The position vector of a particle of mass 2.00 kg is given as a function of time by $\mathbf{r} = (6.00\mathbf{i} + 5.00t\mathbf{j})$ m. Determine the angular momentum of the particle about the origin as a function of time.

22. A conical pendulum consists of a bob of mass *m* in motion in a circular path in a horizontal plane, as shown in Figure P11.22. During the motion, the supporting wire of length ℓ maintains the constant angle θ with the vertical. Show that the magnitude of the angular momen-

tum of the mass about the center of the circle is

$$L = (m^2 g \ell^3 \sin^4 \theta / \cos \theta)^{1/2}$$

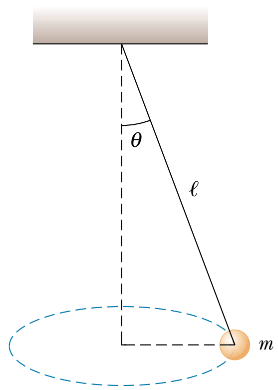


Figure P11.22

23. A particle of mass m moves in a circle of radius R at a constant speed v, as shown in Figure P11.23. If the motion begins at point Q, determine the angular momentum of the particle about point P as a function of time.

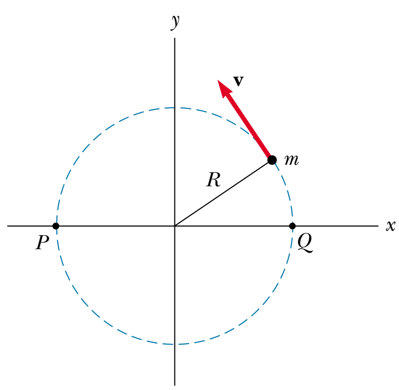


Figure P11.23

24. A 4.00-kg mass is attached to a light cord that is wound around a pulley (see Fig. 10.20). The pulley is a uniform solid cylinder with a radius of 8.00 cm and a mass of 2.00 kg. (a) What is the net torque on the system about the point O? (b) When the mass has a speed v, the pulley has an angular speed $\omega = v/R$. Determine the total angular momentum of the system about O. (c) Using the fact that $\boldsymbol{\tau} = d\mathbf{L}/dt$ and your result from part (b), calculate the acceleration of the mass.

25. A particle of mass m is shot with an initial velocity $\mathbf{v}_i$ and makes an angle θ with the horizontal, as shown in Figure P11.25. The particle moves in the gravitational field of the Earth. Find the angular momentum of the particle about the origin when the particle is (a) at the origin, (b) at the highest point of its trajectory, and (c) just about to hit the ground. (d) What torque causes its angular momentum to change?

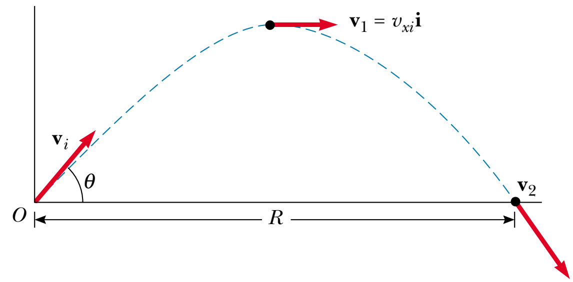


Figure P11.25

26. Heading straight toward the summit of Pike's Peak, an airplane of mass 12 000 kg flies over the plains of Kansas at a nearly constant altitude of 4.30 km and with a constant velocity of 175 m/s westward. (a) What is the airplane's vector angular momentum relative to a wheat farmer on the ground directly below the airplane? (b) Does this value change as the airplane continues its motion along a straight line? (c) What is its angular momentum relative to the summit of Pike's Peak?

27. A ball of mass m is fastened at the end of a flagpole connected to the side of a tall building at point P, as shown in Figure P11.27. The length of the flagpole is ℓ, and θ is the angle the flagpole makes with the horizontal. Suppose that the ball becomes loose and starts to fall. Determine the angular momentum (as a function of time) of the ball about point P. Neglect air resistance.

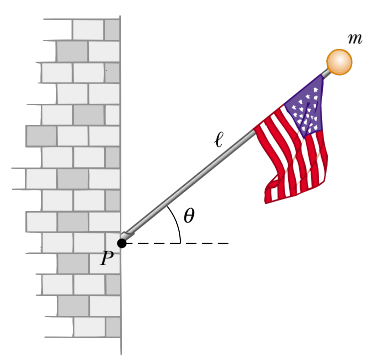


Figure P11.27

28. A fireman clings to a vertical ladder and directs the nozzle of a hose horizontally toward a burning building. The rate of water flow is 6.31 kg/s, and the nozzle speed is 12.5 m/s. The hose passes between the fireman's feet, which are 1.30 m vertically below the nozzle. Choose the origin to be inside the hose between the fireman's

feet. What torque must the fireman exert on the hose? That is, what is the rate of change of angular momentum of the water?

Section 11.4 Angular Momentum of a Rotating Rigid Object

29. A uniform solid sphere with a radius of 0.500 m and a mass of 15.0 kg turns counterclockwise about a vertical axis through its center. Find its vector angular momentum when its angular speed is 3.00 rad/s.

30. A uniform solid disk with a mass of 3.00 kg and a radius of 0.200 m rotates about a fixed axis perpendicular to its face. If the angular speed is 6.00 rad/s, calculate the angular momentum of the disk when the axis of rotation (a) passes through its center of mass and (b) passes through a point midway between the center and the rim.

31. A particle with a mass of 0.400 kg is attached to the 100-cm mark of a meter stick with a mass of 0.100 kg. The meter stick rotates on a horizontal, frictionless table with an angular speed of 4.00 rad/s. Calculate the angular momentum of the system when the stick is pivoted about an axis (a) perpendicular to the table through the 50.0-cm mark and (b) perpendicular to the table through the 0-cm mark.

32. The hour and minute hands of Big Ben, the famous Parliament Building tower clock in London, are 2.70 m and 4.50 m long and have masses of 60.0 kg and 100 kg, respectively. Calculate the total angular momentum of these hands about the center point. Treat the hands as long thin rods.

Section 11.5 Conservation of Angular Momentum

33. A cylinder with a moment of inertia of I_1 rotates about a vertical, frictionless axle with angular velocity ω_i. A second cylinder that has a moment of inertia of I_2 and initially is not rotating drops onto the first cylinder (Fig. P11.33). Because of friction between the surfaces, the two eventually reach the same angular speed ω_f. (a) Calculate ω_f. (b) Show that the kinetic energy of the system decreases in this interaction and calculate the ratio of the final rotational energy to the initial rotational energy.

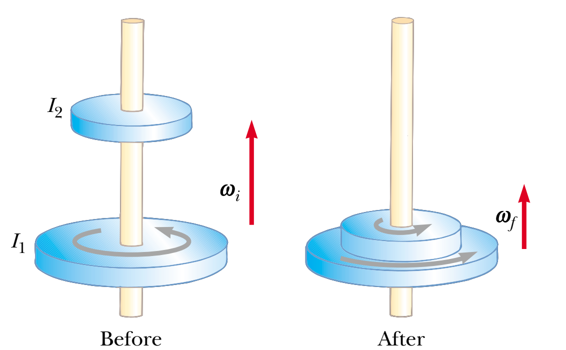


Figure P11.33

34. A playground merry-go-round of radius $R = 2.00$ m has a moment of inertia of $I = 250$ kg·m^2 and is rotating at 10.0 rev/min about a frictionless vertical axle. Facing the axle, a 25.0-kg child hops onto the merry-go-round and manages to sit down on its edge. What is the new angular speed of the merry-go-round?

35. A student sits on a freely rotating stool holding two weights, each of which has a mass of 3.00 kg. When his arms are extended horizontally, the weights are 1.00 m from the axis of rotation and he rotates with an angular speed of 0.750 rad/s. The moment of inertia of the student plus stool is 3.00 kg·m^2 and is assumed to be constant. The student pulls the weights inward horizontally to a position 0.300 m from the rotation axis. (a) Find the new angular speed of the student. (b) Find the kinetic energy of the rotating system before and after he pulls the weights inward.

36. A uniform rod with a mass of 100 g and a length of 50.0 cm rotates in a horizontal plane about a fixed, vertical, frictionless pin passing through its center. Two small beads, each having a mass 30.0 g, are mounted on the rod so that they are able to slide without friction along its length. Initially, the beads are held by catches at positions 10.0 cm on each side of center; at this time, the system rotates at an angular speed of 20.0 rad/s. Suddenly, the catches are released, and the small beads slide outward along the rod. Find (a) the angular speed of the system at the instant the beads reach the ends of the rod and (b) the angular speed of the rod after the beads fly off the rod's ends.

WEB **37.** A 60.0-kg woman stands at the rim of a horizontal turntable having a moment of inertia of 500 kg·m^2 and a radius of 2.00 m. The turntable is initially at rest and is free to rotate about a frictionless, vertical axle through its center. The woman then starts walking around the rim clockwise (as viewed from above the system) at a constant speed of 1.50 m/s relative to the Earth. (a) In what direction and with what angular speed does the turntable rotate? (b) How much work does the woman do to set herself and the turntable into motion?

38. A puck with a mass of 80.0 g and a radius of 4.00 cm slides along an air table at a speed of 1.50 m/s, as shown in Figure P11.38a. It makes a glancing collision

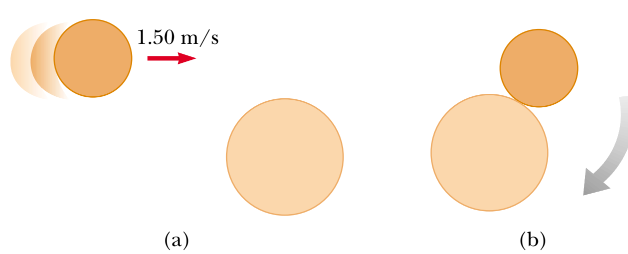


Figure P11.38

with a second puck having a radius of 6.00 cm and a mass of 120 g (initially at rest) such that their rims just touch. Because their rims are coated with instant-acting glue, the pucks stick together and spin after the collision (Fig. P11.38b). (a) What is the angular momentum of the system relative to the center of mass? (b) What is the angular speed about the center of mass?

39. A wooden block of mass M resting on a frictionless horizontal surface is attached to a rigid rod of length ℓ and of negligible mass (Fig. P11.39). The rod is pivoted at the other end. A bullet of mass m traveling parallel to the horizontal surface and normal to the rod with speed v hits the block and becomes embedded in it. (a) What is the angular momentum of the bullet–block system? (b) What fraction of the original kinetic energy is lost in the collision?

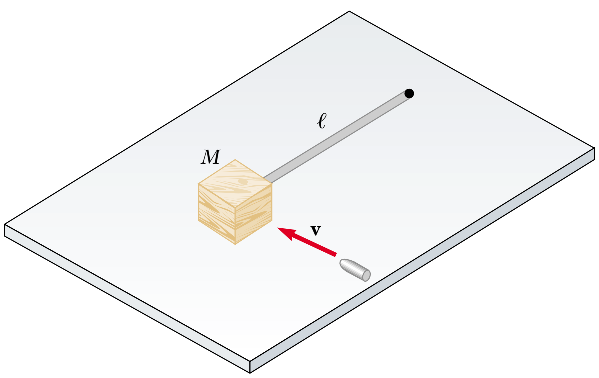


Figure P11.39

40. A space station shaped like a giant wheel has a radius of 100 m and a moment of inertia of 5.00×10^8 kg·m^2. A crew of 150 are living on the rim, and the station's rotation causes the crew to experience an acceleration of $1g$ (Fig. P11.40). When 100 people move to the center of the station for a union meeting, the angular speed changes. What acceleration is experienced by the managers remaining at the rim? Assume that the average mass of each inhabitant is 65.0 kg.

41. A wad of sticky clay of mass m and velocity $\mathbf{v}_i$ is fired at a solid cylinder of mass M and radius R (Fig. P11.41). The cylinder is initially at rest and is mounted on a fixed horizontal axle that runs through the center of mass. The line of motion of the projectile is perpendicular to the axle and at a distance d, less than R, from the center. (a) Find the angular speed of the system just after the clay strikes and sticks to the surface of the cylinder. (b) Is mechanical energy conserved in this process? Explain your answer.

42. Suppose a meteor with a mass of 3.00×10^{13} kg is moving at 30.0 km/s relative to the center of the Earth and strikes the Earth. What is the order of magnitude of the

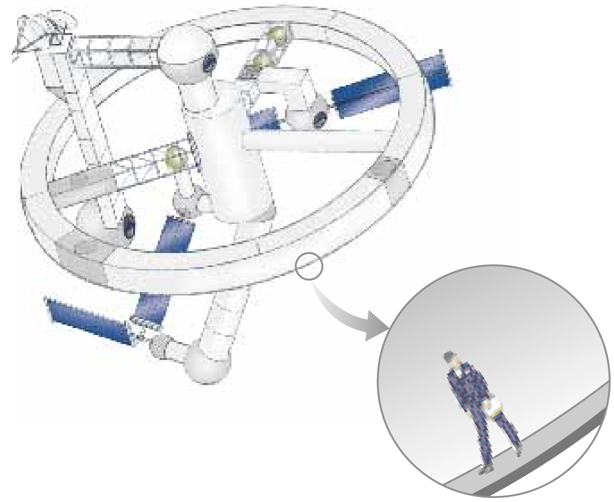


Figure P11.40

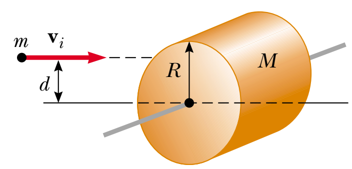


Figure P11.41

maximum possible decrease in the angular speed of the Earth due to this collision? Explain your answer.

(Optional)

Section 11.7 Angular Momentum as a Fundamental Quantity

43. In the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom, the electron moves in a circular orbit of radius 0.529×10^{-10} m around the proton. Assuming that the orbital angular momentum of the electron is equal to $h/2\pi$, calculate (a) the orbital speed of the electron, (b) the kinetic energy of the electron, and (c) the angular speed of the electron's motion.

ADDITIONAL PROBLEMS

44. Review Problem. A rigid, massless rod has three equal masses attached to it, as shown in Figure P11.44. The rod is free to rotate in a vertical plane about a frictionless axle perpendicular to the rod through the point P, and it is released from rest in the horizontal position at $t = 0$. Assuming m and d are known, find (a) the moment of inertia of the system about the pivot, (b) the torque acting on the system at $t = 0$, (c) the angular acceleration of the system at $t = 0$, (d) the linear acceleration of the mass labeled "3" at $t = 0$, (e) the maximum

kinetic energy of the system, (f) the maximum angular speed attained by the rod, (g) the maximum angular momentum of the system, and (h) the maximum speed attained by the mass labeled "2."

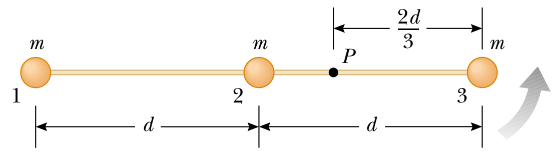


Figure P11.44

45. A uniform solid sphere of radius r is placed on the inside surface of a hemispherical bowl having a much greater radius R. The sphere is released from rest at an angle θ to the vertical and rolls without slipping (Fig. P11.45). Determine the angular speed of the sphere when it reaches the bottom of the bowl.

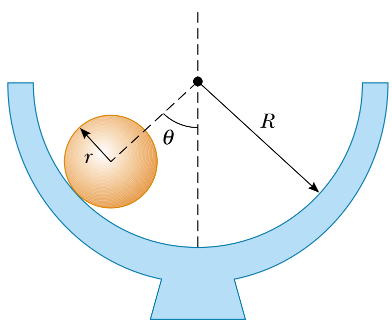


Figure P11.45

46. A 100-kg uniform horizontal disk of radius 5.50 m turns without friction at 2.50 rev/s on a vertical axis through its center, as shown in Figure P11.46. A feedback mechanism senses the angular speed of the disk, and a drive motor at A ensures that the angular speed remains constant. While the disk turns, a 1.20-kg mass on top of the disk slides outward in a radial slot. The 1.20-kg mass starts at the center of the disk at time $t = 0$ and moves outward with a constant speed of 1.25 cm/s relative to the disk until it reaches the edge at $t = 440$ s. The sliding mass experiences no friction. Its motion is constrained by a brake at B so that its radial speed remains constant. The constraint produces tension in a light string tied to the mass. (a) Find the torque as a function of time that the drive motor must provide while the mass is sliding. (b) Find the value of this torque at $t = 440$ s, just before the sliding mass finishes its motion. (c) Find the power that the drive motor must deliver as a function of time. (d) Find the value of the power when the sliding mass is just reaching the end of the slot. (e) Find the string tension as a function of time. (f) Find the work done by the drive motor during the 440-s motion. (g) Find the work done by the string brake on the sliding mass. (h) Find the total work done on the system consisting of the disk and the sliding mass.

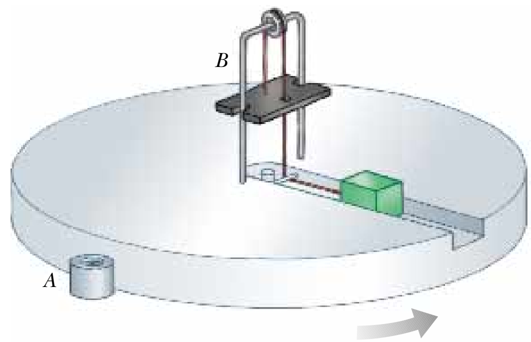


Figure P11.46

47. A string is wound around a uniform disk of radius R and mass M. The disk is released from rest when the string is vertical and its top end is tied to a fixed bar (Fig. P11.47). Show that (a) the tension in the string is one-third the weight of the disk, (b) the magnitude of the acceleration of the center of mass is $2g/3$, and (c) the speed of the center of mass is $(4gh/3)^{1/2}$ as the disk descends. Verify your answer to part (c) using the energy approach.

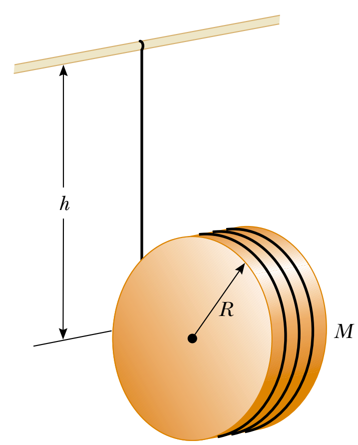


Figure P11.47

48. Comet Halley moves about the Sun in an elliptical orbit, with its closest approach to the Sun being about 0.590 AU and its greatest distance from the Sun being 35.0 AU (1 AU = the average Earth–Sun distance). If the comet's speed at its closest approach is 54.0 km/s,

what is its speed when it is farthest from the Sun? The angular momentum of the comet about the Sun is conserved because no torque acts on the comet. The gravitational force exerted by the Sun on the comet has a moment arm of zero.

49. A constant horizontal force **F** is applied to a lawn roller having the form of a uniform solid cylinder of radius R and mass M (Fig. P11.49). If the roller rolls without slipping on the horizontal surface, show that (a) the acceleration of the center of mass is $2\mathbf{F}/3M$ and that (b) the minimum coefficient of friction necessary to prevent slipping is $F/3Mg$. (*Hint:* Consider the torque with respect to the center of mass.)

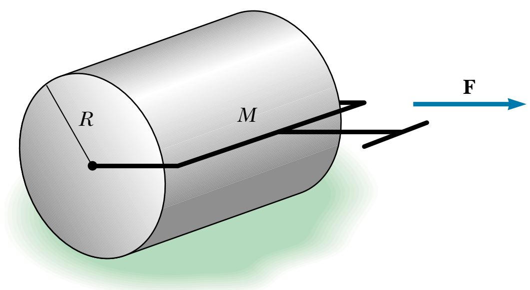


Figure P11.49

50. A light rope passes over a light, frictionless pulley. A bunch of bananas of mass M is fastened at one end, and a monkey of mass M clings to the other (Fig. P11.50).

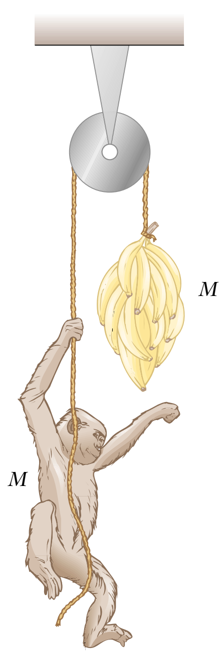


Figure P11.50

The monkey climbs the rope in an attempt to reach the bananas. (a) Treating the system as consisting of the monkey, bananas, rope, and pulley, evaluate the net torque about the pulley axis. (b) Using the results to part (a), determine the total angular momentum about the pulley axis and describe the motion of the system. Will the monkey reach the bananas?

51. A solid sphere of mass m and radius r rolls without slipping along the track shown in Figure P11.51. The sphere starts from rest with its lowest point at height h above the bottom of a loop of radius R, which is much larger than r. (a) What is the minimum value that h can have (in terms of R) if the sphere is to complete the loop? (b) What are the force components on the sphere at point P if $h = 3R$?

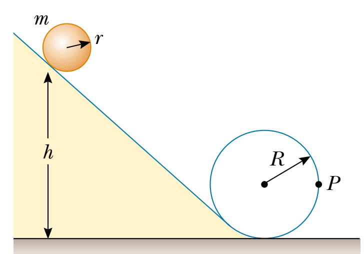


Figure P11.51

52. A thin rod with a mass of 0.630 kg and a length of 1.24 m is at rest, hanging vertically from a strong fixed hinge at its top end. Suddenly, a horizontal impulsive force (14.7**i**) N is applied to it. (a) Suppose that the force acts at the bottom end of the rod. Find the acceleration of the rod's center of mass and the horizontal force that the hinge exerts. (b) Suppose that the force acts at the midpoint of the rod. Find the acceleration of this point and the horizontal hinge reaction. (c) Where can the impulse be applied so that the hinge exerts no horizontal force? (This point is called the *center of percussion.*)

53. At one moment, a bowling ball is both sliding and spinning on a horizontal surface such that its rotational kinetic energy equals its translational kinetic energy. Let v_{CM} represent the ball's center-of-mass speed relative to the surface. Let v_r represent the speed of the topmost point on the ball's surface relative to the center of mass. Find the ratio v_{CM}/v_r.

54. A projectile of mass m moves to the right with speed v_i (Fig. P11.54a). The projectile strikes and sticks to the end of a stationary rod of mass M and length d that is pivoted about a frictionless axle through its center (Fig. P11.54b). (a) Find the angular speed of the system right after the collision. (b) Determine the fractional loss in mechanical energy due to the collision.

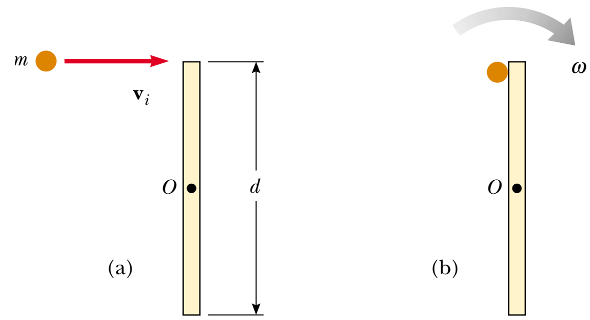


Figure P11.54

55. A mass m is attached to a cord passing through a small hole in a frictionless, horizontal surface (Fig. P11.55). The mass is initially orbiting with speed v_i in a circle of radius r_i. The cord is then slowly pulled from below, and the radius of the circle decreases to r. (a) What is the speed of the mass when the radius is r? (b) Find the tension in the cord as a function of r. (c) How much work W is done in moving m from r_i to r? (*Note:* The tension depends on r.) (d) Obtain numerical values for v, T, and W when $r = 0.100$ m, $m = 50.0$ g, $r_i = 0.300$ m, and $v_i = 1.50$ m/s.

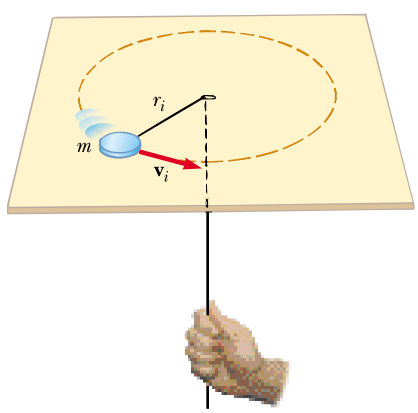


Figure P11.55

56. A bowler releases a bowling ball with no spin, sending it sliding straight down the alley toward the pins. The ball continues to slide for some distance before its motion becomes rolling without slipping; of what order of magnitude is this distance? State the quantities you take as data, the values you measure or estimate for them, and your reasoning.

57. Following Thanksgiving dinner, your uncle falls into a deep sleep while sitting straight up and facing the television set. A naughty grandchild balances a small spherical grape at the top of his bald head, which itself has the shape of a sphere. After all of the children have had time to giggle, the grape starts from rest and rolls down your uncle's head without slipping. It loses contact with your uncle's scalp when the radial line joining it to the center of curvature makes an angle θ with the vertical. What is the measure of angle θ?

58. A thin rod of length h and mass M is held vertically with its lower end resting on a frictionless horizontal surface. The rod is then released to fall freely. (a) Determine the speed of its center of mass just before it hits the horizontal surface. (b) Now suppose that the rod has a fixed pivot at its lower end. Determine the speed of the rod's center of mass just before it hits the surface.

WEB 59. Two astronauts (Fig. P11.59), each having a mass of 75.0 kg, are connected by a 10.0-m rope of negligible mass. They are isolated in space, orbiting their center of mass at speeds of 5.00 m/s. (a) Treating the astronauts as particles, calculate the magnitude of the angular momentum and (b) the rotational energy of the system. By pulling on the rope, one of the astronauts shortens the distance between them to 5.00 m. (c) What is the new angular momentum of the system? (d) What are the astronauts' new speeds? (e) What is the new rotational energy of the system? (f) How much work is done by the astronaut in shortening the rope?

60. Two astronauts (see Fig. P11.59), each having a mass M, are connected by a rope of length d having negligible mass. They are isolated in space, orbiting their center of mass at speeds v. Treating the astronauts as particles, calculate (a) the magnitude of the angular momentum and (b) the rotational energy of the system. By pulling on the rope, one of the astronauts shortens the distance between them to $d/2$. (c) What is the new angular momentum of the system? (d) What are the astronauts' new speeds? (e) What is the new rotational energy of the system? (f) How much work is done by the astronaut in shortening the rope?

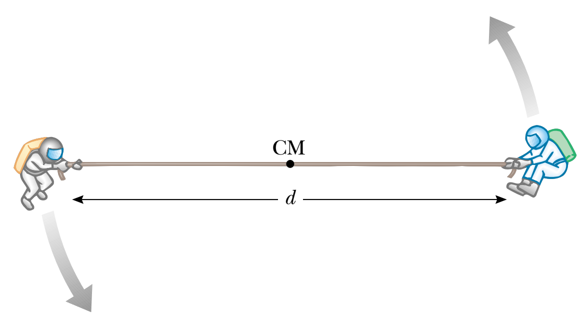


Figure P11.59 Problems 59 and 60.

61. A solid cube of wood of side $2a$ and mass M is resting on a horizontal surface. The cube is constrained to ro-

tate about an axis AB (Fig. P11.61). A bullet of mass m and speed v is shot at the face opposite $ABCD$ at a height of $4a/3$. The bullet becomes embedded in the cube. Find the minimum value of v required to tip the cube so that it falls on face $ABCD$. Assume $m \ll M$.

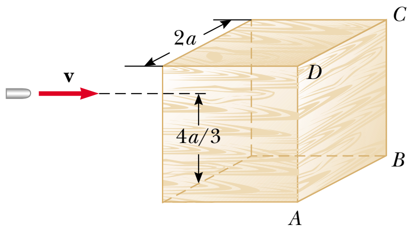


Figure P11.61

62. A large, cylindrical roll of paper of initial radius R lies on a long, horizontal surface with the open end of the paper nailed to the surface. The roll is given a slight shove ($v_i \approx 0$) and begins to unroll. (a) Determine the speed of the center of mass of the roll when its radius has diminished to r. (b) Calculate a numerical value for this speed at $r = 1.00$ mm, assuming $R = 6.00$ m. (c) What happens to the energy of the system when the paper is completely unrolled? (*Hint:* Assume that the roll has a uniform density and apply energy methods.)

63. A spool of wire of mass M and radius R is unwound under a constant force $\mathbf{F}$ (Fig. P11.63). Assuming that the spool is a uniform solid cylinder that does not slip, show that (a) the acceleration of the center of mass is $4\mathbf{F}/3M$ and that (b) the force of friction is to the *right* and is equal in magnitude to $F/3$. (c) If the cylinder starts from rest and rolls without slipping, what is the speed of its center of mass after it has rolled through a distance d?

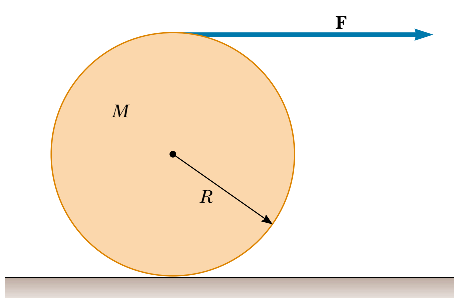


Figure P11.63

64. A uniform solid disk is set into rotation with an angular speed ω_i about an axis through its center. While still rotating at this speed, the disk is placed into contact with a horizontal surface and released, as shown in Figure P11.64. (a) What is the angular speed of the disk once pure rolling takes place? (b) Find the fractional loss in kinetic energy from the time the disk is released until the time pure rolling occurs. (*Hint:* Consider torques about the center of mass.)

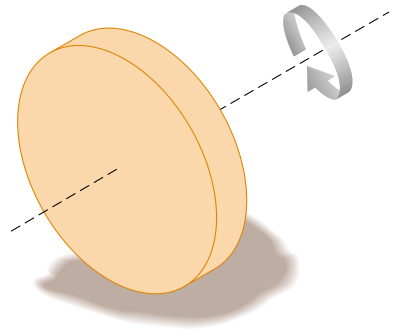


Figure P11.64 Problems 64 and 65.

65. Suppose a solid disk of radius R is given an angular speed ω_i about an axis through its center and is then lowered to a horizontal surface and released, as shown in Problem 64 (see Fig. P11.64). Furthermore, assume that the coefficient of friction between the disk and the surface is μ. (a) Show that the time it takes for pure rolling motion to occur is $R\omega_i/3\mu g$. (b) Show that the distance the disk travels before pure rolling occurs is $R^2\omega_i^2/18\mu g$.

66. A solid cube of side $2a$ and mass M is sliding on a frictionless surface with uniform velocity $\mathbf{v}$, as shown in Figure P11.66a. It hits a small obstacle at the end of the table; this causes the cube to tilt, as shown in Figure

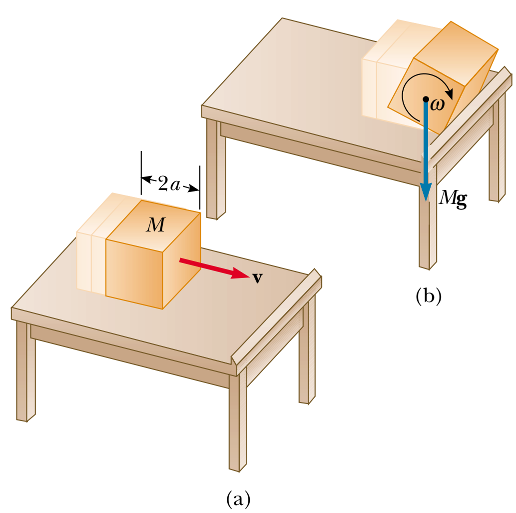


Figure P11.66

P11.66b. Find the minimum value of **v** such that the cube falls off the table. Note that the moment of inertia of the cube about an axis along one of its edges is $8Ma^2/3$. (*Hint:* The cube undergoes an inelastic collision at the edge.)

67. A plank with a mass $M = 6.00$ kg rides on top of two identical solid cylindrical rollers that have $R = 5.00$ cm and $m = 2.00$ kg (Fig. P11.67). The plank is pulled by a constant horizontal force of magnitude $F = 6.00$ N applied to the end of the plank and perpendicular to the axes of the cylinders (which are parallel). The cylinders roll without slipping on a flat surface. Also, no slipping occurs between the cylinders and the plank. (a) Find the acceleration of the plank and that of the rollers. (b) What frictional forces are acting?

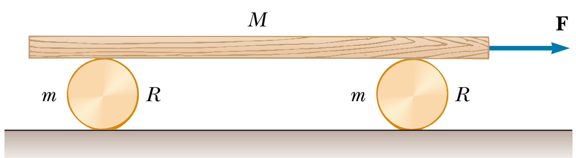


Figure P11.67

68. A spool of wire rests on a horizontal surface as in Figure P11.68. As the wire is pulled, the spool does not slip at the contact point P. On separate trials, each one of the forces $\mathbf{F}_1$, $\mathbf{F}_2$, $\mathbf{F}_3$, and $\mathbf{F}_4$ is applied to the spool. For each one of these forces, determine the direction in which the spool will roll. Note that the line of action of $\mathbf{F}_2$ passes through P.

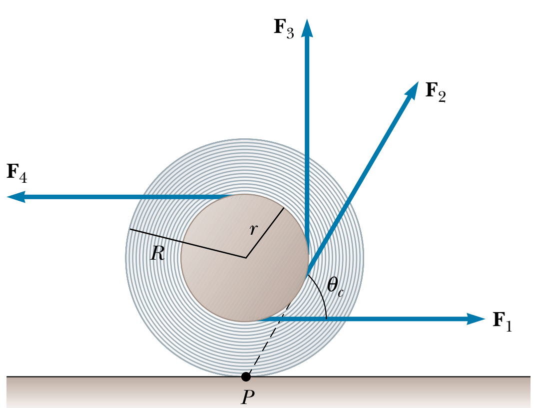


Figure P11.68 Problems 68 and 69.

69. The spool of wire shown in Figure P11.68 has an inner radius r and an outer radius R. The angle θ between the applied force and the horizontal can be varied. Show that the critical angle for which the spool does not slip and remains stationary is

$$\cos\theta_c = \frac{r}{R}$$

(*Hint:* At the critical angle, the line of action of the applied force passes through the contact point.)

70. In a demonstration that employs a ballistics cart, a ball is projected vertically upward from a cart moving with constant velocity along the horizontal direction. The ball lands in the catching cup of the cart because both the cart and the ball have the same horizontal component of velocity. Now consider a ballistics cart on an incline making an angle θ with the horizontal, as shown in Figure P11.70. The cart (including its wheels) has a mass M, and the moment of inertia of each of the two wheels is $mR^2/2$. (a) Using conservation of energy considerations (assuming that there is no friction between the cart and the axles) and assuming pure rolling motion (that is, no slipping), show that the acceleration of the cart along the incline is

$$a_x = \left(\frac{M}{M + 2m}\right) g\sin\theta$$

(b) Note that the x component of acceleration of the ball released by the cart is $g\sin\theta$. Thus, the x component of the cart's acceleration is *smaller* than that of the ball by the factor $M/(M + 2m)$. Use this fact and kinematic equations to show that the ball overshoots the cart by an amount Δx, where

$$\Delta x = \left(\frac{4m}{M + 2m}\right)\left(\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos^2\theta}\right)\frac{v_{yi}^{\,2}}{g}$$

and v_{yi} is the initial speed of the ball imparted to it by the spring in the cart. (c) Show that the distance d that the ball travels measured along the incline is

$$d = \frac{2v_{yi}^{\,2}}{g}\,\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos^2\theta}$$

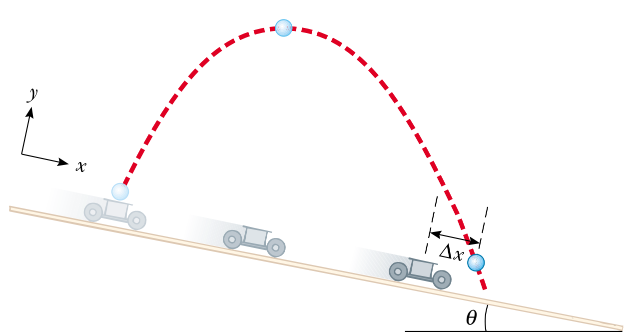


Figure P11.70

Answers to Quick Quizzes

11.1 There is very little resistance to motion that can reduce the kinetic energy of the rolling ball. Even though there is friction between the ball and the floor (if there were not, then no rotation would occur, and the ball would slide), there is no relative motion of the two surfaces (by the definition of "rolling"), and so kinetic friction cannot reduce K. (Air drag and friction associated with deformation of the ball eventually stop the ball.)

11.2 The box. Because none of the box's initial potential energy is converted to rotational kinetic energy, at any time $t > 0$ its translational kinetic energy is greater than that of the rolling ball.

11.3 Zero. If she were moving directly toward the pole, **r** and **p** would be antiparallel to each other, and the sine of the angle between them is zero; therefore, $L = 0$.

11.4 Both (a) and (b) are false. The net force is not necessarily zero. If the line of action of the net force passes through the point, then the net torque about an axis passing through that point is zero even though the net force is not zero. Because the net force is not necessarily zero, you cannot conclude that the particle's velocity is constant.

11.5 The student does work as he walks from the rim of the platform toward its center.

11.6 Because it is perpendicular to the precessional motion of the top, the force of gravity does no work. This is a situation in which a force causes motion but does no work.

PUZZLER

This one-bottle wine holder is an interesting example of a mechanical system that seems to defy gravity. The system (holder plus bottle) is balanced when its center of gravity is directly over the lowest support point. What two conditions are necessary for an object to exhibit this kind of stability? *(Charles D. Winters)*

chapter

12 Static Equilibrium and Elasticity

Chapter Outline

In Chapters 10 and 11 we studied the dynamics of rigid objects—that is, objects whose parts remain at a fixed separation with respect to each other when subjected to external forces. Part of this chapter addresses the conditions under which a rigid object is in equilibrium. The term *equilibrium* implies either that the object is at rest or that its center of mass moves with constant velocity. We deal here only with the former case, in which the object is described as being in *static equilibrium.* Static equilibrium represents a common situation in engineering practice, and the principles it involves are of special interest to civil engineers, architects, and mechanical engineers. If you are an engineering student you will undoubtedly take an advanced course in statics in the future.

The last section of this chapter deals with how objects deform under load conditions. Such deformations are usually elastic and do not affect the conditions for equilibrium. An *elastic* object returns to its original shape when the deforming forces are removed. Several elastic constants are defined, each corresponding to a different type of deformation.

12.1 THE CONDITIONS FOR EQUILIBRIUM

In Chapter 5 we stated that one necessary condition for equilibrium is that the net force acting on an object be zero. If the object is treated as a particle, then this is the only condition that must be satisfied for equilibrium. The situation with real (extended) objects is more complex, however, because these objects cannot be treated as particles. For an extended object to be in static equilibrium, a second condition must be satisfied. This second condition involves the net torque acting on the extended object. Note that equilibrium does not require the absence of motion. For example, a rotating object can have constant angular velocity and still be in equilibrium.

Consider a single force $\mathbf{F}$ acting on a rigid object, as shown in Figure 12.1. The effect of the force depends on its point of application P. If $\mathbf{r}$ is the position vector of this point relative to O, the torque associated with the force $\mathbf{F}$ about O is given by Equation 11.7:

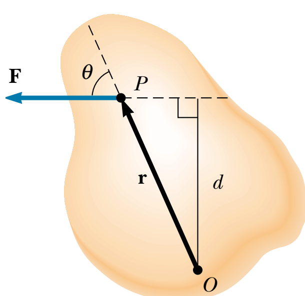


Figure 12.1 A single force $\mathbf{F}$ acts on a rigid object at the point P.

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$$

Recall from the discussion of the vector product in Section 11.2 that the vector $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ is perpendicular to the plane formed by $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{F}$. You can use the right-hand rule to determine the direction of $\boldsymbol{\tau}$: Curl the fingers of your right hand in the direction of rotation that $\mathbf{F}$ tends to cause about an axis through O: your thumb then points in the direction of $\boldsymbol{\tau}$. Hence, in Figure 12.1 $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ is directed toward you out of the page.

As you can see from Figure 12.1, the tendency of $\mathbf{F}$ to rotate the object about an axis through O depends on the moment arm d, as well as on the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}$. Recall that the magnitude of $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ is Fd (see Eq. 10.19). Now suppose a rigid object is acted on first by force $\mathbf{F}_1$ and later by force $\mathbf{F}_2$. If the two forces have the same magnitude, they will produce the same effect on the object only if they have the same direction and the same line of action. In other words,

Equivalent forces

two forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ are **equivalent** if and only if $F_1 = F_2$ and if and only if the two produce the same torque about any axis.

The two forces shown in Figure 12.2 are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction. They are *not* equivalent. The force directed to the right tends to rotate

the object clockwise about an axis perpendicular to the diagram through O, whereas the force directed to the left tends to rotate it counterclockwise about that axis.

Suppose an object is pivoted about an axis through its center of mass, as shown in Figure 12.3. Two forces of equal magnitude act in opposite directions along parallel lines of action. A pair of forces acting in this manner form what is called a **couple.** (The two forces shown in Figure 12.2 also form a couple.) Do not make the mistake of thinking that the forces in a couple are a result of Newton's third law. They cannot be third-law forces because they act on the same object. Third-law force pairs act on different objects. Because each force produces the same torque Fd, the net torque has a magnitude of $2Fd$. Clearly, the object rotates clockwise and undergoes an angular acceleration about the axis. With respect to rotational motion, this is a nonequilibrium situation. The net torque on the object gives rise to an angular acceleration α according to the relationship $\Sigma\tau = 2Fd = I\alpha$ (see Eq. 10.21).

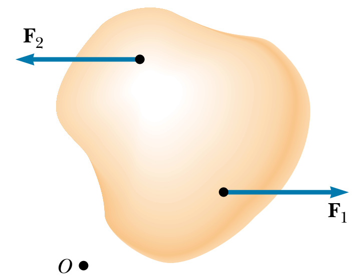


Figure 12.2 The forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ are not equivalent because they do not produce the same torque about some axis, even though they are equal in magnitude and opposite in direction.

In general, an object is in rotational equilibrium only if its angular acceleration $\alpha = 0$. Because $\Sigma\tau = I\alpha$ for rotation about a fixed axis, our second necessary condition for equilibrium is that **the net torque about any axis must be zero.** We now have two necessary conditions for equilibrium of an object:

Conditions for equilibrium

1. The resultant external force must equal zero. $\sum \mathbf{F} = 0$ **(12.1)**

2. The resultant external torque about *any* axis must be zero. $\sum \boldsymbol{\tau} = 0$ **(12.2)**

The first condition is a statement of translational equilibrium; it tells us that the linear acceleration of the center of mass of the object must be zero when viewed from an inertial reference frame. The second condition is a statement of rotational equilibrium and tells us that the angular acceleration about any axis must be zero. In the special case of **static equilibrium,** which is the main subject of this chapter, the object is at rest and so has no linear or angular speed (that is, $v_{CM} = 0$ and $\omega = 0$).

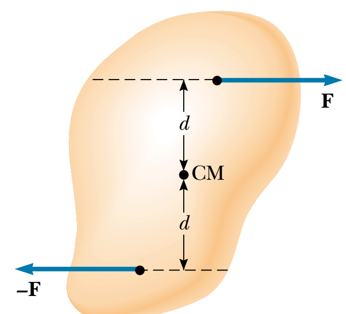


Figure 12.3 Two forces of equal magnitude form a couple if their lines of action are different parallel lines. In this case, the object rotates clockwise. The net torque about any axis is $2Fd$.

Quick Quiz 12.1

(a) Is it possible for a situation to exist in which Equation 12.1 is satisfied while Equation 12.2 is not? (b) Can Equation 12.2 be satisfied while Equation 12.1 is not?

The two vector expressions given by Equations 12.1 and 12.2 are equivalent, in general, to six scalar equations: three from the first condition for equilibrium, and three from the second (corresponding to x, y, and z components). Hence, in a complex system involving several forces acting in various directions, you could be faced with solving a set of equations with many unknowns. Here, we restrict our discussion to situations in which all the forces lie in the xy plane. (Forces whose vector representations are in the same plane are said to be *coplanar.*) With this restriction, we must deal with only three scalar equations. Two of these come from balancing the forces in the x and y directions. The third comes from the torque equation—namely, that the net torque about *any* point in the xy plane must be zero. Hence, the two conditions of equilibrium provide the equations

$$\sum F_x = 0 \qquad \sum F_y = 0 \qquad \sum \tau_z = 0 \tag{12.3}$$

where the axis of the torque equation is arbitrary, as we now show.

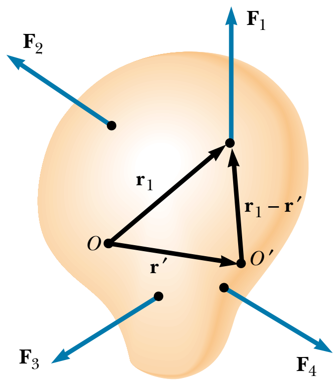


Figure 12.4 Construction showing that if the net torque is zero about origin O, it is also zero about any other origin, such as O'.

Regardless of the number of forces that are acting, if an object is in translational equilibrium and if the net torque is zero about one axis, then the net torque must also be zero about any other axis. The point can be inside or outside the boundaries of the object. Consider an object being acted on by several forces such that the resultant force $\Sigma\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 + \mathbf{F}_3 + \cdots = 0$. Figure 12.4 describes this situation (for clarity, only four forces are shown). The point of application of $\mathbf{F}_1$ relative to O is specified by the position vector $\mathbf{r}_1$. Similarly, the points of application of $\mathbf{F}_2, \mathbf{F}_3, \ldots$ are specified by $\mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_3, \ldots$ (not shown). The net torque about an axis through O is

$$\sum \boldsymbol{\tau}_O = \mathbf{r}_1 \times \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{r}_2 \times \mathbf{F}_2 + \mathbf{r}_3 \times \mathbf{F}_3 + \cdots$$

Now consider another arbitrary point O' having a position vector $\mathbf{r}'$ relative to O. The point of application of $\mathbf{F}_1$ relative to O' is identified by the vector $\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}'$. Likewise, the point of application of $\mathbf{F}_2$ relative to O' is $\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}'$, and so forth. Therefore, the torque about an axis through O' is

$$\begin{aligned}\sum \boldsymbol{\tau}_{O'} &= (\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}') \times \mathbf{F}_1 + (\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}') \times \mathbf{F}_2 + (\mathbf{r}_3 - \mathbf{r}') \times \mathbf{F}_3 + \cdots \\ &= \mathbf{r}_1 \times \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{r}_2 \times \mathbf{F}_2 + \mathbf{r}_3 \times \mathbf{F}_3 + \cdots - \mathbf{r}' \times (\mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 + \mathbf{F}_3 + \cdots)\end{aligned}$$

Because the net force is assumed to be zero (given that the object is in translational equilibrium), the last term vanishes, and we see that the torque about O' is equal to the torque about O. Hence, **if an object is in translational equilibrium and the net torque is zero about one point, then the net torque must be zero about any other point.**

12.2 MORE ON THE CENTER OF GRAVITY

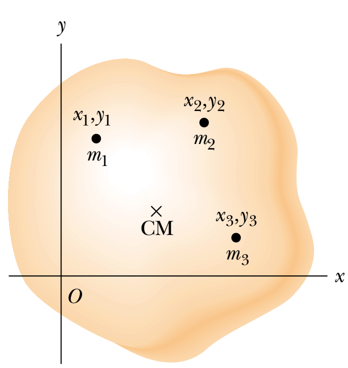


Figure 12.5 An object can be divided into many small particles each having a specific mass and specific coordinates. These particles can be used to locate the center of mass.

We have seen that the point at which a force is applied can be critical in determining how an object responds to that force. For example, two equal-magnitude but oppositely directed forces result in equilibrium if they are applied at the same point on an object. However, if the point of application of one of the forces is moved, so that the two forces no longer act along the same line of action, then a force couple results and the object undergoes an angular acceleration. (This is the situation shown in Figure 12.3.)

Whenever we deal with a rigid object, one of the forces we must consider is the force of gravity acting on it, and we must know the point of application of this force. As we learned in Section 9.6, on every object is a special point called its center of gravity. All the various gravitational forces acting on all the various mass elements of the object are equivalent to a single gravitational force acting through this point. Thus, to compute the torque due to the gravitational force on an object of mass M, we need only consider the force $M\mathbf{g}$ acting at the center of gravity of the object.

How do we find this special point? As we mentioned in Section 9.6, if we assume that $\mathbf{g}$ is uniform over the object, then the center of gravity of the object coincides with its center of mass. To see that this is so, consider an object of arbitrary shape lying in the xy plane, as illustrated in Figure 12.5. Suppose the object is divided into a large number of particles of masses $m_1, m_2, m_3, \ldots$ having coordinates $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), (x_3, y_3), \ldots$. In

Equation 9.28 we defined the x coordinate of the center of mass of such an object to be

$$x_{CM} = \frac{m_1x_1 + m_2x_2 + m_3x_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} = \frac{\sum_i m_ix_i}{\sum_i m_i}$$

We use a similar equation to define the y coordinate of the center of mass, replacing each x with its y counterpart.

Let us now examine the situation from another point of view by considering the force of gravity exerted on each particle, as shown in Figure 12.6. Each particle contributes a torque about the origin equal in magnitude to the particle's weight mg multiplied by its moment arm. For example, the torque due to the force $m_1\mathbf{g}_1$ is $m_1g_1x_1$, where g_1 is the magnitude of the gravitational field at the position of the particle of mass m_1. We wish to locate the center of gravity, the point at which application of the single gravitational force $M\mathbf{g}$ (where $M = m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots$ is the total mass of the object) has the same effect on rotation as does the combined effect of all the individual gravitational forces $m_i\mathbf{g}_i$. Equating the torque resulting from $M\mathbf{g}$ acting at the center of gravity to the sum of the torques acting on the individual particles gives

$$(m_1g_1 + m_2g_2 + m_3g_3 + \cdots)x_{CG} = m_1g_1x_1 + m_2g_2x_2 + m_3g_3x_3 + \cdots$$

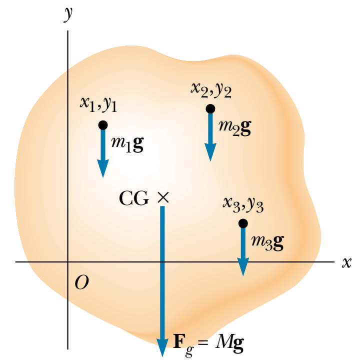


Figure 12.6 The center of gravity of an object is located at the center of mass if $\mathbf{g}$ is constant over the object.

This expression accounts for the fact that the gravitational field strength g can in general vary over the object. If we assume uniform g over the object (as is usually the case), then the g terms cancel and we obtain

$$x_{CG} = \frac{m_1x_1 + m_2x_2 + m_3x_3 + \cdots}{m_1 + m_2 + m_3 + \cdots} \qquad \textbf{(12.4)}$$

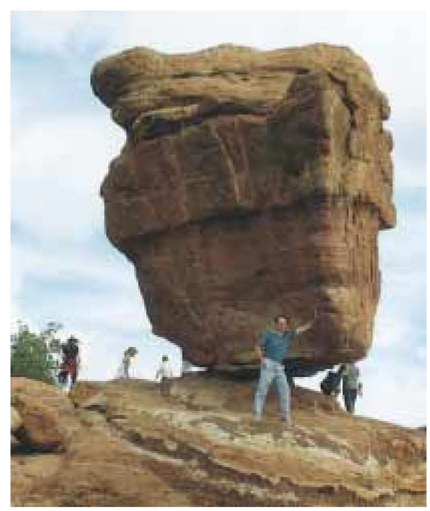
Comparing this result with Equation 9.28, we see that **the center of gravity is located at the center of mass as long as the object is in a uniform gravitational field.**

In several examples presented in the next section, we are concerned with homogeneous, symmetric objects. The center of gravity for any such object coincides with its geometric center.

12.3 EXAMPLES OF RIGID OBJECTS IN STATIC EQUILIBRIUM

The photograph of the one-bottle wine holder on the first page of this chapter shows one example of a balanced mechanical system that seems to defy gravity. For the system (wine holder plus bottle) to be in equilibrium, the net external force must be zero (see Eq. 12.1) and the net external torque must be zero (see Eq. 12.2). The second condition can be satisfied only when the center of gravity of the system is directly over the support point.

In working static equilibrium problems, it is important to recognize all the external forces acting on the object. Failure to do so results in an incorrect analysis. When analyzing an object in equilibrium under the action of several external forces, use the following procedure.



A large balanced rock at the Garden of the Gods in Colorado Springs, Colorado—an example of stable equilibrium.

Problem-Solving Hints

Objects in Static Equilibrium

- Draw a simple, neat diagram of the system.
- Isolate the object being analyzed. Draw a free-body diagram and then show and label all external forces acting on the object, indicating where those forces are applied. Do not include forces exerted by the object on its surroundings. (For systems that contain more than one object, draw a *separate* free-body diagram for each one.) Try to guess the correct direction for each force. If the direction you select leads to a negative force, do not be alarmed; this merely means that the direction of the force is the opposite of what you guessed.
- Establish a convenient coordinate system for the object and find the components of the forces along the two axes. Then apply the first condition for equilibrium. Remember to keep track of the signs of all force components.
- Choose a convenient axis for calculating the net torque on the object. Remember that the choice of origin for the torque equation is arbitrary; therefore, choose an origin that simplifies your calculation as much as possible. Note that a force that acts along a line passing through the point chosen as the origin gives zero contribution to the torque and thus can be ignored.

The first and second conditions for equilibrium give a set of linear equations containing several unknowns, and these equations can be solved simultaneously.

EXAMPLE 12.1 The Seesaw

A uniform 40.0-N board supports a father and daughter weighing 800 N and 350 N, respectively, as shown in Figure 12.7. If the support (called the *fulcrum*) is under the center of gravity of the board and if the father is 1.00 m from the center, (a) determine the magnitude of the upward force **n** exerted on the board by the support.

Solution First note that, in addition to **n**, the external forces acting on the board are the downward forces exerted by each person and the force of gravity acting on the board. We know that the board's center of gravity is at its geometric center because we were told the board is uniform. Because the system is in static equilibrium, the upward force **n** must balance all the downward forces. From $\Sigma F_y = 0$, we have, once we define upward as the positive y direction,

$$n - 800 \text{ N} - 350 \text{ N} - 40.0 \text{ N} = 0$$

$$n = \boxed{1\,190 \text{ N}}$$

(The equation $\Sigma F_x = 0$ also applies, but we do not need to consider it because no forces act horizontally on the board.)

(b) Determine where the child should sit to balance the system.

Solution To find this position, we must invoke the second condition for equilibrium. Taking an axis perpendicular to the page through the center of gravity of the board as the axis for our torque equation (this means that the torques

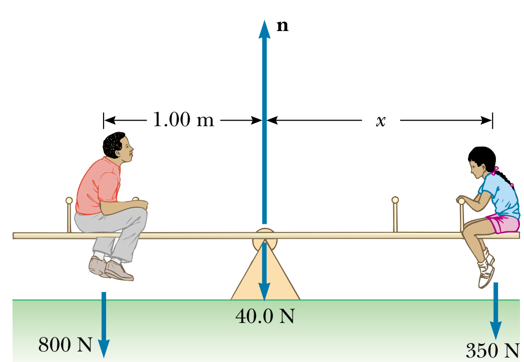


Figure 12.7 A balanced system.

produced by **n** and the force of gravity acting on the board about this axis are zero), we see from $\Sigma \tau = 0$ that

$$(800 \text{ N})(1.00 \text{ m}) - (350 \text{ N})x = 0$$

$$x = \boxed{2.29 \text{ m}}$$

(c) Repeat part (b) for another axis.

Solution To illustrate that the choice of axis is arbitrary, let us choose an axis perpendicular to the page and passing through the location of the father. Recall that the sign of the torque associated with a force is positive if that force tends to rotate the system counterclockwise, while the sign of the torque is negative if the force tends to rotate the system clockwise. In this case, $\Sigma \tau = 0$ yields

$$n(1.00 \text{ m}) - (40.0 \text{ N})(1.00 \text{ m}) - (350 \text{ N})(1.00 \text{ m} + x) = 0$$

From part (a) we know that $n = 1\,190$ N. Thus, we can solve for x to find $\boxed{x = 2.29 \text{ m.}}$ This result is in agreement with the one we obtained in part (b).

Quick Quiz 12.2

In Example 12.1, if the fulcrum did not lie under the board's center of gravity, what other information would you need to solve the problem?

Example 12.2 A Weighted Hand

A person holds a 50.0-N sphere in his hand. The forearm is horizontal, as shown in Figure 12.8a. The biceps muscle is attached 3.00 cm from the joint, and the sphere is 35.0 cm from the joint. Find the upward force exerted by the biceps on the forearm and the downward force exerted by the upper arm on the forearm and acting at the joint. Neglect the weight of the forearm.

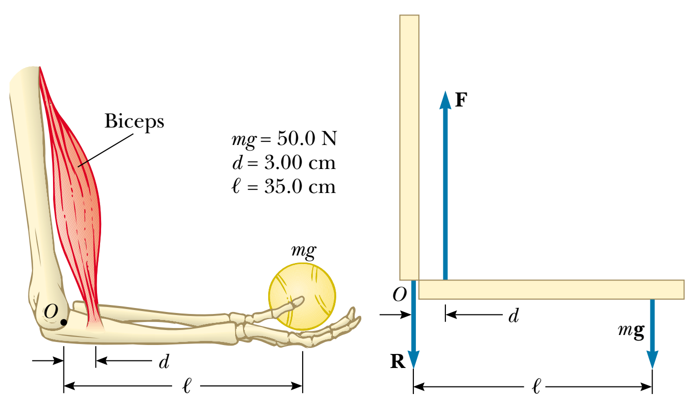


Figure 12.8 (a) The biceps muscle pulls upward with a force **F** that is essentially at right angles to the forearm. (b) The mechanical model for the system described in part (a).

Solution We simplify the situation by modeling the forearm as a bar as shown in Figure 12.8b, where **F** is the upward force exerted by the biceps and **R** is the downward force exerted by the upper arm at the joint. From the first condition for equilibrium, we have, with upward as the positive y direction,

$$(1) \qquad \sum F_y = F - R - 50.0 \text{ N} = 0$$

From the second condition for equilibrium, we know that the sum of the torques about any point must be zero. With the joint O as the axis, we have

$$Fd - mg\ell = 0$$

$$F(3.00 \text{ cm}) - (50.0 \text{ N})(35.0 \text{ cm}) = 0$$

$$F = \boxed{583 \text{ N}}$$

This value for F can be substituted into Equation (1) to give $R = 533$ N. As this example shows, the forces at joints and in muscles can be extremely large.

Exercise In reality, the biceps makes an angle of 15.0° with the vertical; thus, **F** has both a vertical and a horizontal component. Find the magnitude of **F** and the components of **R** when you include this fact in your analysis.

Answer $F = 604$ N, $R_x = 156$ N, $R_y = 533$ N.

Example 12.3 Standing on a Horizontal Beam

A uniform horizontal beam with a length of 8.00 m and a weight of 200 N is attached to a wall by a pin connection. Its far end is supported by a cable that makes an angle of 53.0° with the horizontal (Fig. 12.9a). If a 600-N person stands 2.00 m from the wall, find the tension in the cable, as well as the magnitude and direction of the force exerted by the wall on the beam.

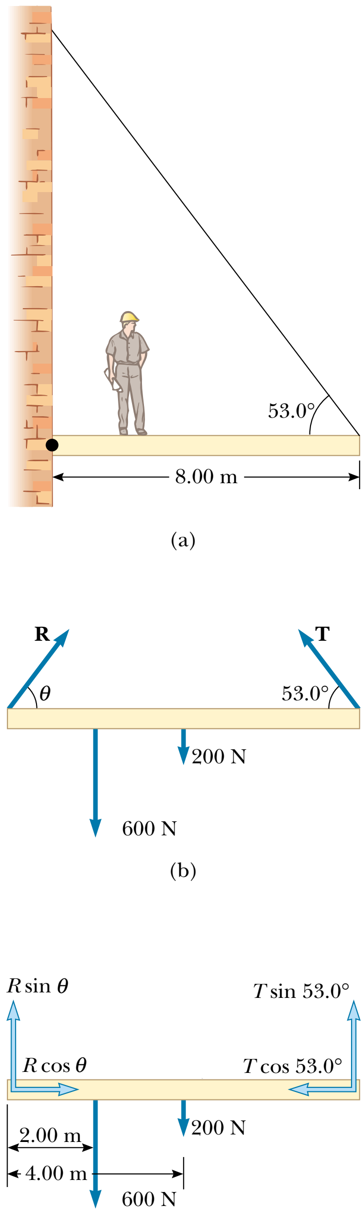


Figure 12.9 (a) A uniform beam supported by a cable. (b) The free-body diagram for the beam. (c) The free-body diagram for the beam showing the components of **R** and **T**.

Solution First we must identify all the external forces acting on the beam: They are the 200-N force of gravity, the force **T** exerted by the cable, the force **R** exerted by the wall at the pivot, and the 600-N force that the person exerts on the beam. These forces are all indicated in the free-body diagram for the beam shown in Figure 12.9b. When we consider directions for forces, it sometimes is helpful if we imagine what would happen if a force were suddenly removed. For example, if the wall were to vanish suddenly, the left end of the beam would probably move to the left as it begins to fall. This tells us that the wall is not only holding the beam up but is also pressing outward against it. Thus, we draw the vector **R** as shown in Figure 12.9b. If we resolve **T** and **R** into horizontal and vertical components, as shown in Figure 12.9c, and apply the first condition for equilibrium, we obtain

$$(1) \qquad \sum F_x = R\cos\theta - T\cos 53.0^\circ = 0$$

$$(2) \qquad \sum F_y = R\sin\theta + T\sin 53.0^\circ - 600\text{ N} - 200\text{ N} = 0$$

where we have chosen rightward and upward as our positive directions. Because R, T, and θ are all unknown, we cannot obtain a solution from these expressions alone. (The number of simultaneous equations must equal the number of unknowns for us to be able to solve for the unknowns.)

Now let us invoke the condition for rotational equilibrium. A convenient axis to choose for our torque equation is the one that passes through the pin connection. The feature that makes this point so convenient is that the force **R** and the horizontal component of **T** both have a moment arm of zero; hence, these forces provide no torque about this point. Recalling our counterclockwise-equals-positive convention for the sign of the torque about an axis and noting that the moment arms of the 600-N, 200-N, and $T\sin 53.0^\circ$ forces are 2.00 m, 4.00 m, and 8.00 m, respectively, we obtain

$$\sum \tau = (T\sin 53.0^\circ)(8.00\text{ m}) - (600\text{ N})(2.00\text{ m}) - (200\text{ N})(4.00\text{ m}) = 0$$

$$T = \boxed{313\text{ N}}$$

Thus, the torque equation with this axis gives us one of the unknowns directly! We now substitute this value into Equations (1) and (2) and find that

$$R\cos\theta = 188\text{ N}$$

$$R\sin\theta = 550\text{ N}$$

We divide the second equation by the first and, recalling the trigonometric identity $\sin\theta/\cos\theta = \tan\theta$, we obtain

$$\tan\theta = \frac{550\text{ N}}{188\text{ N}} = 2.93$$

$$\theta = \boxed{71.1^\circ}$$

This positive value indicates that our estimate of the direction of **R** was accurate.

Finally,

$$R = \frac{188\text{ N}}{\cos\theta} = \frac{188\text{ N}}{\cos 71.1^\circ} = \boxed{580\text{ N}}$$

If we had selected some other axis for the torque equation, the solution would have been the same. For example, if

we had chosen an axis through the center of gravity of the beam, the torque equation would involve both T and R. However, this equation, coupled with Equations (1) and (2), could still be solved for the unknowns. Try it!

When many forces are involved in a problem of this nature, it is convenient to set up a table. For instance, for the example just given, we could construct the following table. Setting the sum of the terms in the last column equal to zero represents the condition of rotational equilibrium.

Force Component	Moment Arm Relative to O (m)	Torque About O (N·m)
$T\sin 53.0°$	8.00	$(8.00)T\sin 53.0°$
$T\cos 53.0°$	0	0
200 N	4.00	$-(4.00)(200)$
600 N	2.00	$-(2.00)(600)$
$R\sin\theta$	0	0
$R\cos\theta$	0	0

Example 12.4 The Leaning Ladder

A uniform ladder of length ℓ and weight $mg = 50$ N rests against a smooth, vertical wall (Fig. 12.10a). If the coefficient of static friction between the ladder and the ground is $\mu_s = 0.40$, find the minimum angle $\theta_{\min}$ at which the ladder does not slip.

Solution The free-body diagram showing all the external forces acting on the ladder is illustrated in Figure 12.10b. The reaction force **R** exerted by the ground on the ladder is the vector sum of a normal force **n** and the force of static friction $\mathbf{f}_s$. The reaction force **P** exerted by the wall on the ladder is horizontal because the wall is frictionless. Notice how we have included only forces that act on the ladder. For example, the forces exerted by the ladder on the ground and on the wall are not part of the problem and thus do not appear in the free-body diagram. Applying the first condition for equilibrium to the ladder, we have

$$\sum F_x = f - P = 0$$

$$\sum F_y = n - mg = 0$$

From the second equation we see that $n = mg = 50$ N. Furthermore, when the ladder is on the verge of slipping, the force of friction must be a maximum, which is given by $f_{s,\max} = \mu_s n = 0.40(50\text{ N}) = 20$ N. (Recall Eq. 5.8: $f_s \leq \mu_s n$.) Thus, at this angle, $P = 20$ N.

To find $\theta_{\min}$, we must use the second condition for equilibrium. When we take the torques about an axis through the origin O at the bottom of the ladder, we have

$$\sum \tau_O = P\ell\sin\theta - mg\frac{\ell}{2}\cos\theta = 0$$

Because $P = 20$ N when the ladder is about to slip, and because $mg = 50$ N, this expression gives

$$\tan\theta_{\min} = \frac{mg}{2P} = \frac{50\text{ N}}{40\text{ N}} = 1.25$$

$$\theta_{\min} = \boxed{51°}$$

An alternative approach is to consider the intersection O' of the lines of action of forces $m\mathbf{g}$ and **P**. Because the torque about any origin must be zero, the torque about O' must be zero. This requires that the line of action of **R** (the resultant of **n** and **f**) pass through O'. In other words, because the ladder is stationary, the three forces acting on it must all pass through some common point. (We say that such forces are *concurrent.*) With this condition, you could then obtain the angle ϕ that **R** makes with the horizontal (where ϕ is greater than θ). Because this approach depends on the length of the ladder, you would have to know the value of ℓ to obtain a value for $\theta_{\min}$.

Exercise For the angles labeled in Figure 12.10, show that $\tan\phi = 2\tan\theta$.

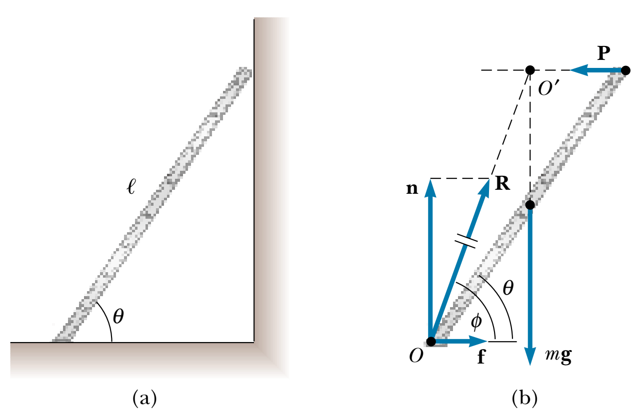


Figure 12.10 (a) A uniform ladder at rest, leaning against a smooth wall. The ground is rough. (b) The free-body diagram for the ladder. Note that the forces **R**, $m\mathbf{g}$, and **P** pass through a common point O'.

EXAMPLE 12.5 Negotiating a Curb

(a) Estimate the magnitude of the force **F** a person must apply to a wheelchair's main wheel to roll up over a sidewalk curb (Fig. 12.11a). This main wheel, which is the one that comes in contact with the curb, has a radius r, and the height of the curb is h.

Solution Normally, the person's hands supply the required force to a slightly smaller wheel that is concentric with the main wheel. We assume that the radius of the smaller wheel is the same as the radius of the main wheel, and so we can use r for our radius. Let us estimate a combined weight of $mg = 1\,400$ N for the person and the wheelchair and choose a wheel radius of $r = 30$ cm, as shown in Figure 12.11b. We also pick a curb height of $h = 10$ cm. We assume that the wheelchair and occupant are symmetric, and that each wheel supports a weight of 700 N. We then proceed to analyze only one of the wheels.

When the wheel is just about to be raised from the street, the reaction force exerted by the ground on the wheel at point Q goes to zero. Hence, at this time only three forces act on the wheel, as shown in Figure 12.11c. However, the force **R**, which is the force exerted on the wheel by the curb, acts at point P, and so if we choose to have our axis of rotation pass through point P, we do not need to include **R** in our torque equation. From the triangle OPQ shown in Figure 12.11b, we see that the moment arm d of the gravitational force $m\mathbf{g}$ acting on the wheel relative to point P is

$$d = \sqrt{r^2 - (r-h)^2} = \sqrt{2rh - h^2}$$

The moment arm of **F** relative to point P is $2r - h$. Therefore, the net torque acting on the wheel about point P is

$$mgd - F(2r - h) = 0$$

$$mg\sqrt{2rh - h^2} - F(2r-h) = 0$$

$$F = \frac{mg\sqrt{2rh - h^2}}{2r - h}$$

$$F = \frac{(700\text{ N})\sqrt{2(0.3\text{ m})(0.1\text{ m}) - (0.1\text{ m})^2}}{2(0.3\text{ m}) - 0.1\text{ m}} = \boxed{300\text{ N}}$$

(Notice that we have kept only one digit as significant.) This result indicates that the force that must be applied to each wheel is substantial. You may want to estimate the force required to roll a wheelchair up a typical sidewalk accessibility ramp for comparison.

(b) Determine the magnitude and direction of **R**.

Solution We use the first condition for equilibrium to determine the direction:

$$\sum F_x = F - R\cos\theta = 0$$

$$\sum F_y = R\sin\theta - mg = 0$$

Dividing the second equation by the first gives

$$\tan\theta = \frac{mg}{F} = \frac{700\text{ N}}{300\text{ N}}; \quad \theta = \boxed{70°}$$

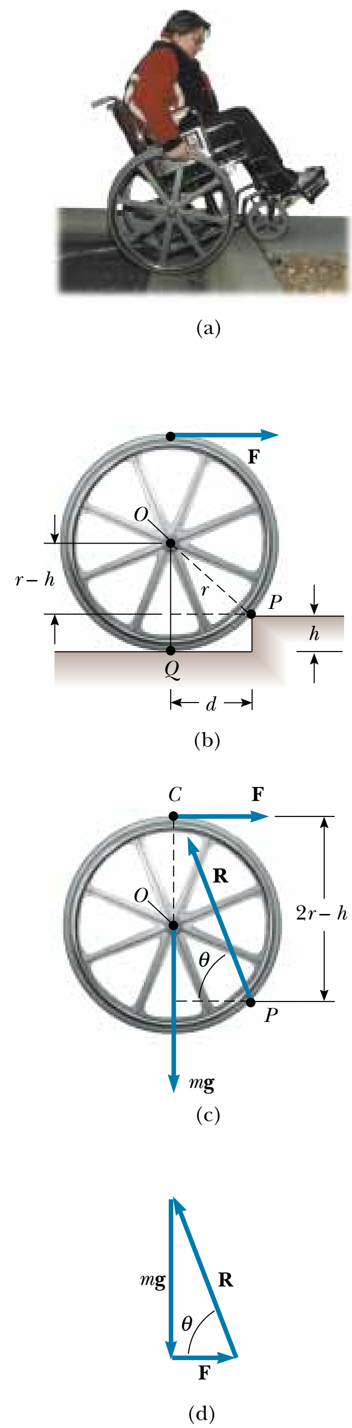


Figure 12.11 (a) A wheelchair and person of total weight mg being raised over a curb by a force **F**. (b) Details of the wheel and curb. (c) The free-body diagram for the wheel when it is just about to be raised. Three forces act on the wheel at this instant: **F**, which is exerted by the hand; **R**, which is exerted by the curb; and the gravitational force $m\mathbf{g}$. (d) The vector sum of the three external forces acting on the wheel is zero.

We can use the right triangle shown in Figure 12.11d to obtain R:

$$R = \sqrt{(mg)^2 + F^2} = \sqrt{(700\text{ N})^2 + (300\text{ N})^2} = \boxed{800\text{ N}}$$

Exercise Solve this problem by noting that the three forces acting on the wheel are concurrent (that is, that all three pass through the point C). The three forces form the sides of the triangle shown in Figure 12.11d.

APPLICATION Analysis of a Truss

Roofs, bridges, and other structures that must be both strong and lightweight often are made of trusses similar to the one shown in Figure 12.12a. Imagine that this truss structure represents part of a bridge. To approach this problem, we assume that the structural components are connected by pin joints. We also assume that the entire structure is free to slide horizontally because it sits on "rockers" on each end, which allow it to move back and forth as it undergoes thermal expansion and contraction. Assuming the mass of the bridge structure is negligible compared with the load, let us calculate the forces of tension or compression in all the structural components when it is supporting a 7 200-N load at the center (see Problem 58).

The force notation that we use here is not of our usual format. Until now, we have used the notation F_{AB} to mean "the force exerted by A on B." For this application, however, all double-letter subscripts on F indicate only the body exerting the force. The body on which a given force acts is not named in the subscript. For example, in Figure 12.12, F_{AB} is the force exerted by strut AB on the pin at A.

First, we apply Newton's second law to the truss as a whole in the vertical direction. Internal forces do not enter into this accounting. We balance the weight of the load with the normal forces exerted at the two ends by the supports on which the bridge rests:

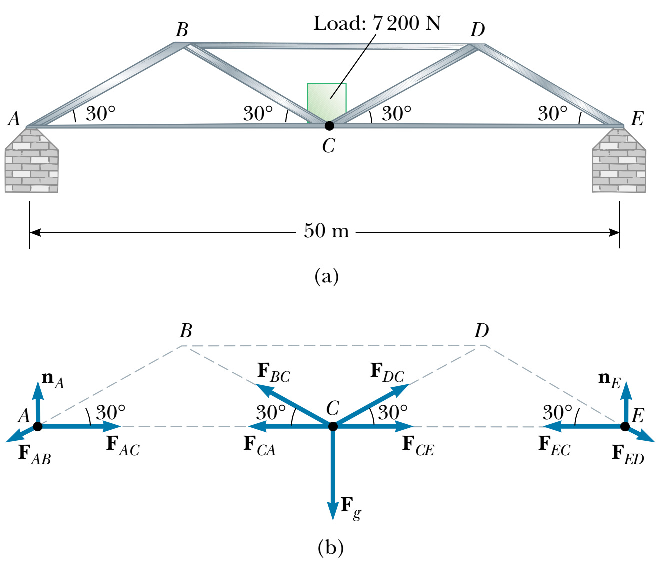


Figure 12.12 (a) Truss structure for a bridge. (b) The forces acting on the pins at points A, C, and E. As an exercise, you should diagram the forces acting on the pin at point B.

$$\sum F_y = n_A + n_E - F_g = 0$$
$$n_A + n_E = 7\,200\text{ N}$$

Next, we calculate the torque about A, noting that the overall length of the bridge structure is $L = 50$ m:

$$\sum \tau = Ln_E - (L/2)F_g = 0$$
$$n_E = F_g/2 = 3\,600\text{ N}$$

Although we could repeat the torque calculation for the right end (point E), it should be clear from symmetry arguments that $n_A = 3\,600$ N.

Now let us balance the vertical forces acting on the pin at point A. If we assume that strut AB is in compression, then the force F_{AB} that the strut exerts on the pin at point A has a negative y component. (If the strut is actually in tension, our calculations will result in a negative value for the magnitude of the force, still of the correct size):

$$\sum F_y = n_A - F_{AB}\sin 30° = 0$$
$$F_{AB} = 7\,200\text{ N}$$

The positive result shows that our assumption of compression was correct.

We can now find the forces acting in the strut between A and C by considering the horizontal forces acting on the pin at point A. Because point A is not accelerating, we can safely assume that F_{AC} must point toward the right (Fig. 12.12b); this indicates that the bar between points A and C is under tension:

$$\sum F_x = F_{AC} - F_{AB}\cos 30° = 0$$
$$F_{AC} = (7\,200\text{ N})\cos 30° = 6\,200\text{ N}$$

Now let us consider the vertical forces acting on the pin at point C. We shall assume that strut BC is in tension. (Imagine the subsequent motion of the pin at point C if strut BC were to break suddenly.) On the basis of symmetry, we assert that $F_{BC} = F_{DC}$ and that $F_{AC} = F_{EC}$:

$$\sum F_y = 2\,F_{BC}\sin 30° - 7\,200\text{ N} = 0$$
$$F_{BC} = 7\,200\text{ N}$$

Finally, we balance the horizontal forces on B, assuming that strut BD is in compression:

$$\sum F_x = F_{AB}\cos 30° + F_{BC}\cos 30° - F_{BD} = 0$$
$$(7\,200\text{ N})\cos 30° + (7\,200\text{ N})\cos 30° - F_{BD} = 0$$
$$F_{BD} = 12\,000\text{ N}$$

Thus, the top bar in a bridge of this design must be very strong.

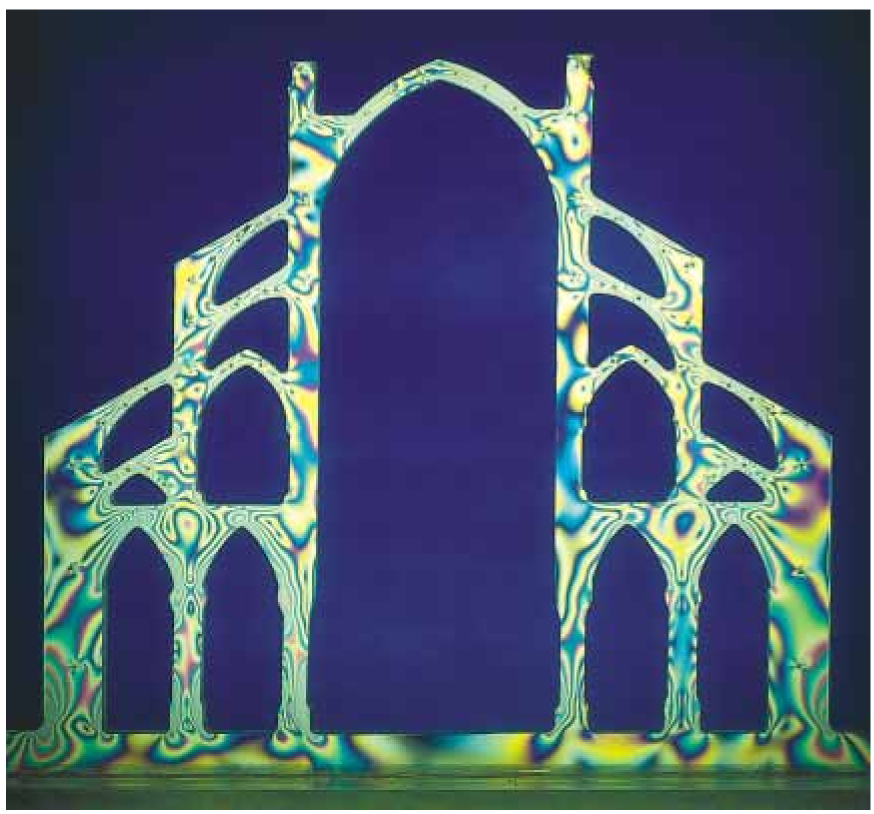
12.4 ELASTIC PROPERTIES OF SOLIDS

In our study of mechanics thus far, we have assumed that objects remain undeformed when external forces act on them. In reality, all objects are deformable. That is, it is possible to change the shape or the size of an object (or both) by applying external forces. As these changes take place, however, internal forces in the object resist the deformation.

We shall discuss the deformation of solids in terms of the concepts of stress and strain. **Stress** is a quantity that is proportional to the force causing a deformation; more specifically, stress is the external force acting on an object per unit cross-sectional area. **Strain** is a measure of the degree of deformation. It is found that, for sufficiently small stresses, **strain is proportional to stress;** the constant of proportionality depends on the material being deformed and on the nature of the deformation. We call this proportionality constant the **elastic modulus.** The elastic modulus is therefore the ratio of the stress to the resulting strain:

$$\text{Elastic modulus} \equiv \frac{\text{stress}}{\text{strain}} \tag{12.5}$$

In a very real sense it is a comparison of what is done to a solid object (a force is applied) and how that object responds (it deforms to some extent).



A plastic model of an arch structure under load conditions. The wavy lines indicate regions where the stresses are greatest. Such models are useful in designing architectural components.

We consider three types of deformation and define an elastic modulus for each:

1. **Young's modulus,** which measures the resistance of a solid to a change in its length
2. **Shear modulus,** which measures the resistance to motion of the planes of a solid sliding past each other
3. **Bulk modulus,** which measures the resistance of solids or liquids to changes in their volume

Young's Modulus: Elasticity in Length

Consider a long bar of cross-sectional area A and initial length L_i that is clamped at one end, as in Figure 12.13. When an external force is applied perpendicular to the cross section, internal forces in the bar resist distortion ("stretching"), but the bar attains an equilibrium in which its length L_f is greater than L_i and in which the external force is exactly balanced by internal forces. In such a situation, the bar is said to be stressed. We define the **tensile stress** as the ratio of the magnitude of the external force F to the cross-sectional area A. The **tensile strain** in this case is defined as the ratio of the change in length ΔL to the original length L_i. We define **Young's modulus** by a combination of these two ratios:

$$Y = \frac{\text{tensile stress}}{\text{tensile strain}} = \frac{F/A}{\Delta L/L_i} \qquad \textbf{(12.6)}$$

Young's modulus

Young's modulus is typically used to characterize a rod or wire stressed under either tension or compression. Note that because strain is a dimensionless quantity, Y has units of force per unit area. Typical values are given in Table 12.1. Experiments show (a) that for a fixed applied force, the change in length is proportional to the original length and (b) that the force necessary to produce a given strain is proportional to the cross-sectional area. Both of these observations are in accord with Equation 12.6.

The **elastic limit** of a substance is defined as the maximum stress that can be applied to the substance before it becomes permanently deformed. It is possible to exceed the elastic limit of a substance by applying a sufficiently large stress, as seen in Figure 12.14. Initially, a stress–strain curve is a straight line. As the stress increases, however, the curve is no longer straight. When the stress exceeds the elas-

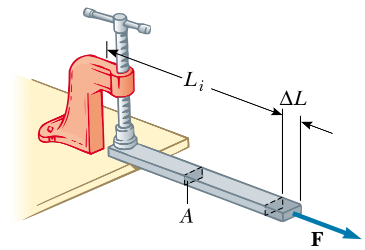


Figure 12.13 A long bar clamped at one end is stretched by an amount ΔL under the action of a force **F**.

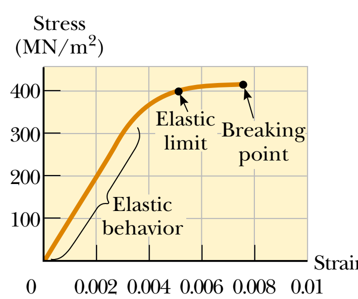


Figure 12.14 Stress-versus-strain curve for an elastic solid.

TABLE 12.1 Typical Values for Elastic Modulus

Substance	Young's Modulus (N/m^2)	Shear Modulus (N/m^2)	Bulk Modulus (N/m^2)
Tungsten	35×10^{10}	14×10^{10}	20×10^{10}
Steel	20×10^{10}	8.4×10^{10}	6×10^{10}
Copper	11×10^{10}	4.2×10^{10}	14×10^{10}
Brass	9.1×10^{10}	3.5×10^{10}	6.1×10^{10}
Aluminum	7.0×10^{10}	2.5×10^{10}	7.0×10^{10}
Glass	$6.5–7.8 \times 10^{10}$	$2.6–3.2 \times 10^{10}$	$5.0–5.5 \times 10^{10}$
Quartz	5.6×10^{10}	2.6×10^{10}	2.7×10^{10}
Water	—	—	0.21×10^{10}
Mercury	—	—	2.8×10^{10}

tic limit, the object is permanently distorted and does not return to its original shape after the stress is removed. Hence, the shape of the object is permanently changed. As the stress is increased even further, the material ultimately breaks.

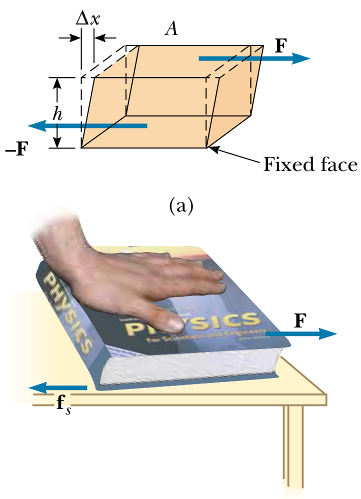


Figure 12.15 (a) A shear deformation in which a rectangular block is distorted by two forces of equal magnitude but opposite directions applied to two parallel faces. (b) A book under shear stress.

Quick Quiz 12.3

What is Young's modulus for the elastic solid whose stress–strain curve is depicted in Figure 12.14?

Quick Quiz 12.4

A material is said to be *ductile* if it can be stressed well beyond its elastic limit without breaking. A *brittle* material is one that breaks soon after the elastic limit is reached. How would you classify the material in Figure 12.14?

Shear Modulus: Elasticity of Shape

Another type of deformation occurs when an object is subjected to a force tangential to one of its faces while the opposite face is held fixed by another force (Fig. 12.15a). The stress in this case is called a shear stress. If the object is originally a rectangular block, a shear stress results in a shape whose cross-section is a parallelogram. A book pushed sideways, as shown in Figure 12.15b, is an example of an object subjected to a shear stress. To a first approximation (for small distortions), no change in volume occurs with this deformation.

We define the **shear stress** as F/A, the ratio of the tangential force to the area A of the face being sheared. The **shear strain** is defined as the ratio $\Delta x/h$, where Δx is the horizontal distance that the sheared face moves and h is the height of the object. In terms of these quantities, the **shear modulus** is

Shear modulus

$$S = \frac{\text{shear stress}}{\text{shear strain}} = \frac{F/A}{\Delta x/h} \tag{12.7}$$

Values of the shear modulus for some representative materials are given in Table 12.1. The unit of shear modulus is force per unit area.

QuickLab

Estimate the shear modulus for the pages of your textbook. Does the thickness of the book have any effect on the modulus value?

Bulk Modulus: Volume Elasticity

Bulk modulus characterizes the response of a substance to uniform squeezing or to a reduction in pressure when the object is placed in a partial vacuum. Suppose that the external forces acting on an object are at right angles to all its faces, as shown in Figure 12.16, and that they are distributed uniformly over all the faces. As we shall see in Chapter 15, such a uniform distribution of forces occurs when an object is immersed in a fluid. An object subject to this type of deformation undergoes a change in volume but no change in shape. The **volume stress** is defined as the ratio of the magnitude of the normal force F to the area A. The quantity $P = F/A$ is called the **pressure.** If the pressure on an object changes by an amount $\Delta P = \Delta F/A$, then the object will experience a volume change ΔV. The **volume strain** is equal to the change in volume ΔV divided by the initial volume V_i. Thus, from Equation 12.5, we can characterize a volume ("bulk") compression in terms of the **bulk modulus,** which is defined as

Bulk modulus

$$B \equiv \frac{\text{volume stress}}{\text{volume strain}} = -\frac{\Delta F/A}{\Delta V/V_i} = -\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta V/V_i} \tag{12.8}$$

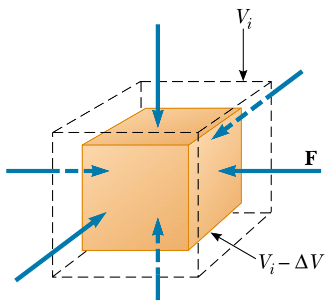


Figure 12.16 When a solid is under uniform pressure, it undergoes a change in volume but no change in shape. This cube is compressed on all sides by forces normal to its six faces.

A negative sign is inserted in this defining equation so that B is a positive number. This maneuver is necessary because an increase in pressure (positive ΔP) causes a decrease in volume (negative ΔV) and vice versa.

Table 12.1 lists bulk moduli for some materials. If you look up such values in a different source, you often find that the reciprocal of the bulk modulus is listed. The reciprocal of the bulk modulus is called the **compressibility** of the material.

Note from Table 12.1 that both solids and liquids have a bulk modulus. However, no shear modulus and no Young's modulus are given for liquids because a liquid does not sustain a shearing stress or a tensile stress (it flows instead).

Prestressed Concrete

If the stress on a solid object exceeds a certain value, the object fractures. The maximum stress that can be applied before fracture occurs depends on the nature of the material and on the type of applied stress. For example, concrete has a tensile strength of about $2 \times 10^6\ \text{N/m}^2$, a compressive strength of $20 \times 10^6\ \text{N/m}^2$, and a shear strength of $2 \times 10^6\ \text{N/m}^2$. If the applied stress exceeds these values, the concrete fractures. It is common practice to use large safety factors to prevent failure in concrete structures.

Concrete is normally very brittle when it is cast in thin sections. Thus, concrete slabs tend to sag and crack at unsupported areas, as shown in Figure 12.17a. The slab can be strengthened by the use of steel rods to reinforce the concrete, as illustrated in Figure 12.17b. Because concrete is much stronger under compression (squeezing) than under tension (stretching) or shear, vertical columns of concrete can support very heavy loads, whereas horizontal beams of concrete tend to sag and crack. However, a significant increase in shear strength is achieved if the reinforced concrete is prestressed, as shown in Figure 12.17c. As the concrete is being poured, the steel rods are held under tension by external forces. The external

QuickLab

Support a new flat eraser (art gum or Pink Pearl will do) on two parallel pencils at least 3 cm apart. Press down on the middle of the top surface just enough to make the top face of the eraser curve a bit. Is the top face under tension or compression? How about the bottom? Why does a flat slab of concrete supported at the ends tend to crack on the bottom face and not the top?

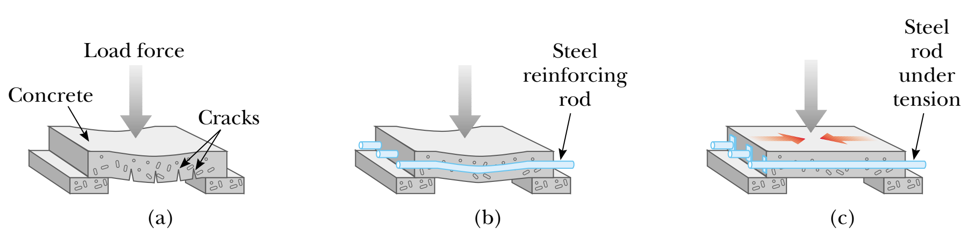


Figure 12.17 (a) A concrete slab with no reinforcement tends to crack under a heavy load. (b) The strength of the concrete is increased by using steel reinforcement rods. (c) The concrete is further strengthened by prestressing it with steel rods under tension.

forces are released after the concrete cures; this results in a permanent tension in the steel and hence a compressive stress on the concrete. This enables the concrete slab to support a much heavier load.

EXAMPLE 12.6 Stage Design

Recall Example 8.10, in which we analyzed a cable used to support an actor as he swung onto the stage. The tension in the cable was 940 N. What diameter should a 10-m-long steel wire have if we do not want it to stretch more than 0.5 cm under these conditions?

Solution From the definition of Young's modulus, we can solve for the required cross-sectional area. Assuming that the cross section is circular, we can determine the diameter of the wire. From Equation 12.6, we have

$$Y = \frac{F/A}{\Delta L/L_i}$$

$$A = \frac{FL_i}{Y\Delta L} = \frac{(940\text{ N})(10\text{ m})}{(20 \times 10^{10}\text{ N/m}^2)(0.005\text{ m})} = 9.4 \times 10^{-6}\text{ m}^2$$

The radius of the wire can be found from $A = \pi r^2$:

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{A}{\pi}} = \sqrt{\frac{9.4 \times 10^{-6}\text{ m}^2}{\pi}} = 1.7 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m} = 1.7\text{ mm}$$

$$d = 2r = 2(1.7\text{ mm}) = \boxed{3.4\text{ mm}}$$

To provide a large margin of safety, we would probably use a flexible cable made up of many smaller wires having a total cross-sectional area substantially greater than our calculated value.

EXAMPLE 12.7 Squeezing a Brass Sphere

A solid brass sphere is initially surrounded by air, and the air pressure exerted on it is 1.0×10^5 N/m^2 (normal atmospheric pressure). The sphere is lowered into the ocean to a depth at which the pressure is 2.0×10^7 N/m^2. The volume of the sphere in air is 0.50 m^3. By how much does this volume change once the sphere is submerged?

Solution From the definition of bulk modulus, we have

$$B = -\frac{\Delta P}{\Delta V/V_i}$$

$$\Delta V = -\frac{V_i \Delta P}{B}$$

Because the final pressure is so much greater than the initial pressure, we can neglect the initial pressure and state that $\Delta P = P_f - P_i \approx P_f = 2.0 \times 10^7\text{ N/m}^2$. Therefore,

$$\Delta V = -\frac{(0.50\text{ m}^3)(2.0 \times 10^7\text{ N/m}^2)}{6.1 \times 10^{10}\text{ N/m}^2} = \boxed{-1.6 \times 10^{-4}\text{ m}^3}$$

The negative sign indicates a decrease in volume.

SUMMARY

A rigid object is in **equilibrium** if and only if **the resultant external force acting on it is zero and the resultant external torque on it is zero about any axis:**

$$\sum \mathbf{F} = 0 \qquad \textbf{(12.1)}$$

$$\sum \boldsymbol{\tau} = 0 \qquad \textbf{(12.2)}$$

The first condition is the condition for translational equilibrium, and the second is the condition for rotational equilibrium. These two equations allow you to analyze a great variety of problems. Make sure you can identify forces unambiguously, create a free-body diagram, and then apply Equations 12.1 and 12.2 and solve for the unknowns.

The force of gravity exerted on an object can be considered as acting at a single point called the **center of gravity.** The center of gravity of an object coincides with its center of mass if the object is in a uniform gravitational field.

We can describe the elastic properties of a substance using the concepts of stress and strain. **Stress** is a quantity proportional to the force producing a deformation; **strain** is a measure of the degree of deformation. Strain is proportional to stress, and the constant of proportionality is the **elastic modulus:**

$$\text{Elastic modulus} \equiv \frac{\text{stress}}{\text{strain}} \tag{12.5}$$

Three common types of deformation are (1) the resistance of a solid to elongation under a load, characterized by **Young's modulus** Y; (2) the resistance of a solid to the motion of internal planes sliding past each other, characterized by the **shear modulus** S; and (3) the resistance of a solid or fluid to a volume change, characterized by the **bulk modulus** B.

QUESTIONS

1. Can a body be in equilibrium if only one external force acts on it? Explain.
2. Can a body be in equilibrium if it is in motion? Explain.
3. Locate the center of gravity for the following uniform objects: (a) sphere, (b) cube, (c) right circular cylinder.
4. The center of gravity of an object may be located outside the object. Give a few examples for which this is the case.
5. You are given an arbitrarily shaped piece of plywood, together with a hammer, nail, and plumb bob. How could you use these items to locate the center of gravity of the plywood? (*Hint:* Use the nail to suspend the plywood.)
6. For a chair to be balanced on one leg, where must the center of gravity of the chair be located?
7. Can an object be in equilibrium if the only torques acting on it produce clockwise rotation?
8. A tall crate and a short crate of equal mass are placed side by side on an incline (without touching each other). As the incline angle is increased, which crate will topple first? Explain.
9. When lifting a heavy object, why is it recommended to keep the back as vertical as possible, lifting from the knees, rather than bending over and lifting from the waist?
10. Give a few examples in which several forces are acting on a system in such a way that their sum is zero but the system is not in equilibrium.
11. If you measure the net torque and the net force on a system to be zero, (a) could the system still be rotating with respect to you? (b) Could it be translating with respect to you?
12. A ladder is resting inclined against a wall. Would you feel safer climbing up the ladder if you were told that the ground is frictionless but the wall is rough or that the wall is frictionless but the ground is rough? Justify your answer.
13. What kind of deformation does a cube of Jell-O exhibit when it "jiggles"?
14. Ruins of ancient Greek temples often have intact vertical columns, but few horizontal slabs of stone are still in place. Can you think of a reason why this is so?

PROBLEMS

1, 2, 3 = straightforward, intermediate, challenging □ = full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide*
WEB = solution posted at **http://www.saunderscollege.com/physics/** = Computer useful in solving problem = Interactive Physics
□ = paired numerical/symbolic problems

Section 12.1 The Conditions for Equilibrium

1. A baseball player holds a 36-oz bat (weight = 10.0 N) with one hand at the point O (Fig. P12.1). The bat is in equilibrium. The weight of the bat acts along a line 60.0 cm to the right of O. Determine the force and the torque exerted on the bat by the player.

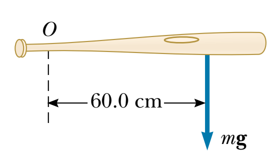


Figure P12.1

2. Write the necessary conditions of equilibrium for the body shown in Figure P12.2. Take the origin of the torque equation at the point O.

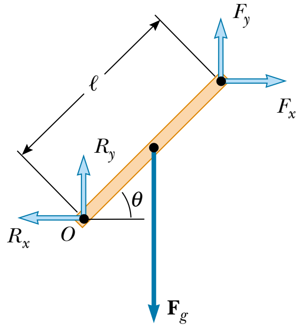


Figure P12.2

WEB **3.** A uniform beam of mass m_b and length ℓ supports blocks of masses m_1 and m_2 at two positions, as shown in Figure P12.3. The beam rests on two points. For what value of x will the beam be balanced at P such that the normal force at O is zero?

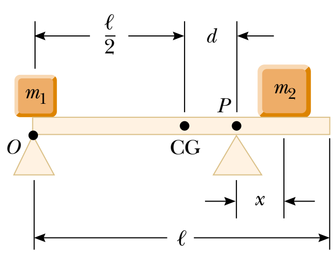


Figure P12.3

4. A student gets his car stuck in a snow drift. Not at a loss, having studied physics, he attaches one end of a stout rope to the vehicle and the other end to the trunk of a nearby tree, allowing for a very small amount of slack. The student then exerts a force **F** on the center of the rope in the direction perpendicular to the car–tree line, as shown in Figure P12.4. If the rope is inextensible and if the magnitude of the applied force is 500 N, what is the force on the car? (Assume equilibrium conditions.)

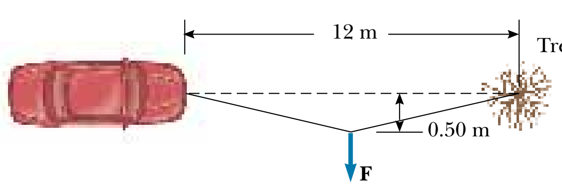


Figure P12.4

Section 12.2 More on the Center of Gravity

5. A 3.00-kg particle is located on the x axis at $x = -5.00$ m, and a 4.00-kg particle is located on the x axis at $x = 3.00$ m. Find the center of gravity of this two-particle system.

6. A circular pizza of radius R has a circular piece of radius $R/2$ removed from one side, as shown in Figure P12.6. Clearly, the center of gravity has moved from C to C' along the x axis. Show that the distance from C to C' is $R/6$. (Assume that the thickness and density of the pizza are uniform throughout.)

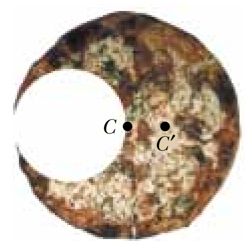


Figure P12.6

7. A carpenter's square has the shape of an L, as shown in Figure P12.7. Locate its center of gravity.

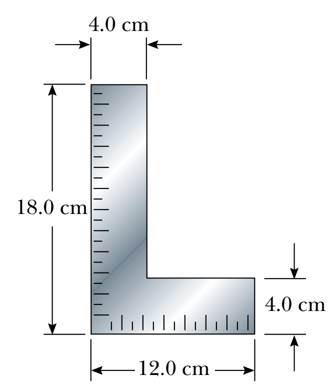


Figure P12.7

8. Pat builds a track for his model car out of wood, as illustrated in Figure P12.8. The track is 5.00 cm wide, 1.00 m high, and 3.00 m long, and it is solid. The runway is cut so that it forms a parabola described by the equation $y = (x - 3)^2/9$. Locate the horizontal position of the center of gravity of this track.

WEB **9.** Consider the following mass distribution: 5.00 kg at (0, 0) m, 3.00 kg at (0, 4.00) m, and 4.00 kg at (3.00, 0) m. Where should a fourth mass of 8.00 kg be placed so that the center of gravity of the four-mass arrangement will be at (0, 0)?

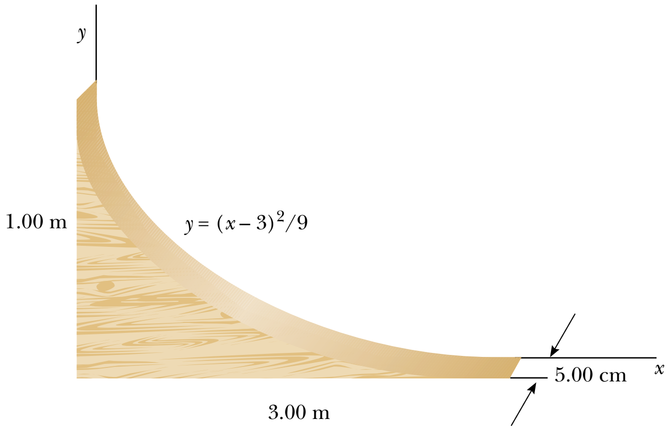


Figure P12.8

10. Figure P12.10 shows three uniform objects: a rod, a right triangle, and a square. Their masses in kilograms and their coordinates in meters are given. Determine the center of gravity for the three-object system.

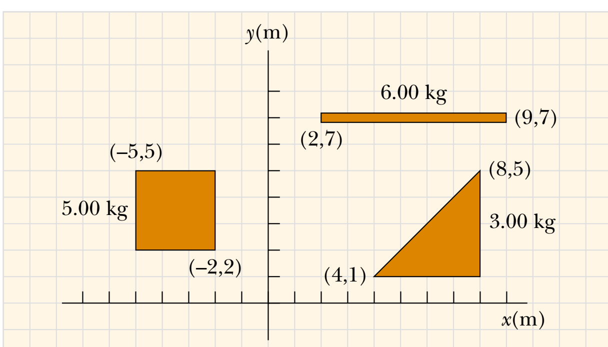


Figure P12.10

Section 12.3 Examples of Rigid Objects in Static Equilibrium

11. Stephen is pushing his sister Joyce in a wheelbarrow when it is stopped by a brick 8.00 cm high (Fig. P12.11). The handles make an angle of 15.0° from the horizontal. A downward force of 400 N is exerted on the wheel, which has a radius of 20.0 cm. (a) What force must Stephen apply along the handles to just start the wheel over the brick? (b) What is the force (magnitude and direction) that the brick exerts on the wheel just as the wheel begins to lift over the brick? Assume in both parts (a) and (b) that the brick remains fixed and does not slide along the ground.

12. Two pans of a balance are 50.0 cm apart. The fulcrum of the balance has been shifted 1.00 cm away from the center by a dishonest shopkeeper. By what percentage is the true weight of the goods being marked up by the shopkeeper? (Assume that the balance has negligible mass.)

Figure P12.11

13. A 15.0-m uniform ladder weighing 500 N rests against a frictionless wall. The ladder makes a 60.0° angle with the horizontal. (a) Find the horizontal and vertical forces that the ground exerts on the base of the ladder when an 800-N firefighter is 4.00 m from the bottom. (b) If the ladder is just on the verge of slipping when the firefighter is 9.00 m up, what is the coefficient of static friction between the ladder and the ground?

14. A uniform ladder of length L and mass m_1 rests against a frictionless wall. The ladder makes an angle θ with the horizontal. (a) Find the horizontal and vertical forces that the ground exerts on the base of the ladder when a firefighter of mass m_2 is a distance x from the bottom. (b) If the ladder is just on the verge of slipping when the firefighter is a distance d from the bottom, what is the coefficient of static friction between the ladder and the ground?

15. Figure P12.15 shows a claw hammer as it is being used to pull a nail out of a horizontal surface. If a force of magnitude 150 N is exerted horizontally as shown, find

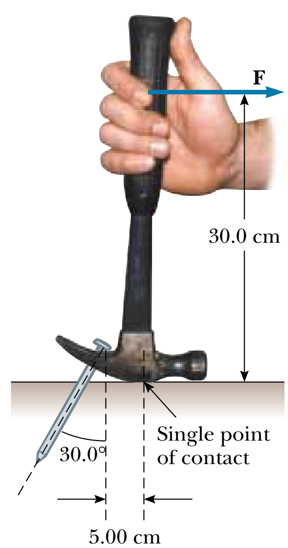


Figure P12.15

(a) the force exerted by the hammer claws on the nail and (b) the force exerted by the surface on the point of contact with the hammer head. Assume that the force the hammer exerts on the nail is parallel to the nail.

16. A uniform plank with a length of 6.00 m and a mass of 30.0 kg rests horizontally across two horizontal bars of a scaffold. The bars are 4.50 m apart, and 1.50 m of the plank hangs over one side of the scaffold. Draw a free-body diagram for the plank. How far can a painter with a mass of 70.0 kg walk on the overhanging part of the plank before it tips?

17. A 1 500-kg automobile has a wheel base (the distance between the axles) of 3.00 m. The center of mass of the automobile is on the center line at a point 1.20 m behind the front axle. Find the force exerted by the ground on each wheel.

18. A vertical post with a square cross section is 10.0 m tall. Its bottom end is encased in a base 1.50 m tall that is precisely square but slightly loose. A force of 5.50 N to the right acts on the top of the post. The base maintains the post in equilibrium. Find the force that the top of the right sidewall of the base exerts on the post. Find the force that the bottom of the left sidewall of the base exerts on the post.

19. A flexible chain weighing 40.0 N hangs between two hooks located at the same height (Fig. P12.19). At each hook, the tangent to the chain makes an angle θ = 42.0° with the horizontal. Find (a) the magnitude of the force each hook exerts on the chain and (b) the tension in the chain at its midpoint. (*Hint:* For part (b), make a free-body diagram for half the chain.)

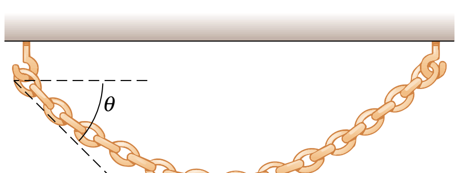


Figure P12.19

20. A hemispherical sign 1.00 m in diameter and of uniform mass density is supported by two strings, as shown in Figure P12.20. What fraction of the sign's weight is supported by each string?

21. Sir Lost-a-Lot dons his armor and sets out from the castle on his trusty steed in his quest to improve communication between damsels and dragons (Fig. P12.21). Unfortunately, his squire lowered the draw bridge too far and finally stopped lowering it when it was 20.0° below the horizontal. Lost-a-Lot and his horse stop when their combined center of mass is 1.00 m from the end of the bridge. The bridge is 8.00 m long and has a mass of 2 000 kg. The lift cable is attached to the bridge 5.00 m from the hinge at the castle end and to a point on the castle wall 12.0 m above the bridge. Lost-a-Lot's mass combined with that of his armor and steed is 1 000 kg. Determine (a) the tension in the cable, as well as (b) the horizontal and (c) the vertical force components acting on the bridge at the hinge.

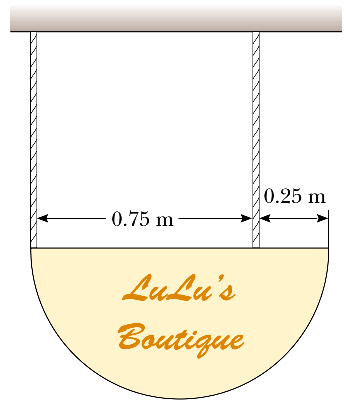


Figure P12.20

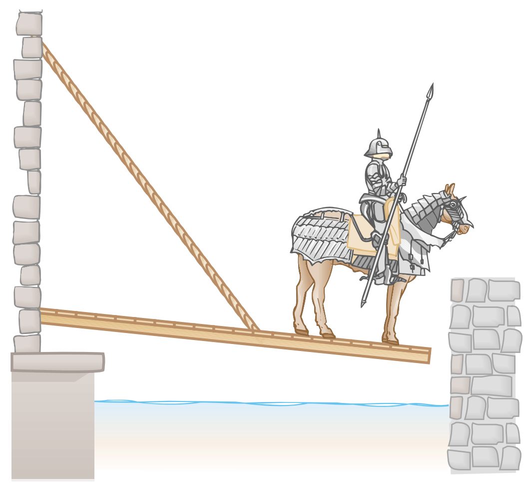


Figure P12.21

22. Two identical, uniform bricks of length L are placed in a stack over the edge of a horizontal surface such that the maximum possible overhang without falling is achieved, as shown in Figure P12.22. Find the distance x.

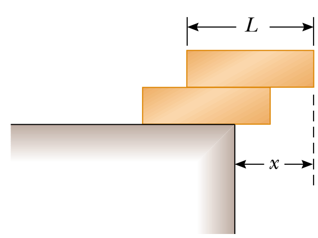


Figure P12.22

23. A vaulter holds a 29.4-N pole in equilibrium by exerting an upward force **U** with her leading hand and a downward force **D** with her trailing hand, as shown in Figure P12.23. Point C is the center of gravity of the pole. What are the magnitudes of **U** and **D**?

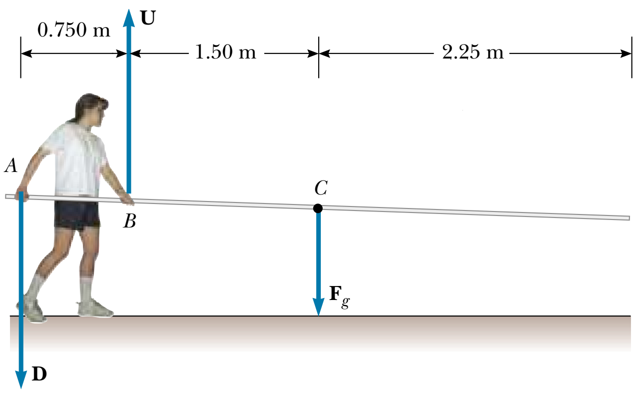


Figure P12.23

Section 12.4 Elastic Properties of Solids

24. Assume that Young's modulus for bone is 1.50×10^{10} N/m^2 and that a bone will fracture if more than 1.50×10^8 N/m^2 is exerted. (a) What is the maximum force that can be exerted on the femur bone in the leg if it has a minimum effective diameter of 2.50 cm? (b) If a force of this magnitude is applied compressively, by how much does the 25.0-cm-long bone shorten?

25. A 200-kg load is hung on a wire with a length of 4.00 m, a cross-sectional area of 0.200×10^{-4} m^2, and a Young's modulus of 8.00×10^{10} N/m^2. What is its increase in length?

26. A steel wire 1 mm in diameter can support a tension of 0.2 kN. Suppose you need a cable made of these wires to support a tension of 20 kN. The cable's diameter should be of what order of magnitude?

27. A child slides across a floor in a pair of rubber-soled shoes. The frictional force acting on each foot is 20.0 N. The footprint area of each shoe's sole is 14.0 cm^2, and the thickness of each sole is 5.00 mm. Find the horizontal distance by which the upper and lower surfaces of each sole are offset. The shear modulus of the rubber is 3.00×10^6 N/m^2.

28. **Review Problem.** A 30.0-kg hammer strikes a steel spike 2.30 cm in diameter while moving with a speed of 20.0 m/s. The hammer rebounds with a speed of 10.0 m/s after 0.110 s. What is the average strain in the spike during the impact?

29. If the elastic limit of copper is 1.50×10^8 N/m^2, determine the minimum diameter a copper wire can have under a load of 10.0 kg if its elastic limit is not to be exceeded.

30. **Review Problem.** A 2.00-m-long cylindrical steel wire with a cross-sectional diameter of 4.00 mm is placed over a light frictionless pulley, with one end of the wire connected to a 5.00-kg mass and the other end connected to a 3.00-kg mass. By how much does the wire stretch while the masses are in motion?

31. **Review Problem.** A cylindrical steel wire of length L_i with a cross-sectional diameter d is placed over a light frictionless pulley, with one end of the wire connected to a mass m_1 and the other end connected to a mass m_2. By how much does the wire stretch while the masses are in motion?

32. Calculate the density of sea water at a depth of 1 000 m, where the water pressure is about 1.00×10^7 N/m^2. (The density of sea water is 1.030×10^3 kg/m^3 at the surface.)

WEB 33. If the shear stress exceeds about 4.00×10^8 N/m^2, steel ruptures. Determine the shearing force necessary (a) to shear a steel bolt 1.00 cm in diameter and (b) to punch a 1.00-cm-diameter hole in a steel plate 0.500 cm thick.

34. (a) Find the minimum diameter of a steel wire 18.0 m long that elongates no more than 9.00 mm when a load of 380 kg is hung on its lower end. (b) If the elastic limit for this steel is 3.00×10^8 N/m^2, does permanent deformation occur with this load?

35. When water freezes, it expands by about 9.00%. What would be the pressure increase inside your automobile's engine block if the water in it froze? (The bulk modulus of ice is 2.00×10^9 N/m^2.)

36. For safety in climbing, a mountaineer uses a 50.0-m nylon rope that is 10.0 mm in diameter. When supporting the 90.0-kg climber on one end, the rope elongates by 1.60 m. Find Young's modulus for the rope material.

ADDITIONAL PROBLEMS

37. A bridge with a length of 50.0 m and a mass of 8.00×10^4 kg is supported on a smooth pier at each end, as illustrated in Figure P12.37. A truck of mass 3.00×10^4 kg

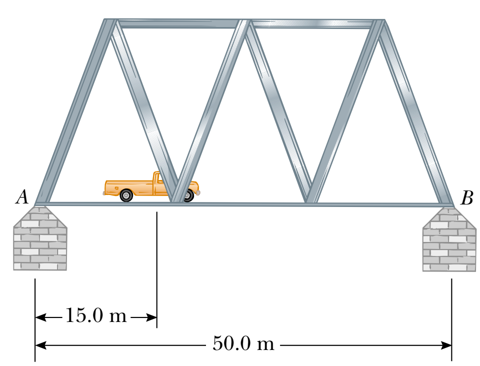


Figure P12.37

is located 15.0 m from one end. What are the forces on the bridge at the points of support?

38. A frame in the shape of the letter A is formed from two uniform pieces of metal, each of weight 26.0 N and length 1.00 m. They are hinged at the top and held together by a horizontal wire 1.20 m in length (Fig. P12.38). The structure rests on a frictionless surface. If the wire is connected at points a distance of 0.650 m from the top of the frame, determine the tension in the wire.

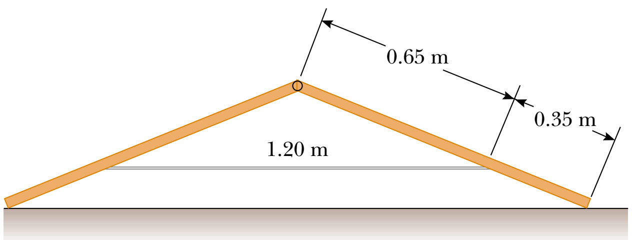


Figure P12.38

39. Refer to Figure 12.17c. A lintel of prestressed reinforced concrete is 1.50 m long. The cross-sectional area of the concrete is 50.0 cm^2. The concrete encloses one steel reinforcing rod with a cross-sectional area of 1.50 cm^2. The rod joins two strong end plates. Young's modulus for the concrete is 30.0×10^9 N/m^2. After the concrete cures and the original tension T_1 in the rod is released, the concrete will be under a compressive stress of 8.00×10^6 N/m^2. (a) By what distance will the rod compress the concrete when the original tension in the rod is released? (b) Under what tension T_2 will the rod still be? (c) How much longer than its unstressed length will the rod then be? (d) When the concrete was poured, the rod should have been stretched by what extension distance from its unstressed length? (e) Find the required original tension T_1 in the rod.

40. A solid sphere of radius R and mass M is placed in a trough, as shown in Figure P12.40. The inner surfaces of the trough are frictionless. Determine the forces exerted by the trough on the sphere at the two contact points.

41. A 10.0-kg monkey climbs up a 120-N uniform ladder of length L, as shown in Figure P12.41. The upper and lower ends of the ladder rest on frictionless surfaces. The lower end is fastened to the wall by a horizontal rope that can support a maximum tension of 110 N. (a) Draw a free-body diagram for the ladder. (b) Find the tension in the rope when the monkey is one third the way up the ladder. (c) Find the maximum distance d that the monkey can climb up the ladder before the rope breaks. Express your answer as a fraction of L.

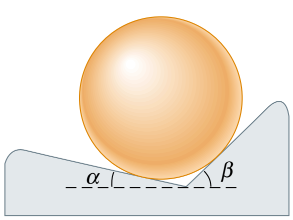


Figure P12.40

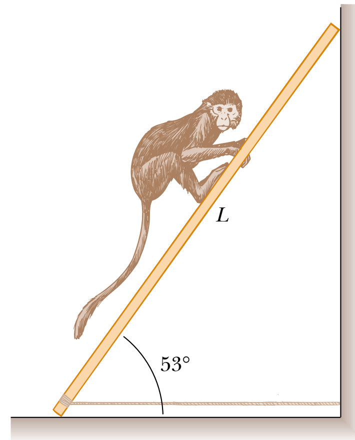


Figure P12.41

42. A hungry bear weighing 700 N walks out on a beam in an attempt to retrieve a basket of food hanging at the end of the beam (Fig. P12.42). The beam is uniform, weighs 200 N, and is 6.00 m long; the basket weighs 80.0 N. (a) Draw a free-body diagram for the beam. (b) When the bear is at x = 1.00 m, find the tension in the wire and the components of the force exerted by the wall on the left end of the beam. (c) If the wire can withstand a maximum tension of 900 N, what is the maximum distance that the bear can walk before the wire breaks?

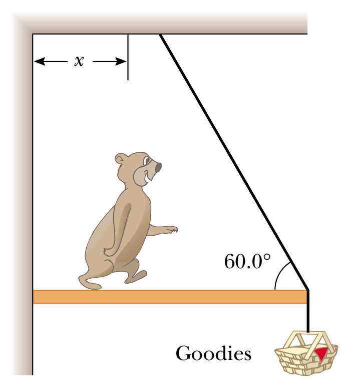


Figure P12.42

43. Old MacDonald had a farm, and on that farm he had a gate (Fig. P12.43). The gate is 3.00 m wide and 1.80 m

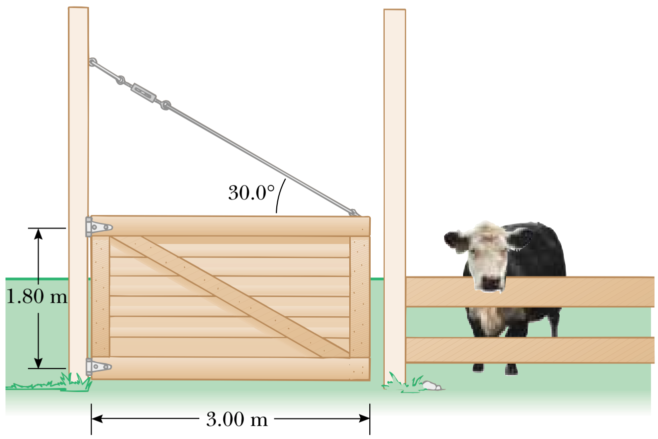


Figure P12.43

high, with hinges attached to the top and bottom. The guy wire makes an angle of 30.0° with the top of the gate and is tightened by a turn buckle to a tension of 200 N. The mass of the gate is 40.0 kg. (a) Determine the horizontal force exerted on the gate by the bottom hinge. (b) Find the horizontal force exerted by the upper hinge. (c) Determine the combined vertical force exerted by both hinges. (d) What must the tension in the guy wire be so that the horizontal force exerted by the upper hinge is zero?

44. A 1 200-N uniform boom is supported by a cable, as illustrated in Figure P12.44. The boom is pivoted at the bottom, and a 2 000-N object hangs from its top. Find the tension in the cable and the components of the reaction force exerted on the boom by the floor.

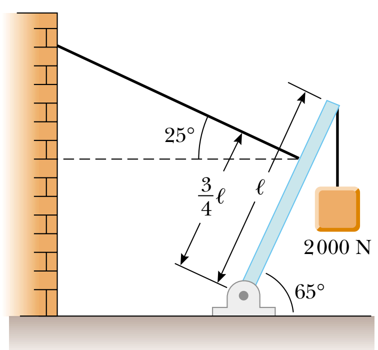


Figure P12.44

WEB **45.** A uniform sign of weight F_g and width $2L$ hangs from a light, horizontal beam hinged at the wall and supported by a cable (Fig. P12.45). Determine (a) the tension in the cable and (b) the components of the reaction force exerted by the wall on the beam in terms of F_g, d, L, and θ.

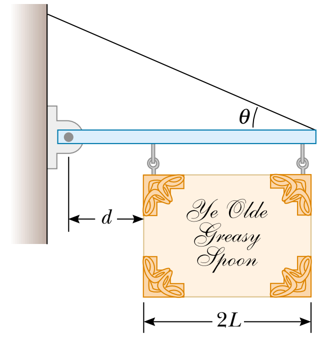


Figure P12.45

46. A crane of mass 3 000 kg supports a load of 10 000 kg as illustrated in Figure P12.46. The crane is pivoted with a frictionless pin at A and rests against a smooth support at B. Find the reaction forces at A and B.

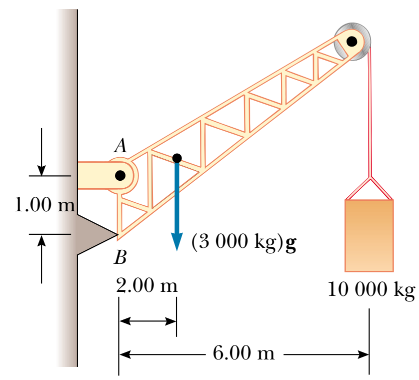


Figure P12.46

47. A ladder having a uniform density and a mass m rests against a frictionless vertical wall, making an angle 60.0° with the horizontal. The lower end rests on a flat surface, where the coefficient of static friction is $\mu_s = 0.400$. A window cleaner having a mass $M = 2m$ attempts to climb the ladder. What fraction of the length L of the ladder will the worker have reached when the ladder begins to slip?

48. A uniform ladder weighing 200 N is leaning against a wall (see Fig. 12.10). The ladder slips when $\theta = 60.0°$. Assuming that the coefficients of static friction at the wall and the ground are the same, obtain a value for μ_s.

49. A 10 000-N shark is supported by a cable attached to a 4.00-m rod that can pivot at its base. Calculate the tension in the tie-rope between the wall and the rod if it is holding the system in the position shown in Figure P12.49. Find the horizontal and vertical forces exerted on the base of the rod. (Neglect the weight of the rod.)

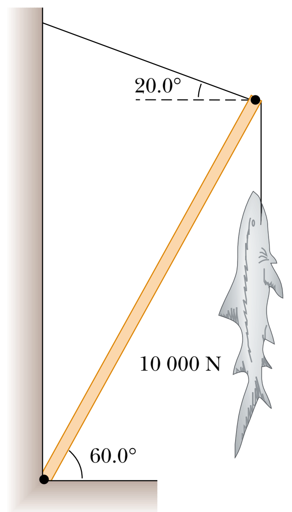


Figure P12.49

50. When a person stands on tiptoe (a strenuous position), the position of the foot is as shown in Figure P12.50a. The total weight of the body $\mathbf{F}_g$ is supported by the force $\mathbf{n}$ exerted by the floor on the toe. A mechanical model for the situation is shown in Figure P12.50b, where $\mathbf{T}$ is the force exerted by the Achilles tendon on the foot and $\mathbf{R}$ is the force exerted by the tibia on the foot. Find the values of T, R, and θ when $F_g = 700$ N.

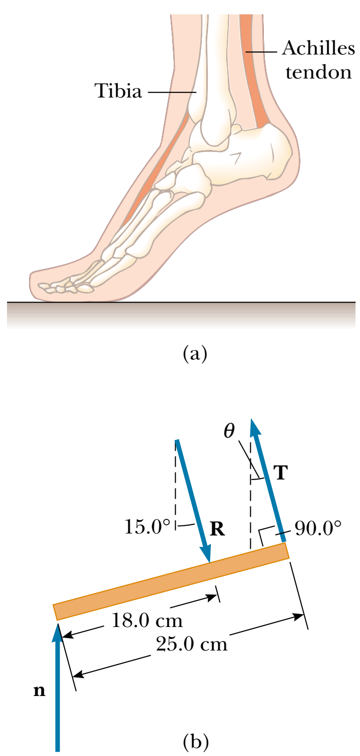


Figure P12.50

51. A person bends over and lifts a 200-N object as shown in Figure P12.51a, with his back in a horizontal position (a terrible way to lift an object). The back muscle attached at a point two thirds the way up the spine maintains the position of the back, and the angle between the spine and this muscle is 12.0°. Using the mechanical model shown in Figure P12.51b and taking the weight of the upper body to be 350 N, find the tension in the back muscle and the compressional force in the spine.

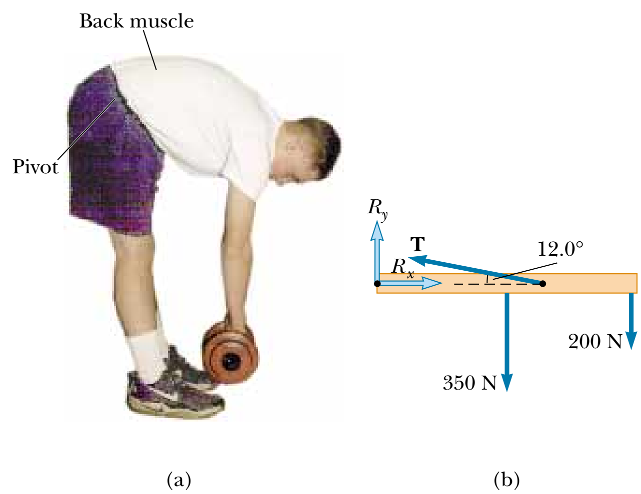


Figure P12.51

52. Two 200-N traffic lights are suspended from a single cable, as shown in Figure 12.52. Neglecting the cable's weight, (a) prove that if $\theta_1 = \theta_2$, then $T_1 = T_2$. (b) Determine the three tensions T_1, T_2, and T_3 if $\theta_1 = \theta_2 = 8.00°$.

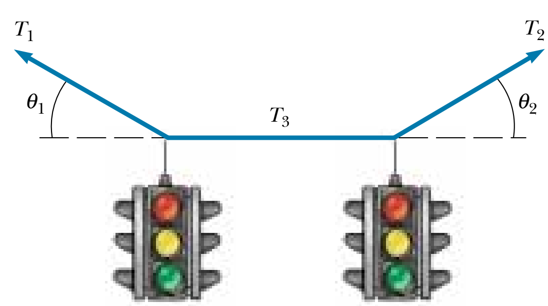


Figure P12.52

53. A force acts on a rectangular cabinet weighing 400 N, as illustrated in Figure P12.53. (a) If the cabinet slides with constant speed when $F = 200$ N and $h = 0.400$ m,

find the coefficient of kinetic friction and the position of the resultant normal force. (b) If $F = 300$ N, find the value of h for which the cabinet just begins to tip.

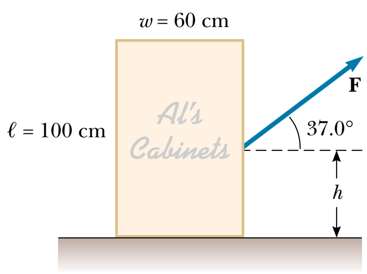


Figure P12.53 Problems 53 and 54.

54. Consider the rectangular cabinet of Problem 53, but with a force **F** applied horizontally at its upper edge. (a) What is the minimum force that must be applied for the cabinet to start tipping? (b) What is the minimum coefficient of static friction required to prevent the cabinet from sliding with the application of a force of this magnitude? (c) Find the magnitude and direction of the minimum force required to tip the cabinet if the point of application can be chosen anywhere on it.

55. A uniform rod of weight F_g and length L is supported at its ends by a frictionless trough, as shown in Figure P12.55. (a) Show that the center of gravity of the rod is directly over point O when the rod is in equilibrium. (b) Determine the equilibrium value of the angle θ.

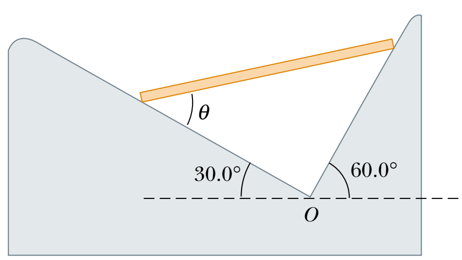


Figure P12.55

56. Review Problem. A cue stick strikes a cue ball and delivers a horizontal impulse in such a way that the ball rolls without slipping as it starts to move. At what height above the ball's center (in terms of the radius of the ball) was the blow struck?

57. A uniform beam of mass m is inclined at an angle θ to the horizontal. Its upper end produces a 90° bend in a very rough rope tied to a wall, and its lower end rests on a rough floor (Fig. P12.57). (a) If the coefficient of static friction between the beam and the floor is μ_s, determine an expression for the maximum mass M that can be suspended from the top before the beam slips. (b) Determine the magnitude of the reaction force at the floor and the magnitude of the force exerted by the beam on the rope at P in terms of m, M, and μ_s.

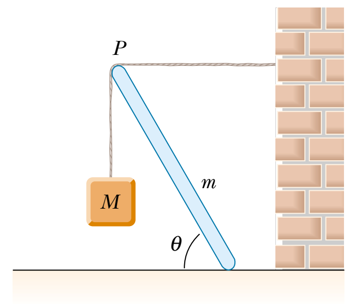


Figure P12.57

58. Figure P12.58 shows a truss that supports a downward force of 1 000 N applied at the point B. The truss has negligible weight. The piers at A and C are smooth. (a) Apply the conditions of equilibrium to prove that $n_A = 366$ N and that $n_C = 634$ N. (b) Show that, because forces act on the light truss only at the hinge joints, each bar of the truss must exert on each hinge pin only a force along the length of that bar—a force of tension or compression. (c) Find the force of tension or compression in each of the three bars.

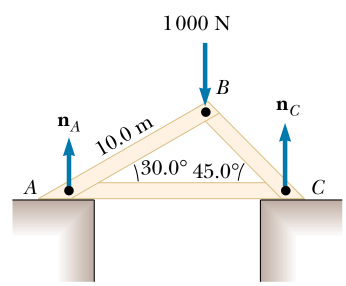


Figure P12.58

59. A stepladder of negligible weight is constructed as shown in Figure P12.59. A painter with a mass of 70.0 kg stands on the ladder 3.00 m from the bottom. Assuming that the floor is frictionless, find (a) the tension in the horizontal bar connecting the two halves of the ladder, (b) the normal forces at A and B, and (c) the components of the reaction force at the single hinge C that the left half of the ladder exerts on the right half. (*Hint:* Treat each half of the ladder separately.)

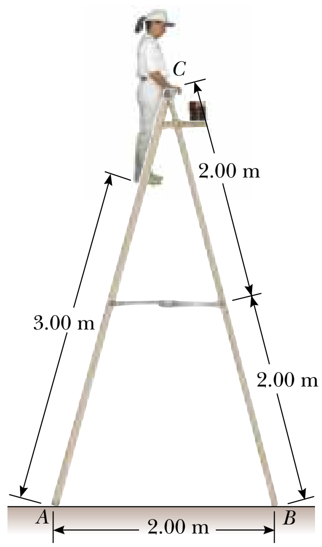


Figure P12.59

60. A flat dance floor of dimensions 20.0 m by 20.0 m has a mass of 1 000 kg. Three dance couples, each of mass 125 kg, start in the top left, top right, and bottom left corners. (a) Where is the initial center of gravity? (b) The couple in the bottom left corner moves 10.0 m to the right. Where is the new center of gravity? (c) What was the average velocity of the center of gravity if it took that couple 8.00 s to change position?

61. A shelf bracket is mounted on a vertical wall by a single screw, as shown in Figure P12.61. Neglecting the weight of the bracket, find the horizontal component of the force that the screw exerts on the bracket when an 80.0-N vertical force is applied as shown. (*Hint:* Imagine that the bracket is slightly loose.)

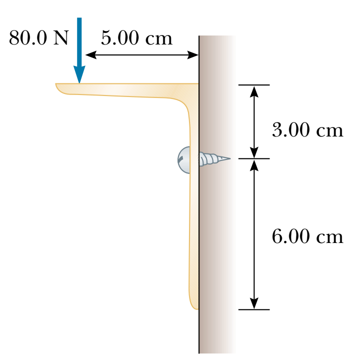


Figure P12.61

62. Figure P12.62 shows a vertical force applied tangentially to a uniform cylinder of weight F_g. The coefficient of

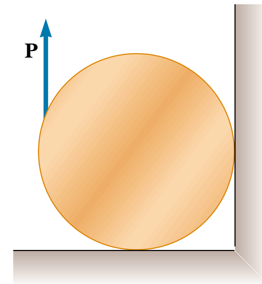


Figure P12.62

static friction between the cylinder and all surfaces is 0.500. In terms of F_g, find the maximum force **P** that can be applied that does not cause the cylinder to rotate. (*Hint:* When the cylinder is on the verge of slipping, both friction forces are at their maximum values. Why?)

WEB **63.** **Review Problem.** A wire of length L_i, Young's modulus Y, and cross-sectional area A is stretched elastically by an amount ΔL. According to Hooke's law, the restoring force is $-k\,\Delta L$. (a) Show that $k = YA/L_i$. (b) Show that the work done in stretching the wire by an amount ΔL is $W = YA(\Delta L)^2/2L_i$.

64. Two racquetballs are placed in a glass jar, as shown in Figure P12.64. Their centers and the point A lie on a straight line. (a) Assuming that the walls are frictionless, determine P_1, P_2, and P_3. (b) Determine the magnitude of the force exerted on the right ball by the left ball. Assume each ball has a mass of 170 g.

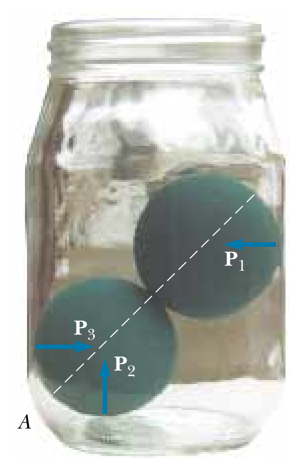


Figure P12.64

65. In Figure P12.65, the scales read $F_{g1} = 380$ N and $F_{g2} =$ 320 N. Neglecting the weight of the supporting plank,

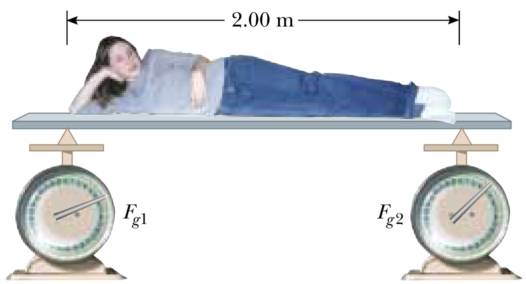


Figure P12.65

how far from the woman's feet is her center of mass, given that her height is 2.00 m?

66. A steel cable 3.00 cm^2 in cross-sectional area has a mass of 2.40 kg per meter of length. If 500 m of the cable is hung over a vertical cliff, how much does the cable stretch under its own weight? (For Young's modulus for steel, refer to Table 12.1.)

67. (a) Estimate the force with which a karate master strikes a board if the hand's speed at time of impact is 10.0 m/s and decreases to 1.00 m/s during a 0.002 00-s time-of-contact with the board. The mass of coordinated hand-and-arm is 1.00 kg. (b) Estimate the shear stress if this force is exerted on a 1.00-cm-thick pine board that is 10.0 cm wide. (c) If the maximum shear stress a pine board can receive before breaking is 3.60×10^6 N/m^2, will the board break?

68. A bucket is made from thin sheet metal. The bottom and top of the bucket have radii of 25.0 cm and 35.0 cm, respectively. The bucket is 30.0 cm high and filled with water. Where is the center of gravity? (Ignore the weight of the bucket itself.)

69. **Review Problem.** A trailer with a loaded weight of F_g is being pulled by a vehicle with a force **P**, as illustrated in Figure P12.69. The trailer is loaded such that its center of mass is located as shown. Neglect the force of rolling friction and let a represent the x component of the acceleration of the trailer. (a) Find the vertical component of **P** in terms of the given parameters. (b) If a = 2.00 m/s^2 and h = 1.50 m, what must be the value of d so that $P_y = 0$ (that is, no vertical load on the vehicle)? (c) Find the values of P_x and P_y given that F_g = 1 500 N, d = 0.800 m, L = 3.00 m, h = 1.50 m, and a = − 2.00 m/s^2.

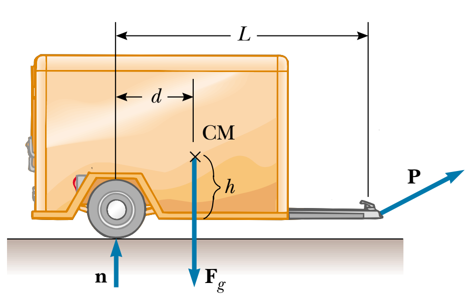


Figure P12.69

70. **Review Problem.** An aluminum wire is 0.850 m long and has a circular cross section of diameter 0.780 mm. Fixed at the top end, the wire supports a 1.20-kg mass that swings in a horizontal circle. Determine the angular velocity required to produce strain 1.00×10^{-3}.

71. A 200-m-long bridge truss extends across a river (Fig. P12.71). Calculate the force of tension or compression in each structural component when a 1 360-kg car is at the center of the bridge. Assume that the structure is free to slide horizontally to permit thermal expansion and contraction, that the structural components are connected by pin joints, and that the masses of the structural components are small compared with the mass of the car.

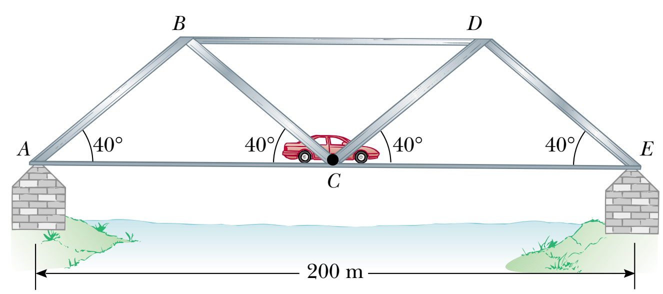


Figure P12.71

72. A 100-m-long bridge truss is supported at its ends so that it can slide freely (Fig. P12.72). A 1 500-kg car is halfway between points A and C. Show that the weight of the car is evenly distributed between points A and C, and calculate the force in each structural component. Specify whether each structural component is under tension or compression. Assume that the structural components are connected by pin joints and that the masses of the components are small compared with the mass of the car.

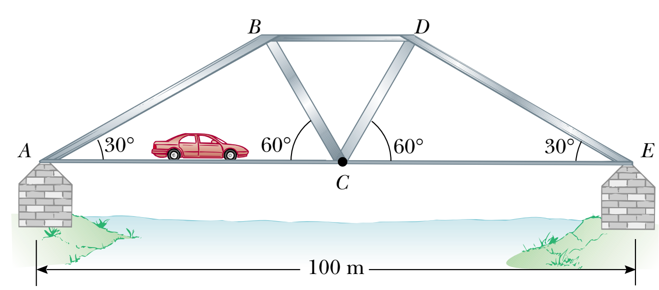


Figure P12.72

Answers to Quick Quizzes

12.1 (a) Yes, as Figure 12.3 shows. The unbalanced torques cause an angular acceleration even though the linear acceleration is zero. (b) Yes, again. This happens when the lines of action of all the forces intersect at a common point. If a net force acts on the object, then the object has a translational acceleration. However, because there is no net torque on the object, the object has no angular acceleration. There are other instances in which torques cancel but the forces do not. You should be able to draw at least two.

12.2 The location of the board's center of gravity relative to the fulcrum.

12.3 Young's modulus is given by the ratio of stress to strain, which is the slope of the elastic behavior section of the graph in Figure 12.14. Reading from the graph, we note that a stress of approximately $3 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$ results in a strain of 0.003. The slope, and hence Young's modulus, are therefore $10 \times 10^{10}\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$.

12.4 A substantial part of the graph extends beyond the elastic limit, indicating permanent deformation. Thus, the material is ductile.

PUZZLER

Inside the pocket watch is a small disk (called a torsional pendulum) that oscillates back and forth at a very precise rate and controls the watch gears. A grandfather clock keeps accurate time because of its pendulum. The tall wooden case provides the space needed by the long pendulum as it advances the clock gears with each swing. In both of these timepieces, the vibration of a carefully shaped component is critical to accurate operation. What properties of oscillating objects make them so useful in timing devices? *(Photograph of pocket watch, George Semple; photograph of grandfather clock, Charles D. Winters)*

chapter

13

Oscillatory Motion

Chapter Outline

A very special kind of motion occurs when the force acting on a body is proportional to the displacement of the body from some equilibrium position. If this force is always directed toward the equilibrium position, repetitive back-and-forth motion occurs about this position. Such motion is called *periodic motion, harmonic motion, oscillation,* or *vibration* (the four terms are completely equivalent).

You are most likely familiar with several examples of periodic motion, such as the oscillations of a block attached to a spring, the swinging of a child on a playground swing, the motion of a pendulum, and the vibrations of a stringed musical instrument. In addition to these everyday examples, numerous other systems exhibit periodic motion. For example, the molecules in a solid oscillate about their equilibrium positions; electromagnetic waves, such as light waves, radar, and radio waves, are characterized by oscillating electric and magnetic field vectors; and in alternating-current electrical circuits, voltage, current, and electrical charge vary periodically with time.

Most of the material in this chapter deals with *simple harmonic motion,* in which an object oscillates such that its position is specified by a sinusoidal function of time with no loss in mechanical energy. In real mechanical systems, damping (frictional) forces are often present. These forces are considered in optional Section 13.6 at the end of this chapter.

13.1 SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION

8.10 Consider a physical system that consists of a block of mass m attached to the end of a spring, with the block free to move on a horizontal, frictionless surface (Fig. 13.1). When the spring is neither stretched nor compressed, the block is at the position $x = 0$, called the *equilibrium position* of the system. We know from experience that such a system oscillates back and forth if disturbed from its equilibrium position.

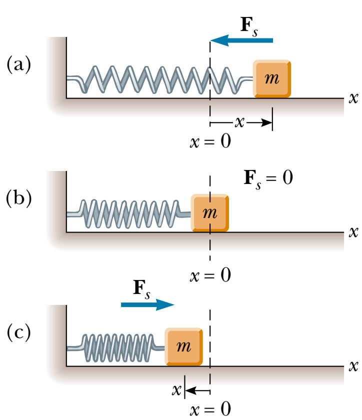


Figure 13.1 A block attached to a spring moving on a frictionless surface. (a) When the block is displaced to the right of equilibrium ($x > 0$), the force exerted by the spring acts to the left. (b) When the block is at its equilibrium position ($x = 0$), the force exerted by the spring is zero. (c) When the block is displaced to the left of equilibrium ($x < 0$), the force exerted by the spring acts to the right.

We can understand the motion in Figure 13.1 qualitatively by first recalling that when the block is displaced a small distance x from equilibrium, the spring exerts on the block a force that is proportional to the displacement and given by Hooke's law (see Section 7.3):

$$F_s = -kx \tag{13.1}$$

We call this a **restoring force** because it is is always directed toward the equilibrium position and therefore *opposite* the displacement. That is, when the block is displaced to the right of $x = 0$ in Figure 13.1, then the displacement is positive and the restoring force is directed to the left. When the block is displaced to the left of $x = 0$, then the displacement is negative and the restoring force is directed to the right.

Applying Newton's second law to the motion of the block, together with Equation 13.1, we obtain

$$F_s = -kx = ma$$

$$a = -\frac{k}{m}x \tag{13.2}$$

That is, the acceleration is proportional to the displacement of the block, and its direction is opposite the direction of the displacement. Systems that behave in this way are said to exhibit **simple harmonic motion. An object moves with simple harmonic motion whenever its acceleration is proportional to its displacement from some equilibrium position and is oppositely directed.**

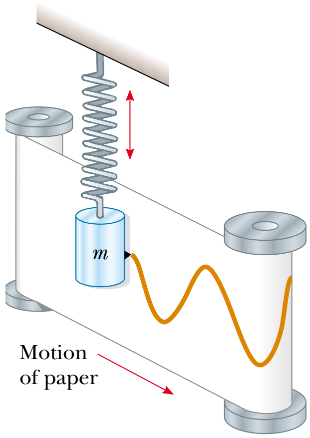


Figure 13.2 An experimental apparatus for demonstrating simple harmonic motion. A pen attached to the oscillating mass traces out a wavelike pattern on the moving chart paper.

An experimental arrangement that exhibits simple harmonic motion is illustrated in Figure 13.2. A mass oscillating vertically on a spring has a pen attached to it. While the mass is oscillating, a sheet of paper is moved perpendicular to the direction of motion of the spring, and the pen traces out a wavelike pattern.

8.2 & 8.3

In general, a particle moving along the x axis exhibits simple harmonic motion when x, the particle's displacement from equilibrium, varies in time according to the relationship

Displacement versus time for simple harmonic motion

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.3}$$

where A, ω, and ϕ are constants. To give physical significance to these constants, we have labeled a plot of x as a function of t in Figure 13.3a. This is just the pattern that is observed with the experimental apparatus shown in Figure 13.2. The **amplitude** A of the motion is the maximum displacement of the particle in either the positive or negative x direction. The constant ω is called the **angular frequency** of the motion and has units of radians per second. (We shall discuss the geometric significance of ω in Section 13.2.) The constant angle ϕ, called the **phase constant** (or phase angle), is determined by the initial displacement and velocity of the particle. If the particle is at its maximum position $x = A$ at $t = 0$, then $\phi = 0$ and the curve of x versus t is as shown in Figure 13.3b. If the particle is at some other position at $t = 0$, the constants ϕ and A tell us what the position was at time $t = 0$. The quantity $(\omega t + \phi)$ is called the **phase** of the motion and is useful in comparing the motions of two oscillators.

Note from Equation 13.3 that the trigonometric function x is *periodic* and repeats itself every time ωt increases by 2π rad. **The period T of the motion is the time it takes for the particle to go through one full cycle.** We say that the particle has made *one oscillation.* This definition of T tells us that the value of x at time t equals the value of x at time $t + T$. We can show that $T = 2\pi/\omega$ by using the preceding observation that the phase $(\omega t + \phi)$ increases by 2π rad in a time T:

$$\omega t + \phi + 2\pi = \omega(t + T) + \phi$$

Hence, $\omega T = 2\pi$, or

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \tag{13.4}$$

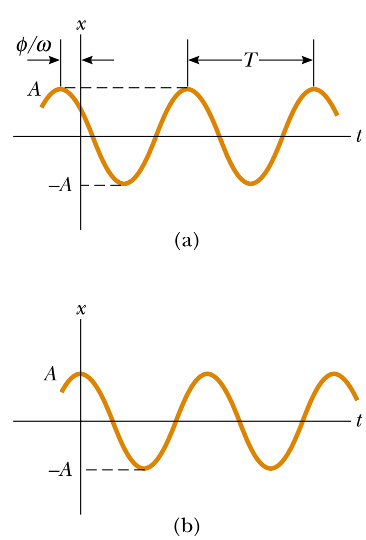


Figure 13.3 (a) An x–t curve for a particle undergoing simple harmonic motion. The amplitude of the motion is A, the period is T, and the phase constant is ϕ. (b) The x–t curve in the special case in which $x = A$ at $t = 0$ and hence $\phi = 0$.

The inverse of the period is called the **frequency** f of the motion. **The frequency represents the number of oscillations that the particle makes per unit time:**

Frequency

$$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} \tag{13.5}$$

The units of f are cycles per second $= s^{-1}$, or **hertz** (Hz).

Rearranging Equation 13.5, we obtain the angular frequency:

Angular frequency

$$\omega = 2\pi f = \frac{2\pi}{T} \tag{13.6}$$

Quick Quiz 13.1

What would the phase constant ϕ have to be in Equation 13.3 if we were describing an oscillating object that happened to be at the origin at $t = 0$?

Quick Quiz 13.2

An object undergoes simple harmonic motion of amplitude A. Through what total distance does the object move during one complete cycle of its motion? (a) $A/2$. (b) A. (c) $2A$. (d) $4A$.

We can obtain the linear velocity of a particle undergoing simple harmonic motion by differentiating Equation 13.3 with respect to time:

Velocity in simple harmonic motion

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = -\omega A \sin(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.7}$$

The acceleration of the particle is

Acceleration in simple harmonic motion

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = -\omega^2 A \cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.8}$$

Because $x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$, we can express Equation 13.8 in the form

$$a = -\omega^2 x \tag{13.9}$$

From Equation 13.7 we see that, because the sine function oscillates between ± 1, the extreme values of v are $\pm \omega A$. Because the cosine function also oscillates between ± 1, Equation 13.8 tells us that the extreme values of a are $\pm \omega^2 A$. Therefore, the maximum speed and the magnitude of the maximum acceleration of a particle moving in simple harmonic motion are

Maximum values of speed and acceleration in simple harmonic motion

$$v_{\max} = \omega A \tag{13.10}$$

$$a_{\max} = \omega^2 A \tag{13.11}$$

Figure 13.4a represents the displacement versus time for an arbitrary value of the phase constant. The velocity and acceleration curves are illustrated in Figure 13.4b and c. These curves show that the phase of the velocity differs from the phase of the displacement by $\pi/2$ rad, or 90°. That is, when x is a maximum or a minimum, the velocity is zero. Likewise, when x is zero, the speed is a maximum.

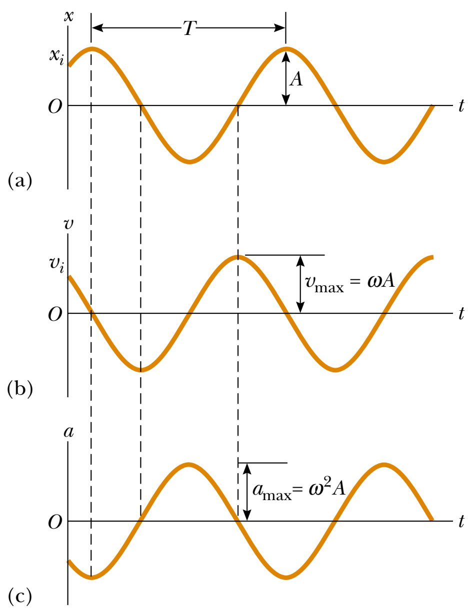


Figure 13.4 Graphical representation of simple harmonic motion. (a) Displacement versus time. (b) Velocity versus time. (c) Acceleration versus time. Note that at any specified time the velocity is 90° out of phase with the displacement and the acceleration is 180° out of phase with the displacement.

Furthermore, note that the phase of the acceleration differs from the phase of the displacement by π rad, or 180°. That is, when x is a maximum, a is a maximum in the opposite direction.

The phase constant ϕ is important when we compare the motion of two or more oscillating objects. Imagine two identical pendulum bobs swinging side by side in simple harmonic motion, with one having been released later than the other. The pendulum bobs have different phase constants. Let us show how the phase constant and the amplitude of any particle moving in simple harmonic motion can be determined if we know the particle's initial speed and position and the angular frequency of its motion.

Suppose that at $t = 0$ the initial position of a single oscillator is $x = x_i$ and its initial speed is $v = v_i$. Under these conditions, Equations 13.3 and 13.7 give

$$x_i = A\cos\phi \qquad \textbf{(13.12)}$$

$$v_i = -\omega A\sin\phi \qquad \textbf{(13.13)}$$

Dividing Equation 13.13 by Equation 13.12 eliminates A, giving $v_i/x_i = -\omega\tan\phi$, or

$$\tan\phi = -\frac{v_i}{\omega x_i} \qquad \textbf{(13.14)}$$

Furthermore, if we square Equations 13.12 and 13.13, divide the velocity equation by ω^2, and then add terms, we obtain

$$x_i^2 + \left(\frac{v_i}{\omega}\right)^2 = A^2\cos^2\phi + A^2\sin^2\phi$$

Using the identity $\sin^2\phi + \cos^2\phi = 1$, we can solve for A:

$$A = \sqrt{x_i^2 + \left(\frac{v_i}{\omega}\right)^2} \qquad \textbf{(13.15)}$$

The following properties of a particle moving in simple harmonic motion are important:

Properties of simple harmonic motion

- The acceleration of the particle is proportional to the displacement but is in the opposite direction. This is the *necessary and sufficient condition for simple harmonic motion,* as opposed to all other kinds of vibration.
- The displacement from the equilibrium position, velocity, and acceleration all vary sinusoidally with time but are not in phase, as shown in Figure 13.4.
- The frequency and the period of the motion are independent of the amplitude. (We show this explicitly in the next section.)

Quick Quiz 13.3

Can we use Equations 2.8, 2.10, 2.11, and 2.12 (see pages 35 and 36) to describe the motion of a simple harmonic oscillator?

EXAMPLE 13.1 An Oscillating Object

An object oscillates with simple harmonic motion along the x axis. Its displacement from the origin varies with time according to the equation

$$x = (4.00 \text{ m}) \cos\left(\pi t + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

where t is in seconds and the angles in the parentheses are in radians. (a) Determine the amplitude, frequency, and period of the motion.

Solution By comparing this equation with Equation 13.3, the general equation for simple harmonic motion—$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$—we see that $A = 4.00$ m and $\omega = \pi$ rad/s. Therefore, $f = \omega/2\pi = \pi/2\pi = 0.500$ Hz and $T = 1/f = 2.00$ s.

(b) Calculate the velocity and acceleration of the object at any time t.

Solution

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = -(4.00 \text{ m}) \sin\left(\pi t + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\frac{d}{dt}(\pi t)$$

$$= \boxed{-(4.00\pi \text{ m/s}) \sin\left(\pi t + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)}$$

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = -(4.00\pi \text{ m/s}) \cos\left(\pi t + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\frac{d}{dt}(\pi t)$$

$$= \boxed{-(4.00\pi^2 \text{ m/s}^2) \cos\left(\pi t + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)}$$

(c) Using the results of part (b), determine the position, velocity, and acceleration of the object at $t = 1.00$ s.

Solution Noting that the angles in the trigonometric functions are in radians, we obtain, at $t = 1.00$ s,

$$x = (4.00 \text{ m}) \cos\left(\pi + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = (4.00 \text{ m}) \cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$$

$$= (4.00 \text{ m})(-0.707) = \boxed{-2.83 \text{ m}}$$

$$v = -(4.00\pi \text{ m/s}) \sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right) = -(4.00\pi \text{ m/s})(-0.707)$$

$$= \boxed{8.89 \text{ m/s}}$$

$$a = -(4.00\pi^2 \text{ m/s}^2) \cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$$

$$= -(4.00\pi^2 \text{ m/s}^2)(-0.707) = \boxed{27.9 \text{ m/s}^2}$$

(d) Determine the maximum speed and maximum acceleration of the object.

Solution In the general expressions for v and a found in part (b), we use the fact that the maximum values of the sine and cosine functions are unity. Therefore, v varies between $\pm 4.00\pi$ m/s, and a varies between $\pm 4.00\pi^2$ m/s^2. Thus,

$$v_{\text{max}} = 4.00\pi \text{ m/s} = \boxed{12.6 \text{ m/s}}$$

$$a_{\text{max}} = 4.00\pi^2 \text{ m/s}^2 = \boxed{39.5 \text{ m/s}^2}$$

We obtain the same results using $v_{\text{max}} = \omega A$ and $a_{\text{max}} = \omega^2 A$, where $A = 4.00$ m and $\omega = \pi$ rad/s.

(e) Find the displacement of the object between $t = 0$ and $t = 1.00$ s.

Solution The x coordinate at $t = 0$ is

$$x_i = (4.00 \text{ m}) \cos\left(0 + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = (4.00 \text{ m})(0.707) = 2.83 \text{ m}$$

In part (c), we found that the x coordinate at $t = 1.00$ s is -2.83 m; therefore, the displacement between $t = 0$ and $t = 1.00$ s is

$$\Delta x = x_f - x_i = -2.83 \text{ m} - 2.83 \text{ m} = \boxed{-5.66 \text{ m}}$$

Because the object's velocity changes sign during the first second, the magnitude of Δx is not the same as the distance traveled in the first second. (By the time the first second is over, the object has been through the point $x = -2.83$ m once, traveled to $x = -4.00$ m, and come back to $x = -2.83$ m.)

Exercise What is the phase of the motion at $t = 2.00$ s?

Answer $9\pi/4$ rad.

13.2 THE BLOCK–SPRING SYSTEM REVISITED

Let us return to the block–spring system (Fig. 13.5). Again we assume that the surface is frictionless; hence, when the block is displaced from equilibrium, the only force acting on it is the restoring force of the spring. As we saw in Equation 13.2, when the block is displaced a distance x from equilibrium, it experiences an acceleration $a = -(k/m)x$. If the block is displaced a maximum distance $x = A$ at some initial time and then released from rest, its initial acceleration at that instant is $-kA/m$ (its extreme negative value). When the block passes through the equilibrium position $x = 0$, its acceleration is zero. At this instant, its speed is a maximum. The block then continues to travel to the left of equilibrium and finally reaches $x = -A$, at which time its acceleration is kA/m (maximum positive) and its speed is again zero. Thus, we see that the block oscillates between the turning points $x = \pm A$.

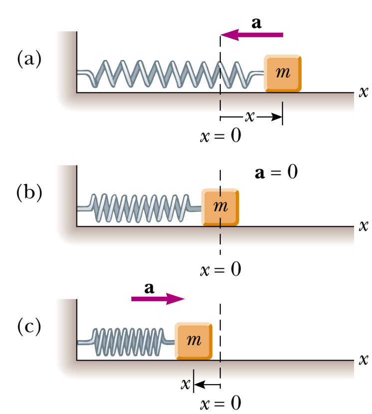


Figure 13.5 A block of mass m attached to a spring on a frictionless surface undergoes simple harmonic motion. (a) When the block is displaced to the right of equilibrium, the displacement is positive and the acceleration is negative. (b) At the equilibrium position, $x = 0$, the acceleration is zero and the speed is a maximum. (c) When the block is displaced to the left of equilibrium, the displacement is negative and the acceleration is positive.

Let us now describe the oscillating motion in a quantitative fashion. Recall that $a = dv/dt = d^2x/dt^2$, and so we can express Equation 13.2 as

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\frac{k}{m}x \quad \textbf{(13.16)}$$

If we denote the ratio k/m with the symbol ω^2, this equation becomes

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\omega^2 x \quad \textbf{(13.17)}$$

Now we require a solution to Equation 13.17—that is, a function $x(t)$ that satisfies this second-order differential equation. Because Equations 13.17 and 13.9 are equivalent, each solution must be that of simple harmonic motion:

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

To see this explicitly, assume that $x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$. Then

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = A\frac{d}{dt}\cos(\omega t + \phi) = -\omega A\sin(\omega t + \phi)$$

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\omega A\frac{d}{dt}\sin(\omega t + \phi) = -\omega^2 A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

Comparing the expressions for x and d^2x/dt^2, we see that $d^2x/dt^2 = -\omega^2 x$, and Equation 13.17 is satisfied. We conclude that **whenever the force acting on a particle is linearly proportional to the displacement from some equilibrium**

position and in the opposite direction ($F = -kx$), the particle moves in simple harmonic motion.

Recall that the period of any simple harmonic oscillator is $T = 2\pi/\omega$ (Eq. 13.4) and that the frequency is the inverse of the period. We know from Equations 13.16 and 13.17 that $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$, so we can express the period and frequency of the block–spring system as

Period and frequency for a block–spring system

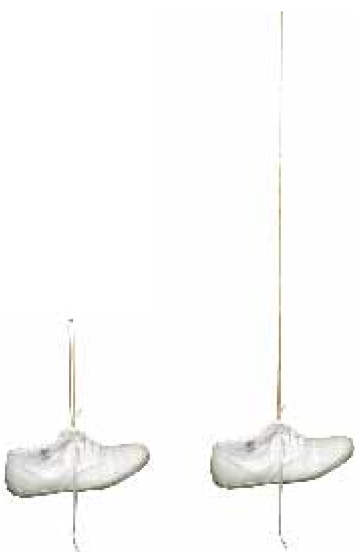
$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \tag{13.18}$$

$$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \tag{13.19}$$

That is, **the frequency and period depend only on the mass of the block and on the force constant of the spring.** Furthermore, the frequency and period are independent of the amplitude of the motion. As we might expect, the frequency is greater for a stiffer spring (the stiffer the spring, the greater the value of k) and decreases with increasing mass.

QuickLab

Hang an object from a rubber band and start it oscillating. Measure T. Now tie four identical rubber bands together, end to end. How should k for this longer band compare with k for the single band? Again, time the oscillations with the same object. Can you verify Equation 13.19?



Special Case 1. Let us consider a special case to better understand the physical significance of Equation 13.3, the defining expression for simple harmonic motion. We shall use this equation to describe the motion of an oscillating block–spring system. Suppose we pull the block a distance A from equilibrium and then release it from rest at this stretched position, as shown in Figure 13.6. Our solution for x must obey the initial conditions that $x_i = A$ and $v_i = 0$ at $t = 0$. It does if we choose $\phi = 0$, which gives $x = A\cos\omega t$ as the solution. To check this solution, we note that it satisfies the condition that $x_i = A$ at $t = 0$ because $\cos 0 = 1$. Thus, we see that A and ϕ contain the information on initial conditions.

Now let us investigate the behavior of the velocity and acceleration for this special case. Because $x = A\cos\omega t$,

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = -\omega A\sin\omega t$$

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = -\omega^2 A\cos\omega t$$

From the velocity expression we see that, because $\sin 0 = 0$, $v_i = 0$ at $t = 0$, as we require. The expression for the acceleration tells us that $a = -\omega^2 A$ at $t = 0$. Physically, this negative acceleration makes sense because the force acting on the block is directed to the left when the displacement is positive. In fact, at the extreme po-

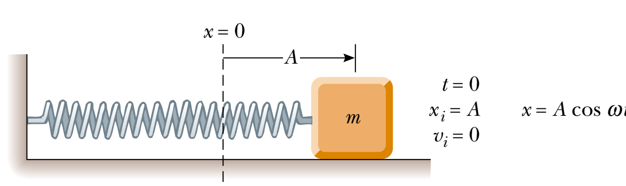


Figure 13.6 A block–spring system that starts from rest at $x_i = A$. In this case, $\phi = 0$ and thus $x = A\cos\omega t$.

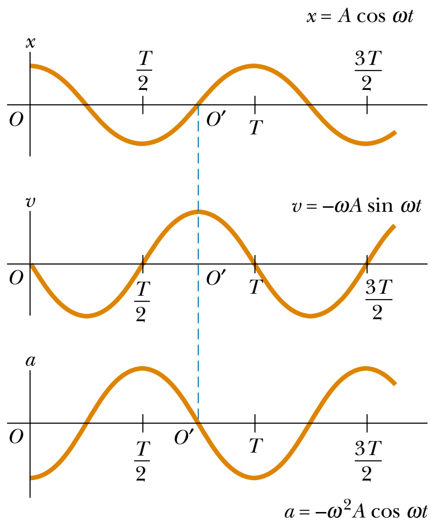


Figure 13.7 Displacement, velocity, and acceleration versus time for a block–spring system like the one shown in Figure 13.6, undergoing simple harmonic motion under the initial conditions that at $t = 0$, $x_i = A$ and $v_i = 0$ (Special Case 1). The origins at O' correspond to Special Case 2, the block–spring system under the initial conditions shown in Figure 13.8.

sition shown in Figure 13.6, $F_s = -kA$ (to the left) and the initial acceleration is $-\omega^2 A = -kA/m$.

Another approach to showing that $x = A \cos \omega t$ is the correct solution involves using the relationship $\tan \phi = -v_i/\omega x_i$ (Eq. 13.14). Because $v_i = 0$ at $t = 0$, $\tan \phi = 0$ and thus $\phi = 0$. (The tangent of π also equals zero, but $\phi = \pi$ gives the wrong value for x_i.)

Figure 13.7 is a plot of displacement, velocity, and acceleration versus time for this special case. Note that the acceleration reaches extreme values of $\pm \omega^2 A$ while the displacement has extreme values of $\pm A$ because the force is maximal at those positions. Furthermore, the velocity has extreme values of $\pm \omega A$, which both occur at $x = 0$. Hence, the quantitative solution agrees with our qualitative description of this system.

Special Case 2. Now suppose that the block is given an initial velocity $\mathbf{v}_i$ to the right at the instant it is at the equilibrium position, so that $x_i = 0$ and $v = v_i$ at $t = 0$ (Fig. 13.8). The expression for x must now satisfy these initial conditions. Because the block is moving in the positive x direction at $t = 0$ and because $x_i = 0$ at $t = 0$, the expression for x must have the form $x = A \sin \omega t$.

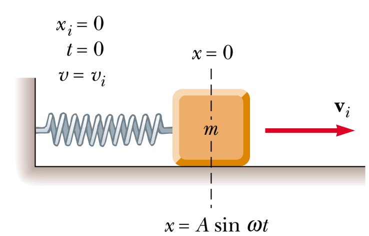


Figure 13.8 The block–spring system starts its motion at the equilibrium position at $t = 0$. If its initial velocity is v_i to the right, the block's x coordinate varies as $x = (v_i/\omega) \sin \omega t$.

Applying Equation 13.14 and the initial condition that $x_i = 0$ at $t = 0$, we find that $\tan \phi = -\infty$ and $\phi = -\pi/2$. Hence, Equation 13.3 becomes $x = A \cos (\omega t - \pi/2)$, which can be written $x = A \sin \omega t$. Furthermore, from Equation 13.15 we see that $A = v_i/\omega$; therefore, we can express x as

$$x = \frac{v_i}{\omega} \sin \omega t$$

The velocity and acceleration in this case are

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = v_i \cos \omega t$$

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = -\omega v_i \sin \omega t$$

These results are consistent with the facts that (1) the block always has a maximum

speed at $x = 0$ and (2) the force and acceleration are zero at this position. The graphs of these functions versus time in Figure 13.7 correspond to the origin at O'.

Quick Quiz 13.4

What is the solution for x if the block is initially moving to the left in Figure 13.8?

EXAMPLE 13.2 Watch Out for Potholes!

A car with a mass of 1 300 kg is constructed so that its frame is supported by four springs. Each spring has a force constant of 20 000 N/m. If two people riding in the car have a combined mass of 160 kg, find the frequency of vibration of the car after it is driven over a pothole in the road.

Solution We assume that the mass is evenly distributed. Thus, each spring supports one fourth of the load. The total mass is 1 460 kg, and therefore each spring supports 365 kg. Hence, the frequency of vibration is, from Equation 13.19,

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{20\ 000 \text{ N/m}}{365 \text{ kg}}} = \boxed{1.18 \text{ Hz}}$$

Exercise How long does it take the car to execute two complete vibrations?

Answer 1.70 s.

EXAMPLE 13.3 A Block–Spring System

A block with a mass of 200 g is connected to a light spring for which the force constant is 5.00 N/m and is free to oscillate on a horizontal, frictionless surface. The block is displaced 5.00 cm from equilibrium and released from rest, as shown in Figure 13.6. (a) Find the period of its motion.

Solution From Equations 13.16 and 13.17, we know that the angular frequency of any block–spring system is

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{5.00 \text{ N/m}}{200 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg}}} = 5.00 \text{ rad/s}$$

and the period is

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \frac{2\pi}{5.00 \text{ rad/s}} = \boxed{1.26 \text{ s}}$$

(b) Determine the maximum speed of the block.

Solution We use Equation 13.10:

$$v_{\text{max}} = \omega A = (5.00 \text{ rad/s})(5.00 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}) = \boxed{0.250 \text{ m/s}}$$

(c) What is the maximum acceleration of the block?

Solution We use Equation 13.11:

$$a_{\text{max}} = \omega^2 A = (5.00 \text{ rad/s})^2(5.00 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}) = \boxed{1.25 \text{ m/s}^2}$$

(d) Express the displacement, speed, and acceleration as functions of time.

Solution This situation corresponds to Special Case 1, where our solution is $x = A \cos \omega t$. Using this expression and the results from (a), (b), and (c), we find that

$$x = A \cos \omega t = \boxed{(0.050 \text{ m}) \cos 5.00t}$$

$$v = \omega A \sin \omega t = \boxed{-(0.250 \text{ m/s}) \sin 5.00t}$$

$$a = \omega^2 A \cos \omega t = \boxed{-(1.25 \text{ m/s}^2) \cos 5.00t}$$

13.3 ENERGY OF THE SIMPLE HARMONIC OSCILLATOR

Let us examine the mechanical energy of the block–spring system illustrated in Figure 13.6. Because the surface is frictionless, we expect the total mechanical energy to be constant, as was shown in Chapter 8. We can use Equation 13.7 to ex-

press the kinetic energy as

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2} mv^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} m\omega^2 A^2 \sin^2(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.20}$$

Kinetic energy of a simple harmonic oscillator

The elastic potential energy stored in the spring for any elongation x is given by $\frac{1}{2} kx^2$ (see Eq. 8.4). Using Equation 13.3, we obtain

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2} kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} kA^2 \cos^2(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.21}$$

Potential energy of a simple harmonic oscillator

We see that K and U are *always* positive quantities. Because $\omega^2 = k/m$, we can express the total mechanical energy of the simple harmonic oscillator as

$$E = K + U = \tfrac{1}{2} kA^2[\sin^2(\omega t + \phi) + \cos^2(\omega t + \phi)]$$

From the identity $\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$, we see that the quantity in square brackets is unity. Therefore, this equation reduces to

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2} kA^2 \tag{13.22}$$

Total energy of a simple harmonic oscillator

That is, **the total mechanical energy of a simple harmonic oscillator is a constant of the motion and is proportional to the square of the amplitude.** Note that U is small when K is large, and vice versa, because the sum must be constant. In fact, the total mechanical energy is equal to the maximum potential energy stored in the spring when $x = \pm A$ because $v = 0$ at these points and thus there is no kinetic energy. At the equilibrium position, where $U = 0$ because $x = 0$, the total energy, all in the form of kinetic energy, is again $\frac{1}{2} kA^2$. That is,

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2} mv_{\text{max}}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} m\omega^2 A^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} m\frac{k}{m} A^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} kA^2 \qquad (\text{at } x = 0)$$

Plots of the kinetic and potential energies versus time appear in Figure 13.9a, where we have taken $\phi = 0$. As already mentioned, both K and U are always positive, and at all times their sum is a constant equal to $\frac{1}{2} kA^2$, the total energy of the system. The variations of K and U with the displacement x of the block are plotted

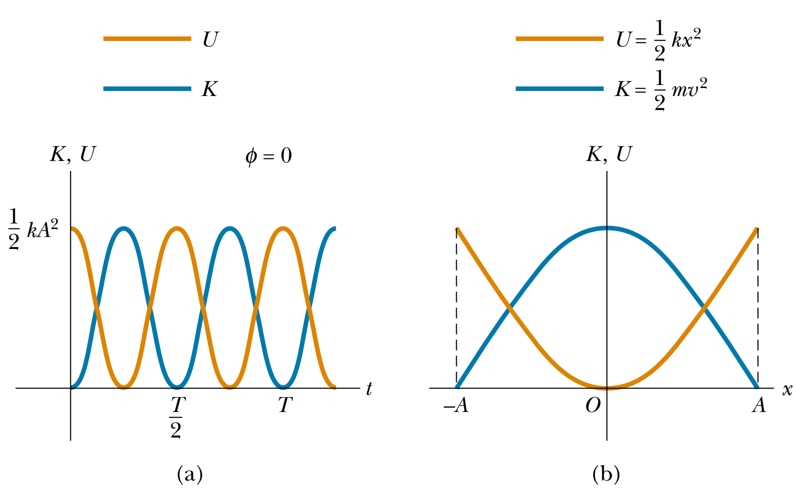


Figure 13.9 (a) Kinetic energy and potential energy versus time for a simple harmonic oscillator with $\phi = 0$. (b) Kinetic energy and potential energy versus displacement for a simple harmonic oscillator. In either plot, note that $K + U =$ constant.

in Figure 13.9b. Energy is continuously being transformed between potential energy stored in the spring and kinetic energy of the block.

Figure 13.10 illustrates the position, velocity, acceleration, kinetic energy, and potential energy of the block–spring system for one full period of the motion. Most of the ideas discussed so far are incorporated in this important figure. Study it carefully.

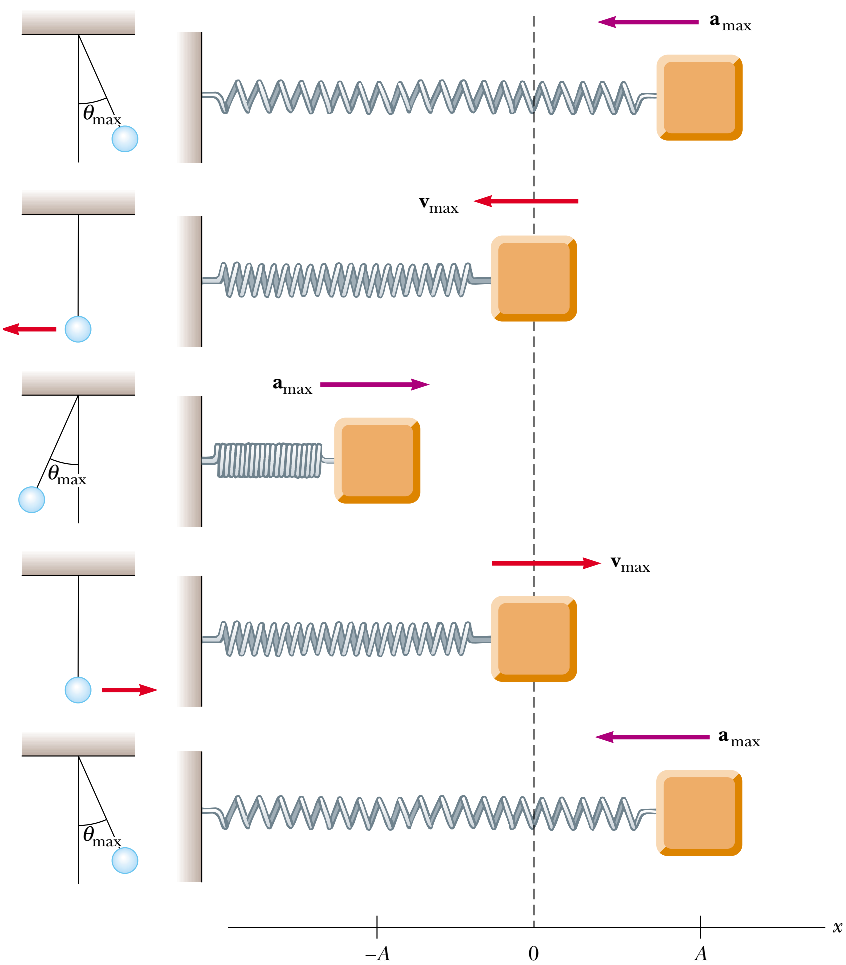
Finally, we can use the principle of conservation of energy to obtain the velocity for an arbitrary displacement by expressing the total energy at some arbitrary position x as

$$E = K + U = \tfrac{1}{2} mv^2 + \tfrac{1}{2} kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} kA^2$$

Velocity as a function of position for a simple harmonic oscillator

$$v = \pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}(A^2 - x^2)} = \pm\,\omega\sqrt{A^2 - x^2} \qquad \textbf{(13.23)}$$

When we check Equation 13.23 to see whether it agrees with known cases, we find that it substantiates the fact that the speed is a maximum at $x = 0$ and is zero at the turning points $x = \pm A$.



t	x	v	a	K	U
0	A	0	$-\omega^2 A$	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$
$T/4$	0	$-\omega A$	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$	0
$T/2$	$-A$	0	$\omega^2 A$	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$
$3T/4$	0	ωA	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$	0
T	A	0	$-\omega^2 A$	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$

Figure 13.10 Simple harmonic motion for a block–spring system and its relationship to the motion of a simple pendulum. The parameters in the table refer to the block–spring system, assuming that $x = A$ at $t = 0$; thus, $x = A \cos \omega t$ (see Special Case 1).

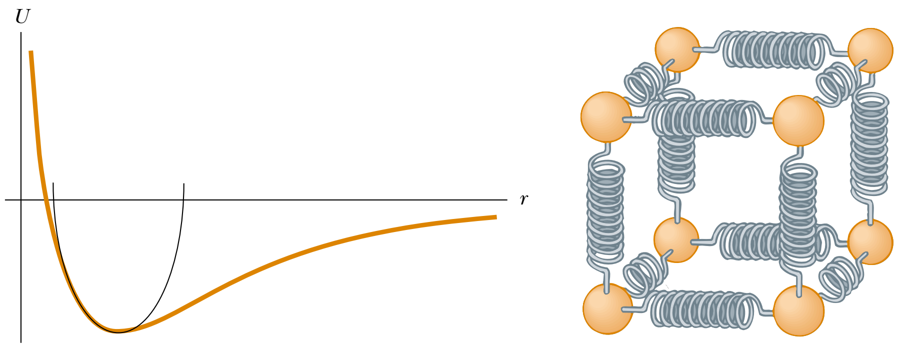


Figure 13.11 (a) If the atoms in a molecule do not move too far from their equilibrium positions, a graph of potential energy versus separation distance between atoms is similar to the graph of potential energy versus position for a simple harmonic oscillator. (b) Tiny springs approximate the forces holding atoms together.

You may wonder why we are spending so much time studying simple harmonic oscillators. We do so because they are good models of a wide variety of physical phenomena. For example, recall the Lennard–Jones potential discussed in Example 8.11. This complicated function describes the forces holding atoms together. Figure 13.11a shows that, for small displacements from the equilibrium position, the potential energy curve for this function approximates a parabola, which represents the potential energy function for a simple harmonic oscillator. Thus, we can approximate the complex atomic binding forces as tiny springs, as depicted in Figure 13.11b.

The ideas presented in this chapter apply not only to block–spring systems and atoms, but also to a wide range of situations that include bungee jumping, tuning in a television station, and viewing the light emitted by a laser. You will see more examples of simple harmonic oscillators as you work through this book.

EXAMPLE 13.4 Oscillations on a Horizontal Surface

A 0.500-kg cube connected to a light spring for which the force constant is 20.0 N/m oscillates on a horizontal, frictionless track. (a) Calculate the total energy of the system and the maximum speed of the cube if the amplitude of the motion is 3.00 cm.

Solution Using Equation 13.22, we obtain

$$E = K + U = \tfrac{1}{2} kA^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(20.0 \text{ N/m})(3.00 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m})^2$$

$$= \boxed{9.00 \times 10^{-3} \text{ J}}$$

When the cube is at $x = 0$, we know that $U = 0$ and $E = \frac{1}{2} mv_{\text{max}}^2$; therefore,

$$\tfrac{1}{2} mv_{\text{max}}^2 = 9.00 \times 10^{-3} \text{ J}$$

$$v_{\text{max}} = \sqrt{\frac{18.0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ J}}{0.500 \text{ kg}}} = \boxed{0.190 \text{ m/s}}$$

(b) What is the velocity of the cube when the displacement is 2.00 cm?

Solution We can apply Equation 13.23 directly:

$$v = \pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}(A^2 - x^2)}$$

$$= \pm\sqrt{\frac{20.0 \text{ N/m}}{0.500 \text{ kg}}[(0.030\,0 \text{ m})^2 - (0.020\,0 \text{ m})^2]}$$

$$= \boxed{\pm 0.141 \text{ m/s}}$$

The positive and negative signs indicate that the cube could be moving to either the right or the left at this instant.

(c) Compute the kinetic and potential energies of the system when the displacement is 2.00 cm.

Solution Using the result of (b), we find that

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.500\text{ kg})(0.141\text{ m/s})^2 = \boxed{5.00 \times 10^{-3}\text{ J}}$$

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(20.0\text{ N/m})(0.020\,0\text{ m})^2 = \boxed{4.00 \times 10^{-3}\text{ J}}$$

Note that $K + U = E$.

Exercise For what values of x is the speed of the cube 0.100 m/s?

Answer ± 2.55 cm.

13.4 THE PENDULUM

8.11 & 8.12 The **simple pendulum** is another mechanical system that exhibits periodic motion. It consists of a particle-like bob of mass m suspended by a light string of length L that is fixed at the upper end, as shown in Figure 13.12. The motion occurs in the vertical plane and is driven by the force of gravity. We shall show that, provided the angle θ is small (less than about 10°), the motion is that of a simple harmonic oscillator.

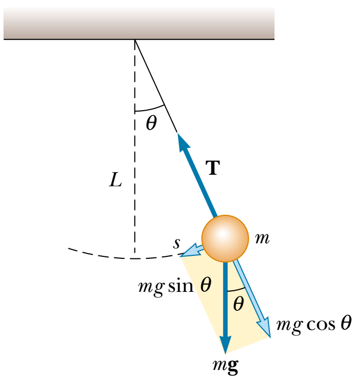


Figure 13.12 When θ is small, a simple pendulum oscillates in simple harmonic motion about the equilibrium position $\theta = 0$. The restoring force is $mg\sin\theta$, the component of the gravitational force tangent to the arc.

The forces acting on the bob are the force $\mathbf{T}$ exerted by the string and the gravitational force $m\mathbf{g}$. The tangential component of the gravitational force, $mg\sin\theta$, always acts toward $\theta = 0$, opposite the displacement. Therefore, the tangential force is a restoring force, and we can apply Newton's second law for motion in the tangential direction:

$$\sum F_t = -mg\sin\theta = m\frac{d^2s}{dt^2}$$

where s is the bob's displacement measured along the arc and the minus sign indicates that the tangential force acts toward the equilibrium (vertical) position. Because $s = L\theta$ (Eq. 10.1a) and L is constant, this equation reduces to

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{g}{L}\sin\theta$$

The right side is proportional to $\sin\theta$ rather than to θ; hence, with $\sin\theta$ present, we would not expect simple harmonic motion because this expression is not of the form of Equation 13.17. However, if we assume that θ is small, we can use the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$; thus the equation of motion for the simple pen-

The motion of a simple pendulum, captured with multiflash photography. Is the oscillating motion simple harmonic in this case?

dulum becomes

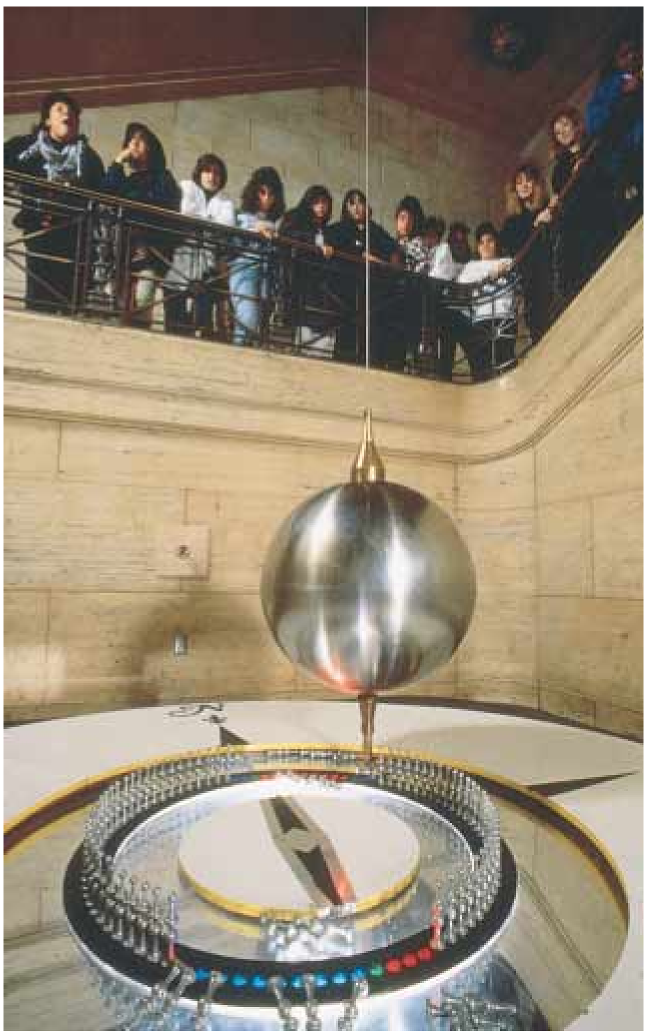
$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{g}{L}\,\theta \tag{13.24}$$

Equation of motion for a simple pendulum (small θ)

Now we have an expression of the same form as Equation 13.17, and we conclude that the motion for small amplitudes of oscillation is simple harmonic motion. Therefore, θ can be written as $\theta = \theta_{\text{max}} \cos(\omega t + \phi)$, where θ_{max} is the *maximum angular displacement* and the angular frequency ω is

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}} \tag{13.25}$$

Angular frequency of motion for a simple pendulum



The Foucault pendulum at the Franklin Institute in Philadelphia. This type of pendulum was first used by the French physicist Jean Foucault to verify the Earth's rotation experimentally. As the pendulum swings, the vertical plane in which it oscillates appears to rotate as the bob successively knocks over the indicators arranged in a circle on the floor. In reality, the plane of oscillation is fixed in space, and the Earth rotating beneath the swinging pendulum moves the indicators into position to be knocked down, one after the other.

The period of the motion is

Period of motion for a simple pendulum

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} \tag{13.26}$$

In other words, **the period and frequency of a simple pendulum depend only on the length of the string and the acceleration due to gravity.** Because the period is independent of the mass, we conclude that all simple pendulums that are of equal length and are at the same location (so that g is constant) oscillate with the same period. The analogy between the motion of a simple pendulum and that of a block–spring system is illustrated in Figure 13.10.

The simple pendulum can be used as a timekeeper because its period depends only on its length and the local value of g. It is also a convenient device for making precise measurements of the free-fall acceleration. Such measurements are important because variations in local values of g can provide information on the location of oil and of other valuable underground resources.

Quick Quiz 13.5

A block of mass m is first allowed to hang from a spring in static equilibrium. It stretches the spring a distance L beyond the spring's unstressed length. The block and spring are then set into oscillation. Is the period of this system less than, equal to, or greater than the period of a simple pendulum having a length L and a bob mass m?

EXAMPLE 13.5 A Connection Between Length and Time

Christian Huygens (1629–1695), the greatest clockmaker in history, suggested that an international unit of length could be defined as the length of a simple pendulum having a period of exactly 1 s. How much shorter would our length unit be had his suggestion been followed?

Solution Solving Equation 13.26 for the length gives

$$L = \frac{T^2 g}{4\pi^2} = \frac{(1\text{ s})^2(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)}{4\pi^2} = \boxed{0.248\text{ m}}$$

Thus, the meter's length would be slightly less than one-fourth its current length. Note that the number of significant digits depends only on how precisely we know g because the time has been defined to be exactly 1 s.

Physical Pendulum

QuickLab

Firmly hold a ruler so that about half of it is over the edge of your desk. With your other hand, pull down and then release the free end, watching how it vibrates. Now slide the ruler so that only about a quarter of it is free to vibrate. This time when you release it, how does the vibrational period compare with its earlier value? Why?

Suppose you balance a wire coat hanger so that the hook is supported by your extended index finger. When you give the hanger a small displacement (with your other hand) and then release it, it oscillates. If a hanging object oscillates about a fixed axis that does not pass through its center of mass and the object cannot be approximated as a point mass, we cannot treat the system as a simple pendulum. In this case the system is called a **physical pendulum.**

Consider a rigid body pivoted at a point O that is a distance d from the center of mass (Fig. 13.13). The force of gravity provides a torque about an axis through O, and the magnitude of that torque is $mgd \sin\theta$, where θ is as shown in Figure 13.13. Using the law of motion $\Sigma\tau = I\alpha$, where I is the moment of inertia about

the axis through O, we obtain

$$-mgd\sin\theta = I\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2}$$

The minus sign indicates that the torque about O tends to decrease θ. That is, the force of gravity produces a restoring torque. Because this equation gives us the angular acceleration $d^2\theta/dt^2$ of the pivoted body, we can consider it the equation of motion for the system. If we again assume that θ is small, the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$ is valid, and the equation of motion reduces to

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\left(\frac{mgd}{I}\right)\theta = -\omega^2\theta \qquad \textbf{(13.27)}$$

Because this equation is of the same form as Equation 13.17, the motion is simple harmonic motion. That is, the solution of Equation 13.27 is $\theta = \theta_{\text{max}}\cos(\omega t + \phi)$, where θ_{max} is the maximum angular displacement and

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{mgd}{I}}$$

The period is

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I}{mgd}} \qquad \textbf{(13.28)}$$

Period of motion for a physical pendulum

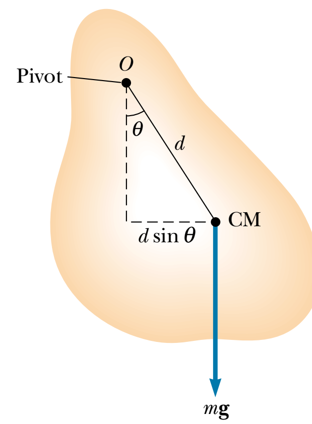


Figure 13.13 A physical pendulum.

One can use this result to measure the moment of inertia of a flat rigid body. If the location of the center of mass—and hence the value of d—are known, the moment of inertia can be obtained by measuring the period. Finally, note that Equation 13.28 reduces to the period of a simple pendulum (Eq. 13.26) when $I = md^2$—that is, when all the mass is concentrated at the center of mass.

EXAMPLE 13.6 A Swinging Rod

A uniform rod of mass M and length L is pivoted about one end and oscillates in a vertical plane (Fig. 13.14). Find the period of oscillation if the amplitude of the motion is small.

Solution In Chapter 10 we found that the moment of inertia of a uniform rod about an axis through one end is $\frac{1}{3}ML^2$. The distance d from the pivot to the center of mass is $L/2$. Substituting these quantities into Equation 13.28 gives

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{\frac{1}{3}ML^2}{Mg\frac{L}{2}}} = \boxed{2\pi\sqrt{\frac{2L}{3g}}}$$

Comment In one of the Moon landings, an astronaut walking on the Moon's surface had a belt hanging from his space suit, and the belt oscillated as a physical pendulum. A scientist on the Earth observed this motion on television and used it to estimate the free-fall acceleration on the Moon. How did the scientist make this calculation?

Exercise Calculate the period of a meter stick that is pivoted about one end and is oscillating in a vertical plane.

Answer 1.64 s.

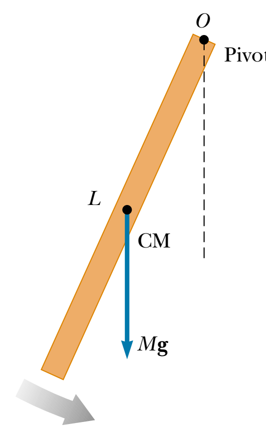


Figure 13.14 A rigid rod oscillating about a pivot through one end is a physical pendulum with $d = L/2$ and, from Table 10.2, $I = \frac{1}{3}ML^2$.

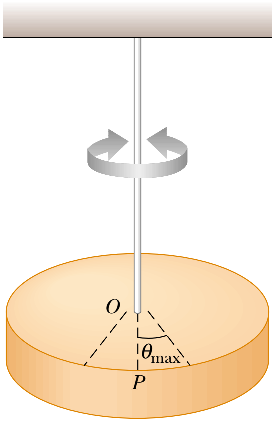


Figure 13.15 A torsional pendulum consists of a rigid body suspended by a wire attached to a rigid support. The body oscillates about the line *OP* with an amplitude θ_{max}.

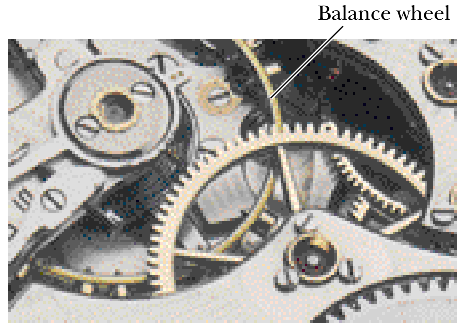


Figure 13.16 The balance wheel of this antique pocket watch is a torsional pendulum and regulates the time-keeping mechanism.

Torsional Pendulum

Figure 13.15 shows a rigid body suspended by a wire attached at the top to a fixed support. When the body is twisted through some small angle θ, the twisted wire exerts on the body a restoring torque that is proportional to the angular displacement. That is,

$$\tau = -\kappa\theta$$

where κ (kappa) is called the *torsion constant* of the support wire. The value of κ can be obtained by applying a known torque to twist the wire through a measurable angle θ. Applying Newton's second law for rotational motion, we find

$$\tau = -\kappa\theta = I\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2}$$

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{\kappa}{I}\theta \qquad \textbf{(13.29)}$$

Again, this is the equation of motion for a simple harmonic oscillator, with $\omega = \sqrt{\kappa/I}$ and a period

Period of motion for a torsional pendulum

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I}{\kappa}} \qquad \textbf{(13.30)}$$

This system is called a *torsional pendulum.* There is no small-angle restriction in this situation as long as the elastic limit of the wire is not exceeded. Figure 13.16 shows the balance wheel of a watch oscillating as a torsional pendulum, energized by the mainspring.

13.5 COMPARING SIMPLE HARMONIC MOTION WITH UNIFORM CIRCULAR MOTION

8.8

We can better understand and visualize many aspects of simple harmonic motion by studying its relationship to uniform circular motion. Figure 13.17 is an overhead view of an experimental arrangement that shows this relationship. A ball is attached to the rim of a turntable of radius A, which is illuminated from the side by a lamp. The ball casts a shadow on a screen. We find that as the turntable rotates with constant angular speed, the shadow of the ball moves back and forth in simple harmonic motion.

Consider a particle located at point P on the circumference of a circle of radius A, as shown in Figure 13.18a, with the line OP making an angle ϕ with the x axis at $t = 0$. We call this circle a *reference circle* for comparing simple harmonic motion and uniform circular motion, and we take the position of P at $t = 0$ as our reference position. If the particle moves along the circle with constant angular speed ω until OP makes an angle θ with the x axis, as illustrated in Figure 13.18b, then at some time $t > 0$, the angle between OP and the x axis is $\theta = \omega t + \phi$. As the particle moves along the circle, the projection of P on the x axis, labeled point Q, moves back and forth along the x axis, between the limits $x = \pm A$.

Note that points P and Q always have the same x coordinate. From the right triangle OPQ, we see that this x coordinate is

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.31}$$

This expression shows that the point Q moves with simple harmonic motion along the x axis. Therefore, we conclude that

simple harmonic motion along a straight line can be represented by the projection of uniform circular motion along a diameter of a reference circle.

We can make a similar argument by noting from Figure 13.18b that the projection of P along the y axis also exhibits simple harmonic motion. Therefore, **uniform circular motion can be considered a combination of two simple harmonic motions,** one along the x axis and one along the y axis, with the two differing in phase by 90°.

This geometric interpretation shows that the time for one complete revolution of the point P on the reference circle is equal to the period of motion T for simple harmonic motion between $x = \pm A$. That is, the angular speed ω of P is the same as the angular frequency ω of simple harmonic motion along the x axis (this is why we use the same symbol). The phase constant ϕ for simple harmonic motion corresponds to the initial angle that OP makes with the x axis. The radius A of the reference circle equals the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion.

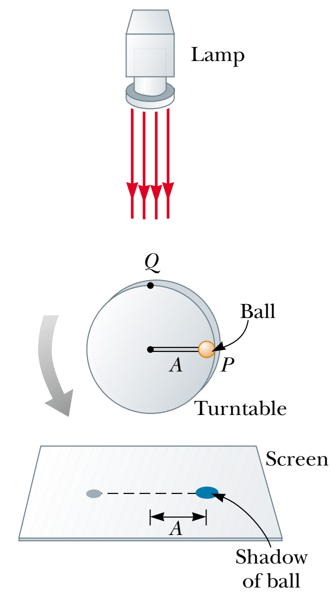


Figure 13.17 An experimental setup for demonstrating the connection between simple harmonic motion and uniform circular motion. As the ball rotates on the turntable with constant angular speed, its shadow on the screen moves back and forth in simple harmonic motion.

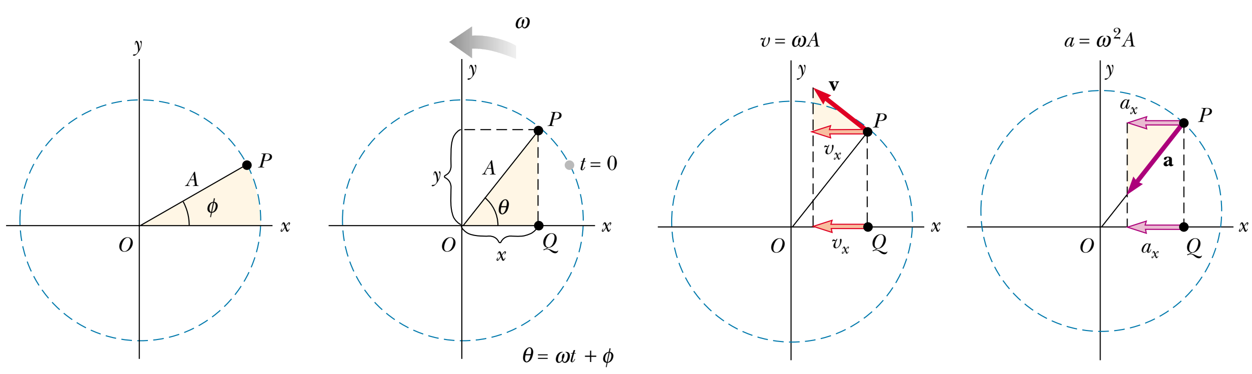


Figure 13.18 Relationship between the uniform circular motion of a point P and the simple harmonic motion of a point Q. A particle at P moves in a circle of radius A with constant angular speed ω. (a) A reference circle showing the position of P at $t = 0$. (b) The x coordinates of points P and Q are equal and vary in time as $x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$. (c) The x component of the velocity of P equals the velocity of Q. (d) The x component of the acceleration of P equals the acceleration of Q.

Because the relationship between linear and angular speed for circular motion is $v = r\omega$ (see Eq. 10.10), the particle moving on the reference circle of radius A has a velocity of magnitude ωA. From the geometry in Figure 13.18c, we see that the x component of this velocity is $-\omega A \sin(\omega t + \phi)$. By definition, the point Q has a velocity given by dx/dt. Differentiating Equation 13.31 with respect to time, we find that the velocity of Q is the same as the x component of the velocity of P.

The acceleration of P on the reference circle is directed radially inward toward O and has a magnitude $v^2/A = \omega^2 A$. From the geometry in Figure 13.18d, we see that the x component of this acceleration is $-\omega^2 A \cos(\omega t + \phi)$. This value is also the acceleration of the projected point Q along the x axis, as you can verify by taking the second derivative of Equation 13.31.

EXAMPLE 13.7 Circular Motion with Constant Angular Speed

A particle rotates counterclockwise in a circle of radius 3.00 m with a constant angular speed of 8.00 rad/s. At $t = 0$, the particle has an x coordinate of 2.00 m and is moving to the right. (a) Determine the x coordinate as a function of time.

Solution Because the amplitude of the particle's motion equals the radius of the circle and $\omega = 8.00$ rad/s, we have

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) = (3.00\text{ m})\cos(8.00t + \phi)$$

We can evaluate ϕ by using the initial condition that $x = 2.00$ m at $t = 0$:

$$2.00\text{ m} = (3.00\text{ m})\cos(0 + \phi)$$

$$\phi = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{2.00\text{ m}}{3.00\text{ m}}\right)$$

If we were to take our answer as $\phi = 48.2°$, then the coordinate $x = (3.00\text{ m})\cos(8.00t + 48.2°)$ would be decreasing at time $t = 0$ (that is, moving to the left). Because our particle is first moving to the right, we must choose $\phi = -48.2° = -0.841$ rad. The x coordinate as a function of time is then

$$x = \boxed{(3.00\text{ m})\cos(8.00t - 0.841)}$$

Note that ϕ in the cosine function must be in radians.

(b) Find the x components of the particle's velocity and acceleration at any time t.

Solution

$$v_x = \frac{dx}{dt} = (-3.00\text{ m})(8.00\text{ rad/s})\sin(8.00t - 0.841)$$

$$= \boxed{-(24.0\text{ m/s})\sin(8.00t - 0.841)}$$

$$a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} = (-24.0\text{ m/s})(8.00\text{ rad/s})\cos(8.00t - 0.841)$$

$$= \boxed{-(192\text{ m/s}^2)\cos(8.00t - 0.841)}$$

From these results, we conclude that $v_{max} = 24.0$ m/s and that $a_{max} = 192$ m/s^2. Note that these values also equal the tangential speed ωA and the centripetal acceleration $\omega^2 A$.

Optional Section

13.6 DAMPED OSCILLATIONS

The oscillatory motions we have considered so far have been for ideal systems—that is, systems that oscillate indefinitely under the action of a linear restoring force. In many real systems, dissipative forces, such as friction, retard the motion. Consequently, the mechanical energy of the system diminishes in time, and the motion is said to be *damped*.

One common type of retarding force is the one discussed in Section 6.4, where the force is proportional to the speed of the moving object and acts in the direction opposite the motion. This retarding force is often observed when an object moves through air, for instance. Because the retarding force can be expressed as $\mathbf{R} = -b\mathbf{v}$ (where b is a constant called the *damping coefficient*) and the restoring

force of the system is $-kx$, we can write Newton's second law as

$$\sum F_x = -kx - bv = ma_x$$

$$-kx - b\frac{dx}{dt} = m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \tag{13.32}$$

The solution of this equation requires mathematics that may not be familiar to you yet; we simply state it here without proof. When the retarding force is small compared with the maximum restoring force—that is, when b is small—the solution to Equation 13.32 is

$$x = Ae^{-\frac{b}{2m}t}\cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.33}$$

where the angular frequency of oscillation is

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m} - \left(\frac{b}{2m}\right)^2} \tag{13.34}$$

This result can be verified by substituting Equation 13.33 into Equation 13.32.

Figure 13.19a shows the displacement as a function of time for an object oscillating in the presence of a retarding force, and Figure 13.19b depicts one such system: a block attached to a spring and submersed in a viscous liquid. We see that **when the retarding force is much smaller than the restoring force, the oscillatory character of the motion is preserved but the amplitude decreases in time, with the result that the motion ultimately ceases.** Any system that behaves in this way is known as a **damped oscillator.** The dashed blue lines in Figure 13.19a, which define the *envelope* of the oscillatory curve, represent the exponential factor in Equation 13.33. This envelope shows that **the amplitude decays exponentially with time.** For motion with a given spring constant and block mass, the oscillations dampen more rapidly as the maximum value of the retarding force approaches the maximum value of the restoring force.

It is convenient to express the angular frequency of a damped oscillator in the form

$$\omega = \sqrt{{\omega_0}^2 - \left(\frac{b}{2m}\right)^2}$$

where $\omega_0 = \sqrt{k/m}$ represents the angular frequency in the absence of a retarding force (the undamped oscillator) and is called the **natural frequency** of the system. When the magnitude of the maximum retarding force $R_{\text{max}} = bv_{\text{max}} < kA$, the system is said to be **underdamped.** As the value of R approaches kA, the amplitudes of the oscillations decrease more and more rapidly. This motion is represented by the blue curve in Figure 13.20. When b reaches a critical value b_c such that $b_c/2m = \omega_0$, the system does not oscillate and is said to be **critically damped.** In this case the system, once released from rest at some nonequilibrium position, returns to equilibrium and then stays there. The graph of displacement versus time for this case is the red curve in Figure 13.20.

If the medium is so viscous that the retarding force is greater than the restoring force—that is, if $R_{\text{max}} = bv_{\text{max}} > kA$ and $b/2m > \omega_0$—the system is **overdamped.** Again, the displaced system, when free to move, does not oscillate but simply returns to its equilibrium position. As the damping increases, the time it takes the system to approach equilibrium also increases, as indicated by the black curve in Figure 13.20.

In any case in which friction is present, whether the system is overdamped or underdamped, the energy of the oscillator eventually falls to zero. The lost mechanical energy dissipates into internal energy in the retarding medium.

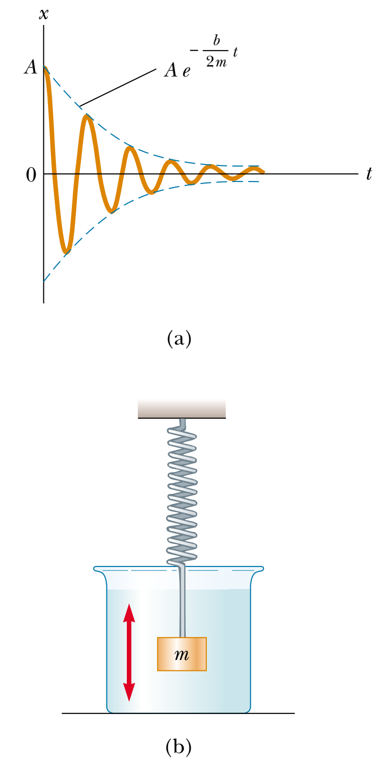


Figure 13.19 (a) Graph of displacement versus time for a damped oscillator. Note the decrease in amplitude with time. (b) One example of a damped oscillator is a mass attached to a spring and submersed in a viscous liquid.

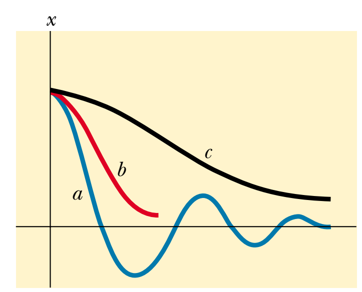


Figure 13.20 Graphs of displacement versus time for (a) an underdamped oscillator, (b) a critically damped oscillator, and (c) an overdamped oscillator.

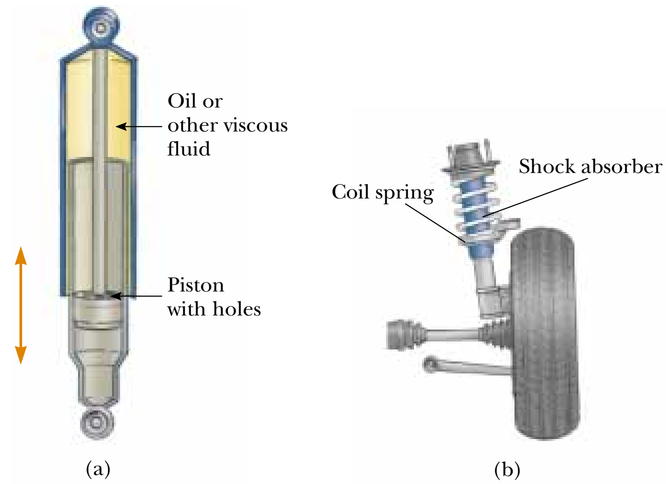


Figure 13.21 (a) A shock absorber consists of a piston oscillating in a chamber filled with oil. As the piston oscillates, the oil is squeezed through holes between the piston and the chamber, causing a damping of the piston's oscillations. (b) One type of automotive suspension system, in which a shock absorber is placed inside a coil spring at each wheel.

web
To learn more about shock absorbers, visit **http://www.hdridecontrol.com**

Quick Quiz 13.6

An automotive suspension system consists of a combination of springs and shock absorbers, as shown in Figure 13.21. If you were an automotive engineer, would you design a suspension system that was underdamped, critically damped, or overdamped? Discuss each case.

Optional Section

13.7 FORCED OSCILLATIONS

It is possible to compensate for energy loss in a damped system by applying an external force that does positive work on the system. At any instant, energy can be put into the system by an applied force that acts in the direction of motion of the oscillator. For example, a child on a swing can be kept in motion by appropriately timed pushes. The amplitude of motion remains constant if the energy input per cycle exactly equals the energy lost as a result of damping. Any motion of this type is called **forced oscillation.**

A common example of a forced oscillator is a damped oscillator driven by an external force that varies periodically, such as $F = F_{\text{ext}} \cos \omega t$, where ω is the angular frequency of the periodic force and F_{ext} is a constant. Adding this driving force to the left side of Equation 13.32 gives

$$F_{\text{ext}} \cos \omega t - kx - b\frac{dx}{dt} = m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \tag{13.35}$$

(As earlier, we present the solution of this equation without proof.) After a sufficiently long period of time, when the energy input per cycle equals the energy lost per cycle, a steady-state condition is reached in which the oscillations proceed with constant amplitude. At this time, when the system is in a steady state, the solution of Equation 13.35 is

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.36}$$

where

$$A = \frac{F_{\text{ext}}/m}{\sqrt{(\omega^2 - \omega_0{}^2)^2 + \left(\dfrac{b\omega}{m}\right)^2}} \qquad \textbf{(13.37)}$$

and where $\omega_0 = \sqrt{k/m}$ is the angular frequency of the undamped oscillator $(b = 0)$. One could argue that in steady state the oscillator must physically have the same frequency as the driving force, and thus the solution given by Equation 13.36 is expected. In fact, when this solution is substituted into Equation 13.35, one finds that it is indeed a solution, provided the amplitude is given by Equation 13.37.

Equation 13.37 shows that, because an external force is driving it, the motion of the forced oscillator is not damped. The external agent provides the necessary energy to overcome the losses due to the retarding force. Note that the system oscillates at the angular frequency ω of the driving force. For small damping, the amplitude becomes very large when the frequency of the driving force is near the natural frequency of oscillation. The dramatic increase in amplitude near the natural frequency ω_0 is called **resonance,** and for this reason ω_0 is sometimes called the **resonance frequency** of the system.

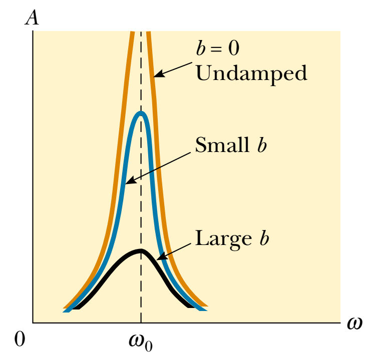


Figure 13.22 Graph of amplitude versus frequency for a damped oscillator when a periodic driving force is present. When the frequency of the driving force equals the natural frequency ω_0, resonance occurs. Note that the shape of the resonance curve depends on the size of the damping coefficient b.

The reason for large-amplitude oscillations at the resonance frequency is that energy is being transferred to the system under the most favorable conditions. We can better understand this by taking the first time derivative of x in Equation 13.36, which gives an expression for the velocity of the oscillator. We find that v is proportional to $\sin(\omega t + \phi)$. When the applied force $\mathbf{F}$ is in phase with the velocity, the rate at which work is done on the oscillator by $\mathbf{F}$ equals the dot product $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}$. Remember that "rate at which work is done" is the definition of power. Because the product $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is a maximum when $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are in phase, we conclude that **at resonance the applied force is in phase with the velocity and that the power transferred to the oscillator is a maximum.**

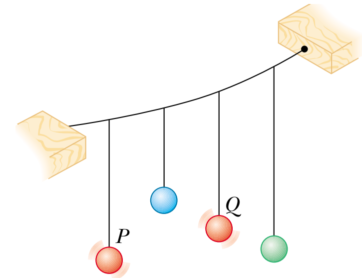
Figure 13.22 is a graph of amplitude as a function of frequency for a forced oscillator with and without damping. Note that the amplitude increases with decreasing damping $(b \rightarrow 0)$ and that the resonance curve broadens as the damping increases. Under steady-state conditions and at any driving frequency, the energy transferred into the system equals the energy lost because of the damping force; hence, the average total energy of the oscillator remains constant. In the absence of a damping force $(b = 0)$, we see from Equation 13.37 that the steady-state amplitude approaches infinity as $\omega \rightarrow \omega_0$. In other words, if there are no losses in the system and if we continue to drive an initially motionless oscillator with a periodic force that is in phase with the velocity, the amplitude of motion builds without limit (see the red curve in Fig. 13.22). This limitless building does not occur in practice because some damping is always present.

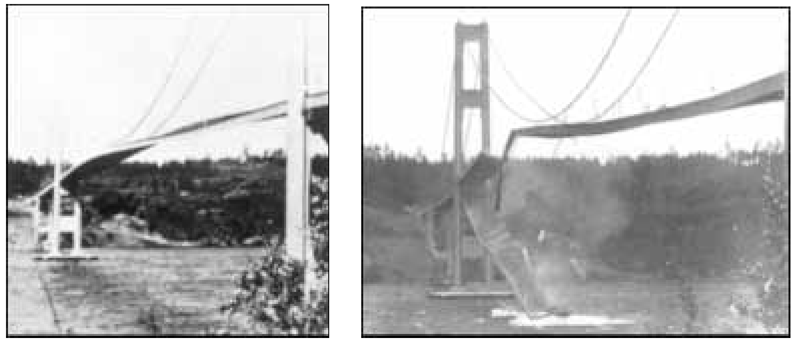
The behavior of a driven oscillating system after the driving force is removed depends on b and on how close ω was to ω_0. This behavior is sometimes quantified by a parameter called the *quality factor* Q. The closer a system is to being undamped, the greater its Q. The amplitude of oscillation drops by a factor of $e\,(= 2.718\ldots)$ in Q/π cycles.

Later in this book we shall see that resonance appears in other areas of physics. For example, certain electrical circuits have natural frequencies. A bridge has natural frequencies that can be set into resonance by an appropriate driving force. A dramatic example of such resonance occurred in 1940, when the Tacoma Narrows Bridge in the state of Washington was destroyed by resonant vibrations. Although the winds were not particularly strong on that occasion, the bridge ultimately collapsed (Fig. 13.23) because the bridge design had no built-in safety features.

QuickLab

Tie several objects to strings and suspend them from a horizontal string, as illustrated in the figure. Make two of the hanging strings approximately the same length. If one of this pair, such as P, is set into sideways motion, all the others begin to oscillate. But Q, whose length is the same as that of P, oscillates with the greatest amplitude. Must all the masses have the same value?





(a) (b)

Figure 13.23 (a) In 1940 turbulent winds set up torsional vibrations in the Tacoma Narrows Bridge, causing it to oscillate at a frequency near one of the natural frequencies of the bridge structure. (b) Once established, this resonance condition led to the bridge's collapse.

Many other examples of resonant vibrations can be cited. A resonant vibration that you may have experienced is the "singing" of telephone wires in the wind. Machines often break if one vibrating part is at resonance with some other moving part. Soldiers marching in cadence across a bridge have been known to set up resonant vibrations in the structure and thereby cause it to collapse. Whenever any real physical system is driven near its resonance frequency, you can expect oscillations of very large amplitudes.

SUMMARY

When the acceleration of an object is proportional to its displacement from some equilibrium position and is in the direction opposite the displacement, the object moves with simple harmonic motion. The position x of a simple harmonic oscillator varies periodically in time according to the expression

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.3}$$

where A is the **amplitude** of the motion, ω is the **angular frequency,** and ϕ is the **phase constant.** The value of ϕ depends on the initial position and initial velocity of the oscillator. You should be able to use this formula to describe the motion of an object undergoing simple harmonic motion.

The time T needed for one complete oscillation is defined as the **period** of the motion:

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \tag{13.4}$$

The inverse of the period is the **frequency** of the motion, which equals the number of oscillations per second.

The velocity and acceleration of a simple harmonic oscillator are

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = -\omega A\sin(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.7}$$

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = -\omega^2 A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.8}$$

$$v = \pm\omega\sqrt{A^2 - x^2} \tag{13.23}$$

Thus, the maximum speed is ωA, and the maximum acceleration is $\omega^2 A$. The speed is zero when the oscillator is at its turning points, $x = \pm A$, and is a maximum when the oscillator is at the equilibrium position $x = 0$. The magnitude of the acceleration is a maximum at the turning points and zero at the equilibrium position. You should be able to find the velocity and acceleration of an oscillating object at any time if you know the amplitude, angular frequency, and phase constant.

A block–spring system moves in simple harmonic motion on a frictionless surface, with a period

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \tag{13.18}$$

The kinetic energy and potential energy for a simple harmonic oscillator vary with time and are given by

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m\omega^2 A^2 \sin^2(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.20}$$

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 \cos^2(\omega t + \phi) \tag{13.21}$$

These three formulas allow you to analyze a wide variety of situations involving oscillations. Be sure you recognize how the mass of the block and the spring constant of the spring enter into the calculations.

The total energy of a simple harmonic oscillator is a constant of the motion and is given by

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 \tag{13.22}$$

The potential energy of the oscillator is a maximum when the oscillator is at its turning points and is zero when the oscillator is at the equilibrium position. The kinetic energy is zero at the turning points and a maximum at the equilibrium position. You should be able to determine the division of energy between potential and kinetic forms at any time t.

A **simple pendulum** of length L moves in simple harmonic motion. For small angular displacements from the vertical, its period is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} \tag{13.26}$$

For small angular displacements from the vertical, a **physical pendulum** moves in simple harmonic motion about a pivot that does not go through the center of mass. The period of this motion is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I}{mgd}} \tag{13.28}$$

where I is the moment of inertia about an axis through the pivot and d is the distance from the pivot to the center of mass. You should be able to distinguish when to use the simple-pendulum formula and when the system must be considered a physical pendulum.

Uniform circular motion can be considered a combination of two simple harmonic motions, one along the x axis and the other along the y axis, with the two differing in phase by 90°.

QUESTIONS

1. Is a bouncing ball an example of simple harmonic motion? Is the daily movement of a student from home to school and back simple harmonic motion? Why or why not?

2. If the coordinate of a particle varies as $x = -A\cos\omega t$, what is the phase constant in Equation 13.3? At what position does the particle begin its motion?

3. Does the displacement of an oscillating particle between $t = 0$ and a later time t necessarily equal the position of the particle at time t? Explain.
4. Determine whether the following quantities can be in the same direction for a simple harmonic oscillator: (a) displacement and velocity, (b) velocity and acceleration, (c) displacement and acceleration.
5. Can the amplitude A and the phase constant ϕ be determined for an oscillator if only the position is specified at $t = 0$? Explain.
6. Describe qualitatively the motion of a mass–spring system when the mass of the spring is not neglected.
7. Make a graph showing the potential energy of a stationary block hanging from a spring, $U = \frac{1}{2}ky^2 + mgy$. Why is the lowest part of the graph offset from the origin?
8. A block–spring system undergoes simple harmonic motion with an amplitude A. Does the total energy change if the mass is doubled but the amplitude is not changed? Do the kinetic and potential energies depend on the mass? Explain.
9. What happens to the period of a simple pendulum if the pendulum's length is doubled? What happens to the period if the mass of the suspended bob is doubled?
10. A simple pendulum is suspended from the ceiling of a stationary elevator, and the period is determined. Describe the changes, if any, in the period when the elevator (a) accelerates upward, (b) accelerates downward, and (c) moves with constant velocity.
11. A simple pendulum undergoes simple harmonic motion when θ is small. Is the motion periodic when θ is large? How does the period of motion change as θ increases?
12. Will damped oscillations occur for any values of b and k? Explain.
13. As it possible to have damped oscillations when a system is at resonance? Explain.
14. At resonance, what does the phase constant ϕ equal in Equation 13.36? (*Hint:* Compare this equation with the expression for the driving force, which must be in phase with the velocity at resonance.)
15. Some parachutes have holes in them to allow air to move smoothly through them. Without such holes, sometimes the air that has gathered beneath the chute as a parachutist falls is released from under its edges alternately and periodically, at one side and then at the other. Why might this periodic release of air cause a problem?
16. If a grandfather clock were running slowly, how could we adjust the length of the pendulum to correct the time?
17. A pendulum bob is made from a sphere filled with water. What would happen to the frequency of vibration of this pendulum if the sphere had a hole in it that allowed the water to leak out slowly?

PROBLEMS

1, 2, 3 = straightforward, intermediate, challenging □ = full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide*
WEB = solution posted at **http://www.saunderscollege.com/physics/** = Computer useful in solving problem = Interactive Physics
□ = paired numerical/symbolic problems

Section 13.1 Simple Harmonic Motion

1. The displacement of a particle at $t = 0.250$ s is given by the expression $x = (4.00 \text{ m}) \cos(3.00\pi t + \pi)$, where x is in meters and t is in seconds. Determine (a) the frequency and period of the motion, (b) the amplitude of the motion, (c) the phase constant, and (d) the displacement of the particle at $t = 0.250$ s.
2. A ball dropped from a height of 4.00 m makes a perfectly elastic collision with the ground. Assuming that no energy is lost due to air resistance, (a) show that the motion is periodic and (b) determine the period of the motion. (c) Is the motion simple harmonic? Explain.
3. A particle moves in simple harmonic motion with a frequency of 3.00 oscillations/s and an amplitude of 5.00 cm. (a) Through what total distance does the particle move during one cycle of its motion? (b) What is its maximum speed? Where does this occur? (c) Find the maximum acceleration of the particle. Where in the motion does the maximum acceleration occur?
4. In an engine, a piston oscillates with simple harmonic motion so that its displacement varies according to the expression

$$x = (5.00 \text{ cm}) \cos(2t + \pi/6)$$

where x is in centimeters and t is in seconds. At $t = 0$, find (a) the displacement of the particle, (b) its velocity, and (c) its acceleration. (d) Find the period and amplitude of the motion.

WEB 5. A particle moving along the x axis in simple harmonic motion starts from its equilibrium position, the origin, at $t = 0$ and moves to the right. The amplitude of its motion is 2.00 cm, and the frequency is 1.50 Hz. (a) Show that the displacement of the particle is given by $x = (2.00 \text{ cm}) \sin(3.00\pi t)$. Determine (b) the maximum speed and the earliest time ($t > 0$) at which the particle has this speed, (c) the maximum acceleration and the earliest time ($t > 0$) at which the particle has this acceleration, and (d) the total distance traveled between $t = 0$ and $t = 1.00$ s.

6. The initial position and initial velocity of an object moving in simple harmonic motion are x_i and v_i; the angular frequency of oscillation is ω. (a) Show that the position and velocity of the object for all time can be written as

$$x(t) = x_i \cos \omega t + \left(\frac{v_i}{\omega}\right) \sin \omega t$$

$$v(t) = -x_i \omega \sin \omega t + v_i \cos \omega t$$

(b) If the amplitude of the motion is A, show that

$$v^2 - ax = v_i^2 - a_i x_i = \omega^2 A^2$$

Section 13.2 The Block–Spring System Revisited

Note: Neglect the mass of the spring in all problems in this section.

7. A spring stretches by 3.90 cm when a 10.0-g mass is hung from it. If a 25.0-g mass attached to this spring oscillates in simple harmonic motion, calculate the period of the motion.
8. A simple harmonic oscillator takes 12.0 s to undergo five complete vibrations. Find (a) the period of its motion, (b) the frequency in hertz, and (c) the angular frequency in radians per second.
9. A 0.500-kg mass attached to a spring with a force constant of 8.00 N/m vibrates in simple harmonic motion with an amplitude of 10.0 cm. Calculate (a) the maximum value of its speed and acceleration, (b) the speed and acceleration when the mass is 6.00 cm from the equilibrium position, and (c) the time it takes the mass to move from $x = 0$ to $x = 8.00$ cm.
10. A 1.00-kg mass attached to a spring with a force constant of 25.0 N/m oscillates on a horizontal, frictionless track. At $t = 0$, the mass is released from rest at $x = -3.00$ cm. (That is, the spring is compressed by 3.00 cm.) Find (a) the period of its motion; (b) the maximum values of its speed and acceleration; and (c) the displacement, velocity, and acceleration as functions of time.
11. A 7.00-kg mass is hung from the bottom end of a vertical spring fastened to an overhead beam. The mass is set into vertical oscillations with a period of 2.60 s. Find the force constant of the spring.
12. A block of unknown mass is attached to a spring with a spring constant of 6.50 N/m and undergoes simple harmonic motion with an amplitude of 10.0 cm. When the mass is halfway between its equilibrium position and the end point, its speed is measured to be + 30.0 cm/s. Calculate (a) the mass of the block, (b) the period of the motion, and (c) the maximum acceleration of the block.
13. A particle that hangs from a spring oscillates with an angular frequency of 2.00 rad/s. The spring–particle system is suspended from the ceiling of an elevator car and hangs motionless (relative to the elevator car) as the car descends at a constant speed of 1.50 m/s. The car then stops suddenly. (a) With what amplitude does the particle oscillate? (b) What is the equation of motion for the particle? (Choose upward as the positive direction.)
14. A particle that hangs from a spring oscillates with an angular frequency ω. The spring–particle system is suspended from the ceiling of an elevator car and hangs motionless (relative to the elevator car) as the car descends at a constant speed v. The car then stops suddenly. (a) With what amplitude does the particle oscillate? (b) What is the equation of motion for the particle? (Choose upward as the positive direction.)
15. A 1.00-kg mass is attached to a horizontal spring. The spring is initially stretched by 0.100 m, and the mass is released from rest there. It proceeds to move without friction. After 0.500 s, the speed of the mass is zero. What is the maximum speed of the mass?

Section 13.3 Energy of the Simple Harmonic Oscillator

Note: Neglect the mass of the spring in all problems in this section.

16. A 200-g mass is attached to a spring and undergoes simple harmonic motion with a period of 0.250 s. If the total energy of the system is 2.00 J, find (a) the force constant of the spring and (b) the amplitude of the motion.

WEB 17. An automobile having a mass of 1 000 kg is driven into a brick wall in a safety test. The bumper behaves as a spring of constant 5.00×10^6 N/m and compresses 3.16 cm as the car is brought to rest. What was the speed of the car before impact, assuming that no energy is lost during impact with the wall?

18. A mass–spring system oscillates with an amplitude of 3.50 cm. If the spring constant is 250 N/m and the mass is 0.500 kg, determine (a) the mechanical energy of the system, (b) the maximum speed of the mass, and (c) the maximum acceleration.
19. A 50.0-g mass connected to a spring with a force constant of 35.0 N/m oscillates on a horizontal, frictionless surface with an amplitude of 4.00 cm. Find (a) the total energy of the system and (b) the speed of the mass when the displacement is 1.00 cm. Find (c) the kinetic energy and (d) the potential energy when the displacement is 3.00 cm.
20. A 2.00-kg mass is attached to a spring and placed on a horizontal, smooth surface. A horizontal force of 20.0 N is required to hold the mass at rest when it is pulled 0.200 m from its equilibrium position (the origin of the x axis). The mass is now released from rest with an initial displacement of $x_i = 0.200$ m, and it subsequently undergoes simple harmonic oscillations. Find (a) the force constant of the spring, (b) the frequency of the oscillations, and (c) the maximum speed of the mass. Where does this maximum speed occur? (d) Find the maximum acceleration of the mass. Where does it occur? (e) Find the total energy of the oscillating system. Find (f) the speed and (g) the acceleration when the displacement equals one third of the maximum value.
21. A 1.50-kg block at rest on a tabletop is attached to a horizontal spring having force constant of 19.6 N/m. The spring is initially unstretched. A constant 20.0-N horizontal force is applied to the object, causing the spring to stretch. (a) Determine the speed of the block after it has moved 0.300 m from equilibrium, assuming that the surface between the block and the tabletop is frictionless. (b) Answer part (a) for a coefficient of kinetic friction of 0.200 between the block and the tabletop.
22. The amplitude of a system moving in simple harmonic motion is doubled. Determine the change in (a) the total energy, (b) the maximum speed, (c) the maximum acceleration, and (d) the period.

23. A particle executes simple harmonic motion with an amplitude of 3.00 cm. At what displacement from the midpoint of its motion does its speed equal one half of its maximum speed?

24. A mass on a spring with a constant of 3.24 N/m vibrates, with its position given by the equation $x = (5.00\text{ cm})\cos(3.60t\text{ rad/s})$. (a) During the first cycle, for $0 < t < 1.75$ s, when is the potential energy of the system changing most rapidly into kinetic energy? (b) What is the maximum rate of energy transformation?

Section 13.4 The Pendulum

25. A man enters a tall tower, needing to know its height. He notes that a long pendulum extends from the ceiling almost to the floor and that its period is 12.0 s. (a) How tall is the tower? (b) If this pendulum is taken to the Moon, where the free-fall acceleration is 1.67 m/s^2, what is its period there?

26. A "seconds" pendulum is one that moves through its equilibrium position once each second. (The period of the pendulum is 2.000 s.) The length of a seconds pendulum is 0.992 7 m at Tokyo and 0.994 2 m at Cambridge, England. What is the ratio of the free-fall accelerations at these two locations?

27. A rigid steel frame above a street intersection supports standard traffic lights, each of which is hinged to hang immediately below the frame. A gust of wind sets a light swinging in a vertical plane. Find the order of magnitude of its period. State the quantities you take as data and their values.

28. The angular displacement of a pendulum is represented by the equation $\theta = (0.320\text{ rad})\cos \omega t$, where θ is in radians and $\omega = 4.43$ rad/s. Determine the period and length of the pendulum.

WEB 29. A simple pendulum has a mass of 0.250 kg and a length of 1.00 m. It is displaced through an angle of 15.0° and then released. What are (a) the maximum speed, (b) the maximum angular acceleration, and (c) the maximum restoring force?

30. A simple pendulum is 5.00 m long. (a) What is the period of simple harmonic motion for this pendulum if it is hanging in an elevator that is accelerating upward at 5.00 m/s^2? (b) What is its period if the elevator is accelerating downward at 5.00 m/s^2? (c) What is the period of simple harmonic motion for this pendulum if it is placed in a truck that is accelerating horizontally at 5.00 m/s^2?

31. A particle of mass m slides without friction inside a hemispherical bowl of radius R. Show that, if it starts from rest with a small displacement from equilibrium, the particle moves in simple harmonic motion with an angular frequency equal to that of a simple pendulum of length R. That is, $\omega = \sqrt{g/R}$.

32. A mass is attached to the end of a string to form a simple pendulum. The period of its harmonic motion is measured for small angular displacements and three lengths; in each case, the motion is clocked with a stopwatch for 50 oscillations. For lengths of 1.000 m, 0.750 m, and 0.500 m, total times of 99.8 s, 86.6 s, and 71.1 s, respectively, are measured for the 50 oscillations. (a) Determine the period of motion for each length. (b) Determine the mean value of g obtained from these three independent measurements, and compare it with the accepted value. (c) Plot T^2 versus L, and obtain a value for g from the slope of your best-fit straight-line graph. Compare this value with that obtained in part (b).

33. A physical pendulum in the form of a planar body moves in simple harmonic motion with a frequency of 0.450 Hz. If the pendulum has a mass of 2.20 kg and the pivot is located 0.350 m from the center of mass, determine the moment of inertia of the pendulum.

34. A very light, rigid rod with a length of 0.500 m extends straight out from one end of a meter stick. The stick is suspended from a pivot at the far end of the rod and is set into oscillation. (a) Determine the period of oscillation. (b) By what percentage does this differ from a 1.00-m-long simple pendulum?

35. Consider the physical pendulum of Figure 13.13. (a) If I_{CM} is its moment of inertia about an axis that passes through its center of mass and is parallel to the axis that passes through its pivot point, show that its period is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I_{CM} + md^2}{mgd}}$$

where d is the distance between the pivot point and the center of mass. (b) Show that the period has a minimum value when d satisfies $md^2 = I_{CM}$.

36. A torsional pendulum is formed by attaching a wire to the center of a meter stick with a mass of 2.00 kg. If the resulting period is 3.00 min, what is the torsion constant for the wire?

37. A clock balance wheel has a period of oscillation of 0.250 s. The wheel is constructed so that 20.0 g of mass is concentrated around a rim of radius 0.500 cm. What are (a) the wheel's moment of inertia and (b) the torsion constant of the attached spring?

Section 13.5 Comparing Simple Harmonic Motion with Uniform Circular Motion

38. While riding behind a car that is traveling at 3.00 m/s, you notice that one of the car's tires has a small hemispherical boss on its rim, as shown in Figure P13.38. (a) Explain why the boss, from your viewpoint behind the car, executes simple harmonic motion. (b) If the radius of the car's tires is 0.300 m, what is the boss's period of oscillation?

39. Consider the simplified single-piston engine shown in Figure P13.39. If the wheel rotates with constant angular speed, explain why the piston rod oscillates in simple harmonic motion.

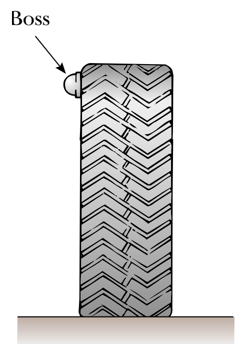


Figure P13.38

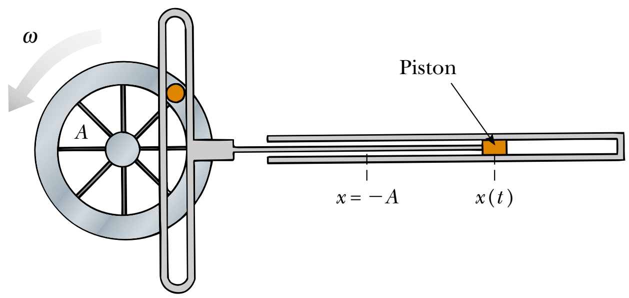


Figure P13.39

(Optional)
Section 13.6 Damped Oscillations

40. Show that the time rate of change of mechanical energy for a damped, undriven oscillator is given by $dE/dt = -bv^2$ and hence is always negative. (*Hint:* Differentiate the expression for the mechanical energy of an oscillator, $E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, and use Eq. 13.32.)

41. A pendulum with a length of 1.00 m is released from an initial angle of 15.0°. After 1 000 s, its amplitude is reduced by friction to 5.50°. What is the value of $b/2m$?

42. Show that Equation 13.33 is a solution of Equation 13.32 provided that $b^2 < 4mk$.

(Optional)
Section 13.7 Forced Oscillations

43. A baby rejoices in the day by crowing and jumping up and down in her crib. Her mass is 12.5 kg, and the crib mattress can be modeled as a light spring with a force constant of 4.30 kN/m. (a) The baby soon learns to bounce with maximum amplitude and minimum effort by bending her knees at what frequency? (b) She learns to use the mattress as a trampoline—losing contact with it for part of each cycle—when her amplitude exceeds what value?

44. A 2.00-kg mass attached to a spring is driven by an external force $F = (3.00\text{ N})\cos(2\pi t)$. If the force constant of the spring is 20.0 N/m, determine (a) the period and (b) the amplitude of the motion. (*Hint:* Assume that there is no damping—that is, that $b = 0$—and use Eq. 13.37.)

45. Considering an *undamped,* forced oscillator ($b = 0$), show that Equation 13.36 is a solution of Equation 13.35, with an amplitude given by Equation 13.37.

46. A weight of 40.0 N is suspended from a spring that has a force constant of 200 N/m. The system is undamped and is subjected to a harmonic force with a frequency of 10.0 Hz, which results in a forced-motion amplitude of 2.00 cm. Determine the maximum value of the force.

47. Damping is negligible for a 0.150-kg mass hanging from a light 6.30-N/m spring. The system is driven by a force oscillating with an amplitude of 1.70 N. At what frequency will the force make the mass vibrate with an amplitude of 0.440 m?

48. You are a research biologist. Before dining at a fine restaurant, you set your pager to vibrate instead of beep, and you place it in the side pocket of your suit coat. The arm of your chair presses the light cloth against your body at one spot. Fabric with a length of 8.21 cm hangs freely below that spot, with the pager at the bottom. A co-worker telephones you. The motion of the vibrating pager makes the hanging part of your coat swing back and forth with remarkably large amplitude. The waiter, maître d', wine steward, and nearby diners notice immediately and fall silent. Your daughter pipes up and says, "Daddy, look! Your cockroaches must have gotten out again!" Find the frequency at which your pager vibrates.

ADDITIONAL PROBLEMS

49. A car with bad shock absorbers bounces up and down with a period of 1.50 s after hitting a bump. The car has a mass of 1 500 kg and is supported by four springs of equal force constant k. Determine the value of k.

50. A large passenger with a mass of 150 kg sits in the middle of the car described in Problem 49. What is the new period of oscillation?

$\boxed{\textbf{51.}}$ A compact mass M is attached to the end of a uniform rod, of equal mass M and length L, that is pivoted at the top (Fig. P13.51). (a) Determine the tensions in the rod

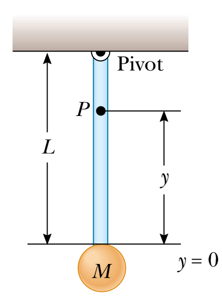


Figure P13.51

at the pivot and at the point P when the system is stationary. (b) Calculate the period of oscillation for small displacements from equilibrium, and determine this period for $L = 2.00$ m. (*Hint:* Assume that the mass at the end of the rod is a point mass, and use Eq. 13.28.)

52. A mass, $m_1 = 9.00$ kg, is in equilibrium while connected to a light spring of constant $k = 100$ N/m that is fastened to a wall, as shown in Figure P13.52a. A second mass, $m_2 = 7.00$ kg, is slowly pushed up against mass m_1, compressing the spring by the amount $A = 0.200$ m (see Fig. P13.52b). The system is then released, and both masses start moving to the right on the frictionless surface. (a) When m_1 reaches the equilibrium point, m_2 loses contact with m_1 (see Fig. P13.52c) and moves to the right with speed v. Determine the value of v. (b) How far apart are the masses when the spring is fully stretched for the first time (D in Fig. P13.52d)? (*Hint:* First determine the period of oscillation and the amplitude of the m_1–spring system after m_2 loses contact with m_1.)

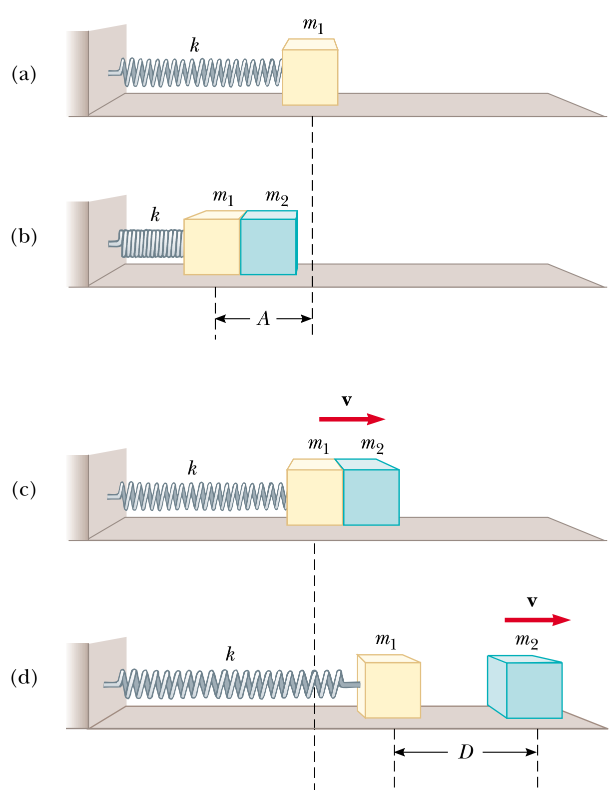


Figure P13.52

WEB **53.** A large block P executes horizontal simple harmonic motion as it slides across a frictionless surface with a frequency of $f = 1.50$ Hz. Block B rests on it, as shown in Figure P13.53, and the coefficient of static friction between the two is $\mu_s = 0.600$. What maximum amplitude of oscillation can the system have if block B is not to slip?

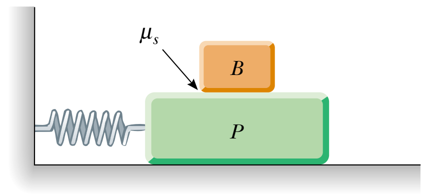


Figure P13.53 Problems 53 and 54.

54. A large block P executes horizontal simple harmonic motion as it slides across a frictionless surface with a frequency f. Block B rests on it, as shown in Figure P13.53, and the coefficient of static friction between the two is μ_s. What maximum amplitude of oscillation can the system have if the upper block is not to slip?

55. The mass of the deuterium molecule (D_2) is twice that of the hydrogen molecule (H_2). If the vibrational frequency of H_2 is 1.30×10^{14} Hz, what is the vibrational frequency of D_2? Assume that the "spring constant" of attracting forces is the same for the two molecules.

56. A solid sphere (radius $= R$) rolls without slipping in a cylindrical trough (radius $= 5R$), as shown in Figure P13.56. Show that, for small displacements from equilibrium perpendicular to the length of the trough, the sphere executes simple harmonic motion with a period $T = 2\pi\sqrt{28R/5g}$.

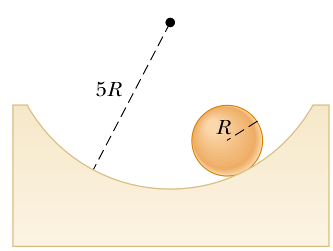


Figure P13.56

57. A light cubical container of volume a^3 is initially filled with a liquid of mass density ρ. The container is initially supported by a light string to form a pendulum of length L_i, measured from the center of mass of the filled container. The liquid is allowed to flow from the bottom of the container at a constant rate (dM/dt). At any time t, the level of the liquid in the container is h

and the length of the pendulum is L (measured relative to the instantaneous center of mass). (a) Sketch the apparatus and label the dimensions a, h, L_i, and L. (b) Find the time rate of change of the period as a function of time t. (c) Find the period as a function of time.

58. After a thrilling plunge, bungee-jumpers bounce freely on the bungee cords through many cycles. Your little brother can make a pest of himself by figuring out the mass of each person, using a proportion he set up by solving this problem: A mass m is oscillating freely on a vertical spring with a period T (Fig. P13.58a). An unknown mass m' on the same spring oscillates with a period T'. Determine (a) the spring constant k and (b) the unknown mass m'.

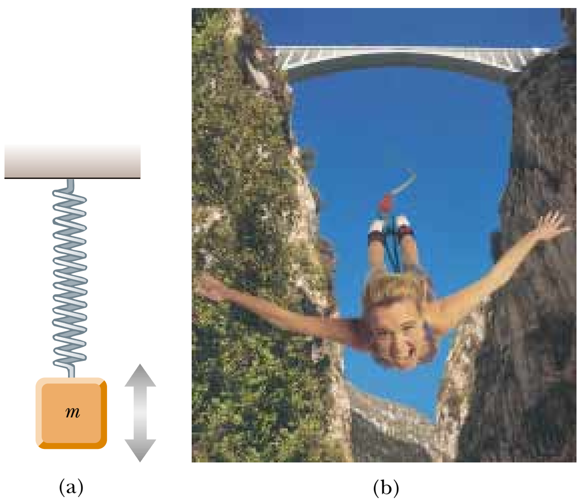


Figure P13.58 (a) Mass–spring system for Problems 58 and 68. (b) Bungee-jumping from a bridge. *(Telegraph Colour Library/FPG International)*

59. A pendulum of length L and mass M has a spring of force constant k connected to it at a distance h below its point of suspension (Fig. P13.59). Find the frequency of vibration of the system for small values of the amplitude (small θ). (Assume that the vertical suspension of length L is rigid, but neglect its mass.)

60. A horizontal plank of mass m and length L is pivoted at one end. The plank's other end is supported by a spring of force constant k (Fig. P13.60). The moment of inertia of the plank about the pivot is $\frac{1}{3}mL^2$. (a) Show that the plank, after being displaced a small angle θ from its horizontal equilibrium position and released, moves with simple harmonic motion of angular frequency $\omega = \sqrt{3k/m}$. (b) Evaluate the frequency if the mass is 5.00 kg and the spring has a force constant of 100 N/m.

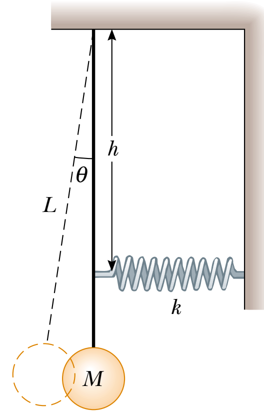


Figure P13.59

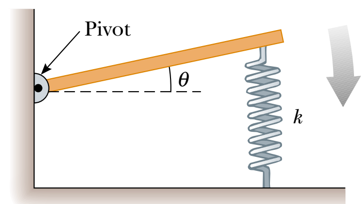


Figure P13.60

61. One end of a light spring with a force constant of 100 N/m is attached to a vertical wall. A light string is tied to the other end of the horizontal spring. The string changes from horizontal to vertical as it passes over a 4.00-cm-diameter solid pulley that is free to turn on a fixed smooth axle. The vertical section of the string supports a 200-g mass. The string does not slip at its contact with the pulley. Find the frequency of oscillation of the mass if the mass of the pulley is (a) negligible, (b) 250 g, and (c) 750 g.

62. A 2.00-kg block hangs without vibrating at the end of a spring (k = 500 N/m) that is attached to the ceiling of an elevator car. The car is rising with an upward acceleration of $g/3$ when the acceleration suddenly ceases (at $t = 0$). (a) What is the angular frequency of oscillation of the block after the acceleration ceases? (b) By what amount is the spring stretched during the acceleration of the elevator car? (c) What are the amplitude of the oscillation and the initial phase angle observed by a rider in the car? Take the upward direction to be positive.

63. A simple pendulum with a length of 2.23 m and a mass of 6.74 kg is given an initial speed of 2.06 m/s at its equilibrium position. Assume that it undergoes simple harmonic motion, and determine its (a) period, (b) total energy, and (c) maximum angular displacement.

64. People who ride motorcycles and bicycles learn to look out for bumps in the road and especially for *washboarding,* which is a condition of many equally spaced ridges worn into the road. What is so bad about washboarding? A motorcycle has several springs and shock absorbers in its suspension, but you can model it as a single spring supporting a mass. You can estimate the spring constant by thinking about how far the spring compresses when a big biker sits down on the seat. A motorcyclist traveling at highway speed must be particularly careful of washboard bumps that are a certain distance apart. What is the order of magnitude of their separation distance? State the quantities you take as data and the values you estimate or measure for them.

65. A wire is bent into the shape of one cycle of a cosine curve. It is held in a vertical plane so that the height y of the wire at any horizontal distance x from the center is given by $y = 20.0 \text{ cm}[1 - \cos(0.160x \text{ rad/m})]$. A bead can slide without friction on the stationary wire. Show that if its excursion away from $x = 0$ is never large, the bead moves with simple harmonic motion. Determine its angular frequency. (*Hint:* $\cos\theta \cong 1 - \theta^2/2$ for small θ.)

66. A block of mass M is connected to a spring of mass m and oscillates in simple harmonic motion on a horizontal, frictionless track (Fig. P13.66). The force constant of the spring is k, and the equilibrium length is ℓ. Find (a) the kinetic energy of the system when the block has a speed v, and (b) the period of oscillation. (*Hint:* Assume that all portions of the spring oscillate in phase and that the velocity of a segment dx is proportional to the distance x from the fixed end; that is, $v_x = [x/\ell]v$. Also, note that the mass of a segment of the spring is $dm = [m/\ell]\,dx$.)

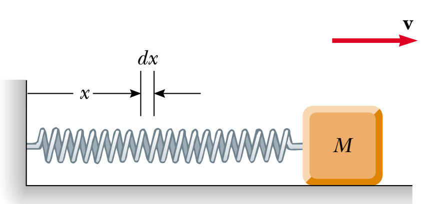


Figure P13.66

WEB **67.** A ball of mass m is connected to two rubber bands of length L, each under tension T, as in Figure P13.67. The ball is displaced by a small distance y perpendicular to the length of the rubber bands. Assuming that the tension does not change, show that (a) the restoring force is $-(2T/L)y$ and (b) the system exhibits simple harmonic motion with an angular frequency $\omega = \sqrt{2T/mL}$.

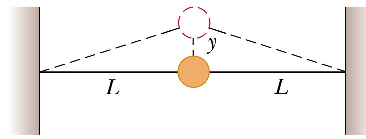


Figure P13.67

68. When a mass M, connected to the end of a spring of mass $m_s = 7.40$ g and force constant k, is set into simple harmonic motion, the period of its motion is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{M + (m_s/3)}{k}}$$

A two-part experiment is conducted with the use of various masses suspended vertically from the spring, as shown in Figure P13.58a. (a) Static extensions of 17.0, 29.3, 35.3, 41.3, 47.1, and 49.3 cm are measured for M values of 20.0, 40.0, 50.0, 60.0, 70.0, and 80.0 g, respectively. Construct a graph of Mg versus x, and perform a linear least-squares fit to the data. From the slope of your graph, determine a value for k for this spring. (b) The system is now set into simple harmonic motion, and periods are measured with a stopwatch. With $M =$ 80.0 g, the total time for 10 oscillations is measured to be 13.41 s. The experiment is repeated with M values of 70.0, 60.0, 50.0, 40.0, and 20.0 g, with corresponding times for 10 oscillations of 12.52, 11.67, 10.67, 9.62, and 7.03 s. Compute the experimental value for T for each of these measurements. Plot a graph of T^2 versus M, and determine a value for k from the slope of the linear least-squares fit through the data points. Compare this value of k with that obtained in part (a). (c) Obtain a value for m_s from your graph, and compare it with the given value of 7.40 g.

69. A small, thin disk of radius r and mass m is attached rigidly to the face of a second thin disk of radius R and mass M, as shown in Figure P13.69. The center of the small disk is located at the edge of the large disk. The large disk is mounted at its center on a frictionless axle. The assembly is rotated through a small angle θ from its equilibrium position and released. (a) Show that the

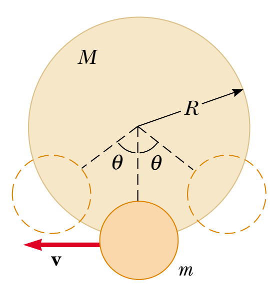


Figure P13.69

speed of the center of the small disk as it passes through the equilibrium position is

$$v = 2\left[\frac{Rg(1 - \cos\theta)}{(M/m) + (r/R)^2 + 2}\right]^{1/2}$$

(b) Show that the period of the motion is

$$T = 2\pi\left[\frac{(M + 2m)R^2 + mr^2}{2mgR}\right]^{1/2}$$

70. Consider the damped oscillator illustrated in Figure 13.19. Assume that the mass is 375 g, the spring constant is 100 N/m, and $b = 0.100$ kg/s. (a) How long does it takes for the amplitude to drop to half its initial value? (b) How long does it take for the mechanical energy to drop to half its initial value? (c) Show that, in general, the fractional rate at which the amplitude decreases in a damped harmonic oscillator is one-half the fractional rate at which the mechanical energy decreases.

71. A mass m is connected to two springs of force constants k_1 and k_2, as shown in Figure P13.71a and b. In each case, the mass moves on a frictionless table and is displaced from equilibrium and then released. Show that in the two cases the mass exhibits simple harmonic motion with periods

(a) $$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m(k_1 + k_2)}{k_1 k_2}}$$

(b) $$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k_1 + k_2}}$$

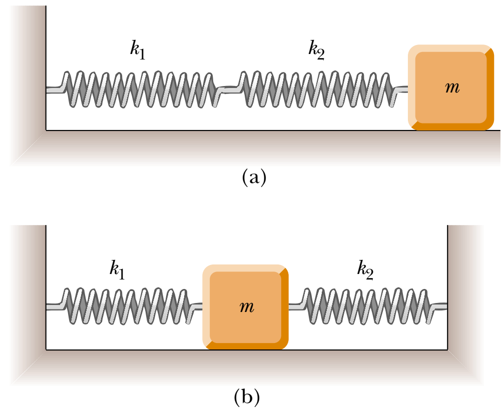


Figure P13.71

72. Consider a simple pendulum of length $L = 1.20$ m that is displaced from the vertical by an angle θ_{max} and then released. You are to predict the subsequent angular displacements when θ_{max} is small and also when it is large. Set up and carry out a numerical method to integrate the equation of motion for the simple pendulum:

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{g}{L}\sin\theta$$

Take the initial conditions to be $\theta = \theta_{max}$ and $d\theta/dt = 0$ at $t = 0$. On one trial choose $\theta_{max} = 5.00°$, and on another trial take $\theta_{max} = 100°$. In each case, find the displacement θ as a function of time. Using the same values for θ_{max}, compare your results for θ with those obtained from $\theta_{max}\cos\omega t$. How does the period for the large value of θ_{max} compare with that for the small value of θ_{max}? *Note:* Using the Euler method to solve this differential equation, you may find that the amplitude tends to increase with time. The fourth-order Runge–Kutta method would be a better choice to solve the differential equation. However, if you choose Δt small enough, the solution that you obtain using Euler's method can still be good.

Answers to Quick Quizzes

13.1 Because A can never be zero, ϕ must be any value that results in the cosine function's being zero at $t = 0$. In other words, $\phi = \cos^{-1}(0)$. This is true at $\phi = \pi/2$, $3\pi/2$ or, more generally, $\phi = \pm n\pi/2$, where n is any nonzero odd integer. If we want to restrict our choices of ϕ to values between 0 and 2π, we need to know whether the object was moving to the right or to the left at $t = 0$. If it was moving with a positive velocity, then $\phi = 3\pi/2$. If $v_i < 0$, then $\phi = \pi/2$.

13.2 (d) $4A$. From its maximum positive position to the equilibrium position, it travels a distance A, by definition of *amplitude.* It then goes an equal distance past the equilibrium position to its maximum negative position. It then repeats these two motions in the reverse direction to return to its original position and complete one cycle.

13.3 No, because in simple harmonic motion, the acceleration is not constant.

13.4 $x = -A\sin\omega t$, where $A = v_i/\omega$.

13.5 From Hooke's law, the spring constant must be $k = mg/L$. If we substitute this value for k into Equation 13.18, we find that

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{mg/L}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}}$$

This is the same as Equation 13.26, which gives the period of a simple pendulum. Thus, when an object stretches a vertically hung spring, the period of the system is the same as that of a simple pendulum having a length equal to the amount of static extension of the spring.

13.6 If your goal is simply to stop the bounce from an absorbed shock as rapidly as possible, you should critically damp the suspension. Unfortunately, the stiffness of this design makes for an uncomfortable ride. If you underdamp the suspension, the ride is more comfortable but the car bounces. If you overdamp the suspension, the wheel is displaced from its equilibrium position longer than it should be. (For example, after hitting a bump, the spring stays compressed for a short time and the wheel does not quickly drop back down into contact with the road after the wheel is past the bump—a dangerous situation.) Because of all these considerations, automotive engineers usually design suspensions to be slightly underdamped. This allows the suspension to absorb a shock rapidly (minimizing the roughness of the ride) and then return to equilibrium after only one or two noticeable oscillations.

PUZZLER

More than 300 years ago, Isaac Newton realized that the same gravitational force that causes apples to fall to the Earth also holds the Moon in its orbit. In recent years, scientists have used the Hubble Space Telescope to collect evidence of the gravitational force acting even farther away, such as at this protoplanetary disk in the constellation Taurus. What properties of an object such as a protoplanet or the Moon determine the strength of its gravitational attraction to another object? *(Left, Larry West/FPG International; right, Courtesy of NASA)*

web

For more information about the Hubble, visit the Space Telescope Science Institute at **http://www.stsci.edu/**

chapter

14

The Law of Gravity

Chapter Outline

Before 1687, a large amount of data had been collected on the motions of the Moon and the planets, but a clear understanding of the forces causing these motions was not available. In that year, Isaac Newton provided the key that unlocked the secrets of the heavens. He knew, from his first law, that a net force had to be acting on the Moon because without such a force the Moon would move in a straight-line path rather than in its almost circular orbit. Newton reasoned that this force was the gravitational attraction exerted by the Earth on the Moon. He realized that the forces involved in the Earth–Moon attraction and in the Sun–planet attraction were not something special to those systems, but rather were particular cases of a general and universal attraction between objects. In other words, Newton saw that the same force of attraction that causes the Moon to follow its path around the Earth also causes an apple to fall from a tree. As he put it, "I deduced that the forces which keep the planets in their orbs must be reciprocally as the squares of their distances from the centers about which they revolve; and thereby compared the force requisite to keep the Moon in her orb with the force of gravity at the surface of the Earth; and found them answer pretty nearly."

In this chapter we study the law of gravity. We place emphasis on describing the motion of the planets because astronomical data provide an important test of the validity of the law of gravity. We show that the laws of planetary motion developed by Johannes Kepler follow from the law of gravity and the concept of conservation of angular momentum. We then derive a general expression for gravitational potential energy and examine the energetics of planetary and satellite motion. We close by showing how the law of gravity is also used to determine the force between a particle and an extended object.

14.1 NEWTON'S LAW OF UNIVERSAL GRAVITATION

You may have heard the legend that Newton was struck on the head by a falling apple while napping under a tree. This alleged accident supposedly prompted him to imagine that perhaps all bodies in the Universe were attracted to each other in the same way the apple was attracted to the Earth. Newton analyzed astronomical data on the motion of the Moon around the Earth. From that analysis, he made the bold assertion that the force law governing the motion of planets was the *same* as the force law that attracted a falling apple to the Earth. This was the first time that "earthly" and "heavenly" motions were unified. We shall look at the mathematical details of Newton's analysis in Section 14.5.

In 1687 Newton published his work on the law of gravity in his treatise *Mathematical Principles of Natural Philosophy*. **Newton's law of universal gravitation** states that

> every particle in the Universe attracts every other particle with a force that is directly proportional to the product of their masses and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between them.

If the particles have masses m_1 and m_2 and are separated by a distance r, the magnitude of this gravitational force is

The law of gravity

$$F_g = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2} \tag{14.1}$$

where G is a constant, called the *universal gravitational constant,* that has been measured experimentally. As noted in Example 6.6, its value in SI units is

$$G = 6.673 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N \cdot m^2/kg^2} \tag{14.2}$$

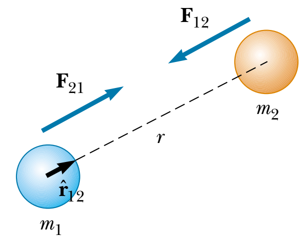


Figure 14.1 The gravitational force between two particles is attractive. The unit vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{12}$ is directed from particle 1 to particle 2. Note that $\mathbf{F}_{21} = -\mathbf{F}_{12}$.

The form of the force law given by Equation 14.1 is often referred to as an **inverse-square law** because the magnitude of the force varies as the inverse square of the separation of the particles.[1] We shall see other examples of this type of force law in subsequent chapters. We can express this force in vector form by defining a unit vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{12}$ (Fig. 14.1). Because this unit vector is directed from particle 1 to particle 2, the force exerted by particle 1 on particle 2 is

$$\mathbf{F}_{12} = -G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2}\,\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{12} \tag{14.3}$$

where the minus sign indicates that particle 2 is attracted to particle 1, and hence the force must be directed toward particle 1. By Newton's third law, the force exerted by particle 2 on particle 1, designated $\mathbf{F}_{21}$, is equal in magnitude to $\mathbf{F}_{12}$ and in the opposite direction. That is, these forces form an action–reaction pair, and $\mathbf{F}_{21} = -\mathbf{F}_{12}$.

Properties of the gravitational force

Several features of Equation 14.3 deserve mention. The gravitational force is a field force that always exists between two particles, regardless of the medium that separates them. Because the force varies as the inverse square of the distance between the particles, it decreases rapidly with increasing separation. We can relate this fact to the geometry of the situation by noting that the intensity of light emanating from a point source drops off in the same $1/r^2$ manner, as shown in Figure 14.2.

Another important point about Equation 14.3 is that **the gravitational force exerted by a finite-size, spherically symmetric mass distribution on a particle outside the distribution is the same as if the entire mass of the distribution were concentrated at the center.** For example, the force exerted by the

QuickLab

Inflate a balloon just enough to form a small sphere. Measure its diameter. Use a marker to color in a 1-cm square on its surface. Now continue inflating the balloon until it reaches twice the original diameter. Measure the size of the square you have drawn. Also note how the color of the marked area has changed. Have you verified what is shown in Figure 14.2?

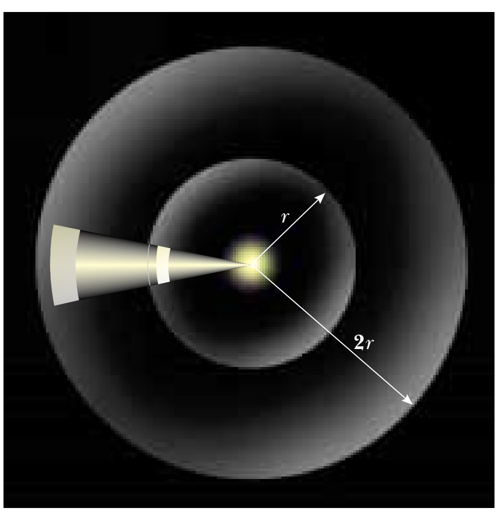


Figure 14.2 Light radiating from a point source drops off as $1/r^2$, a relationship that matches the way the gravitational force depends on distance. When the distance from the light source is doubled, the light has to cover four times the area and thus is one fourth as bright.

[1] An inverse relationship between two quantities x and y is one in which $y = k/x$, where k is a constant. A direct proportion between x and y exists when $y = kx$.

Earth on a particle of mass m near the Earth's surface has the magnitude

$$F_g = G\frac{M_E m}{{R_E}^2} \tag{14.4}$$

where M_E is the Earth's mass and R_E its radius. This force is directed toward the center of the Earth.

We have evidence of the fact that the gravitational force acting on an object is directly proportional to its mass from our observations of falling objects, discussed in Chapter 2. All objects, regardless of mass, fall in the absence of air resistance at the same acceleration g near the surface of the Earth. According to Newton's second law, this acceleration is given by $g = F_g/m$, where m is the mass of the falling object. If this ratio is to be the same for all falling objects, then F_g must be directly proportional to m, so that the mass cancels in the ratio. If we consider the more general situation of a gravitational force between any two objects with mass, such as two planets, this same argument can be applied to show that the gravitational force is proportional to one of the masses. We can choose *either* of the masses in the argument, however; thus, the gravitational force must be directly proportional to *both* masses, as can be seen in Equation 14.3.

14.2 MEASURING THE GRAVITATIONAL CONSTANT

The universal gravitational constant G was measured in an important experiment by Henry Cavendish (1731–1810) in 1798. The Cavendish apparatus consists of two small spheres, each of mass m, fixed to the ends of a light horizontal rod suspended by a fine fiber or thin metal wire, as illustrated in Figure 14.3. When two large spheres, each of mass M, are placed near the smaller ones, the attractive force between smaller and larger spheres causes the rod to rotate and twist the wire suspension to a new equilibrium orientation. The angle of rotation is measured by the deflection of a light beam reflected from a mirror attached to the vertical suspension. The deflection of the light is an effective technique for amplifying the motion. The experiment is carefully repeated with different masses at various separations. In addition to providing a value for G, the results show experimentally that the force is attractive, proportional to the product mM, and inversely proportional to the square of the distance r.

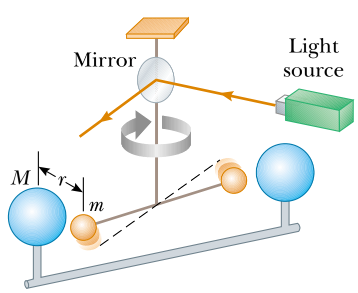


Figure 14.3 Schematic diagram of the Cavendish apparatus for measuring G. As the small spheres of mass m are attracted to the large spheres of mass M, the rod between the two small spheres rotates through a small angle. A light beam reflected from a mirror on the rotating apparatus measures the angle of rotation. The dashed line represents the original position of the rod.

EXAMPLE 14.1 Billiards, Anyone?

Three 0.300-kg billiard balls are placed on a table at the corners of a right triangle, as shown in Figure 14.4. Calculate the gravitational force on the cue ball (designated m_1) resulting from the other two balls.

Solution First we calculate separately the individual forces on the cue ball due to the other two balls, and then we find the vector sum to get the resultant force. We can see graphically that this force should point upward and toward the

right. We locate our coordinate axes as shown in Figure 14.4, placing our origin at the position of the cue ball.

The force exerted by m_2 on the cue ball is directed upward and is given by

$$\mathbf{F}_{21} = G\frac{m_2 m_1}{{r_{21}}^2}\mathbf{j}$$

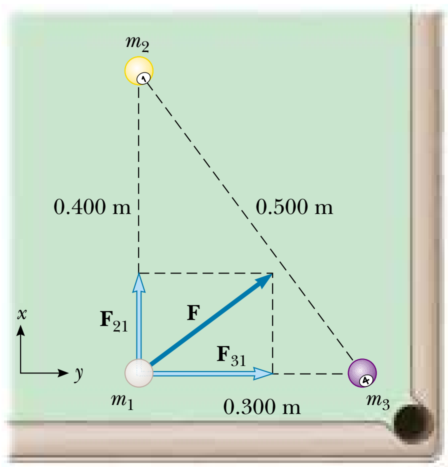


Figure 14.4 The resultant gravitational force acting on the cue ball is the vector sum $\mathbf{F}_{21} + \mathbf{F}_{31}$.

$$= \left(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\,\frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{kg}^2}\right)\frac{(0.300\text{ kg})(0.300\text{ kg})}{(0.400\text{ m})^2}\mathbf{j}$$
$$= 3.75 \times 10^{-11}\mathbf{j}\text{ N}$$

This result shows that the gravitational forces between everyday objects have extremely small magnitudes. The force exerted by m_3 on the cue ball is directed to the right:

$$\mathbf{F}_{31} = G\frac{m_3 m_1}{{r_{31}}^2}\mathbf{i}$$
$$= \left(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\,\frac{\text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2}{\text{kg}^2}\right)\frac{(0.300\text{ kg})(0.300\text{ kg})}{(0.300\text{ m})^2}\mathbf{i}$$
$$= 6.67 \times 10^{-11}\,\mathbf{i}\text{ N}$$

Therefore, the resultant force on the cue ball is

$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}_{21} + \mathbf{F}_{31} = \boxed{(3.75\mathbf{j} + 6.67\mathbf{i}) \times 10^{-11}\text{ N}}$$

and the magnitude of this force is

$$F = \sqrt{{F_{21}}^2 + {F_{31}}^2} = \sqrt{(3.75)^2 + (6.67)^2} \times 10^{-11}$$
$$= 7.65 \times 10^{-11}\text{ N}$$

Exercise Find the direction of **F**.

Answer 29.3° counterclockwise from the positive x axis.

14.3 FREE-FALL ACCELERATION AND THE GRAVITATIONAL FORCE

In Chapter 5, when defining mg as the weight of an object of mass m, we referred to g as the magnitude of the free-fall acceleration. Now we are in a position to obtain a more fundamental description of g. Because the force acting on a freely falling object of mass m near the Earth's surface is given by Equation 14.4, we can equate mg to this force to obtain

$$mg = G\frac{M_E m}{{R_E}^2}$$

$$g = G\frac{M_E}{{R_E}^2} \qquad \textbf{(14.5)}$$

Free-fall acceleration near the Earth's surface

Now consider an object of mass m located a distance h above the Earth's surface or a distance r from the Earth's center, where $r = R_E + h$. The magnitude of the gravitational force acting on this object is

$$F_g = G\frac{M_E m}{r^2} = G\frac{M_E m}{(R_E + h)^2}$$

The gravitational force acting on the object at this position is also $F_g = mg'$, where g' is the value of the free-fall acceleration at the altitude h. Substituting this expres-

sion for F_g into the last equation shows that g' is

Variation of g with altitude

$$g' = \frac{GM_E}{r^2} = \frac{GM_E}{(R_E + h)^2} \tag{14.6}$$

Thus, it follows that g' *decreases* with *increasing altitude.* Because the weight of a body is mg', we see that as $r \rightarrow \infty$, its weight approaches zero.

EXAMPLE 14.2 Variation of g with Altitude h

The International Space Station is designed to operate at an altitude of 350 km. When completed, it will have a weight (measured at the Earth's surface) of 4.22×10^6 N. What is its weight when in orbit?

Solution Because the station is above the surface of the Earth, we expect its weight in orbit to be less than its weight on Earth, 4.22×10^6 N. Using Equation 14.6 with $h = 350$ km, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} g' &= \frac{GM_E}{(R_E + h)^2} \\ &= \frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.98 \times 10^{24}\ \text{kg})}{(6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m} + 0.350 \times 10^6\ \text{m})^2} \\ &= 8.83\ \text{m/s}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Because $g'/g = 8.83/9.80 = 0.901$, we conclude that the weight of the station at an altitude of 350 km is 90.1% of the value at the Earth's surface. So the station's weight in orbit is

$$(0.901)(4.22 \times 10^6\ \text{N}) = \boxed{3.80 \times 10^6\ \text{N}}$$

Values of g' at other altitudes are listed in Table 14.1.

TABLE 14.1 Free-Fall Acceleration g' at Various Altitudes Above the Earth's Surface

Altitude h (km)	g' (m/s^2)
1 000	7.33
2 000	5.68
3 000	4.53
4 000	3.70
5 000	3.08
6 000	2.60
7 000	2.23
8 000	1.93
9 000	1.69
10 000	1.49
50 000	0.13
∞	0

web

The official web site for the International Space Station is **www.station.nasa.gov**

EXAMPLE 14.3 The Density of the Earth

Using the fact that $g = 9.80$ m/s^2 at the Earth's surface, find the average density of the Earth.

Solution Using $g = 9.80$ m/s^2 and $R_E = 6.37 \times 10^6$ m, we find from Equation 14.5 that $M_E = 5.96 \times 10^{24}$ kg. From this result, and using the definition of density from Chapter 1, we obtain

$$\rho_E = \frac{M_E}{V_E} = \frac{M_E}{\frac{4}{3}\pi R_E^3} = \frac{5.96 \times 10^{24}\ \text{kg}}{\frac{4}{3}\pi(6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m})^3}$$

$$= \boxed{5.50 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3}$$

Because this value is about twice the density of most rocks at the Earth's surface, we conclude that the inner core of the Earth has a density much higher than the average value. It is most amazing that the Cavendish experiment, which determines G (and can be done on a tabletop), combined with simple free-fall measurements of g, provides information about the core of the Earth.

Astronauts F. Story Musgrave and Jeffrey A. Hoffman, along with the Hubble Space Telescope and the space shuttle *Endeavor,* are all falling around the Earth.

14.4 KEPLER'S LAWS

People have observed the movements of the planets, stars, and other celestial bodies for thousands of years. In early history, scientists regarded the Earth as the center of the Universe. This so-called geocentric model was elaborated and formalized by the Greek astronomer Claudius Ptolemy (c. 100–c. 170) in the second century A.D. and was accepted for the next 1 400 years. In 1543 the Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus (1473–1543) suggested that the Earth and the other planets revolved in circular orbits around the Sun (the heliocentric model).

The Danish astronomer Tycho Brahe (1546–1601) wanted to determine how the heavens were constructed, and thus he developed a program to determine the positions of both stars and planets. It is interesting to note that those observations of the planets and 777 stars visible to the naked eye were carried out with only a large sextant and a compass. (The telescope had not yet been invented.)

The German astronomer Johannes Kepler was Brahe's assistant for a short while before Brahe's death, whereupon he acquired his mentor's astronomical data and spent 16 years trying to deduce a mathematical model for the motion of the planets. Such data are difficult to sort out because the Earth is also in motion around the Sun. After many laborious calculations, Kepler found that Brahe's data on the revolution of Mars around the Sun provided the answer.

Johannes Kepler **German astronomer (1571–1630)** The German astronomer Johannes Kepler is best known for developing the laws of planetary motion based on the careful observations of Tycho Brahe. *(Art Resource)*

For more information about Johannes Kepler, visit our Web site at **www.saunderscollege.com/physics/**

Kepler's analysis first showed that the concept of circular orbits around the Sun had to be abandoned. He eventually discovered that the orbit of Mars could be accurately described by an **ellipse.** Figure 14.5 shows the geometric description of an ellipse. The longest dimension is called the major axis and is of length $2a$, where a is the **semimajor axis.** The shortest dimension is the minor axis, of length $2b$, where b is the **semiminor axis.** On either side of the center is a **focal point,** a distance c from the center, where $a^2 = b^2 + c^2$. The Sun is located at one of the focal points of Mars's orbit. Kepler generalized his analysis to include the motions of all planets. The complete analysis is summarized in three statements known as **Kepler's laws:**

Kepler's laws

1. All planets move in elliptical orbits with the Sun at one focal point.
2. The radius vector drawn from the Sun to a planet sweeps out equal areas in equal time intervals.
3. The square of the orbital period of any planet is proportional to the cube of the semimajor axis of the elliptical orbit.

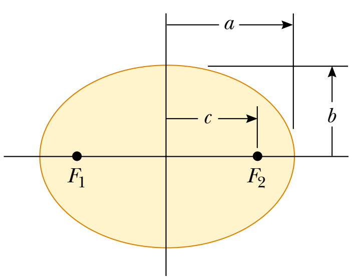


Figure 14.5 Plot of an ellipse. The semimajor axis has a length a, and the semiminor axis has a length b. The focal points are located at a distance c from the center, where $a^2 = b^2 + c^2$.

Most of the planetary orbits are close to circular in shape; for example, the semimajor and semiminor axes of the orbit of Mars differ by only 0.4%. Mercury and Pluto have the most elliptical orbits of the nine planets. In addition to the planets, there are many asteroids and comets orbiting the Sun that obey Kepler's laws. Comet Halley is such an object; it becomes visible when it is close to the Sun every 76 years. Its orbit is very elliptical, with a semiminor axis 76% smaller than its semimajor axis.

Although we do not prove it here, Kepler's first law is a direct consequence of the fact that the gravitational force varies as $1/r^2$. That is, under an inverse-square gravitational-force law, the orbit of a planet can be shown mathematically to be an ellipse with the Sun at one focal point. Indeed, half a century after Kepler developed his laws, Newton demonstrated that these laws are a consequence of the gravitational force that exists between any two masses. Newton's law of universal gravitation, together with his development of the laws of motion, provides the basis for a full mathematical solution to the motion of planets and satellites.

14.5 THE LAW OF GRAVITY AND THE MOTION OF PLANETS

In formulating his law of gravity, Newton used the following reasoning, which supports the assumption that the gravitational force is proportional to the inverse square of the separation between the two interacting bodies. He compared the acceleration of the Moon in its orbit with the acceleration of an object falling near the Earth's surface, such as the legendary apple (Fig. 14.6). Assuming that both accelerations had the same cause—namely, the gravitational attraction of the Earth—Newton used the inverse-square law to reason that the acceleration of the Moon toward the Earth (centripetal acceleration) should be proportional to $1/r_M{}^2$, where r_M is the distance between the centers of the Earth and the Moon. Furthermore, the acceleration of the apple toward the Earth should be proportional to $1/R_E{}^2$, where R_E is the radius of the Earth, or the distance between the centers of the Earth and the apple. Using the values $r_M = 3.84 \times 10^8$ m and

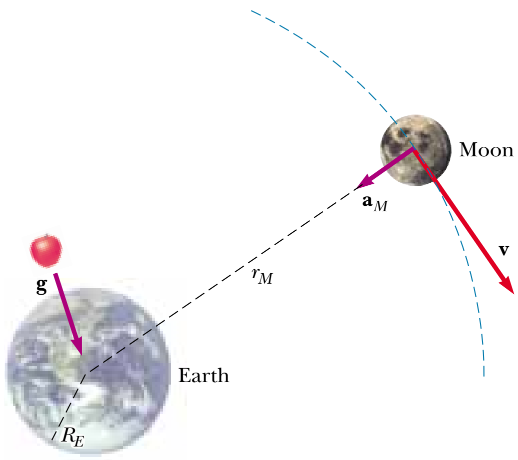


Figure 14.6 As it revolves around the Earth, the Moon experiences a centripetal acceleration $\mathbf{a}_M$ directed toward the Earth. An object near the Earth's surface, such as the apple shown here, experiences an acceleration $\mathbf{g}$. (Dimensions are not to scale.)

$R_E = 6.37 \times 10^6$ m, Newton predicted that the ratio of the Moon's acceleration a_M to the apple's acceleration g would be

$$\frac{a_M}{g} = \frac{(1/r_M)^2}{(1/R_E)^2} = \left(\frac{R_E}{r_M}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{6.37 \times 10^6 \text{ m}}{3.84 \times 10^8 \text{ m}}\right)^2 = 2.75 \times 10^{-4}$$

Therefore, the centripetal acceleration of the Moon is

Acceleration of the Moon

$$a_M = (2.75 \times 10^{-4})(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2) = 2.70 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m/s}^2$$

Newton also calculated the centripetal acceleration of the Moon from a knowledge of its mean distance from the Earth and its orbital period, $T = 27.32$ days $= 2.36 \times 10^6$ s. In a time T, the Moon travels a distance $2\pi r_M$, which equals the circumference of its orbit. Therefore, its orbital speed is $2\pi r_M/T$ and its centripetal acceleration is

$$a_M = \frac{v^2}{r_M} = \frac{(2\pi r_M/T)^2}{r_M} = \frac{4\pi^2 r_M}{T^2} = \frac{4\pi^2(3.84 \times 10^8 \text{ m})}{(2.36 \times 10^6 \text{ s})^2}$$
$$= 2.72 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m/s}^2 \approx \frac{9.80 \text{ m/s}^2}{60^2}$$

In other words, because the Moon is roughly 60 Earth radii away, the gravitational acceleration at that distance should be about $1/60^2$ of its value at the Earth's surface. This is just the acceleration needed to account for the circular motion of the Moon around the Earth. The nearly perfect agreement between this value and the value Newton obtained using g provides strong evidence of the inverse-square nature of the gravitational force law.

Although these results must have been very encouraging to Newton, he was deeply troubled by an assumption he made in the analysis. To evaluate the acceleration of an object at the Earth's surface, Newton treated the Earth as if its mass were all concentrated at its center. That is, he assumed that the Earth acted as a particle as far as its influence on an exterior object was concerned. Several years later, in 1687, on the basis of his pioneering work in the development of calculus, Newton proved that this assumption was valid and was a natural consequence of the law of universal gravitation.

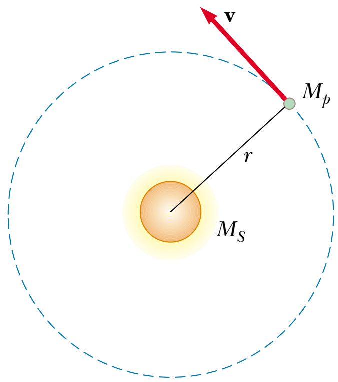


Figure 14.7 A planet of mass M_p moving in a circular orbit around the Sun. The orbits of all planets except Mercury and Pluto are nearly circular.

Kepler's Third Law

It is informative to show that Kepler's third law can be predicted from the inverse-square law for circular orbits.[2] Consider a planet of mass M_p moving around the Sun of mass M_S in a circular orbit, as shown in Figure 14.7. Because the gravitational force exerted by the Sun on the planet is a radially directed force that keeps the planet moving in a circle, we can apply Newton's second law ($\Sigma F = ma$) to the planet:

$$\frac{GM_SM_p}{r^2} = \frac{M_pv^2}{r}$$

Because the orbital speed v of the planet is simply $2\pi r/T$, where T is its period of revolution, the preceding expression becomes

$$\frac{GM_S}{r^2} = \frac{(2\pi r/T)^2}{r}$$

Kepler's third law

$$T^2 = \left(\frac{4\pi^2}{GM_S}\right) r^3 = K_S r^3 \qquad \textbf{(14.7)}$$

where K_S is a constant given by

$$K_S = \frac{4\pi^2}{GM_S} = 2.97 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{s}^2/\text{m}^3$$

Equation 14.7 is Kepler's third law. It can be shown that the law is also valid for elliptical orbits if we replace r with the length of the semimajor axis a. Note that the constant of proportionality K_S is independent of the mass of the planet. Therefore, Equation 14.7 is valid for *any* planet.[3] Table 14.2 contains a collection of useful planetary data. The last column verifies that T^2/r^3 is a constant. The small variations in the values in this column reflect uncertainties in the measured values of the periods and semimajor axes of the planets.

If we were to consider the orbit around the Earth of a satellite such as the Moon, then the proportionality constant would have a different value, with the Sun's mass replaced by the Earth's mass.

EXAMPLE 14.4 The Mass of the Sun

Calculate the mass of the Sun using the fact that the period of the Earth's orbit around the Sun is 3.156×10^7 s and its distance from the Sun is 1.496×10^{11} m.

Solution Using Equation 14.7, we find that

$$M_S = \frac{4\pi^2 r^3}{GT^2} = \frac{4\pi^2(1.496 \times 10^{11}\ \text{m})^3}{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(3.156 \times 10^7\ \text{s})^2}$$

$$= \boxed{1.99 \times 10^{30}\ \text{kg}}$$

In Example 14.3, an understanding of gravitational forces enabled us to find out something about the density of the Earth's core, and now we have used this understanding to determine the mass of the Sun.

[2] The orbits of all planets except Mercury and Pluto are very close to being circular; hence, we do not introduce much error with this assumption. For example, the ratio of the semiminor axis to the semimajor axis for the Earth's orbit is $b/a = 0.999\ 86$.

[3] Equation 14.7 is indeed a proportion because the ratio of the two quantities T^2 and r^3 is a constant. The variables in a proportion are not required to be limited to the first power only.

TABLE 14.2 Useful Planetary Data

Body	Mass (kg)	Mean Radius (m)	Period of Revolution (s)	Mean Distance from Sun (m)	$\frac{T^2}{r^3}$ (s^2/m^3)
Mercury	3.18×10^{23}	2.43×10^{6}	7.60×10^{6}	5.79×10^{10}	2.97×10^{-19}
Venus	4.88×10^{24}	6.06×10^{6}	1.94×10^{7}	1.08×10^{11}	2.99×10^{-19}
Earth	5.98×10^{24}	6.37×10^{6}	3.156×10^{7}	1.496×10^{11}	2.97×10^{-19}
Mars	6.42×10^{23}	3.37×10^{6}	5.94×10^{7}	2.28×10^{11}	2.98×10^{-19}
Jupiter	1.90×10^{27}	6.99×10^{7}	3.74×10^{8}	7.78×10^{11}	2.97×10^{-19}
Saturn	5.68×10^{26}	5.85×10^{7}	9.35×10^{8}	1.43×10^{12}	2.99×10^{-19}
Uranus	8.68×10^{25}	2.33×10^{7}	2.64×10^{9}	2.87×10^{12}	2.95×10^{-19}
Neptune	1.03×10^{26}	2.21×10^{7}	5.22×10^{9}	4.50×10^{12}	2.99×10^{-19}
Pluto	$\approx 1.4 \times 10^{22}$	$\approx 1.5 \times 10^{6}$	7.82×10^{9}	5.91×10^{12}	2.96×10^{-19}
Moon	7.36×10^{22}	1.74×10^{6}	—	—	—
Sun	1.991×10^{30}	6.96×10^{8}	—	—	—

Kepler's Second Law and Conservation of Angular Momentum

Consider a planet of mass M_p moving around the Sun in an elliptical orbit (Fig. 14.8). The gravitational force acting on the planet is always along the radius vector, directed toward the Sun, as shown in Figure 14.9a. When a force is directed toward or away from a fixed point and is a function of r only, it is called a **central force.** The torque acting on the planet due to this force is clearly zero; that is, because $\mathbf{F}$ is parallel to $\mathbf{r}$,

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{r} \times F\hat{\mathbf{r}} = 0$$

(You may want to revisit Section 11.2 to refresh your memory on the vector product.) Recall from Equation 11.19, however, that torque equals the time rate of change of angular momentum: $\boldsymbol{\tau} = d\mathbf{L}/dt$. Therefore, **because the gravitational**

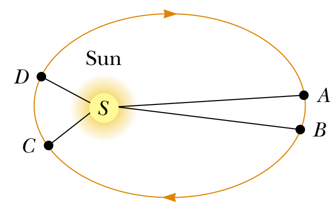


Figure 14.8 Kepler's second law is called the law of equal areas. When the time interval required for a planet to travel from A to B is equal to the time interval required for it to go from C to D, the two areas swept out by the planet's radius vector are equal. Note that in order for this to be true, the planet must be moving faster between C and D than between A and B.

Separate views of Jupiter and of Periodic Comet Shoemaker–Levy 9—both taken with the Hubble Space Telescope about two months before Jupiter and the comet collided in July 1994—were put together with the use of a computer. Their relative sizes and distances were altered. The black spot on Jupiter is the shadow of its moon Io.

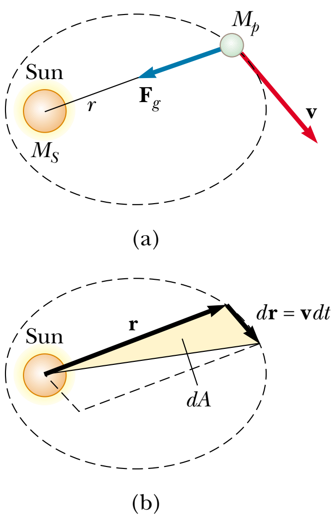


Figure 14.9 (a) The gravitational force acting on a planet is directed toward the Sun, along the radius vector. (b) As a planet orbits the Sun, the area swept out by the radius vector in a time dt is equal to one-half the area of the parallelogram formed by the vectors $\mathbf{r}$ and $d\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{v}dt$.

force exerted by the Sun on a planet results in no torque on the planet, the angular momentum L of the planet is constant:

$$\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{p} = \mathbf{r} \times M_p\mathbf{v} = M_p\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{v} = \text{constant} \qquad \textbf{(14.8)}$$

Because $\mathbf{L}$ remains constant, the planet's motion at any instant is restricted to the plane formed by $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

We can relate this result to the following geometric consideration. The radius vector $\mathbf{r}$ in Figure 14.9b sweeps out an area dA in a time dt. This area equals one-half the area $|\mathbf{r} \times d\mathbf{r}|$ of the parallelogram formed by the vectors $\mathbf{r}$ and $d\mathbf{r}$ (see Section 11.2). Because the displacement of the planet in a time dt is $d\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{v}dt$, we can say that

$$dA = \tfrac{1}{2}|\mathbf{r} \times d\mathbf{r}| = \tfrac{1}{2}|\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{v}\, dt| = \frac{L}{2M_p}\, dt$$

$$\frac{dA}{dt} = \frac{L}{2M_p} = \text{constant} \qquad \textbf{(14.9)}$$

where L and M_p are both constants. Thus, we conclude that

the radius vector from the Sun to a planet sweeps out equal areas in equal time intervals.

It is important to recognize that this result, which is Kepler's second law, is a consequence of the fact that the force of gravity is a central force, which in turn implies that angular momentum is constant. Therefore, Kepler's second law applies to *any* situation involving a central force, whether inverse-square or not.

EXAMPLE 14.5 Motion in an Elliptical Orbit

A satellite of mass m moves in an elliptical orbit around the Earth (Fig. 14.10). The minimum distance of the satellite from the Earth is called the *perigee* (indicated by p in Fig. 14.10), and the maximum distance is called the *apogee* (indicated by a). If the speed of the satellite at p is v_p, what is its speed at a?

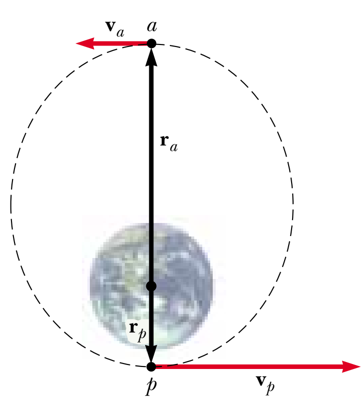


Figure 14.10 As a satellite moves around the Earth in an elliptical orbit, its angular momentum is constant. Therefore, $mv_ar_a = mv_pr_p$, where the subscripts a and p represent apogee and perigee, respectively.

Solution As the satellite moves from perigee toward apogee, it is moving farther from the Earth. Thus, a component of the gravitational force exerted by the Earth on the satellite is opposite the velocity vector. Negative work is done on the satellite, which causes it to slow down, according to the work–kinetic energy theorem. As a result, we expect the speed at apogee to be lower than the speed at perigee.

The angular momentum of the satellite relative to the Earth is $\mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v} = m\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{v}$. At the points a and p, $\mathbf{v}$ is perpendicular to $\mathbf{r}$. Therefore, the magnitude of the angular momentum at these positions is $L_a = mv_ar_a$ and $L_p = mv_pr_p$. Because angular momentum is constant, we see that

$$mv_ar_a = mv_pr_p$$

$$v_a = \frac{r_p}{r_a}v_p$$

Quick Quiz 14.1

How would you explain the fact that Saturn and Jupiter have periods much greater than one year?

14.6 THE GRAVITATIONAL FIELD

When Newton published his theory of universal gravitation, it was considered a success because it satisfactorily explained the motion of the planets. Since 1687 the same theory has been used to account for the motions of comets, the deflection of a Cavendish balance, the orbits of binary stars, and the rotation of galaxies. Nevertheless, both Newton's contemporaries and his successors found it difficult to accept the concept of a force that acts through a distance, as mentioned in Section 5.1. They asked how it was possible for two objects to interact when they were not in contact with each other. Newton himself could not answer that question.

An approach to describing interactions between objects that are not in contact came well after Newton's death, and it enables us to look at the gravitational interaction in a different way. As described in Section 5.1, this alternative approach uses the concept of a **gravitational field** that exists at every point in space. When a particle of mass m is placed at a point where the gravitational field is $\mathbf{g}$, the particle experiences a force $\mathbf{F}_g = m\mathbf{g}$. In other words, the field exerts a force on the particle. Hence, the gravitational field $\mathbf{g}$ is defined as

Gravitational field

$$\mathbf{g} \equiv \frac{\mathbf{F}_g}{m} \tag{14.10}$$

That is, the gravitational field at a point in space equals the gravitational force experienced by a *test particle* placed at that point divided by the mass of the test particle. Notice that the presence of the test particle is not necessary for the field to exist—the Earth creates the gravitational field. We call the object creating the field the *source particle* (although the Earth is clearly not a particle; we shall discuss shortly the fact that we can approximate the Earth as a particle for the purpose of finding the gravitational field that it creates). We can detect the presence of the field and measure its strength by placing a test particle in the field and noting the force exerted on it.

Although the gravitational force is inherently an interaction between two objects, the concept of a gravitational field allows us to "factor out" the mass of one of the objects. In essence, we are describing the "effect" that any object (in this case, the Earth) has on the empty space around itself in terms of the force that *would* be present *if* a second object were somewhere in that space.[4]

As an example of how the field concept works, consider an object of mass m near the Earth's surface. Because the gravitational force acting on the object has a magnitude GM_Em/r^2 (see Eq. 14.4), the field $\mathbf{g}$ at a distance r from the center of the Earth is

$$\mathbf{g} = \frac{\mathbf{F}_g}{m} = -\frac{GM_E}{r^2}\,\hat{\mathbf{r}} \tag{14.11}$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is a unit vector pointing radially outward from the Earth and the minus

[4] We shall return to this idea of mass affecting the space around it when we discuss Einstein's theory of gravitation in Chapter 39.

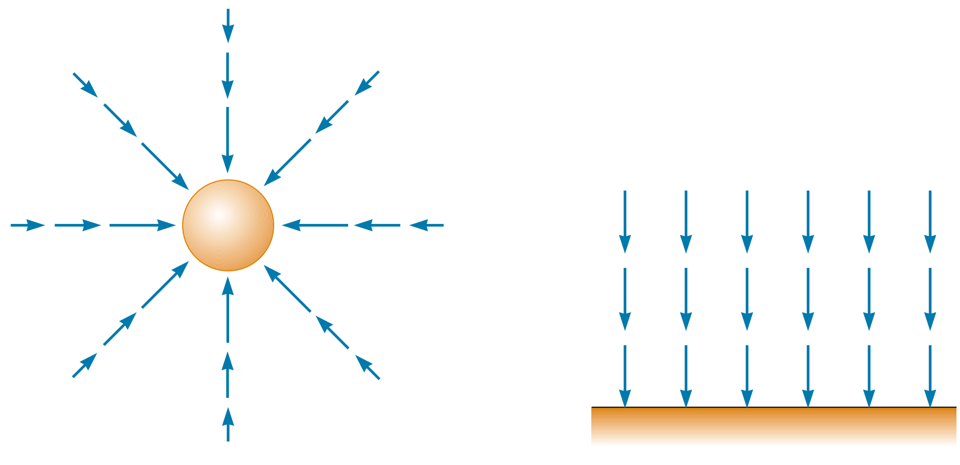


Figure 14.11 (a) The gravitational field vectors in the vicinity of a uniform spherical mass such as the Earth vary in both direction and magnitude. The vectors point in the direction of the acceleration a particle would experience if it were placed in the field. The magnitude of the field vector at any location is the magnitude of the free-fall acceleration at that location. (b) The gravitational field vectors in a small region near the Earth's surface are uniform in both direction and magnitude.

sign indicates that the field points toward the center of the Earth, as illustrated in Figure 14.11a. Note that the field vectors at different points surrounding the Earth vary in both direction and magnitude. In a small region near the Earth's surface, the downward field **g** is approximately constant and uniform, as indicated in Figure 14.11b. Equation 14.11 is valid at all points *outside* the Earth's surface, assuming that the Earth is spherical. At the Earth's surface, where $r = R_E$, **g** has a magnitude of 9.80 N/kg.

14.7 GRAVITATIONAL POTENTIAL ENERGY

In Chapter 8 we introduced the concept of gravitational potential energy, which is the energy associated with the position of a particle. We emphasized that the gravitational potential energy function $U = mgy$ is valid only when the particle is near the Earth's surface, where the gravitational force is constant. Because the gravitational force between two particles varies as $1/r^2$, we expect that a more general potential energy function—one that is valid without the restriction of having to be near the Earth's surface—will be significantly different from $U = mgy$.

Before we calculate this general form for the gravitational potential energy function, let us first verify that *the gravitational force is conservative.* (Recall from Section 8.2 that a force is conservative if the work it does on an object moving between any two points is independent of the path taken by the object.) To do this, we first note that the gravitational force is a central force. By definition, a central force is any force that is directed along a radial line to a fixed center and has a magnitude that depends only on the radial coordinate r. Hence, a central force can be represented by $F(r)\hat{\mathbf{r}}$, where $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is a unit vector directed from the origin to the particle, as shown in Figure 14.12.

Consider a central force acting on a particle moving along the general path P to Q in Figure 14.12. The path from P to Q can be approximated by a series of

steps according to the following procedure. In Figure 14.12, we draw several thin wedges, which are shown as dashed lines. The outer boundary of our set of wedges is a path consisting of short radial line segments and arcs (gray in the figure). We select the length of the radial dimension of each wedge such that the short arc at the wedge's wide end intersects the actual path of the particle. Then we can approximate the actual path with a series of zigzag movements that alternate between moving along an arc and moving along a radial line.

By definition, a central force is always directed along one of the radial segments; therefore, the work done by **F** along any radial segment is

$$dW = \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = F(r)\ dr$$

You should recall that, by definition, the work done by a force that is perpendicular to the displacement is zero. Hence, the work done in moving along any arc is zero because **F** is perpendicular to the displacement along these segments. Therefore, the total work done by **F** is the sum of the contributions along the radial segments:

Work done by a central force

$$W = \int_{r_i}^{r_f} F(r)\ dr$$

where the subscripts i and f refer to the initial and final positions. Because the integrand is a function only of the radial position, this integral depends only on the initial and final values of r. Thus, the work done is the same over *any* path from P to Q. Because the work done is independent of the path and depends only on the end points, we conclude that *any central force is conservative.* We are now assured that a potential energy function can be obtained once the form of the central force is specified.

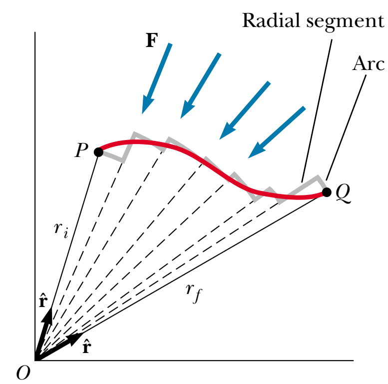


Figure 14.12 A particle moves from P to Q while acted on by a central force **F**, which is directed radially. The path is broken into a series of radial segments and arcs. Because the work done along the arcs is zero, the work done is independent of the path and depends only on r_f and r_i.

Recall from Equation 8.2 that the change in the gravitational potential energy associated with a given displacement is defined as the negative of the work done by the gravitational force during that displacement:

$$\Delta U = U_f - U_i = -\int_{r_i}^{r_f} F(r)\ dr \qquad \textbf{(14.12)}$$

We can use this result to evaluate the gravitational potential energy function. Consider a particle of mass m moving between two points P and Q above the Earth's surface (Fig. 14.13). The particle is subject to the gravitational force given by Equation 14.1. We can express this force as

$$F(r) = -\frac{GM_E m}{r^2}$$

where the negative sign indicates that the force is attractive. Substituting this expression for $F(r)$ into Equation 14.12, we can compute the change in the gravita-

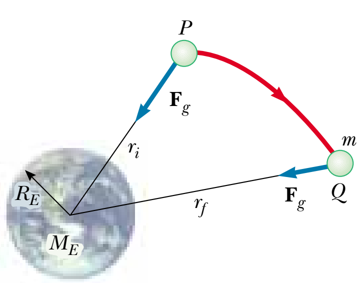


Figure 14.13 As a particle of mass m moves from P to Q above the Earth's surface, the gravitational potential energy changes according to Equation 14.12.

tional potential energy function:

$$U_f - U_i = GM_E m \int_{r_i}^{r_f} \frac{dr}{r^2} = GM_E m \left[-\frac{1}{r} \right]_{r_i}^{r_f}$$

Change in gravitational potential energy

$$U_f - U_i = -GM_E m \left(\frac{1}{r_f} - \frac{1}{r_i} \right) \tag{14.13}$$

As always, the choice of a reference point for the potential energy is completely arbitrary. It is customary to choose the reference point where the force is zero. Taking $U_i = 0$ at $r_i = \infty$, we obtain the important result

Gravitational potential energy of the Earth–particle system for $r \geq R_E$

$$U = -\frac{GM_E m}{r} \tag{14.14}$$

This expression applies to the Earth–particle system where the two masses are separated by a distance r, provided that $r \geq R_E$. The result is not valid for particles inside the Earth, where $r < R_E$. (The situation in which $r < R_E$ is treated in Section 14.10.) Because of our choice of U_i, the function U is always negative (Fig. 14.14).

Although Equation 14.14 was derived for the particle–Earth system, it can be applied to any two particles. That is, the gravitational potential energy associated with any pair of particles of masses m_1 and m_2 separated by a distance r is

$$U = -\frac{Gm_1 m_2}{r} \tag{14.15}$$

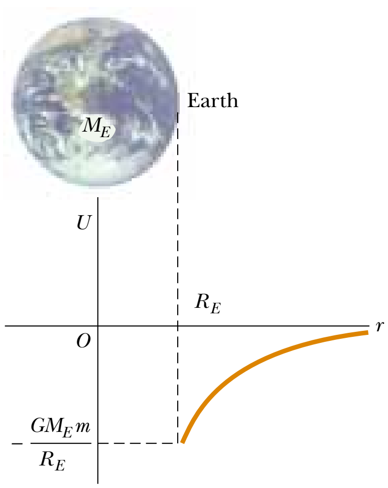


Figure 14.14 Graph of the gravitational potential energy U versus r for a particle above the Earth's surface. The potential energy goes to zero as r approaches infinity.

This expression shows that the gravitational potential energy for any pair of particles varies as $1/r$, whereas the force between them varies as $1/r^2$. Furthermore, the potential energy is negative because the force is attractive and we have taken the potential energy as zero when the particle separation is infinite. Because the force between the particles is attractive, we know that an external agent must do positive work to increase the separation between them. The work done by the external agent produces an increase in the potential energy as the two particles are separated. That is, U becomes less negative as r increases.

When two particles are at rest and separated by a distance r, an external agent has to supply an energy at least equal to $+Gm_1 m_2/r$ in order to separate the particles to an infinite distance. It is therefore convenient to think of the absolute value of the potential energy as the *binding energy* of the system. If the external agent supplies an energy greater than the binding energy, the excess energy of the system will be in the form of kinetic energy when the particles are at an infinite separation.

We can extend this concept to three or more particles. In this case, the total potential energy of the system is the sum over all pairs of particles.[5] Each pair contributes a term of the form given by Equation 14.15. For example, if the system contains three particles, as in Figure 14.15, we find that

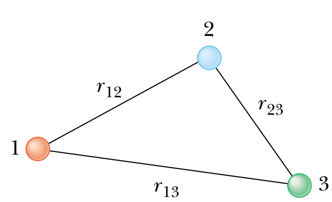


Figure 14.15 Three interacting particles.

$$U_{\text{total}} = U_{12} + U_{13} + U_{23} = -G\left(\frac{m_1 m_2}{r_{12}} + \frac{m_1 m_3}{r_{13}} + \frac{m_2 m_3}{r_{23}} \right) \tag{14.16}$$

The absolute value of U_{total} represents the work needed to separate the particles by an infinite distance.

[5] The fact that potential energy terms can be added for all pairs of particles stems from the experimental fact that gravitational forces obey the superposition principle.

EXAMPLE 14.6 The Change in Potential Energy

A particle of mass m is displaced through a small vertical distance Δy near the Earth's surface. Show that in this situation the general expression for the change in gravitational potential energy given by Equation 14.13 reduces to the familiar relationship $\Delta U = mg\,\Delta y$.

Solution We can express Equation 14.13 in the form

$$\Delta U = -GM_Em\left(\frac{1}{r_f} - \frac{1}{r_i}\right) = GM_Em\left(\frac{r_f - r_i}{r_ir_f}\right)$$

If both the initial and final positions of the particle are close to the Earth's surface, then $r_f - r_i = \Delta y$ and $r_ir_f \approx R_E^2$. (Recall that r is measured from the center of the Earth.) Therefore, the change in potential energy becomes

$$\Delta U \approx \frac{GM_Em}{R_E^2}\Delta y = mg\,\Delta y$$

where we have used the fact that $g = GM_E/R_E^2$ (Eq. 14.5). Keep in mind that the reference point is arbitrary because it is the *change* in potential energy that is meaningful.

14.8 ENERGY CONSIDERATIONS IN PLANETARY AND SATELLITE MOTION

Consider a body of mass m moving with a speed v in the vicinity of a massive body of mass M, where $M \gg m$. The system might be a planet moving around the Sun, a satellite in orbit around the Earth, or a comet making a one-time flyby of the Sun. If we assume that the body of mass M is at rest in an inertial reference frame, then the total mechanical energy E of the two-body system when the bodies are separated by a distance r is the sum of the kinetic energy of the body of mass m and the potential energy of the system, given by Equation 14.15:[6]

$$E = K + U$$

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{GMm}{r} \tag{14.17}$$

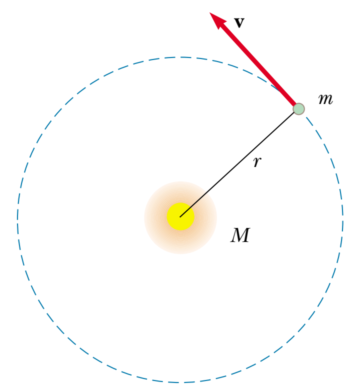


Figure 14.16 A body of mass m moving in a circular orbit about a much larger body of mass M.

This equation shows that E may be positive, negative, or zero, depending on the value of v. However, for a bound system,[7] such as the Earth–Sun system, E is necessarily *less than zero* because we have chosen the convention that $U \to 0$ as $r \to \infty$.

We can easily establish that $E < 0$ for the system consisting of a body of mass m moving in a circular orbit about a body of mass $M \gg m$ (Fig. 14.16). Newton's second law applied to the body of mass m gives

$$\frac{GMm}{r^2} = ma = \frac{mv^2}{r}$$

[6] You might recognize that we have ignored the acceleration and kinetic energy of the larger body. To see that this simplification is reasonable, consider an object of mass m falling toward the Earth. Because the center of mass of the object–Earth system is effectively stationary, it follows that $mv = M_Ev_E$. Thus, the Earth acquires a kinetic energy equal to

$$\tfrac{1}{2}M_Ev_E^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\frac{m^2}{M_E}v^2 = \frac{m}{M_E}K$$

where K is the kinetic energy of the object. Because $M_E \gg m$, this result shows that the kinetic energy of the Earth is negligible.

[7] Of the three examples provided at the beginning of this section, the planet moving around the Sun and a satellite in orbit around the Earth are bound systems—the Earth will always stay near the Sun, and the satellite will always stay near the Earth. The one-time comet flyby represents an unbound system—the comet interacts once with the Sun but is not bound to it. Thus, in theory the comet can move infinitely far away from the Sun.

Multiplying both sides by r and dividing by 2 gives

$$\tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{GMm}{2r} \tag{14.18}$$

Substituting this into Equation 14.17, we obtain

$$E = \frac{GMm}{2r} - \frac{GMm}{r}$$

Total energy for circular orbits

$$E = -\frac{GMm}{2r} \tag{14.19}$$

This result clearly shows that **the total mechanical energy is negative in the case of circular orbits.** Note that **the kinetic energy is positive and equal to one-half the absolute value of the potential energy.** The absolute value of E is also equal to the binding energy of the system, because this amount of energy must be provided to the system to move the two masses infinitely far apart.

The total mechanical energy is also negative in the case of elliptical orbits. The expression for E for elliptical orbits is the same as Equation 14.19 with r replaced by the semimajor axis length a. Furthermore, the total energy is constant if we assume that the system is isolated. Therefore, as the body of mass m moves from P to Q in Figure 14.13, the total energy remains constant and Equation 14.17 gives

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_i^2 - \frac{GMm}{r_i} = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_f^2 - \frac{GMm}{r_f} \tag{14.20}$$

Combining this statement of energy conservation with our earlier discussion of conservation of angular momentum, we see that **both the total energy and the total angular momentum of a gravitationally bound, two-body system are constants of the motion.**

EXAMPLE 14.7 Changing the Orbit of a Satellite

The space shuttle releases a 470-kg communications satellite while in an orbit that is 280 km above the surface of the Earth. A rocket engine on the satellite boosts it into a geosynchronous orbit, which is an orbit in which the satellite stays directly over a single location on the Earth. How much energy did the engine have to provide?

Solution First we must determine the radius of a geosynchronous orbit. Then we can calculate the change in energy needed to boost the satellite into orbit.

The period of the orbit T must be one day (86 400 s), so that the satellite travels once around the Earth in the same time that the Earth spins once on its axis. Knowing the period, we can then apply Kepler's third law (Eq. 14.7) to find the radius, once we replace K_S with $K_E = 4\pi^2/GM_E = 9.89 \times 10^{-14}\ \mathrm{s^2/m^3}$:

$$T^2 = K_E r^3$$

$$r = \sqrt[3]{\frac{T^2}{K_E}} = \sqrt[3]{\frac{(86\,400\ \mathrm{s})^2}{9.89 \times 10^{-14}\ \mathrm{s^2/m^3}}} = 4.23 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{m} = R_f$$

This is a little more than 26 000 mi above the Earth's surface.

We must also determine the initial radius (not the altitude above the Earth's surface) of the satellite's orbit when it was still in the shuttle's cargo bay. This is simply

$$R_E + 280\ \mathrm{km} = 6.65 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{m} = R_i$$

Now, applying Equation 14.19, we obtain, for the total initial and final energies,

$$E_i = -\frac{GM_E m}{2R_i} \qquad E_f = -\frac{GM_E m}{2R_f}$$

The energy required from the engine to boost the satellite is

$$E_{\mathrm{engine}} = E_f - E_i = -\frac{GM_E m}{2}\left(\frac{1}{R_f} - \frac{1}{R_i}\right)$$

$$= -\frac{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{N\cdot m^2/kg^2})(5.98 \times 10^{24}\ \mathrm{kg})(470\ \mathrm{kg})}{2}$$

$$\times \left(\frac{1}{4.23 \times 10^7\ \mathrm{m}} - \frac{1}{6.65 \times 10^6\ \mathrm{m}}\right)$$

$$= \boxed{1.19 \times 10^{10}\ \mathrm{J}}$$

This is the energy equivalent of 89 gal of gasoline. NASA engineers must account for the changing mass of the spacecraft as it ejects burned fuel, something we have not done here. Would you expect the calculation that includes the effect of this changing mass to yield a greater or lesser amount of energy required from the engine?

If we wish to determine how the energy is distributed after the engine is fired, we find from Equation 14.18 that the change in kinetic energy is $\Delta K = (GM_E m/2)(1/R_f - 1/R_i) = -1.19 \times 10^{10}$ J (a decrease), and the corresponding change in potential energy is $\Delta U = -GM_E m(1/R_f - 1/R_i) = 2.38 \times 10^{10}$ J (an increase). Thus, the change in mechanical energy of the system is $\Delta E = \Delta K + \Delta U = 1.19 \times 10^{10}$ J, as we already calculated. The firing of the engine results in an increase in the total mechanical energy of the system. Because an increase in potential energy is accompanied by a decrease in kinetic energy, we conclude that the speed of an orbiting satellite decreases as its altitude increases.

Escape Speed

Suppose an object of mass m is projected vertically upward from the Earth's surface with an initial speed v_i, as illustrated in Figure 14.17. We can use energy considerations to find the minimum value of the initial speed needed to allow the object to escape the Earth's gravitational field. Equation 14.17 gives the total energy of the object at any point. At the surface of the Earth, $v = v_i$ and $r = r_i = R_E$. When the object reaches its maximum altitude, $v = v_f = 0$ and $r = r_f = r_{\max}$. Because the total energy of the system is constant, substituting these conditions into Equation 14.20 gives

$$\tfrac{1}{2}mv_i^2 - \frac{GM_E m}{R_E} = -\frac{GM_E m}{r_{\max}}$$

Solving for v_i^2 gives

$$v_i^2 = 2GM_E\left(\frac{1}{R_E} - \frac{1}{r_{\max}}\right) \qquad \textbf{(14.21)}$$

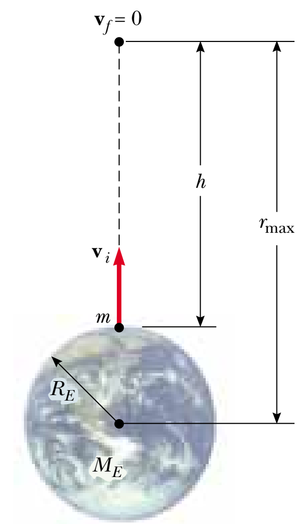


Figure 14.17 An object of mass m projected upward from the Earth's surface with an initial speed v_i reaches a maximum altitude h.

Therefore, if the initial speed is known, this expression can be used to calculate the maximum altitude h because we know that

$$h = r_{\max} - R_E$$

We are now in a position to calculate **escape speed,** which is the minimum speed the object must have at the Earth's surface in order to escape from the influence of the Earth's gravitational field. Traveling at this minimum speed, the object continues to move farther and farther away from the Earth as its speed asymptotically approaches zero. Letting $r_{\max} \rightarrow \infty$ in Equation 14.21 and taking $v_i = v_{\text{esc}}$, we obtain

Escape speed

$$\boxed{v_{\text{esc}} = \sqrt{\frac{2GM_E}{R_E}}} \qquad \textbf{(14.22)}$$

Note that this expression for v_{esc} is independent of the mass of the object. In other words, a spacecraft has the same escape speed as a molecule. Furthermore, the result is independent of the direction of the velocity and ignores air resistance.

If the object is given an initial speed equal to v_{esc}, its total energy is equal to zero. This can be seen by noting that when $r \rightarrow \infty$, the object's kinetic energy and its potential energy are both zero. If v_i is greater than v_{esc}, the total energy is greater than zero and the object has some residual kinetic energy as $r \rightarrow \infty$.

EXAMPLE 14.8 Escape Speed of a Rocket

Calculate the escape speed from the Earth for a 5 000-kg spacecraft, and determine the kinetic energy it must have at the Earth's surface in order to escape the Earth's gravitational field.

Solution Using Equation 14.22 gives

$$v_{\text{esc}} = \sqrt{\frac{2GM_E}{R_E}}$$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{2(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.98 \times 10^{24}\ \text{kg})}{6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m}}}$$

$$= \boxed{1.12 \times 10^4\ \text{m/s}}$$

This corresponds to about 25 000 mi/h.

The kinetic energy of the spacecraft is

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_{\text{esc}}^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(5.00 \times 10^3\ \text{kg})(1.12 \times 10^4\ \text{m/s})^2$$

$$= \boxed{3.14 \times 10^{11}\ \text{J}}$$

This is equivalent to about 2 300 gal of gasoline.

Equations 14.21 and 14.22 can be applied to objects projected from any planet. That is, in general, the escape speed from the surface of any planet of mass M and radius R is

$$v_{\text{esc}} = \sqrt{\frac{2GM}{R}}$$

Escape speeds for the planets, the Moon, and the Sun are provided in Table 14.3. Note that the values vary from 1.1 km/s for Pluto to about 618 km/s for the Sun. These results, together with some ideas from the kinetic theory of gases (see Chapter 21), explain why some planets have atmospheres and others do not. As we shall see later, a gas molecule has an average kinetic energy that depends on the temperature of the gas. Hence, lighter molecules, such as hydrogen and helium, have a higher average speed than heavier species at the same temperature. When the average speed of the lighter molecules is not much less than the escape speed of a planet, a significant fraction of them have a chance to escape from the planet.

This mechanism also explains why the Earth does not retain hydrogen molecules and helium atoms in its atmosphere but does retain heavier molecules, such as oxygen and nitrogen. On the other hand, the very large escape speed for Jupiter enables that planet to retain hydrogen, the primary constituent of its atmosphere.

TABLE 14.3
Escape Speeds from the Surfaces of the Planets, Moon, and Sun

Body	v_{esc} (km/s)
Mercury	4.3
Venus	10.3
Earth	11.2
Moon	2.3
Mars	5.0
Jupiter	60
Saturn	36
Uranus	22
Neptune	24
Pluto	1.1
Sun	618

Quick Quiz 14.2

If you were a space prospector and discovered gold on an asteroid, it probably would not be a good idea to jump up and down in excitement over your find. Why?

Quick Quiz 14.3

Figure 14.18 is a drawing by Newton showing the path of a stone thrown from a mountaintop. He shows the stone landing farther and farther away when thrown at higher and higher speeds (at points D, E, F, and G), until finally it is thrown all the way around the Earth. Why didn't Newton show the stone landing at B and A before it was going fast enough to complete an orbit?

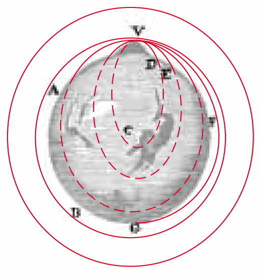


Figure 14.18 "The greater the velocity . . . with which [a stone] is projected, the farther it goes before it falls to the Earth. We may therefore suppose the velocity to be so increased, that it would describe an arc of 1, 2, 5, 10, 100, 1000 miles before it arrived at the Earth, till at last, exceeding the limits of the Earth, it should pass into space without touching." Sir Isaac Newton, *System of the World.*

Optional Section

14.9 THE GRAVITATIONAL FORCE BETWEEN AN EXTENDED OBJECT AND A PARTICLE

We have emphasized that the law of universal gravitation given by Equation 14.3 is valid only if the interacting objects are treated as particles. In view of this, how can we calculate the force between a particle and an object having finite dimensions? This is accomplished by treating the extended object as a collection of particles and making use of integral calculus. We first evaluate the potential energy function, and then calculate the gravitational force from that function.

We obtain the potential energy associated with a system consisting of a particle of mass m and an extended object of mass M by dividing the object into many elements, each having a mass ΔM_i (Fig. 14.19). The potential energy associated with the system consisting of any one element and the particle is $U = -Gm\,\Delta M_i/r_i$, where r_i is the distance from the particle to the element ΔM_i. The total potential energy of the overall system is obtained by taking the sum over all elements as $\Delta M_i \rightarrow 0$. In this limit, we can express U in integral form as

$$U = -Gm\int \frac{dM}{r} \qquad \textbf{(14.23)}$$

Once U has been evaluated, we obtain the force exerted by the extended object on the particle by taking the negative derivative of this scalar function (see Section 8.6). If the extended object has spherical symmetry, the function U depends only on r, and the force is given by $-dU/dr$. We treat this situation in Section 14.10. In principle, one can evaluate U for any geometry; however, the integration can be cumbersome.

An alternative approach to evaluating the gravitational force between a particle and an extended object is to perform a vector sum over all mass elements of the object. Using the procedure outlined in evaluating U and the law of universal gravitation in the form shown in Equation 14.3, we obtain, for the total force exerted on the particle

Total force exerted on a particle by an extended object

$$\mathbf{F}_g = -Gm\int \frac{dM}{r^2}\,\hat{\mathbf{r}} \qquad \textbf{(14.24)}$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is a unit vector directed from the element dM toward the particle (see Fig. 14.19) and the minus sign indicates that the direction of the force is opposite that of $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$. This procedure is not always recommended because working with a vector function is more difficult than working with the scalar potential energy function. However, if the geometry is simple, as in the following example, the evaluation of $\mathbf{F}$ can be straightforward.

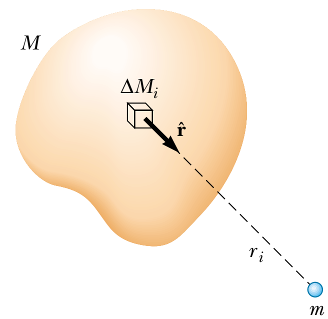


Figure 14.19 A particle of mass m interacting with an extended object of mass M. The total gravitational force exerted by the object on the particle can be obtained by dividing the object into numerous elements, each having a mass ΔM_i, and then taking a vector sum over the forces exerted by all elements.

EXAMPLE 14.9 Gravitational Force Between a Particle and a Bar

The left end of a homogeneous bar of length L and mass M is at a distance h from a particle of mass m (Fig. 14.20). Calculate the total gravitational force exerted by the bar on the particle.

Solution The arbitrary segment of the bar of length dx has a mass dM. Because the mass per unit length is constant, it follows that the ratio of masses dM/M is equal to the ratio of lengths dx/L, and so $dM = (M/L)\,dx$. In this problem, the variable r in Equation 14.24 is the distance x shown in Figure 14.20, the unit vector $\hat{\mathbf{r}}$ is $\hat{\mathbf{r}} = -\mathbf{i}$, and the force acting on the particle is to the right; therefore, Equation 14.24 gives us

$$\mathbf{F}_g = -Gm\int_h^{h+L} \frac{M\,dx}{L}\,\frac{1}{x^2}\,(-\mathbf{i}) = Gm\,\frac{M}{L}\int_h^{h+L}\frac{dx}{x^2}\,\mathbf{i}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_g = \frac{GmM}{L}\left[-\frac{1}{x}\right]_h^{h+L}\mathbf{i} = \boxed{\frac{GmM}{h(h+L)}\,\mathbf{i}}$$

We see that the force exerted on the particle is in the positive x direction, which is what we expect because the gravitational force is attractive.

Note that in the limit $L \rightarrow 0$, the force varies as $1/h^2$, which is what we expect for the force between two point masses. Furthermore, if $h \gg L$, the force also varies as $1/h^2$. This can be seen by noting that the denominator of the expression for $\mathbf{F}_g$ can be expressed in the form $h^2(1 + L/h)$, which is approximately equal to h^2 when $h \gg L$. Thus, when bodies are separated by distances that are great relative to their characteristic dimensions, they behave like particles.

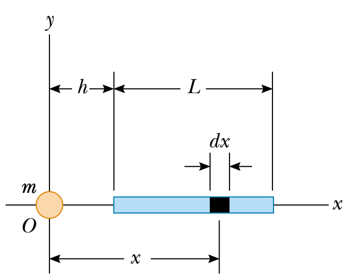


Figure 14.20 The gravitational force exerted by the bar on the particle is directed to the right. Note that the bar is *not* equivalent to a particle of mass M located at the center of mass of the bar.

Optional Section

14.10 THE GRAVITATIONAL FORCE BETWEEN A PARTICLE AND A SPHERICAL MASS

We have already stated that a large sphere attracts a particle outside it as if the total mass of the sphere were concentrated at its center. We now describe the force acting on a particle when the extended object is either a spherical shell or a solid sphere, and then apply these facts to some interesting systems.

Spherical Shell

Case 1. If a particle of mass m is located outside a spherical shell of mass M at, for instance, point P in Figure 14.21a, the shell attracts the particle as though the mass of the shell were concentrated at its center. We can show this, as Newton did, with integral calculus. Thus, as far as the gravitational force acting on a particle outside the shell is concerned, a spherical shell acts no differently from the solid spherical distributions of mass we have seen.

Case 2. If the particle is located inside the shell (at point P in Fig. 14.21b), the gravitational force acting on it can be shown to be zero.

We can express these two important results in the following way:

Force on a particle due to a spherical shell

$$\mathbf{F}_g = -\frac{GMm}{r^2}\,\hat{\mathbf{r}} \qquad \text{for } r \geq R \tag{14.25a}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_g = 0 \qquad \text{for } r < R \tag{14.25b}$$

The gravitational force as a function of the distance r is plotted in Figure 14.21c.

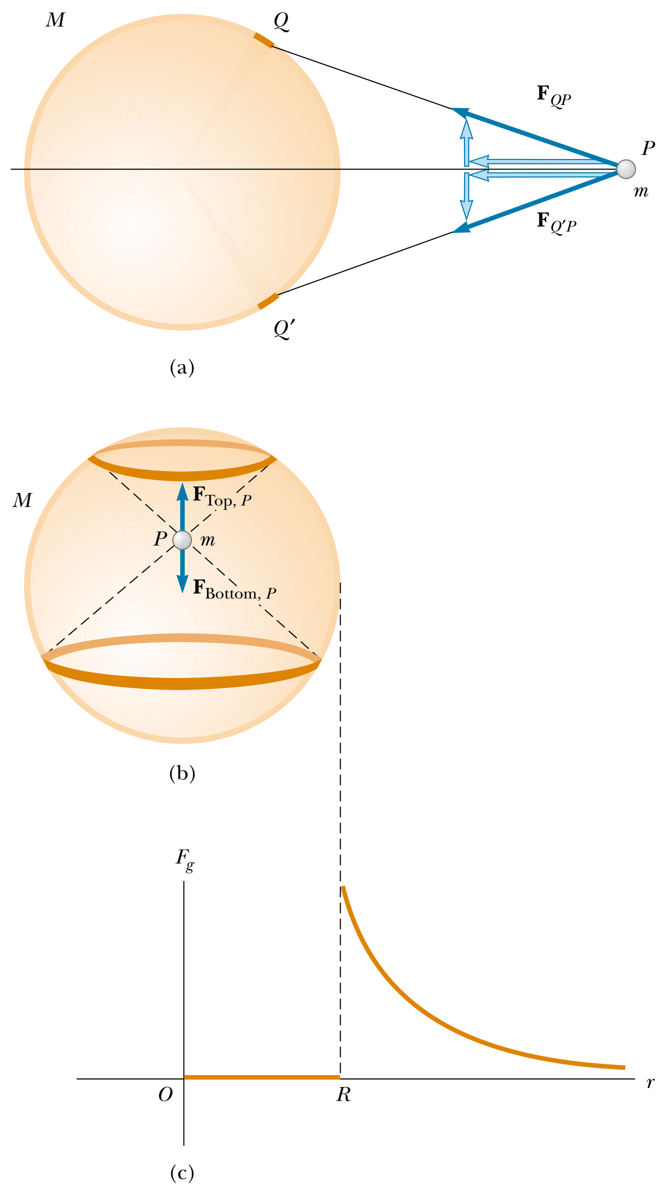


Figure 14.21 (a) The nonradial components of the gravitational forces exerted on a particle of mass m located at point P outside a spherical shell of mass M cancel out. (b) The spherical shell can be broken into rings. Even though point P is closer to the top ring than to the bottom ring, the bottom ring is larger, and the gravitational forces exerted on the particle at P by the matter in the two rings cancel each other. Thus, for a particle located at any point P inside the shell, there is no gravitational force exerted on the particle by the mass M of the shell. (c) The magnitude of the gravitational force versus the radial distance r from the center of the shell.

The shell does not act as a gravitational shield, which means that a particle inside a shell may experience forces exerted by bodies outside the shell.

Solid Sphere

Case 1. If a particle of mass m is located outside a homogeneous solid sphere of mass M (at point P in Fig. 14.22), the sphere attracts the particle as though the

mass of the sphere were concentrated at its center. We have used this notion at several places in this chapter already, and we can argue it from Equation 14.25a. A solid sphere can be considered to be a collection of concentric spherical shells. The masses of all of the shells can be interpreted as being concentrated at their common center, and the gravitational force is equivalent to that due to a particle of mass M located at that center.

Case 2. If a particle of mass m is located inside a homogeneous solid sphere of mass M (at point Q in Fig. 14.22), the gravitational force acting on it is due *only* to the mass M' contained within the sphere of radius $r < R$, shown in Figure 14.22. In other words,

Force on a particle due to a solid sphere

$$\mathbf{F}_g = -\frac{GmM}{r^2}\hat{\mathbf{r}} \qquad \text{for } r \geq R \tag{14.26a}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_g = -\frac{GmM'}{r^2}\hat{\mathbf{r}} \qquad \text{for } r < R \tag{14.26b}$$

This also follows from spherical-shell Case 1 because the part of the sphere that is

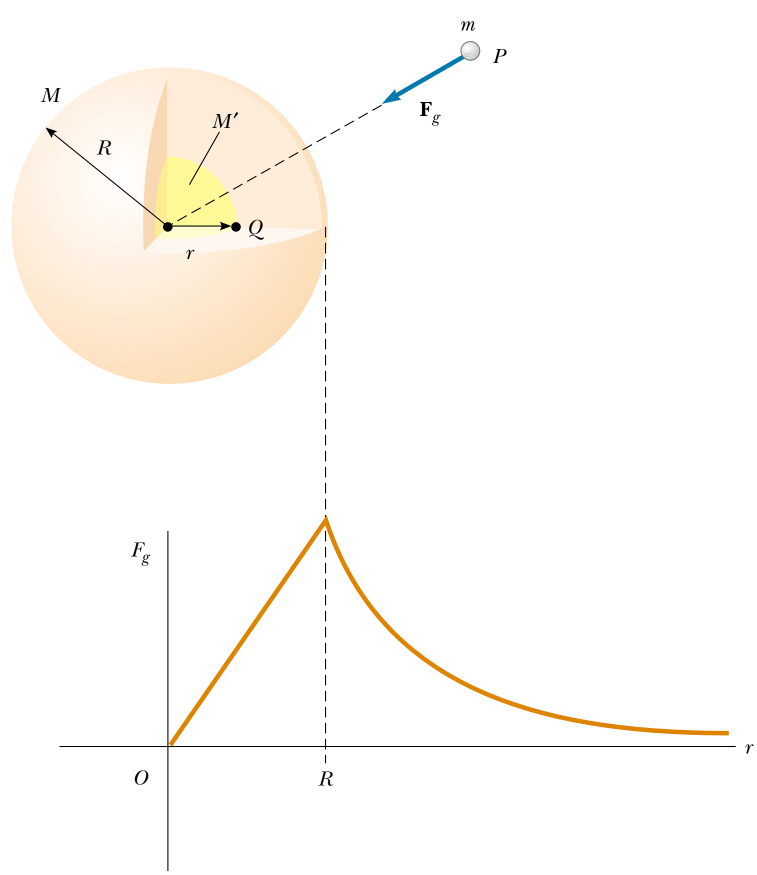


Figure 14.22 The gravitational force acting on a particle when it is outside a uniform solid sphere is GMm/r^2 and is directed toward the center of the sphere. The gravitational force acting on the particle when it is inside such a sphere is proportional to r and goes to zero at the center.

farther from the center than Q can be treated as a series of concentric spherical shells that do not exert a net force on the particle because the particle is inside them. Because the sphere is assumed to have a uniform density, it follows that the ratio of masses M'/M is equal to the ratio of volumes V'/V, where V is the total volume of the sphere and V' is the volume within the sphere of radius r only:

$$\frac{M'}{M} = \frac{V'}{V} = \frac{\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3}{\frac{4}{3}\pi R^3} = \frac{r^3}{R^3}$$

Solving this equation for M' and substituting the value obtained into Equation 14.26b, we have

$$\mathbf{F}_g = -\frac{GmM}{R^3}\, r\hat{\mathbf{r}} \qquad \text{for } r < R \tag{14.27}$$

This equation tells us that at the center of the solid sphere, where $r = 0$, the gravitational force goes to zero, as we intuitively expect. The force as a function of r is plotted in Figure 14.22.

Case 3. If a particle is located inside a solid sphere having a density ρ that is spherically symmetric but not uniform, then M' in Equation 14.26b is given by an integral of the form $M' = \int \rho\, dV$, where the integration is taken over the volume contained within the sphere of radius r in Figure 14.22. We can evaluate this integral if the radial variation of ρ is given. In this case, we take the volume element dV as the volume of a spherical shell of radius r and thickness dr, and thus $dV = 4\pi r^2\, dr$. For example, if $\rho = Ar$, where A is a constant, it is left to a problem (Problem 63) to show that $M' = \pi A r^4$. Hence, we see from Equation 14.26b that F is proportional to r^2 in this case and is zero at the center.

Quick Quiz 14.4

A particle is projected through a small hole into the interior of a spherical shell. Describe

EXAMPLE 14.10 A Free Ride, Thanks to Gravity

An object of mass m moves in a smooth, straight tunnel dug between two points on the Earth's surface (Fig. 14.23). Show that the object moves with simple harmonic motion, and find the period of its motion. Assume that the Earth's density is uniform.

Solution The gravitational force exerted on the object acts toward the Earth's center and is given by Equation 14.27:

$$\mathbf{F}_g = -\frac{GmM}{R^3}\, r\hat{\mathbf{r}}$$

We receive our first indication that this force should result in simple harmonic motion by comparing it to Hooke's law, first seen in Section 7.3. Because the gravitational force on the object is linearly proportional to the displacement, the object experiences a Hooke's law force.

The y component of the gravitational force on the object is balanced by the normal force exerted by the tunnel wall, and the x component is

$$F_x = -\frac{GmM_E}{R_E^{\,3}}\, r\cos\theta$$

Because the x coordinate of the object is $x = r\cos\theta$, we can write

$$F_x = -\frac{GmM_E}{R_E^{\,3}}\, x$$

Applying Newton's second law to the motion along the x direction gives

$$F_x = -\frac{GmM_E}{R_E^{\,3}}\, x = ma_x$$

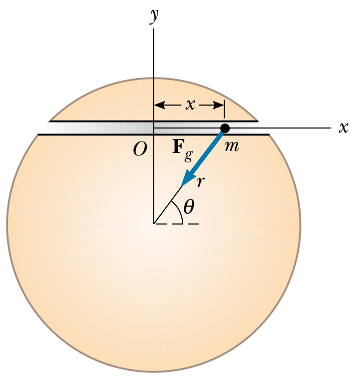


Figure 14.23 An object moves along a tunnel dug through the Earth. The component of the gravitational force $\mathbf{F}_g$ along the x axis is the driving force for the motion. Note that this component always acts toward O.

Solving for a_x, we obtain

$$a_x = -\frac{GM_E}{R_E^{\,3}}\,x$$

If we use the symbol ω^2 for the coefficient of x—$GM_E/R_E^{\,3} = \omega^2$— we see that

$$(1) \qquad a_x = -\omega^2 x$$

an expression that matches the mathematical form of Equation 13.9, which gives the acceleration of a particle in simple harmonic motion: $a_x = -\omega^2 x$. Therefore, Equation (1), which we have derived for the acceleration of our object in the tunnel, is the acceleration equation for simple harmonic motion at angular speed ω with

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{GM_E}{R_E^{\,3}}}$$

Thus, the object in the tunnel moves in the same way as a block hanging from a spring! The period of oscillation is

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{R_E^{\,3}}{GM_E}}$$

$$= 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{(6.37 \times 10^6\ \text{m})^3}{(6.67 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2)(5.98 \times 10^{24}\ \text{kg})}}$$

$$= 5.06 \times 10^3\ \text{s} = \boxed{84.3\ \text{min}}$$

This period is the same as that of a satellite traveling in a circular orbit just above the Earth's surface (ignoring any trees, buildings, or other objects in the way). Note that the result is independent of the length of the tunnel.

A proposal has been made to operate a mass-transit system between any two cities, using the principle described in this example. A one-way trip would take about 42 min. A more precise calculation of the motion must account for the fact that the Earth's density is not uniform. More important, there are many practical problems to consider. For instance, it would be impossible to achieve a frictionless tunnel, and so some auxiliary power source would be required. Can you think of other problems?

the motion of the particle inside the shell.

SUMMARY

Newton's law of universal gravitation states that the gravitational force of attraction between any two particles of masses m_1 and m_2 separated by a distance r has the magnitude

$$F_g = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2} \qquad \textbf{(14.1)}$$

where $G = 6.673 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{kg}^2$ is the universal gravitational constant. This equation enables us to calculate the force of attraction between masses under a wide variety of circumstances.

An object at a distance h above the Earth's surface experiences a gravitational force of magnitude mg', where g' is the free-fall acceleration at that elevation:

$$g' = \frac{GM_E}{r^2} = \frac{GM_E}{(R_E + h)^2} \qquad \textbf{(14.6)}$$

In this expression, M_E is the mass of the Earth and R_E is its radius. Thus, the weight of an object decreases as the object moves away from the Earth's surface.

Kepler's laws of planetary motion state that

1. All planets move in elliptical orbits with the Sun at one focal point.
2. The radius vector drawn from the Sun to a planet sweeps out equal areas in equal time intervals.
3. The square of the orbital period of any planet is proportional to the cube of the semimajor axis of the elliptical orbit.

Kepler's third law can be expressed as

$$T^2 = \left(\frac{4\pi^2}{GM_S}\right)r^3 \quad \textbf{(14.7)}$$

where M_S is the mass of the Sun and r is the orbital radius. For elliptical orbits, Equation 14.7 is valid if r is replaced by the semimajor axis a. Most planets have nearly circular orbits around the Sun.

The **gravitational field** at a point in space equals the gravitational force experienced by any test particle located at that point divided by the mass of the test particle:

$$\mathbf{g} = \frac{\mathbf{F}_g}{m} \quad \textbf{(14.10)}$$

The gravitational force is conservative, and therefore a potential energy function can be defined. The **gravitational potential energy** associated with two particles separated by a distance r is

$$U = -\frac{Gm_1m_2}{r} \quad \textbf{(14.15)}$$

where U is taken to be zero as $r \rightarrow \infty$. The total potential energy for a system of particles is the sum of energies for all pairs of particles, with each pair represented by a term of the form given by Equation 14.15.

If an isolated system consists of a particle of mass m moving with a speed v in the vicinity of a massive body of mass M, the total energy E of the system is the sum of the kinetic and potential energies:

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 - \frac{GMm}{r} \quad \textbf{(14.17)}$$

The total energy is a constant of the motion. If the particle moves in a circular orbit of radius r around the massive body and if $M \gg m$, the total energy of the system is

$$E = -\frac{GMm}{2r} \quad \textbf{(14.19)}$$

The total energy is negative for any bound system.

The **escape speed** for an object projected from the surface of the Earth is

$$v_{\text{esc}} = \sqrt{\frac{2GM_E}{R_E}} \quad \textbf{(14.22)}$$

QUESTIONS

1. Use Kepler's second law to convince yourself that the Earth must move faster in its orbit during December, when it is closest to the Sun, than during June, when it is farthest from the Sun.
2. The gravitational force that the Sun exerts on the Moon is about twice as great as the gravitational force that the Earth exerts on the Moon. Why doesn't the Sun pull the Moon away from the Earth during a total eclipse of the Sun?
3. If a system consists of five particles, how many terms appear in the expression for the total potential energy? How many terms appear if the system consists of *N* particles?
4. Is it possible to calculate the potential energy function associated with a particle and an extended body without knowing the geometry or mass distribution of the extended body?
5. Does the escape speed of a rocket depend on its mass? Explain.
6. Compare the energies required to reach the Moon for a 10^5-kg spacecraft and a 10^3-kg satellite.
7. Explain why it takes more fuel for a spacecraft to travel from the Earth to the Moon than for the return trip. Estimate the difference.
8. Why don't we put a geosynchronous weather satellite in orbit around the 45th parallel? Wouldn't this be more useful for the United States than such a satellite in orbit around the equator?
9. Is the potential energy associated with the Earth–Moon system greater than, less than, or equal to the kinetic energy of the Moon relative to the Earth?
10. Explain why no work is done on a planet as it moves in a circular orbit around the Sun, even though a gravitational force is acting on the planet. What is the net work done on a planet during each revolution as it moves around the Sun in an elliptical orbit?
11. Explain why the force exerted on a particle by a uniform sphere must be directed toward the center of the sphere. Would this be the case if the mass distribution of the sphere were not spherically symmetric?
12. Neglecting the density variation of the Earth, what would be the period of a particle moving in a smooth hole dug between opposite points on the Earth's surface, passing through its center?
13. At what position in its elliptical orbit is the speed of a planet a maximum? At what position is the speed a minimum?
14. If you were given the mass and radius of planet X, how would you calculate the free-fall acceleration on the surface of this planet?
15. If a hole could be dug to the center of the Earth, do you think that the force on a mass m would still obey Equation 14.1 there? What do you think the force on m would be at the center of the Earth?
16. In his 1798 experiment, Cavendish was said to have "weighed the Earth." Explain this statement.
17. The gravitational force exerted on the *Voyager* spacecraft by Jupiter accelerated it toward escape speed from the Sun. How is this possible?
18. How would you find the mass of the Moon?
19. The *Apollo 13* spaceship developed trouble in the oxygen system about halfway to the Moon. Why did the spaceship continue on around the Moon and then return home, rather than immediately turn back to Earth?

PROBLEMS

1, 2, 3 = straightforward, intermediate, challenging ☐ = full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide*
WEB = solution posted at **http://www.saunderscollege.com/physics/** = Computer useful in solving problem = Interactive Physics
☐ = paired numerical/symbolic problems

Section 14.1 Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation
Section 14.2 Measuring the Gravitational Constant
Section 14.3 Free-Fall Acceleration and the Gravitational Force

1. Determine the order of magnitude of the gravitational force that you exert on another person 2 m away. In your solution, state the quantities that you measure or estimate and their values.
2. A 200-kg mass and a 500-kg mass are separated by 0.400 m. (a) Find the net gravitational force exerted by these masses on a 50.0-kg mass placed midway between them. (b) At what position (other than infinitely remote ones) can the 50.0-kg mass be placed so as to experience a net force of zero?
3. Three equal masses are located at three corners of a square of edge length ℓ, as shown in Figure P14.3. Find the gravitational field **g** at the fourth corner due to these masses.
4. Two objects attract each other with a gravitational force of magnitude 1.00×10^{-8} N when separated by 20.0 cm. If the total mass of the two objects is 5.00 kg, what is the mass of each?
5. Three uniform spheres of masses 2.00 kg, 4.00 kg, and 6.00 kg are placed at the corners of a right triangle, as illustrated in Figure P14.5. Calculate the resultant gravi-

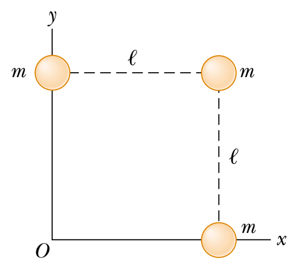


Figure P14.3

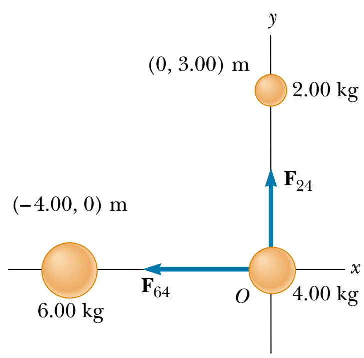


Figure P14.5

tational force on the 4.00-kg mass, assuming that the spheres are isolated from the rest of the Universe.

6. The free-fall acceleration on the surface of the Moon is about one-sixth that on the surface of the Earth. If the radius of the Moon is about $0.250R_E$, find the ratio of their average densities, $\rho_{\text{Moon}}/\rho_{\text{Earth}}$.

7. During a solar eclipse, the Moon, Earth, and Sun all lie on the same line, with the Moon between the Earth and the Sun. (a) What force is exerted by the Sun on the Moon? (b) What force is exerted by the Earth on the Moon? (c) What force is exerted by the Sun on the Earth?

8. The center-to-center distance between the Earth and the Moon is 384 400 km. The Moon completes an orbit in 27.3 days. (a) Determine the Moon's orbital speed. (b) If gravity were switched off, the Moon would move along a straight line tangent to its orbit, as described by Newton's first law. In its actual orbit in 1.00 s, how far does the Moon fall below the tangent line and toward the Earth?

WEB **9.** When a falling meteoroid is at a distance above the Earth's surface of 3.00 times the Earth's radius, what is its acceleration due to the Earth's gravity?

10. Two ocean liners, each with a mass of 40 000 metric tons, are moving on parallel courses, 100 m apart. What is the magnitude of the acceleration of one of the liners toward the other due to their mutual gravitational attraction? (Treat the ships as point masses.)

11. A student proposes to measure the gravitational constant G by suspending two spherical masses from the ceiling of a tall cathedral and measuring the deflection of the cables from the vertical. Draw a free-body diagram of one of the masses. If two 100.0-kg masses are suspended at the end of 45.00-m-long cables, and the cables are attached to the ceiling 1.000 m apart, what is the separation of the masses?

12. On the way to the Moon, the Apollo astronauts reached a point where the Moon's gravitational pull became stronger than the Earth's. (a) Determine the distance of this point from the center of the Earth. (b) What is the acceleration due to the Earth's gravity at this point?

Section 14.4 Kepler's Laws

Section 14.5 The Law of Gravity and the Motion of Planets

13. A particle of mass m moves along a straight line with constant speed in the x direction, a distance b from the x axis (Fig. P14.13). Show that Kepler's second law is satisfied by demonstrating that the two shaded triangles in the figure have the same area when $t_4 - t_3 = t_2 - t_1$.

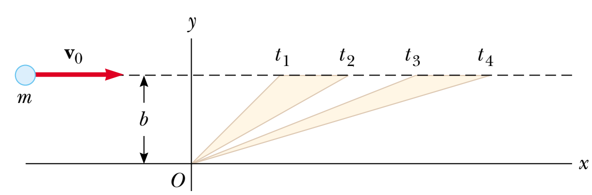


Figure P14.13

14. A communications satellite in geosynchronous orbit remains above a single point on the Earth's equator as the planet rotates on its axis. (a) Calculate the radius of its orbit. (b) The satellite relays a radio signal from a transmitter near the north pole to a receiver, also near the north pole. Traveling at the speed of light, how long is the radio wave in transit?

15. Plaskett's binary system consists of two stars that revolve in a circular orbit about a center of mass midway between them. This means that the masses of the two stars are equal (Fig. P14.15). If the orbital velocity of each star is 220 km/s and the orbital period of each is 14.4 days, find the mass M of each star. (For comparison, the mass of our Sun is 1.99×10^{30} kg.)

16. Plaskett's binary system consists of two stars that revolve in a circular orbit about a center of gravity midway between them. This means that the masses of the two stars are equal (see Fig. P14.15). If the orbital speed of each star is v and the orbital period of each is T, find the mass M of each star.

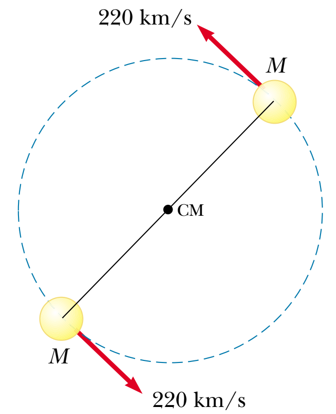


Figure P14.15 Problems 15 and 16.

17. The *Explorer VIII* satellite, placed into orbit November 3, 1960, to investigate the ionosphere, had the following orbit parameters: perigee, 459 km; apogee, 2 289 km (both distances above the Earth's surface); and period, 112.7 min. Find the ratio v_p/v_a of the speed at perigee to that at apogee.

18. Comet Halley (Fig. P14.18) approaches the Sun to within 0.570 AU, and its orbital period is 75.6 years (AU is the symbol for astronomical unit, where 1 AU = 1.50×10^{11} m is the mean Earth–Sun distance). How far from the Sun will Halley's comet travel before it starts its return journey?

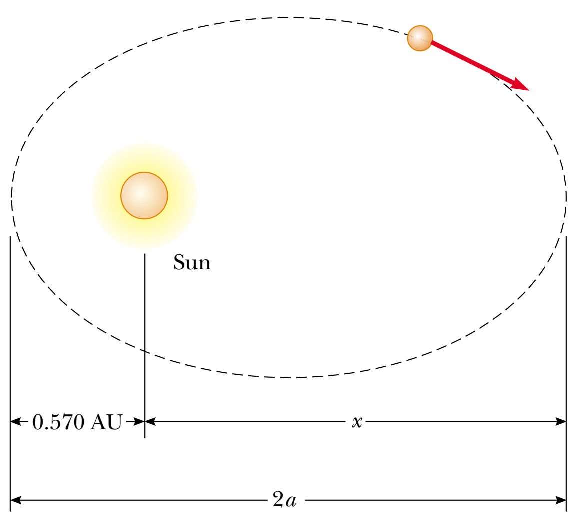


Figure P14.18

WEB **19.** Io, a satellite of Jupiter, has an orbital period of 1.77 days and an orbital radius of 4.22×10^5 km. From these data, determine the mass of Jupiter.

20. Two planets, X and Y, travel counterclockwise in circular orbits about a star, as shown in Figure P14.20. The radii of their orbits are in the ratio 3:1. At some time, they are aligned as in Figure P14.20a, making a straight line with the star. During the next five years, the angular displacement of planet X is 90.0°, as shown in Figure P14.20b. Where is planet Y at this time?

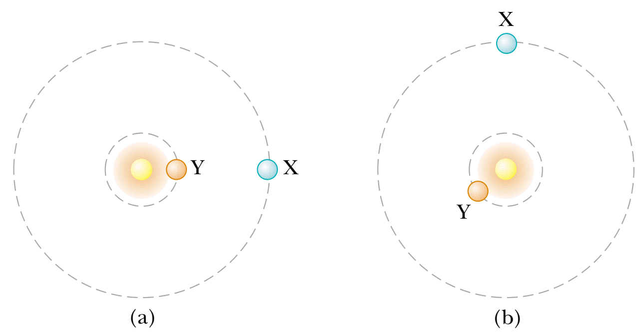


Figure P14.20

21. A synchronous satellite, which always remains above the same point on a planet's equator, is put in orbit around Jupiter so that scientists can study the famous red spot. Jupiter rotates once every 9.84 h. Use the data in Table 14.2 to find the altitude of the satellite.

22. Neutron stars are extremely dense objects that are formed from the remnants of supernova explosions. Many rotate very rapidly. Suppose that the mass of a certain spherical neutron star is twice the mass of the Sun and that its radius is 10.0 km. Determine the greatest possible angular speed it can have for the matter at the surface of the star on its equator to be just held in orbit by the gravitational force.

23. The Solar and Heliospheric Observatory (SOHO) spacecraft has a special orbit, chosen so that its view of the Sun is never eclipsed and it is always close enough to the Earth to transmit data easily. It moves in a near-circle around the Sun that is smaller than the Earth's circular orbit. Its period, however, is not less than 1 yr but is just equal to 1 yr. It is always located between the Earth and the Sun along the line joining them. Both objects exert gravitational forces on the observatory. Show that the spacecraft's distance from the Earth must be between 1.47×10^9 m and 1.48×10^9 m. In 1772 Joseph Louis Lagrange determined theoretically the special location that allows this orbit. The SOHO spacecraft took this position on February 14, 1996. (*Hint:* Use data that are precise to four digits. The mass of the Earth is 5.983×10^{24} kg.)

Section 14.6 The Gravitational Field

24. A spacecraft in the shape of a long cylinder has a length of 100 m, and its mass with occupants is 1 000 kg. It has

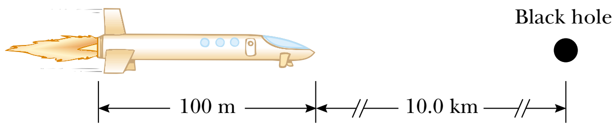


Figure P14.24

strayed too close to a 1.0-m-radius black hole having a mass 100 times that of the Sun (Fig. P14.24). The nose of the spacecraft is pointing toward the center of the black hole, and the distance between the nose and the black hole is 10.0 km. (a) Determine the total force on the spacecraft. (b) What is the difference in the gravitational fields acting on the occupants in the nose of the ship and on those in the rear of the ship, farthest from the black hole?

25. Compute the magnitude and direction of the gravitational field at a point P on the perpendicular bisector of two equal masses separated by a distance $2a$, as shown in Figure P14.25.

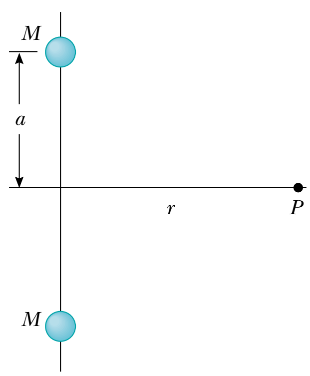


Figure P14.25

26. Find the gravitational field at a distance r along the axis of a thin ring of mass M and radius a.

Section 14.7 Gravitational Potential Energy

Note: Assume that $U = 0$ as $r \rightarrow \infty$.

27. A satellite of the Earth has a mass of 100 kg and is at an altitude of 2.00×10^6 m. (a) What is the potential energy of the satellite–Earth system? (b) What is the magnitude of the gravitational force exerted by the Earth on the satellite? (c) What force does the satellite exert on the Earth?
28. How much energy is required to move a 1 000-kg mass from the Earth's surface to an altitude twice the Earth's radius?
29. After our Sun exhausts its nuclear fuel, its ultimate fate may be to collapse to a *white-dwarf* state, in which it has approximately the same mass it has now but a radius equal to the radius of the Earth. Calculate (a) the average density of the white dwarf, (b) the acceleration due to gravity at its surface, and (c) the gravitational potential energy associated with a 1.00-kg object at its surface.
30. At the Earth's surface a projectile is launched straight up at a speed of 10.0 km/s. To what height will it rise? Ignore air resistance.
31. A system consists of three particles, each of mass 5.00 g, located at the corners of an equilateral triangle with sides of 30.0 cm. (a) Calculate the potential energy of the system. (b) If the particles are released simultaneously, where will they collide?
32. How much work is done by the Moon's gravitational field as a 1 000-kg meteor comes in from outer space and impacts the Moon's surface?

Section 14.8 Energy Considerations in Planetary and Satellite Motion

33. A 500-kg satellite is in a circular orbit at an altitude of 500 km above the Earth's surface. Because of air friction, the satellite is eventually brought to the Earth's surface, and it hits the Earth with a speed of 2.00 km/s. How much energy was transformed to internal energy by means of friction?
34. (a) What is the minimum speed, relative to the Sun, that is necessary for a spacecraft to escape the Solar System if it starts at the Earth's orbit? (b) *Voyager 1* achieved a maximum speed of 125 000 km/h on its way to photograph Jupiter. Beyond what distance from the Sun is this speed sufficient for a spacecraft to escape the Solar System?
35. A satellite with a mass of 200 kg is placed in Earth orbit at a height of 200 km above the surface. (a) Assuming a circular orbit, how long does the satellite take to complete one orbit? (b) What is the satellite's speed? (c) What is the minimum energy necessary to place this satellite in orbit (assuming no air friction)?
36. A satellite of mass m is placed in Earth orbit at an altitude h. (a) Assuming a circular orbit, how long does the satellite take to complete one orbit? (b) What is the satellite's speed? (c) What is the minimum energy necessary to place this satellite in orbit (assuming no air friction)?

WEB 37. A spaceship is fired from the Earth's surface with an initial speed of 2.00×10^4 m/s. What will its speed be when it is very far from the Earth? (Neglect friction.)
38. A 1 000-kg satellite orbits the Earth at a constant altitude of 100 km. How much energy must be added to the system to move the satellite into a circular orbit at an altitude of 200 km?
39. A "treetop satellite" moves in a circular orbit just above the surface of a planet, which is assumed to offer no air resistance. Show that its orbital speed v and the escape speed from the planet are related by the expression $v_{esc} = \sqrt{2}v$.
40. The planet Uranus has a mass about 14 times the Earth's mass, and its radius is equal to about 3.7 Earth

radii. (a) By setting up ratios with the corresponding Earth values, find the acceleration due to gravity at the cloud tops of Uranus. (b) Ignoring the rotation of the planet, find the minimum escape speed from Uranus.

41. Determine the escape velocity for a rocket on the far side of Ganymede, the largest of Jupiter's moons. The radius of Ganymede is 2.64×10^6 m, and its mass is 1.495×10^{23} kg. The mass of Jupiter is 1.90×10^{27} kg, and the distance between Jupiter and Ganymede is 1.071×10^9 m. Be sure to include the gravitational effect due to Jupiter, but you may ignore the motions of Jupiter and Ganymede as they revolve about their center of mass (Fig. P14.41).

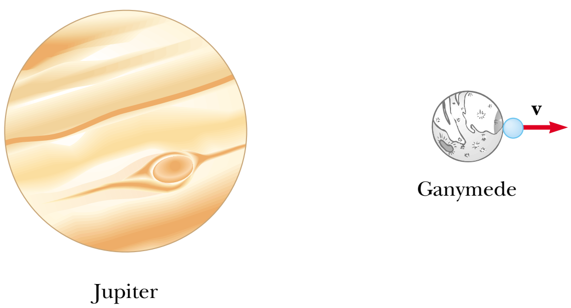


Figure P14.41

42. In Robert Heinlein's *The Moon is a Harsh Mistress,* the colonial inhabitants of the Moon threaten to launch rocks down onto the Earth if they are not given independence (or at least representation). Assuming that a rail gun could launch a rock of mass m at twice the lunar escape speed, calculate the speed of the rock as it enters the Earth's atmosphere. (By *lunar escape speed* we mean the speed required to escape entirely from a stationary Moon alone in the Universe.)

43. Derive an expression for the work required to move an Earth satellite of mass m from a circular orbit of radius $2R_E$ to one of radius $3R_E$.

(Optional)
Section 14.9 The Gravitational Force Between an Extended Object and a Particle

44. Consider two identical uniform rods of length L and mass m lying along the same line and having their closest points separated by a distance d (Fig. P14.44). Show that the mutual gravitational force between these rods has a magnitude

$$F = \frac{Gm^2}{L^2} \ln\left(\frac{(L+d)^2}{d(2L+d)}\right)$$

45. A uniform rod of mass M is in the shape of a semicircle of radius R (Fig. P14.45). Calculate the force on a point mass m placed at the center of the semicircle.

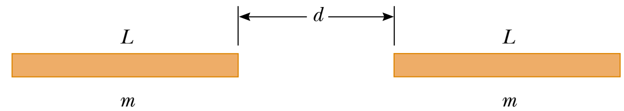


Figure P14.44

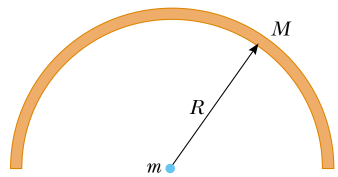


Figure P14.45

(Optional)
Section 14.10 The Gravitational Force Between a Particle and a Spherical Mass

46. (a) Show that the period calculated in Example 14.10 can be written as

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{R_E}{g}}$$

where g is the free-fall acceleration on the surface of the Earth. (b) What would this period be if tunnels were made through the Moon? (c) What practical problem regarding these tunnels on Earth would be removed if they were built on the Moon?

47. A 500-kg uniform solid sphere has a radius of 0.400 m. Find the magnitude of the gravitational force exerted by the sphere on a 50.0-g particle located (a) 1.50 m from the center of the sphere, (b) at the surface of the sphere, and (c) 0.200 m from the center of the sphere.

48. A uniform solid sphere of mass m_1 and radius R_1 is inside and concentric with a spherical shell of mass m_2 and radius R_2 (Fig. P14.48). Find the gravitational force exerted by the spheres on a particle of mass m located at (a) $r = a$, (b) $r = b$, and (c) $r = c$, where r is measured from the center of the spheres.

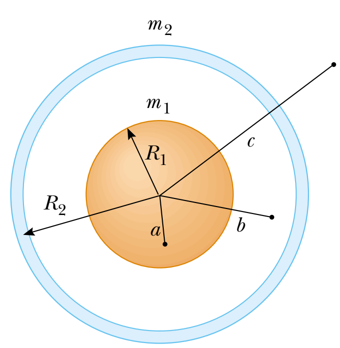


Figure P14.48

ADDITIONAL PROBLEMS

49. Let Δg_M represent the difference in the gravitational fields produced by the Moon at the points on the Earth's surface nearest to and farthest from the Moon. Find the fraction $\Delta g_M/g$, where g is the Earth's gravitational field. (This difference is responsible for the occurrence of the *lunar tides* on the Earth.)

50. Two spheres having masses M and $2M$ and radii R and $3R$, respectively, are released from rest when the distance between their centers is $12R$. How fast will each sphere be moving when they collide? Assume that the two spheres interact only with each other.

51. In Larry Niven's science-fiction novel *Ringworld,* a rigid ring of material rotates about a star (Fig. P14.51). The rotational speed of the ring is 1.25×10^6 m/s, and its radius is 1.53×10^{11} m. (a) Show that the centripetal acceleration of the inhabitants is 10.2 m/s^2. (b) The inhabitants of this ring world experience a normal contact force **n**. Acting alone, this normal force would produce an inward acceleration of 9.90 m/s^2. Additionally, the star at the center of the ring exerts a gravitational force on the ring and its inhabitants. The difference between the total acceleration and the acceleration provided by the normal force is due to the gravitational attraction of the central star. Show that the mass of the star is approximately 10^{32} kg.

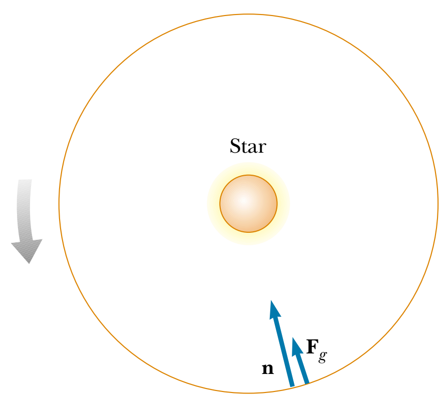


Figure P14.51

52. (a) Show that the rate of change of the free-fall acceleration with distance above the Earth's surface is

$$\frac{dg}{dr} = -\frac{2GM_E}{R_E^{\,3}}$$

This rate of change over distance is called a *gradient.* (b) If h is small compared to the radius of the Earth, show that the difference in free-fall acceleration between two points separated by vertical distance h is

$$|\Delta g| = \frac{2GM_E h}{R_E^{\,3}}$$

(c) Evaluate this difference for $h = 6.00$ m, a typical height for a two-story building.

$\boxed{53.}$ A particle of mass m is located inside a uniform solid sphere of radius R and mass M, at a distance r from its center. (a) Show that the gravitational potential energy of the system is $U = (GmM/2R^3)r^2 - 3GmM/2R$. (b) Write an expression for the amount of work done by the gravitational force in bringing the particle from the surface of the sphere to its center.

54. *Voyagers 1* and *2* surveyed the surface of Jupiter's moon Io and photographed active volcanoes spewing liquid sulfur to heights of 70 km above the surface of this moon. Find the speed with which the liquid sulfur left the volcano. Io's mass is 8.9×10^{22} kg, and its radius is 1 820 km.

55. As an astronaut, you observe a small planet to be spherical. After landing on the planet, you set off, walking always straight ahead, and find yourself returning to your spacecraft from the opposite side after completing a lap of 25.0 km. You hold a hammer and a falcon feather at a height of 1.40 m, release them, and observe that they fall together to the surface in 29.2 s. Determine the mass of the planet.

56. A cylindrical habitat in space, 6.00 km in diameter and 30 km long, was proposed by G. K. O'Neill in 1974. Such a habitat would have cities, land, and lakes on the inside surface and air and clouds in the center. All of these would be held in place by the rotation of the cylinder about its long axis. How fast would the cylinder have to rotate to imitate the Earth's gravitational field at the walls of the cylinder?

WEB $\boxed{57.}$ In introductory physics laboratories, a typical Cavendish balance for measuring the gravitational constant G uses lead spheres with masses of 1.50 kg and 15.0 g whose centers are separated by about 4.50 cm. Calculate the gravitational force between these spheres, treating each as a point mass located at the center of the sphere.

58. Newton's law of universal gravitation is valid for distances covering an enormous range, but it is thought to fail for very small distances, where the structure of space itself is uncertain. The crossover distance, far less than the diameter of an atomic nucleus, is called the *Planck length.* It is determined by a combination of the constants G, c, and h, where c is the speed of light in vacuum and h is Planck's constant (introduced briefly in Chapter 11 and discussed in greater detail in Chapter 40) with units of angular momentum. (a) Use dimensional analysis to find a combination of these three universal constants that has units of length. (b) Determine the order of magnitude of the Planck length. (*Hint:* You will need to consider noninteger powers of the constants.)

59. Show that the escape speed from the surface of a planet of uniform density is directly proportional to the radius of the planet.

60. (a) Suppose that the Earth (or another object) has density $\rho(r)$, which can vary with radius but is spherically

symmetric. Show that at any particular radius r inside the Earth, the gravitational field strength $g(r)$ will increase as r increases, if and only if the density there exceeds 2/3 the average density of the portion of the Earth inside the radius r. (b) The Earth as a whole has an average density of 5.5 g/cm^3, while the density at the surface is 1.0 g/cm^3 on the oceans and about 3 g/cm^3 on land. What can you infer from this?

WEB **61.** Two hypothetical planets of masses m_1 and m_2 and radii r_1 and r_2, respectively, are nearly at rest when they are an infinite distance apart. Because of their gravitational attraction, they head toward each other on a collision course. (a) When their center-to-center separation is d, find expressions for the speed of each planet and their *relative* velocity. (b) Find the kinetic energy of each planet *just* before they collide, if $m_1 = 2.00 \times 10^{24}$ kg, $m_2 = 8.00 \times 10^{24}$ kg, $r_1 = 3.00 \times 10^6$ m, and $r_2 = 5.00 \times 10^6$ m. (*Hint:* Both energy and momentum are conserved.)

62. The maximum distance from the Earth to the Sun (at our aphelion) is 1.521×10^{11} m, and the distance of closest approach (at perihelion) is 1.471×10^{11} m. If the Earth's orbital speed at perihelion is 30.27 km/s, determine (a) the Earth's orbital speed at aphelion, (b) the kinetic and potential energies at perihelion, and (c) the kinetic and potential energies at aphelion. Is the total energy constant? (Neglect the effect of the Moon and other planets.)

63. A sphere of mass M and radius R has a nonuniform density that varies with r, the distance from its center, according to the expression $\rho = Ar$, for $0 \le r \le R$. (a) What is the constant A in terms of M and R? (b) Determine an expression for the force exerted on a particle of mass m placed outside the sphere. (c) Determine an expression for the force exerted on the particle if it is inside the sphere. (*Hint:* See Section 14.10 and note that the distribution is spherically symmetric.)

64. (a) Determine the amount of work (in joules) that must be done on a 100-kg payload to elevate it to a height of 1 000 km above the Earth's surface. (b) Determine the amount of additional work that is required to put the payload into circular orbit at this elevation.

65. X-ray pulses from Cygnus X-1, a celestial x-ray source, have been recorded during high-altitude rocket flights. The signals can be interpreted as originating when a blob of ionized matter orbits a black hole with a period of 5.0 ms. If the blob is in a circular orbit about a black hole whose mass is $20 M_{\text{Sun}}$, what is the orbital radius?

66. Studies of the relationship of the Sun to its galaxy—the Milky Way—have revealed that the Sun is located near the outer edge of the galactic disk, about 30 000 lightyears from the center. Furthermore, it has been found that the Sun has an orbital speed of approximately 250 km/s around the galactic center. (a) What is the period of the Sun's galactic motion? (b) What is the order of magnitude of the mass of the Milky Way galaxy? Suppose that the galaxy is made mostly of stars, of which the Sun is typical. What is the order of magnitude of the number of stars in the Milky Way?

67. The oldest artificial satellite in orbit is *Vanguard I,* launched March 3, 1958. Its mass is 1.60 kg. In its initial orbit, its minimum distance from the center of the Earth was 7.02 Mm, and its speed at this perigee point was 8.23 km/s. (a) Find its total energy. (b) Find the magnitude of its angular momentum. (c) Find its speed at apogee and its maximum (apogee) distance from the center of the Earth. (d) Find the semimajor axis of its orbit. (e) Determine its period.

68. A rocket is given an initial speed vertically upward of $v_i = 2\sqrt{Rg}$ at the surface of the Earth, which has radius R and surface free-fall acceleration g. The rocket motors are quickly cut off, and thereafter the rocket coasts under the action of gravitational forces only. (Ignore atmospheric friction and the Earth's rotation.) Derive an expression for the subsequent speed v as a function of the distance r from the center of the Earth in terms of g, R, and r.

69. Two stars of masses M and m, separated by a distance d, revolve in circular orbits about their center of mass (Fig. P14.69). Show that each star has a period given by

$$T^2 = \frac{4\pi^2 d^3}{G(M + m)}$$

(*Hint:* Apply Newton's second law to each star, and note that the center-of-mass condition requires that $Mr_2 = mr_1$, where $r_1 + r_2 = d$.)

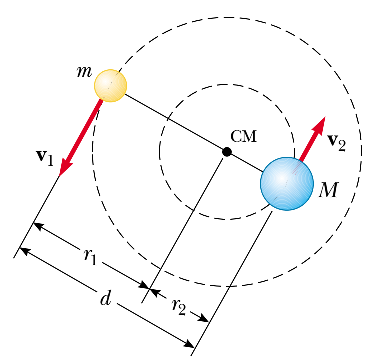


Figure P14.69

70. (a) A 5.00-kg mass is released 1.20×10^7 m from the center of the Earth. It moves with what acceleration relative to the Earth? (b) A 2.00×10^{24} kg mass is released 1.20×10^7 m from the center of the Earth. It moves with what acceleration relative to the Earth? Assume that the objects behave as pairs of particles, isolated from the rest of the Universe.

71. The acceleration of an object moving in the gravitational field of the Earth is

$$\mathbf{a} = -\frac{GM_E}{r^3}\mathbf{r}$$

where $\mathbf{r}$ is the position vector directed from the center of the Earth to the object. Choosing the origin at the center of the Earth and assuming that the small object is moving in the xy plane, we find that the rectangular (cartesian) components of its acceleration are

$$a_x = -\frac{GM_E x}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}} \qquad a_y = -\frac{GM_E y}{(x^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}$$

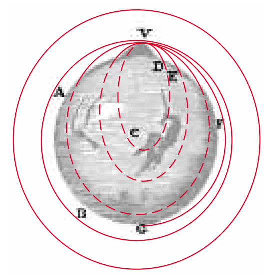
Use a computer to set up and carry out a numerical prediction of the motion of the object, according to Euler's method. Assume that the initial position of the object is $x = 0$ and $y = 2R_E$, where R_E is the radius of the Earth. Give the object an initial velocity of 5 000 m/s in the x direction. The time increment should be made as small as practical. Try 5 s. Plot the x and y coordinates of the object as time goes on. Does the object hit the Earth? Vary the initial velocity until you find a circular orbit.

ANSWERS TO QUICK QUIZZES

14.1 Kepler's third law (Eq. 14.7), which applies to all the planets, tells us that the period of a planet is proportional to $r^{3/2}$. Because Saturn and Jupiter are farther from the Sun than the Earth is, they have longer periods. The Sun's gravitational field is much weaker at Saturn and Jupiter than it is at the Earth. Thus, these planets experience much less centripetal acceleration than the Earth does, and they have correspondingly longer periods.

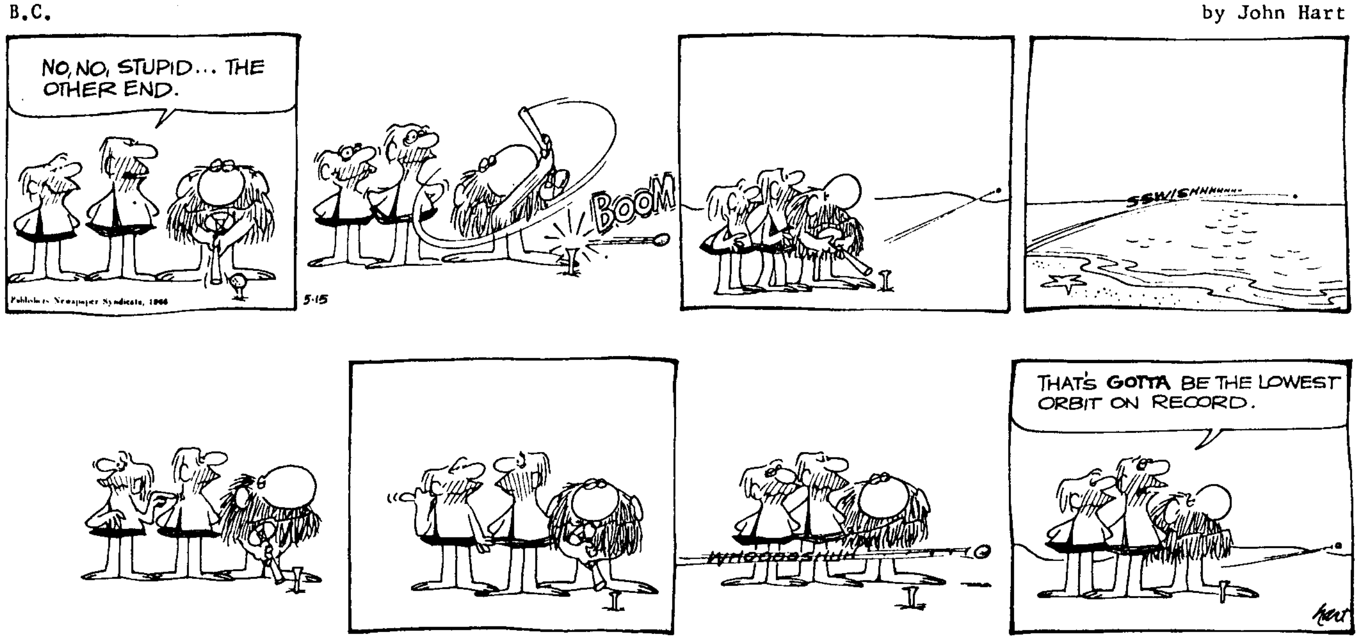
14.2 The mass of the asteroid might be so small that you would be able to exceed escape velocity by leg power alone. You would jump up, but you would never come back down!

14.3 Kepler's first law applies not only to planets orbiting the Sun but also to any relatively small object orbiting another under the influence of gravity. Any elliptical path that does not touch the Earth before reaching point G will continue around the other side to point V in a complete orbit (see figure in next column).



14.4 The gravitational force is zero inside the shell (Eq. 14.25b). Because the force on it is zero, the particle moves with constant velocity in the direction of its original motion outside the shell until it hits the wall opposite the entry hole. Its path thereafter depends on the nature of the collision and on the particle's original direction.

B.C. by John Hart



PUZZLER

Have you ever wondered why a tennis ball is fuzzy and why a golf ball has dimples? A "spitball" is an illegal baseball pitch because it makes the ball act too much like the fuzzy tennis ball or the dimpled golf ball. What principles of physics govern the behavior of these three pieces of sporting equipment (and also keep airplanes in the sky)? *(George Semple)*

chapter

15 Fluid Mechanics

Chapter Outline

Matter is normally classified as being in one of three states: solid, liquid, or gas. From everyday experience, we know that a solid has a definite volume and shape. A brick maintains its familiar shape and size day in and day out. We also know that a liquid has a definite volume but no definite shape. Finally, we know that an unconfined gas has neither a definite volume nor a definite shape. These definitions help us picture the states of matter, but they are somewhat artificial. For example, asphalt and plastics are normally considered solids, but over long periods of time they tend to flow like liquids. Likewise, most substances can be a solid, a liquid, or a gas (or a combination of any of these), depending on the temperature and pressure. In general, the time it takes a particular substance to change its shape in response to an external force determines whether we treat the substance as a solid, as a liquid, or as a gas.

A **fluid** is a collection of molecules that are randomly arranged and held together by weak cohesive forces and by forces exerted by the walls of a container. Both liquids and gases are fluids.

In our treatment of the mechanics of fluids, we shall see that we do not need to learn any new physical principles to explain such effects as the buoyant force acting on a submerged object and the dynamic lift acting on an airplane wing. First, we consider the mechanics of a fluid at rest—that is, *fluid statics*—and derive an expression for the pressure exerted by a fluid as a function of its density and depth. We then treat the mechanics of fluids in motion—that is, *fluid dynamics.* We can describe a fluid in motion by using a model in which we make certain simplifying assumptions. We use this model to analyze some situations of practical importance. An analysis leading to *Bernoulli's equation* enables us to determine relationships between the pressure, density, and velocity at every point in a fluid.

15.1 PRESSURE

Fluids do not sustain shearing stresses or tensile stresses; thus, the only stress that can be exerted on an object submerged in a fluid is one that tends to compress the object. In other words, the force exerted by a fluid on an object is always perpendicular to the surfaces of the object, as shown in Figure 15.1.

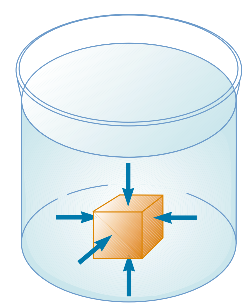


Figure 15.1 At any point on the surface of a submerged object, the force exerted by the fluid is perpendicular to the surface of the object. The force exerted by the fluid on the walls of the container is perpendicular to the walls at all points.

The pressure in a fluid can be measured with the device pictured in Figure 15.2. The device consists of an evacuated cylinder that encloses a light piston connected to a spring. As the device is submerged in a fluid, the fluid presses on the top of the piston and compresses the spring until the inward force exerted by the fluid is balanced by the outward force exerted by the spring. The fluid pressure can be measured directly if the spring is calibrated in advance. If F is the magnitude of the force exerted on the piston and A is the surface area of the piston,

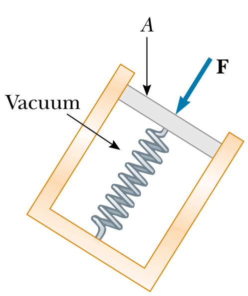


Figure 15.2 A simple device for measuring the pressure exerted by a fluid.

then the **pressure** P of the fluid at the level to which the device has been submerged is defined as the ratio F/A:

Definition of pressure

$$P \equiv \frac{F}{A} \tag{15.1}$$

Note that pressure is a scalar quantity because it is proportional to the magnitude of the force on the piston.

Snowshoes keep you from sinking into soft snow because they spread the downward force you exert on the snow over a large area, reducing the pressure on the snow's surface.

To define the pressure at a specific point, we consider a fluid acting on the device shown in Figure 15.2. If the force exerted by the fluid over an infinitesimal surface element of area dA containing the point in question is dF, then the pressure at that point is

$$P = \frac{dF}{dA} \tag{15.2}$$

As we shall see in the next section, the pressure exerted by a fluid varies with depth. Therefore, to calculate the total force exerted on a flat wall of a container, we must integrate Equation 15.2 over the surface area of the wall.

Because pressure is force per unit area, it has units of newtons per square meter (N/m^2) in the SI system. Another name for the SI unit of pressure is **pascal** (Pa):

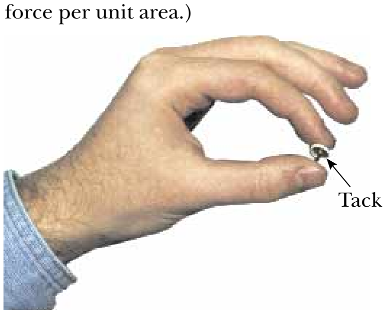
$$1 \text{ Pa} \equiv 1 \text{ N/m}^2 \tag{15.3}$$

Quick Quiz 15.1

Suppose you are standing directly behind someone who steps back and accidentally stomps on your foot with the heel of one shoe. Would you be better off if that person were a professional basketball player wearing sneakers or a petite woman wearing spike-heeled shoes? Explain.

QuickLab

Place a tack between your thumb and index finger, as shown in the figure. Now very gently squeeze the tack and note the sensation. The pointed end of the tack causes pain, and the blunt end does not. According to Newton's third law, the force exerted by the tack on the thumb is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction to the force exerted by the tack on the index finger. However, the pressure at the pointed end of the tack is much greater than the pressure at the blunt end. (Remember that pressure is force per unit area.)



Quick Quiz 15.2

After a long lecture, the daring physics professor stretches out for a nap on a bed of nails, as shown in Figure 15.3. How is this possible?

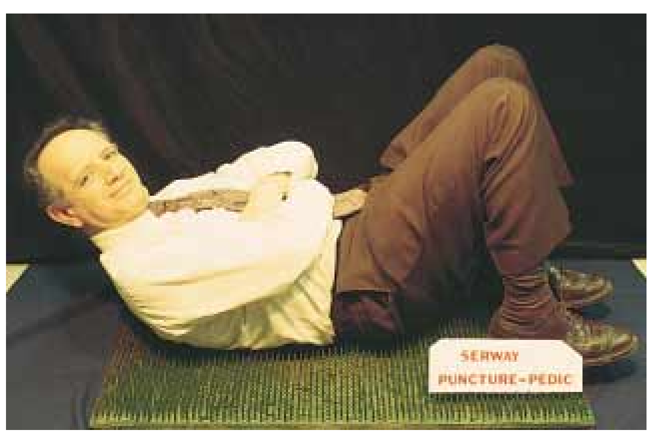


Figure 15.3

EXAMPLE 15.1 The Water Bed

The mattress of a water bed is 2.00 m long by 2.00 m wide and 30.0 cm deep. (a) Find the weight of the water in the mattress.

Solution The density of water is 1 000 kg/m^3 (Table 15.1), and so the mass of the water is

$$M = \rho V = (1\,000 \text{ kg/m}^3)(1.20 \text{ m}^3) = 1.20 \times 10^3 \text{ kg}$$

and its weight is

$$Mg = (1.20 \times 10^3 \text{ kg})(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2) = \boxed{1.18 \times 10^4 \text{ N}}$$

This is approximately 2 650 lb. (A regular bed weighs approximately 300 lb.) Because this load is so great, such a water bed is best placed in the basement or on a sturdy, well-supported floor.

(b) Find the pressure exerted by the water on the floor when the bed rests in its normal position. Assume that the entire lower surface of the bed makes contact with the floor.

Solution When the bed is in its normal position, the cross-sectional area is 4.00 m^2; thus, from Equation 15.1, we find that

$$P = \frac{1.18 \times 10^4 \text{ N}}{4.00 \text{ m}^2} = \boxed{2.95 \times 10^3 \text{ Pa}}$$

TABLE 15.1 Densities of Some Common Substances at Standard Temperature (0°C) and Pressure (Atmospheric)

Substance	ρ (kg/m^3)	Substance	ρ (kg/m^3)
Air	1.29	Ice	0.917×10^3
Aluminum	2.70×10^3	Iron	7.86×10^3
Benzene	0.879×10^3	Lead	11.3×10^3
Copper	8.92×10^3	Mercury	13.6×10^3
Ethyl alcohol	0.806×10^3	Oak	0.710×10^3
Fresh water	1.00×10^3	Oxygen gas	1.43
Glycerine	1.26×10^3	Pine	0.373×10^3
Gold	19.3×10^3	Platinum	21.4×10^3
Helium gas	1.79×10^{-1}	Seawater	1.03×10^3
Hydrogen gas	8.99×10^{-2}	Silver	10.5×10^3

15.2 VARIATION OF PRESSURE WITH DEPTH

As divers well know, water pressure increases with depth. Likewise, atmospheric pressure decreases with increasing altitude; it is for this reason that aircraft flying at high altitudes must have pressurized cabins.

We now show how the pressure in a liquid increases linearly with depth. As Equation 1.1 describes, the *density* of a substance is defined as its mass per unit volume: $\rho \equiv m/V$. Table 15.1 lists the densities of various substances. These values vary slightly with temperature because the volume of a substance is temperature dependent (as we shall see in Chapter 19). Note that under standard conditions (at 0°C and at atmospheric pressure) the densities of gases are about 1/1 000 the densities of solids and liquids. This difference implies that the average molecular spacing in a gas under these conditions is about ten times greater than that in a solid or liquid.

Now let us consider a fluid of density ρ at rest and open to the atmosphere, as shown in Figure 15.4. We assume that ρ is constant; this means that the fluid is incompressible. Let us select a sample of the liquid contained within an imaginary cylinder of cross-sectional area A extending from the surface to a depth h. The

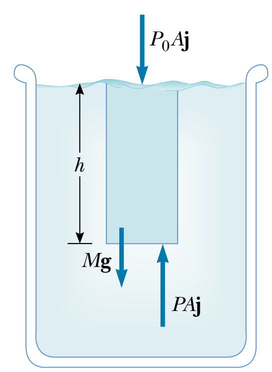


Figure 15.4 How pressure varies with depth in a fluid. The net force exerted on the volume of water within the darker region must be zero.

QuickLab

Poke two holes in the side of a paper or polystyrene cup—one near the top and the other near the bottom. Fill the cup with water and watch the water flow out of the holes. Why does water exit from the bottom hole at a higher speed than it does from the top hole?

pressure exerted by the outside liquid on the bottom face of the cylinder is P, and the pressure exerted on the top face of the cylinder is the atmospheric pressure P_0. Therefore, the upward force exerted by the outside fluid on the bottom of the cylinder is PA, and the downward force exerted by the atmosphere on the top is P_0A. The mass of liquid in the cylinder is $M = \rho V = \rho Ah$; therefore, the weight of the liquid in the cylinder is $Mg = \rho Ahg$. Because the cylinder is in equilibrium, the net force acting on it must be zero. Choosing upward to be the positive y direction, we see that

$$\sum F_y = PA - P_0A - Mg = 0$$

or

$$PA - P_0A - \rho Ahg = 0$$

$$PA - P_0A = \rho Ahg$$

Variation of pressure with depth

$$P = P_0 + \rho gh \tag{15.4}$$

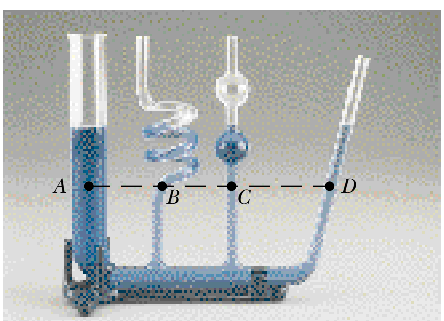
That is, **the pressure P at a depth h below the surface of a liquid open to the atmosphere is *greater* than atmospheric pressure by an amount ρgh.** In our calculations and working of end-of-chapter problems, we usually take atmospheric pressure to be

$$P_0 = 1.00 \text{ atm} = 1.013 \times 10^5 \text{ Pa}$$

Equation 15.4 implies that the pressure is the same at all points having the same depth, independent of the shape of the container.

Quick Quiz 15.3

In the derivation of Equation 15.4, why were we able to ignore the pressure that the liquid exerts on the sides of the cylinder?



This arrangement of interconnected tubes demonstrates that the pressure in a liquid is the same at all points having the same elevation. For example, the pressure is the same at points A, B, C, and D.

In view of the fact that the pressure in a fluid depends on depth and on the value of P_0, any increase in pressure at the surface must be transmitted to every other point in the fluid. This concept was first recognized by the French scientist Blaise Pascal (1623–1662) and is called **Pascal's law: A change in the pressure applied to a fluid is transmitted undiminished to every point of the fluid and to the walls of the container.**

An important application of Pascal's law is the hydraulic press illustrated in Figure 15.5a. A force of magnitude F_1 is applied to a small piston of surface area A_1. The pressure is transmitted through a liquid to a larger piston of surface area A_2. Because the pressure must be the same on both sides, $P = F_1/A_1 = F_2/A_2$. Therefore, the force F_2 is greater than the force F_1 by a factor A_2/A_1, which is called the *force-multiplying factor.* Because liquid is neither added nor removed, the volume pushed down on the left as the piston moves down a distance d_1 equals the volume pushed up on the right as the right piston moves up a distance d_2. That is, $A_1d_1 = A_2d_2$; thus, the force-multiplying factor can also be written as d_1/d_2. Note that $F_1d_1 = F_2d_2$. Hydraulic brakes, car lifts, hydraulic jacks, and forklifts all make use of this principle (Fig. 15.5b).

Quick Quiz 15.4

A grain silo has many bands wrapped around its perimeter (Fig. 15.6). Why is the spacing between successive bands smaller at the lower portions of the silo, as shown in the photograph?

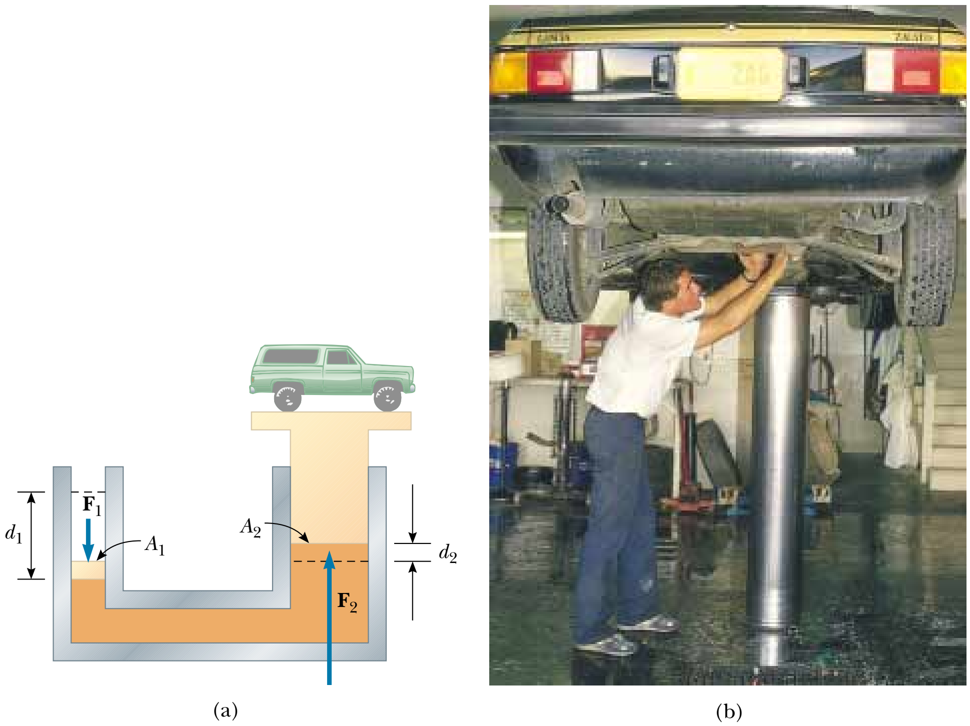


Figure 15.5 (a) Diagram of a hydraulic press. Because the increase in pressure is the same on the two sides, a small force $\mathbf{F}_1$ at the left produces a much greater force $\mathbf{F}_2$ at the right. (b) A vehicle undergoing repair is supported by a hydraulic lift in a garage.

Figure 15.6

EXAMPLE 15.2 The Car Lift

In a car lift used in a service station, compressed air exerts a force on a small piston that has a circular cross section and a radius of 5.00 cm. This pressure is transmitted by a liquid to a piston that has a radius of 15.0 cm. What force must the compressed air exert to lift a car weighing 13 300 N? What air pressure produces this force?

Solution Because the pressure exerted by the compressed air is transmitted undiminished throughout the liquid, we have

$$F_1 = \left(\frac{A_1}{A_2}\right) F_2 = \frac{\pi(5.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2}{\pi(15.0 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2}(1.33 \times 10^4\ \text{N})$$
$$= 1.48 \times 10^3\ \text{N}$$

The air pressure that produces this force is

$$P = \frac{F_1}{A_1} = \frac{1.48 \times 10^3\ \text{N}}{\pi(5.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2} = \boxed{1.88 \times 10^5\ \text{Pa}}$$

This pressure is approximately twice atmospheric pressure.

The input work (the work done by $\mathbf{F}_1$) is equal to the output work (the work done by $\mathbf{F}_2$), in accordance with the principle of conservation of energy.

EXAMPLE 15.3 A Pain in the Ear

Estimate the force exerted on your eardrum due to the water above when you are swimming at the bottom of a pool that is 5.0 m deep.

Solution First, we must find the unbalanced pressure on the eardrum; then, after estimating the eardrum's surface area, we can determine the force that the water exerts on it.

The air inside the middle ear is normally at atmospheric pressure P_0. Therefore, to find the net force on the eardrum, we must consider the difference between the total pressure at

the bottom of the pool and atmospheric pressure:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{\text{bot}} - P_0 &= \rho g h \\ &= (1.00 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3)(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(5.0 \text{ m}) \\ &= 4.9 \times 10^4 \text{ Pa} \end{aligned}$$

We estimate the surface area of the eardrum to be approximately $1 \text{ cm}^2 = 1 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}^2$. This means that the force on it is $F = (P_{\text{bot}} - P_0)A \approx 5 \text{ N}$. Because a force on the eardrum of this magnitude is extremely uncomfortable, swimmers often "pop their ears" while under water, an action that pushes air from the lungs into the middle ear. Using this technique equalizes the pressure on the two sides of the eardrum and relieves the discomfort.

EXAMPLE 15.4 The Force on a Dam

Water is filled to a height H behind a dam of width w (Fig. 15.7). Determine the resultant force exerted by the water on the dam.

Solution Because pressure varies with depth, we cannot calculate the force simply by multiplying the area by the pressure. We can solve the problem by finding the force dF exerted on a narrow horizontal strip at depth h and then integrating the expression to find the total force. Let us imagine a vertical y axis, with $y = 0$ at the bottom of the dam and our strip a distance y above the bottom.

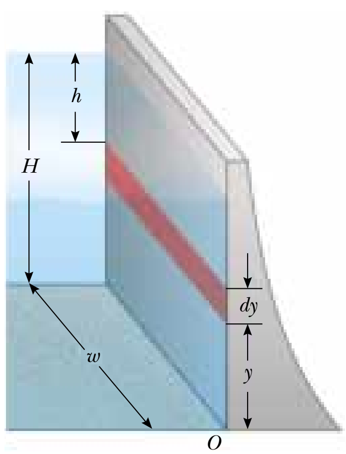


Figure 15.7 Because pressure varies with depth, the total force exerted on a dam must be obtained from the expression $F = \int P\, dA$, where dA is the area of the dark strip.

We can use Equation 15.4 to calculate the pressure at the depth h; we omit atmospheric pressure because it acts on both sides of the dam:

$$P = \rho g h = \rho g(H - y)$$

Using Equation 15.2, we find that the force exerted on the shaded strip of area $dA = w\, dy$ is

$$dF = P\, dA = \rho g(H - y) w\, dy$$

Therefore, the total force on the dam is

$$F = \int P\, dA = \int_0^H \rho g(H - y) w\, dy = \boxed{\tfrac{1}{2}\rho g w H^2}$$

Note that the thickness of the dam shown in Figure 15.7 increases with depth. This design accounts for the greater and greater pressure that the water exerts on the dam at greater depths.

Exercise Find an expression for the average pressure on the dam from the total force exerted by the water on the dam.

Answer $\frac{1}{2}\rho g H$.

15.3 PRESSURE MEASUREMENTS

One simple device for measuring pressure is the open-tube manometer illustrated in Figure 15.8a. One end of a U-shaped tube containing a liquid is open to the atmosphere, and the other end is connected to a system of unknown pressure P. The difference in pressure $P - P_0$ is equal to $\rho g h$; hence, $P = P_0 + \rho g h$. The pressure P is called the **absolute pressure,** and the difference $P - P_0$ is called the **gauge pressure.** The latter is the value that normally appears on a pressure gauge. For example, the pressure you measure in your bicycle tire is the gauge pressure.

Another instrument used to measure pressure is the common *barometer,* which was invented by Evangelista Torricelli (1608–1647). The barometer consists of a

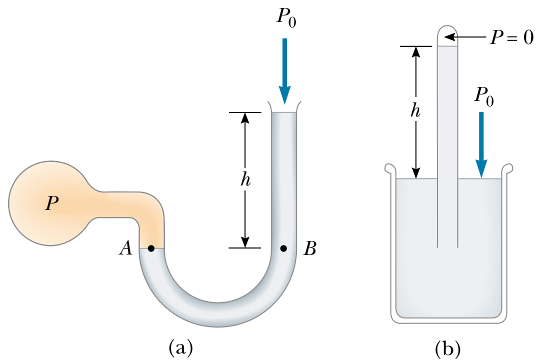


Figure 15.8 Two devices for measuring pressure: (a) an open-tube manometer and (b) a mercury barometer.

long, mercury-filled tube closed at one end and inverted into an open container of mercury (Fig. 15.8b). The closed end of the tube is nearly a vacuum, and so its pressure can be taken as zero. Therefore, it follows that $P_0 = \rho g h$, where h is the height of the mercury column.

One atmosphere ($P_0 = 1$ atm) of pressure is defined as the pressure that causes the column of mercury in a barometer tube to be exactly 0.760 0 m in height at 0°C, with $g = 9.806\ 65\ \text{m/s}^2$. At this temperature, mercury has a density of $13.595 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3$; therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} P_0 = \rho g h &= (13.595 \times 10^3\ \text{kg/m}^3)(9.806\ 65\ \text{m/s}^2)(0.760\ 0\ \text{m}) \\ &= 1.013 \times 10^5\ \text{Pa} = 1\ \text{atm} \end{aligned}$$

Quick Quiz 15.5

Other than the obvious problem that occurs with freezing, why don't we use water in a barometer in the place of mercury?

15.4 BUOYANT FORCES AND ARCHIMEDES'S PRINCIPLE

Have you ever tried to push a beach ball under water? This is extremely difficult to do because of the large upward force exerted by the water on the ball. The upward force exerted by water on any immersed object is called a **buoyant force.** We can determine the magnitude of a buoyant force by applying some logic and Newton's second law. Imagine that, instead of air, the beach ball is filled with water. If you were standing on land, it would be difficult to hold the water-filled ball in your arms. If you held the ball while standing neck deep in a pool, however, the force you would need to hold it would almost disappear. In fact, the required force would be zero if we were to ignore the thin layer of plastic of which the beach ball is made. Because the water-filled ball is in equilibrium while it is submerged, the magnitude of the upward buoyant force must equal its weight.

If the submerged ball were filled with air rather than water, then the upward buoyant force exerted by the surrounding water would still be present. However, because the weight of the water is now replaced by the much smaller weight of that volume of air, the net force is upward and quite great; as a result, the ball is pushed to the surface.

Archimedes's principle

The manner in which buoyant forces act is summarized by **Archimedes's principle,** which states that **the magnitude of the buoyant force always equals the weight of the fluid displaced by the object.** The buoyant force acts vertically upward through the point that was the center of gravity of the displaced fluid.

Note that Archimedes's principle does not refer to the makeup of the object experiencing the buoyant force. The object's composition is not a factor in the buoyant force. We can verify this in the following manner: Suppose we focus our attention on the indicated cube of liquid in the container illustrated in Figure 15.9. This cube is in equilibrium as it is acted on by two forces. One of these forces is the gravitational force $\mathbf{F}_g$. What cancels this downward force? Apparently, the rest of the liquid in the container is holding the cube in equilibrium. Thus, the magnitude of the buoyant force $\mathbf{B}$ exerted on the cube is exactly equal to the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_g$, which is the weight of the liquid inside the cube:

$$B = F_g$$

Archimedes (c. 287–212 B.C.) Archimedes, a Greek mathematician, physicist, and engineer, was perhaps the greatest scientist of antiquity. He was the first to compute accurately the ratio of a circle's circumference to its diameter, and he showed how to calculate the volume and surface area of spheres, cylinders, and other geometric shapes. He is well known for discovering the nature of the buoyant force.

Archimedes was also a gifted inventor. One of his practical inventions, still in use today, is Archimedes's screw—an inclined, rotating, coiled tube originally used to lift water from the holds of ships. He also invented the catapult and devised systems of levers, pulleys, and weights for raising heavy loads. Such inventions were successfully used to defend his native city Syracuse during a two-year siege by the Romans.

Now imagine that the cube of liquid is replaced by a cube of steel of the same dimensions. What is the buoyant force acting on the steel? The liquid surrounding a cube behaves in the same way no matter what the cube is made of. Therefore, **the buoyant force acting on the steel cube is the same as the buoyant force acting on a cube of liquid of the same dimensions.** In other words, the magnitude of the buoyant force is the same as the weight of the *liquid* cube, not the steel cube. Although mathematically more complicated, this same principle applies to submerged objects of any shape, size, or density.

Although we have described the magnitude and direction of the buoyant force, we still do not know its origin. Why would a fluid exert such a strange force, almost as if the fluid were trying to expel a foreign body? To understand why, look again at Figure 15.9. The pressure at the bottom of the cube is greater than the pressure at the top by an amount $\rho g h$, where h is the length of any side of the cube. The pressure difference ΔP between the bottom and top faces of the cube is equal to the buoyant force per unit area of those faces—that is, $\Delta P = B/A$. Therefore, $B = (\Delta P)A = (\rho g h)A = \rho g V$, where V is the volume of the cube. Because the mass of the fluid in the cube is $M = \rho V$, we see that

$$B = F_g = \rho V g = Mg \tag{15.5}$$

where Mg is the weight of the fluid in the cube. Thus, the buoyant force is a result of the pressure differential on a submerged or partly submerged object.

Before we proceed with a few examples, it is instructive for us to compare the forces acting on a totally submerged object with those acting on a floating (partly submerged) object.

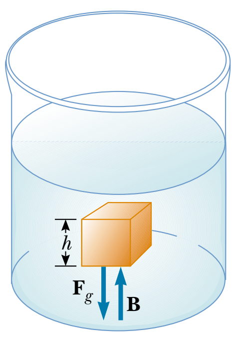
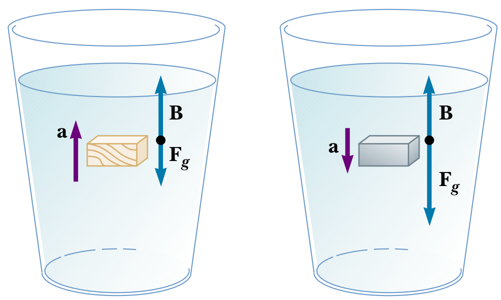


Figure 15.9 The external forces acting on the cube of liquid are the force of gravity $\mathbf{F}_g$ and the buoyant force $\mathbf{B}$. Under equilibrium conditions, $B = F_g$.

Case 1: Totally Submerged Object When an object is totally submerged in a fluid of density ρ_f, the magnitude of the upward buoyant force is $B = \rho_f V_o g$, where V_o is the volume of the object. If the object has a mass M and density ρ_o, its weight is equal to $F_g = Mg = \rho_o V_o g$, and the net force on it is $B - F_g = (\rho_f - \rho_o) V_o g$. Hence, if the density of the object is less than the density of the fluid, then the downward force of gravity is less than the buoyant force, and the unconstrained object accelerates upward (Fig. 15.10a). If the density of the object is greater than the density of the fluid, then the upward buoyant force is less than the downward force of gravity, and the unsupported object sinks (Fig. 15.10b).

Case 2: Floating Object Now consider an object of volume V_o in static equilibrium floating on a fluid—that is, an object that is only partially submerged. In this



(a) (b)

Figure 15.10 (a) A totally submerged object that is less dense than the fluid in which it is submerged experiences a net upward force. (b) A totally submerged object that is denser than the fluid sinks.

Hot-air balloons. Because hot air is less dense than cold air, a net upward force acts on the balloons.

case, the upward buoyant force is balanced by the downward gravitational force acting on the object. If V_f is the volume of the fluid displaced by the object (this volume is the same as the volume of that part of the object that is beneath the fluid level), the buoyant force has a magnitude $B = \rho_f V_f g$. Because the weight of the object is $F_g = Mg = \rho_o V_o g$, and because $F_g = B$, we see that $\rho_f V_f g = \rho_o V_o g$, or

$$\frac{\rho_o}{\rho_f} = \frac{V_f}{V_o} \quad \textbf{(15.6)}$$

Under normal conditions, the average density of a fish is slightly greater than the density of water. It follows that the fish would sink if it did not have some mechanism for adjusting its density. The fish accomplishes this by internally regulating the size of its air-filled swim bladder to balance the change in the magnitude of the buoyant force acting on it. In this manner, fish are able to swim to various depths. Unlike a fish, a scuba diver cannot achieve neutral buoyancy (at which the buoyant force just balances the weight) by adjusting the magnitude of the buoyant force B. Instead, the diver adjusts F_g by manipulating lead weights.

Quick Quiz 15.6

Steel is much denser than water. In view of this fact, how do steel ships float?

Quick Quiz 15.7

A glass of water contains a single floating ice cube (Fig. 15.11). When the ice melts, does the water level go up, go down, or remain the same?

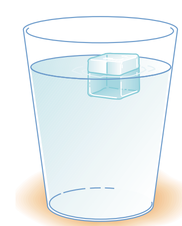


Figure 15.11

Quick Quiz 15.8

When a person in a rowboat in a small pond throws an anchor overboard, does the water level of the pond go up, go down, or remain the same?

EXAMPLE 15.5 Eureka!

Archimedes supposedly was asked to determine whether a crown made for the king consisted of pure gold. Legend has it that he solved this problem by weighing the crown first in air and then in water, as shown in Figure 15.12. Suppose the scale read 7.84 N in air and 6.86 N in water. What should Archimedes have told the king?

Solution When the crown is suspended in air, the scale

reads the true weight $T_1 = F_g$ (neglecting the buoyancy of air). When it is immersed in water, the buoyant force $\mathbf{B}$ reduces the scale reading to an apparent weight of $T_2 = F_g - B$. Hence, the buoyant force exerted on the crown is the difference between its weight in air and its weight in water:

$$B = F_g - T_2 = 7.84 \text{ N} - 6.86 \text{ N} = 0.98 \text{ N}$$

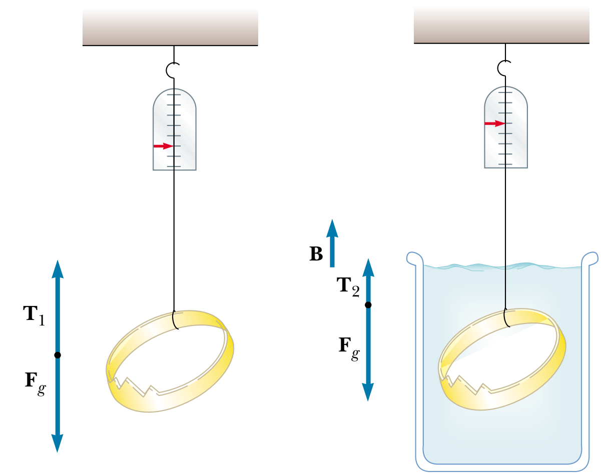
Because this buoyant force is equal in magnitude to the weight of the displaced water, we have $\rho_w g V_w = 0.98$ N, where V_w is the volume of the displaced water and ρ_w is its density. Also, the volume of the crown V_c is equal to the volume of the displaced water because the crown is completely submerged. Therefore,

$$V_c = V_w = \frac{0.98 \text{ N}}{g\rho_w} = \frac{0.98 \text{ N}}{(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)(1\,000 \text{ kg/m}^3)}$$
$$= 1.0 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}^3$$

Finally, the density of the crown is

$$\rho_c = \frac{m_c}{V_c} = \frac{m_c g}{V_c g} = \frac{7.84 \text{ N}}{(1.0 \times 10^{-4} \text{ m}^3)(9.8 \text{ m/s}^2)}$$
$$= 8.0 \times 10^3 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

From Table 15.1 we see that the density of gold is 19.3×10^3 kg/m^3. Thus, Archimedes should have told the king that he had been cheated. Either the crown was hollow, or it was not made of pure gold.



(a) (b)

Figure 15.12 (a) When the crown is suspended in air, the scale reads its true weight $T_1 = F_g$ (the buoyancy of air is negligible). (b) When the crown is immersed in water, the buoyant force $\mathbf{B}$ reduces the scale reading to the apparent weight $T_2 = F_g - B$.

EXAMPLE 15.6 A Titanic Surprise

An iceberg floating in seawater, as shown in Figure 15.13a, is extremely dangerous because much of the ice is below the surface. This hidden ice can damage a ship that is still a considerable distance from the visible ice. What fraction of the iceberg lies below the water level?

Solution This problem corresponds to Case 2. The weight of the iceberg is $F_{gi} = \rho_i V_i g$, where $\rho_i = 917$ kg/m^3 and V_i is the volume of the whole iceberg. The magnitude of the upward buoyant force equals the weight of the displaced water: $B = \rho_w V_w g$, where V_w, the volume of the displaced water, is equal to the volume of the ice beneath the water (the shaded region in Fig. 15.13b) and ρ_w is the density of seawater, $\rho_w = 1\,030$ kg/m^3. Because $\rho_i V_i g = \rho_w V_w g$, the fraction of ice beneath the water's surface is

$$f = \frac{V_w}{V_i} = \frac{\rho_i}{\rho_w} = \frac{917 \text{ kg/m}^3}{1\,030 \text{ kg/m}^3} = 0.890 \quad \text{or} \quad \boxed{89.0\%}$$

(a) (b)

Figure 15.13 (a) Much of the volume of this iceberg is beneath the water.
(b) A ship can be damaged even when it is not near the exposed ice.

15.5 FLUID DYNAMICS

Thus far, our study of fluids has been restricted to fluids at rest. We now turn our attention to fluids in motion. Instead of trying to study the motion of each particle of the fluid as a function of time, we describe the properties of a moving fluid at each point as a function of time.

Flow Characteristics

When fluid is in motion, its flow can be characterized as being one of two main types. The flow is said to be **steady,** or **laminar,** if each particle of the fluid follows a smooth path, such that the paths of different particles never cross each other, as shown in Figure 15.14. In steady flow, the velocity of the fluid at any point remains constant in time.

Above a certain critical speed, fluid flow becomes **turbulent;** turbulent flow is irregular flow characterized by small whirlpool-like regions, as shown in Figure 15.15.

The term **viscosity** is commonly used in the description of fluid flow to characterize the degree of internal friction in the fluid. This internal friction, or *viscous force,* is associated with the resistance that two adjacent layers of fluid have to moving relative to each other. Viscosity causes part of the kinetic energy of a fluid to be converted to internal energy. This mechanism is similar to the one by which an object sliding on a rough horizontal surface loses kinetic energy.

Because the motion of real fluids is very complex and not fully understood, we make some simplifying assumptions in our approach. In our model of an **ideal fluid,** we make the following four assumptions:

Properties of an ideal fluid

1. **The fluid is nonviscous.** In a nonviscous fluid, internal friction is neglected. An object moving through the fluid experiences no viscous force.
2. **The flow is steady.** In steady (laminar) flow, the velocity of the fluid at each point remains constant.

Figure 15.14 Laminar flow around an automobile in a test wind tunnel.

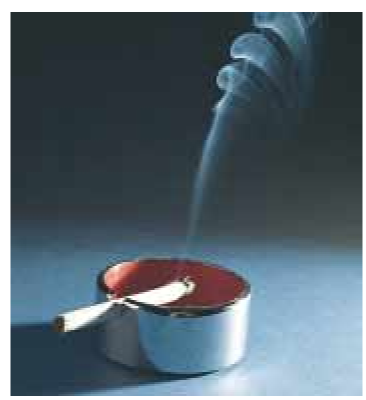


Figure 15.15 Hot gases from a cigarette made visible by smoke particles. The smoke first moves in laminar flow at the bottom and then in turbulent flow above.

3. **The fluid is incompressible.** The density of an incompressible fluid is constant.
4. **The flow is irrotational.** In irrotational flow, the fluid has no angular momentum about any point. If a small paddle wheel placed anywhere in the fluid does not rotate about the wheel's center of mass, then the flow is irrotational.

15.6 STREAMLINES AND THE EQUATION OF CONTINUITY

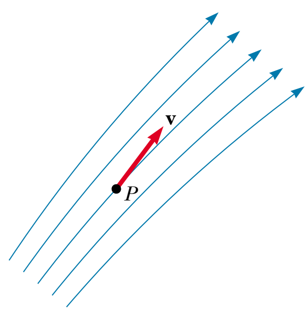


Figure 15.16 A particle in laminar flow follows a streamline, and at each point along its path the particle's velocity is tangent to the streamline.

The path taken by a fluid particle under steady flow is called a **streamline.** The velocity of the particle is always tangent to the streamline, as shown in Figure 15.16. A set of streamlines like the ones shown in Figure 15.16 form a *tube of flow.* Note that fluid particles cannot flow into or out of the sides of this tube; if they could, then the streamlines would cross each other.

Consider an ideal fluid flowing through a pipe of nonuniform size, as illustrated in Figure 15.17. The particles in the fluid move along streamlines in steady flow. In a time t, the fluid at the bottom end of the pipe moves a distance $\Delta x_1 = v_1 t$. If A_1 is the cross-sectional area in this region, then the mass of fluid contained in the left shaded region in Figure 15.17 is $m_1 = \rho A_1 \,\Delta x_1 = \rho A_1 v_1 t$, where ρ is the (nonchanging) density of the ideal fluid. Similarly, the fluid that moves through the upper end of the pipe in the time t has a mass $m_2 = \rho A_2 v_2 t$. However, because *mass is conserved* and because the flow is steady, the mass that crosses A_1 in a time t must equal the mass that crosses A_2 in the time t. That is, $m_1 = m_2$, or $\rho A_1 v_1 t = \rho A_2 v_2 t$; this means that

Equation of continuity

$$A_1 v_1 = A_2 v_2 = \text{constant} \tag{15.7}$$

This expression is called the **equation of continuity.** It states that

the product of the area and the fluid speed at all points along the pipe is a constant for an incompressible fluid.

This equation tells us that the speed is high where the tube is constricted (small A) and low where the tube is wide (large A). The product Av, which has the dimensions of volume per unit time, is called either the *volume flux* or the *flow rate.* The condition Av = constant is equivalent to the statement that the volume of fluid that enters one end of a tube in a given time interval equals the volume leaving the other end of the tube in the same time interval if no leaks are present.

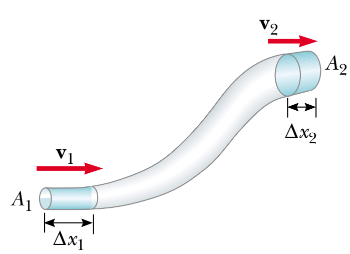


Figure 15.17 A fluid moving with steady flow through a pipe of varying cross-sectional area. The volume of fluid flowing through area A_1 in a time interval t must equal the volume flowing through area A_2 in the same time interval. Therefore, $A_1 v_1 = A_2 v_2$.

Figure 15.18

Quick Quiz 15.9

As water flows from a faucet, as shown in Figure 15.18, why does the stream of water become narrower as it descends?

EXAMPLE 15.7 Niagara Falls

Each second, 5 525 m^3 of water flows over the 670-m-wide cliff of the Horseshoe Falls portion of Niagara Falls. The water is approximately 2 m deep as it reaches the cliff. What is its speed at that instant?

Solution The cross-sectional area of the water as it reaches the edge of the cliff is $A = (670 \text{ m})(2 \text{ m}) = 1\,340 \text{ m}^2$. The flow rate of 5 525 m^3/s is equal to Av. This gives

$$v = \frac{5\,525 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}}{A} = \frac{5\,525 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}}{1\,340 \text{ m}^2} = \boxed{4 \text{ m/s}}$$

Note that we have kept only one significant figure because our value for the depth has only one significant figure.

Exercise A barrel floating along in the river plunges over the Falls. How far from the base of the cliff is the barrel when it reaches the water 49 m below?

Answer 13 m ≈ 10 m.

15.7 BERNOULLI'S EQUATION

When you press your thumb over the end of a garden hose so that the opening becomes a small slit, the water comes out at high speed, as shown in Figure 15.19. Is the water under greater pressure when it is inside the hose or when it is out in the air? You can answer this question by noting how hard you have to push your thumb against the water inside the end of the hose. The pressure inside the hose is definitely greater than atmospheric pressure.

The relationship between fluid speed, pressure, and elevation was first derived in 1738 by the Swiss physicist Daniel Bernoulli. Consider the flow of an ideal fluid through a nonuniform pipe in a time t, as illustrated in Figure 15.20. Let us call the lower shaded part section 1 and the upper shaded part section 2. The force exerted by the fluid in section 1 has a magnitude P_1A_1. The work done by this force in a time t is $W_1 = F_1\Delta x_1 = P_1A_1\Delta x_1 = P_1V$, where V is the volume of section 1. In a similar manner, the work done by the fluid in section 2 in the same time t is $W_2 = -P_2A_2\Delta x_2 = -P_2V$. (The volume that passes through section 1 in a time t equals the volume that passes through section 2 in the same time.) This work is negative because the fluid force opposes the displacement. Thus, the net work done by these forces in the time t is

$$W = (P_1 - P_2)V$$

Daniel Bernoulli (1700–1782)
Daniel Bernoulli, a Swiss physicist and mathematician, made important discoveries in fluid dynamics. Born into a family of mathematicians, he was the only member of the family to make a mark in physics.

Bernoulli's most famous work, *Hydrodynamica,* was published in 1738; it is both a theoretical and a practical study of equilibrium, pressure, and speed in fluids. He showed that as the speed of a fluid increases, its pressure decreases.

In *Hydrodynamica* Bernoulli also attempted the first explanation of the behavior of gases with changing pressure and temperature; this was the beginning of the kinetic theory of gases, a topic we study in Chapter 21. *(Corbis–Bettmann)*

Figure 15.19 The speed of water spraying from the end of a hose increases as the size of the opening is decreased with the thumb.

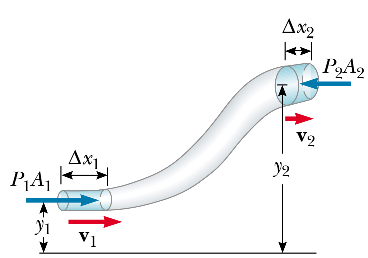


Figure 15.20 A fluid in laminar flow through a constricted pipe. The volume of the shaded section on the left is equal to the volume of the shaded section on the right.

QuickLab

Place two soda cans on their sides approximately 2 cm apart on a table. Align your mouth at table level and with the space between the cans. Blow a horizontal stream of air through this space. What do the cans do? Is this what you expected? Compare this with the force acting on a car parked close to the edge of a road when a big truck goes by. How does the outcome relate to Equation 15.9?

Part of this work goes into changing the kinetic energy of the fluid, and part goes into changing the gravitational potential energy. If m is the mass that enters one end and leaves the other in a time t, then the change in the kinetic energy of this mass is

$$\Delta K = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2$$

The change in gravitational potential energy is

$$\Delta U = mgy_2 - mgy_1$$

We can apply Equation 8.13, $W = \Delta K + \Delta U$, to this volume of fluid to obtain

$$(P_1 - P_2)V = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 + mgy_2 - mgy_1$$

If we divide each term by V and recall that $\rho = m/V$, this expression reduces to

$$P_1 - P_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g y_2 - \rho g y_1$$

Rearranging terms, we obtain

$$P_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g y_1 = P_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 + \rho g y_2 \quad \textbf{(15.8)}$$

This is **Bernoulli's equation** as applied to an ideal fluid. It is often expressed as

Bernoulli's equation

$$P + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho g y = \text{constant} \quad \textbf{(15.9)}$$

This expression specifies that, in laminar flow, the sum of the pressure (P), kinetic energy per unit volume ($\tfrac{1}{2}\rho v^2$), and gravitational potential energy per unit volume ($\rho g y$) has the same value at all points along a streamline.

When the fluid is at rest, $v_1 = v_2 = 0$ and Equation 15.8 becomes

$$P_1 - P_2 = \rho g(y_2 - y_1) = \rho g h$$

This is in agreement with Equation 15.4.

EXAMPLE 15.8 The Venturi Tube

The horizontal constricted pipe illustrated in Figure 15.21, known as a *Venturi tube,* can be used to measure the flow speed of an incompressible fluid. Let us determine the flow speed at point 2 if the pressure difference $P_1 - P_2$ is known.

Solution Because the pipe is horizontal, $y_1 = y_2$, and applying Equation 15.8 to points 1 and 2 gives

$$(1) \qquad P_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = P_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2$$

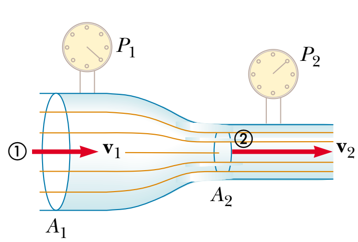


Figure 15.21 (a) Pressure P_1 is greater than pressure P_2 because $v_1 < v_2$. This device can be used to measure the speed of fluid flow. (b) A Venturi tube.

From the equation of continuity, $A_1v_1 = A_2v_2$, we find that

$$(2) \qquad v_1 = \frac{A_2}{A_1} v_2$$

Substituting this expression into equation (1) gives

$$P_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho \left(\frac{A_2}{A_1}\right)^2 v_2{}^2 = P_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2{}^2$$

$$\boxed{v_2 = A_1 \sqrt{\frac{2(P_1 - P_2)}{\rho(A_1{}^2 - A_2{}^2)}}}$$

We can use this result and the continuity equation to obtain an expression for v_1. Because $A_2 < A_1$, Equation (2) shows us that $v_2 > v_1$. This result, together with equation (1), indicates that $P_1 > P_2$. In other words, the pressure is reduced in the constricted part of the pipe. This result is somewhat analogous to the following situation: Consider a very crowded room in which people are squeezed together. As soon as a door is opened and people begin to exit, the squeezing (pressure) is least near the door, where the motion (flow) is greatest.

EXAMPLE 15.9 A Good Trick

It is possible to blow a dime off a table and into a tumbler. Place the dime about 2 cm from the edge of the table. Place the tumbler on the table horizontally with its open edge about 2 cm from the dime, as shown in Figure 15.22a. If you blow forcefully across the top of the dime, it will rise, be caught in the airstream, and end up in the tumbler. The mass of a dime is $m = 2.24$ g, and its surface area is $A = 2.50 \times 10^{-4}$ m^2. How hard are you blowing when the dime rises and travels into the tumbler?

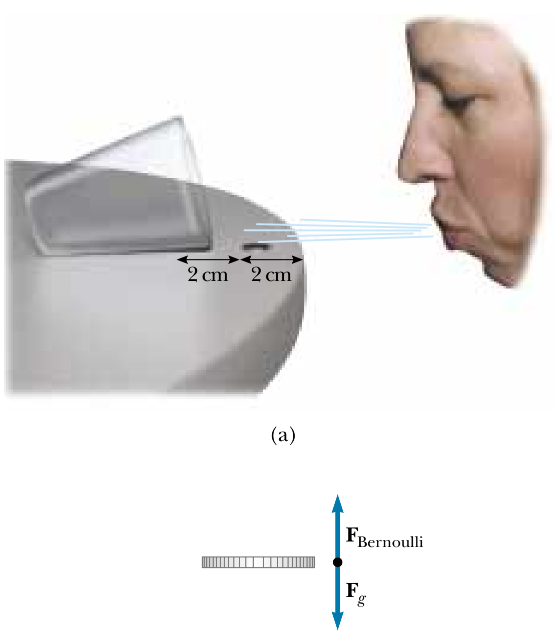


Figure 15.22

Solution Figure 15.22b indicates we must calculate the upward force acting on the dime. First, note that a thin stationary layer of air is present between the dime and the table. When you blow across the dime, it deflects most of the moving air from your breath across its top, so that the air above the dime has a greater speed than the air beneath it. This fact, together with Bernoulli's equation, demonstrates that the air moving across the top of the dime is at a lower pressure than the air beneath the dime. If we neglect the small thickness of the dime, we can apply Equation 15.8 to obtain

$$P_{\text{above}} + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_{\text{above}}^2 = P_{\text{beneath}} + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_{\text{beneath}}^2$$

Because the air beneath the dime is almost stationary, we can neglect the last term in this expression and write the difference as $P_{\text{beneath}} - P_{\text{above}} = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_{\text{above}}^2$. If we multiply this pressure difference by the surface area of the dime, we obtain the upward force acting on the dime. At the very least, this upward force must balance the gravitational force acting on the dime, and so, taking the density of air from Table 15.1, we can state that

$$F_g = mg = (P_{\text{beneath}} - P_{\text{above}})A = (\tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_{\text{above}}^2)A$$

$$v_{\text{above}} = \sqrt{\frac{2mg}{\rho A}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(2.24 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg})(9.80\ \text{m/s}^2)}{(1.29\ \text{kg/m}^3)(2.50 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m}^2)}}$$

$$v_{\text{above}} = 11.7\ \text{m/s}$$

The air you blow must be moving faster than this if the upward force is to exceed the weight of the dime. Practice this trick a few times and then impress all your friends!

EXAMPLE 15.10 Torricelli's Law

An enclosed tank containing a liquid of density ρ has a hole in its side at a distance y_1 from the tank's bottom (Fig. 15.23). The hole is open to the atmosphere, and its diameter is much smaller than the diameter of the tank. The air above the liquid is maintained at a pressure P. Determine the speed at which the liquid leaves the hole when the liquid's level is a distance h above the hole.

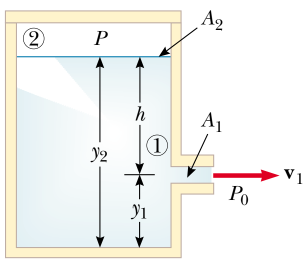


Figure 15.23 When P is much larger than atmospheric pressure P_0, the liquid speed as the liquid passes through the hole in the side of the container is given approximately by $v_1 = \sqrt{2(P - P_0)/\rho}$.

Solution Because $A_2 \gg A_1$, the liquid is approximately at rest at the top of the tank, where the pressure is P. Applying Bernoulli's equation to points 1 and 2 and noting that at the hole P_1 is equal to atmospheric pressure P_0, we find that

$$P_0 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g y_1 = P + \rho g y_2$$

But $y_2 - y_1 = h$; thus, this expression reduces to

$$v_1 = \boxed{\sqrt{\frac{2(P - P_0)}{\rho} + 2gh}}$$

When P is much greater than P_0 (so that the term $2gh$ can be neglected), the exit speed of the water is mainly a function of P. If the tank is open to the atmosphere, then $P = P_0$ and $v_1 = \sqrt{2gh}$. In other words, for an open tank, the speed of liquid coming out through a hole a distance h below the surface is equal to that acquired by an object falling freely through a vertical distance h. This phenomenon is known as **Torricelli's law.**

Optional Section

15.8 OTHER APPLICATIONS OF BERNOULLI'S EQUATION

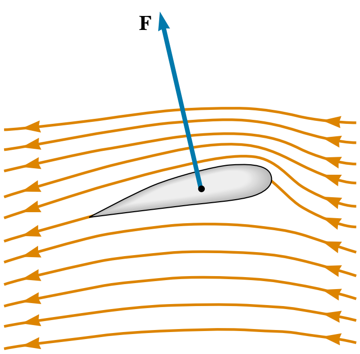


Figure 15.24 Streamline flow around an airplane wing. The pressure above the wing is less than the pressure below, and a dynamic lift upward results.

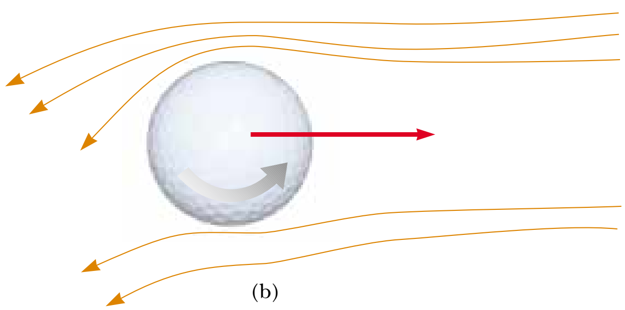
The lift on an aircraft wing can be explained, in part, by the Bernoulli effect. Airplane wings are designed so that the air speed above the wing is greater than that below the wing. As a result, the air pressure above the wing is less than the pressure below, and a net upward force on the wing, called *lift,* results.

Another factor influencing the lift on a wing is shown in Figure 15.24. The wing has a slight upward tilt that causes air molecules striking its bottom to be deflected downward. This deflection means that the wing is exerting a downward force on the air. According to Newton's third law, the air must exert an equal and opposite force on the wing.

Finally, turbulence also has an effect. If the wing is tilted too much, the flow of air across the upper surface becomes turbulent, and the pressure difference across the wing is not as great as that predicted by Bernoulli's equation. In an extreme case, this turbulence may cause the aircraft to stall.

In general, an object moving through a fluid experiences lift as the result of any effect that causes the fluid to change its direction as it flows past the object. Some factors that influence lift are the shape of the object, its orientation with respect to the fluid flow, any spinning motion it might have, and the texture of its surface. For example, a golf ball struck with a club is given a rapid backspin, as shown in Figure 15.25a. The dimples on the ball help "entrain" the air to follow the curvature of the ball's surface. This effect is most pronounced on the top half of the ball, where the ball's surface is moving in the same direction as the air flow. Figure 15.25b shows a thin layer of air wrapping part way around the ball and being deflected downward as a result. Because the ball pushes the air down, the air must push up on the ball. Without the dimples, the air is not as well entrained,

(a)



(b)

Figure 15.25 (a) A golf ball is made to spin when struck by the club. (b) The spinning ball experiences a lifting force that allows it to travel much farther than it would if it were not spinning.

QuickLab

You can easily demonstrate the effect of changing fluid direction by lightly holding the back of a spoon against a stream of water coming from a faucet. You will see the stream "attach" itself to the curvature of the spoon and be deflected sideways. You will also feel the third-law force exerted by the water on the spoon.

and the golf ball does not travel as far. For the same reason, a tennis ball's fuzz helps the spinning ball "grab" the air rushing by and helps deflect it.

A number of devices operate by means of the pressure differentials that result from differences in a fluid's speed. For example, a stream of air passing over one end of an open tube, the other end of which is immersed in a liquid, reduces the pressure above the tube, as illustrated in Figure 15.26. This reduction in pressure causes the liquid to rise into the air stream. The liquid is then dispersed into a fine spray of droplets. You might recognize that this so-called atomizer is used in perfume bottles and paint sprayers. The same principle is used in the carburetor of a gasoline engine. In this case, the low-pressure region in the carburetor is produced by air drawn in by the piston through the air filter. The gasoline vaporizes in that region, mixes with the air, and enters the cylinder of the engine, where combustion occurs.

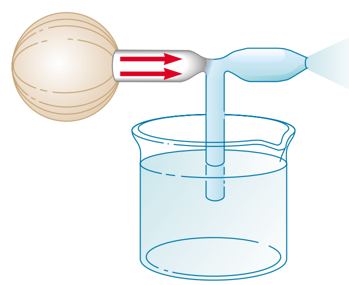


Figure 15.26 A stream of air passing over a tube dipped into a liquid causes the liquid to rise in the tube.

Quick Quiz 15.10

People in buildings threatened by a tornado are often told to open the windows to minimize damage. Why?

SUMMARY

The **pressure** P in a fluid is the force per unit area exerted by the fluid on a surface:

$$P \equiv \frac{F}{A} \qquad \textbf{(15.1)}$$

In the SI system, pressure has units of newtons per square meter (N/m^2), and $1\ N/m^2 = 1$ pascal (Pa).

The pressure in a fluid at rest varies with depth h in the fluid according to the expression

$$P = P_0 + \rho g h \qquad \textbf{(15.4)}$$

where P_0 is atmospheric pressure ($= 1.013 \times 10^5\ N/m^2$) and ρ is the density of the fluid, assumed uniform.

Pascal's law states that when pressure is applied to an enclosed fluid, the pressure is transmitted undiminished to every point in the fluid and to every point on the walls of the container.

When an object is partially or fully submerged in a fluid, the fluid exerts on the object an upward force called the **buoyant force.** According to **Archimedes's principle,** the magnitude of the buoyant force is equal to the weight of the fluid displaced by the object. Be sure you can apply this principle to a wide variety of situations, including sinking objects, floating ones, and neutrally buoyant ones.

You can understand various aspects of a fluid's dynamics by assuming that the fluid is nonviscous and incompressible and that the fluid's motion is a steady flow with no rotation.

Two important concepts regarding ideal fluid flow through a pipe of nonuniform size are as follows:

1. The flow rate (volume flux) through the pipe is constant; this is equivalent to stating that the product of the cross-sectional area A and the speed v at any point is a constant. This result is expressed in the **equation of continuity:**

$$A_1 v_1 = A_2 v_2 = \text{constant} \qquad \textbf{(15.7)}$$

   You can use this expression to calculate how the velocity of a fluid changes as the fluid is constricted or as it flows into a more open area.

2. The sum of the pressure, kinetic energy per unit volume, and gravitational potential energy per unit volume has the same value at all points along a streamline. This result is summarized in **Bernoulli's equation:**

$$P + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho g y = \text{constant} \qquad \textbf{(15.9)}$$

QUESTIONS

1. Two drinking glasses of the same weight but of different shape and different cross-sectional area are filled to the same level with water. According to the expression $P = P_0 + \rho g h$, the pressure at the bottom of both glasses is the same. In view of this, why does one glass weigh more than the other?

2. If the top of your head has a surface area of $100\ cm^2$, what is the weight of the air above your head?

3. When you drink a liquid through a straw, you reduce the pressure in your mouth and let the atmosphere move the liquid. Explain why this is so. Can you use a straw to sip a drink on the Moon?

4. A helium-filled balloon rises until its density becomes the same as that of the surrounding air. If a sealed submarine begins to sink, will it go all the way to the bottom of the ocean or will it stop when its density becomes the same as that of the surrounding water?

5. A fish rests on the bottom of a bucket of water while the

bucket is being weighed. When the fish begins to swim around, does the weight change?

6. Does a ship ride higher in the water of an inland lake or in the ocean? Why?
7. Lead has a greater density than iron, and both metals are denser than water. Is the buoyant force on a lead object greater than, less than, or equal to the buoyant force on an iron object of the same volume?
8. The water supply for a city is often provided by reservoirs built on high ground. Water flows from the reservoir, through pipes, and into your home when you turn the tap on your faucet. Why is the flow of water more rapid out of a faucet on the first floor of a building than it is in an apartment on a higher floor?
9. Smoke rises in a chimney faster when a breeze is blowing than when there is no breeze at all. Use Bernoulli's equation to explain this phenomenon.
10. If a Ping–Pong ball is above a hair dryer, the ball can be suspended in the air column emitted by the dryer. Explain.
11. When ski jumpers are airborne (Fig. Q15.11), why do they bend their bodies forward and keep their hands at their sides?

Figure Q15.11

12. Explain why a sealed bottle partially filled with a liquid can float.
13. When is the buoyant force on a swimmer greater—after exhaling or after inhaling?
14. A piece of unpainted wood barely floats in a container partly filled with water. If the container is sealed and then pressurized above atmospheric pressure, does the wood rise, sink, or remain at the same level? (*Hint:* Wood is porous.)
15. A flat plate is immersed in a liquid at rest. For what orientation of the plate is the pressure on its flat surface uniform?
16. Because atmospheric pressure is about 10^5 N/m^2 and the area of a person's chest is about 0.13 m^2, the force of the atmosphere on one's chest is around 13 000 N. In view of this enormous force, why don't our bodies collapse?
17. How would you determine the density of an irregularly shaped rock?
18. Why do airplane pilots prefer to take off into the wind?
19. If you release a ball while inside a freely falling elevator, the ball remains in front of you rather than falling to the floor because the ball, the elevator, and you all experience the same downward acceleration **g**. What happens if you repeat this experiment with a helium-filled balloon? (This one is tricky.)
20. Two identical ships set out to sea. One is loaded with a cargo of Styrofoam, and the other is empty. Which ship is more submerged?
21. A small piece of steel is tied to a block of wood. When the wood is placed in a tub of water with the steel on top, half of the block is submerged. If the block is inverted so that the steel is underwater, does the amount of the block submerged increase, decrease, or remain the same? What happens to the water level in the tub when the block is inverted?
22. Prairie dogs (Fig. Q15.22) ventilate their burrows by building a mound over one entrance, which is open to a stream of air. A second entrance at ground level is open to almost stagnant air. How does this construction create an air flow through the burrow?

Figure Q15.22

23. An unopened can of diet cola floats when placed in a tank of water, whereas a can of regular cola of the same brand sinks in the tank. What do you suppose could explain this phenomenon?
24. Figure Q15.24 shows a glass cylinder containing four liquids of different densities. From top to bottom, the liquids are oil (orange), water (yellow), salt water (green), and mercury (silver). The cylinder also contains, from top to bottom, a Ping–Pong ball, a piece of wood, an egg, and a steel ball. (a) Which of these liquids has the lowest density, and which has the greatest? (b) What can you conclude about the density of each object?

Figure Q15.24

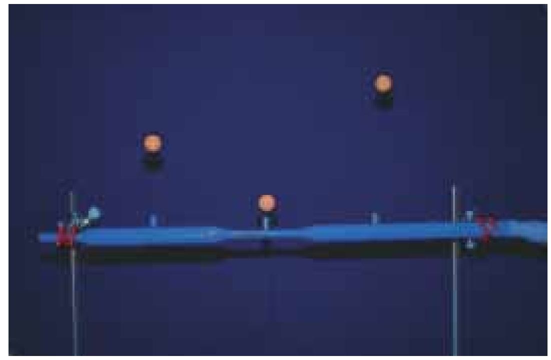


Figure Q15.25

25. In Figure Q15.25, an air stream moves from right to left through a tube that is constricted at the middle. Three Ping–Pong balls are levitated in equilibrium above the vertical columns through which the air escapes. (a) Why is the ball at the right higher than the one in the middle? (b) Why is the ball at the left lower than the ball at the right even though the horizontal tube has the same dimensions at these two points?

26. You are a passenger on a spacecraft. For your comfort, the interior contains air just like that at the surface of the Earth. The craft is coasting through a very empty region of space. That is, a nearly perfect vacuum exists just outside the wall. Suddenly a meteoroid pokes a hole, smaller than the palm of your hand, right through the wall next to your seat. What will happen? Is there anything you can or should do about it?

PROBLEMS

1, 2, 3 = straightforward, intermediate, challenging ☐ = full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide*
WEB = solution posted at **http://www.saunderscollege.com/physics/** = Computer useful in solving problem = Interactive Physics
☐ = paired numerical/symbolic problems

Section 15.1 Pressure

1. Calculate the mass of a solid iron sphere that has a diameter of 3.00 cm.
2. Find the order of magnitude of the density of the *nucleus* of an atom. What does this result suggest concerning the structure of matter? (Visualize a nucleus as protons and neutrons closely packed together. Each has mass 1.67×10^{-27} kg and radius on the order of 10^{-15} m.)
3. A 50.0-kg woman balances on one heel of a pair of high-heeled shoes. If the heel is circular and has a radius of 0.500 cm, what pressure does she exert on the floor?
4. The four tires of an automobile are inflated to a gauge pressure of 200 kPa. Each tire has an area of 0.024 0 m^2 in contact with the ground. Determine the weight of the automobile.
5. What is the total mass of the Earth's atmosphere? (The radius of the Earth is 6.37×10^6 m, and atmospheric pressure at the Earth's surface is 1.013×10^5 N/m^2.)

Section 15.2 Variation of Pressure with Depth

6. (a) Calculate the absolute pressure at an ocean depth of 1 000 m. Assume the density of seawater is 1 024 kg/m^3 and that the air above exerts a pressure of 101.3 kPa. (b) At this depth, what force must the frame around a circular submarine porthole having a diameter of 30.0 cm exert to counterbalance the force exerted by the water?
7. The spring of the pressure gauge shown in Figure 15.2 has a force constant of 1 000 N/m, and the piston has a diameter of 2.00 cm. When the gauge is lowered into water, at what depth does the piston move in by 0.500 cm?
8. The small piston of a hydraulic lift has a cross-sectional area of 3.00 cm^2, and its large piston has a cross-sectional area of 200 cm^2 (see Fig. 15.5a). What force must be applied to the small piston for it to raise a load of 15.0 kN? (In service stations, this force is usually generated with the use of compressed air.)

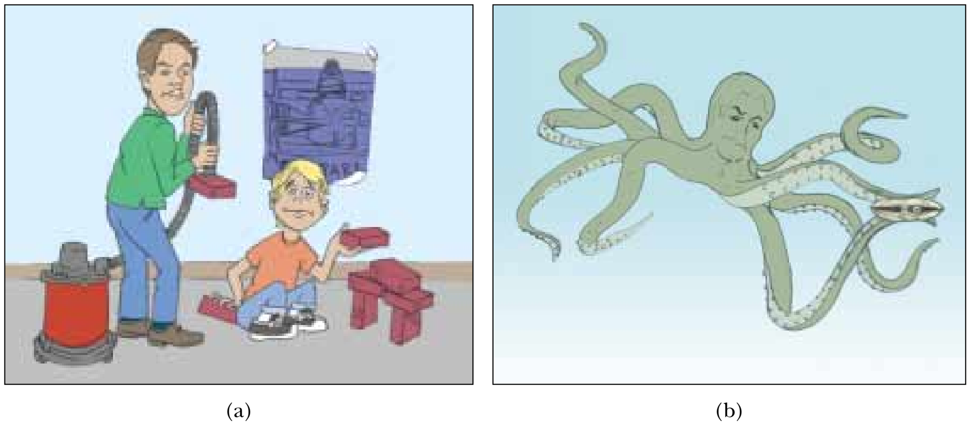


Figure P15.10

WEB 9. What must be the contact area between a suction cup (completely exhausted) and a ceiling if the cup is to support the weight of an 80.0-kg student?

10. (a) A very powerful vacuum cleaner has a hose 2.86 cm in diameter. With no nozzle on the hose, what is the weight of the heaviest brick that the cleaner can lift (Fig. P15.10)? (b) A very powerful octopus uses one sucker of diameter 2.86 cm on each of the two shells of a clam in an attempt to pull the shells apart. Find the greatest force that the octopus can exert in salt water 32.3 m in depth. (*Caution:* Experimental verification can be interesting, but do not drop a brick on your foot. Do not overheat the motor of a vacuum cleaner. Do not get an octopus mad at you.)

11. For the cellar of a new house, a hole with vertical sides descending 2.40 m is dug in the ground. A concrete foundation wall is built all the way across the 9.60-m width of the excavation. This foundation wall is 0.183 m away from the front of the cellar hole. During a rainstorm, drainage from the street fills up the space in front of the concrete wall but not the cellar behind the wall. The water does not soak into the clay soil. Find the force that the water causes on the foundation wall. For comparison, the weight of the water is given by

$$2.40\text{ m} \times 9.60\text{ m} \times 0.183\text{ m} \times 1\,000\text{ kg/m}^3 \times 9.80\text{ m/s}^2 = 41.3\text{ kN}$$

12. A swimming pool has dimensions 30.0 m × 10.0 m and a flat bottom. When the pool is filled to a depth of 2.00 m with fresh water, what is the force caused by the water on the bottom? On each end? On each side?

13. A sealed spherical shell of diameter d is rigidly attached to a cart that is moving horizontally with an acceleration a, as shown in Figure P15.13. The sphere is nearly filled with a fluid having density ρ and also contains one small bubble of air at atmospheric pressure. Find an expression for the pressure P at the center of the sphere.

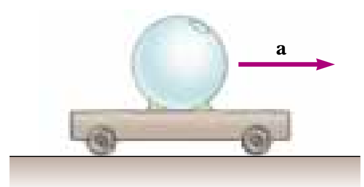


Figure P15.13

14. The tank shown in Figure P15.14 is filled with water to a depth of 2.00 m. At the bottom of one of the side walls is a rectangular hatch 1.00 m high and 2.00 m wide. The hatch is hinged at its top. (a) Determine the force that the water exerts on the hatch. (b) Find the torque exerted about the hinges.

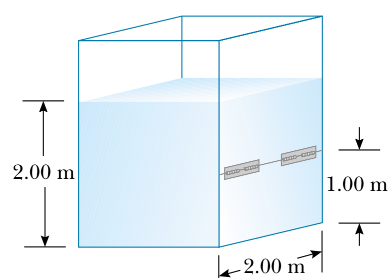


Figure P15.14

15. Review Problem. A solid copper ball with a diameter of 3.00 m at sea level is placed at the bottom of the ocean (at a depth of 10.0 km). If the density of seawater is 1 030 kg/m^3, by how much (approximately) does the diameter of the ball decrease when it reaches bottom? Take the bulk modulus of copper as 14.0×10^{10} N/m^2.

Section 15.3 Pressure Measurements

16. Normal atmospheric pressure is 1.013×10^5 Pa. The approach of a storm causes the height of a mercury barometer to drop by 20.0 mm from the normal height. What is the atmospheric pressure? (The density of mercury is 13.59 g/cm^3.)

WEB **17.** Blaise Pascal duplicated Torricelli's barometer, using a red Bordeaux wine, of density 984 kg/m^3, as the working liquid (Fig. P15.17). What was the height h of the wine column for normal atmospheric pressure? Would you expect the vacuum above the column to be as good as that for mercury?

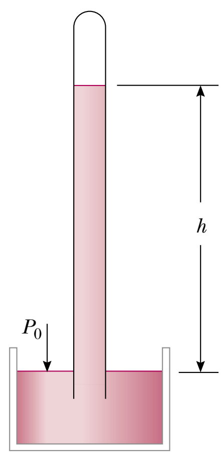


Figure P15.17

18. Mercury is poured into a U-tube, as shown in Figure P15.18a. The left arm of the tube has a cross-sectional area A_1 of 10.0 cm^2, and the right arm has a cross-sectional area A_2 of 5.00 cm^2. One-hundred grams of water are then poured into the right arm, as shown in Figure P15.18b. (a) Determine the length of the water column in the right arm of the U-tube. (b) Given that the density of mercury is 13.6 g/cm^3, what distance h does the mercury rise in the left arm?

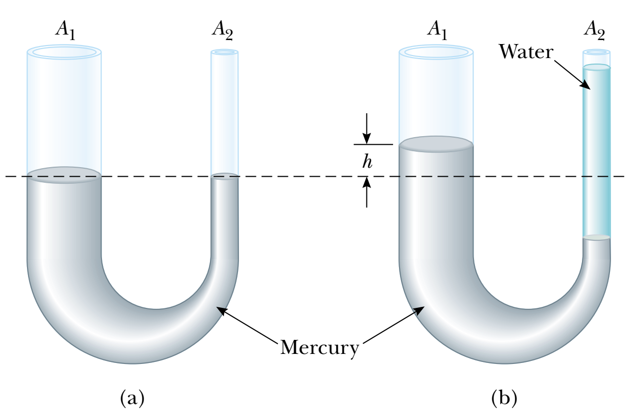


Figure P15.18

19. A U-tube of uniform cross-sectional area and open to the atmosphere is partially filled with mercury. Water is then poured into both arms. If the equilibrium configuration of the tube is as shown in Figure P15.19, with $h_2 = 1.00$ cm, determine the value of h_1.

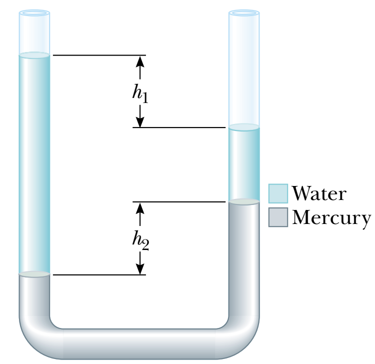


Figure P15.19

Section 15.4 Buoyant Forces and Archimedes's Principle

20. (a) A light balloon is filled with 400 m^3 of helium. At 0°C, what is the mass of the payload that the balloon can lift? (b) In Table 15.1, note that the density of hydrogen is nearly one-half the density of helium. What load can the balloon lift if it is filled with hydrogen?

21. A Styrofoam slab has a thickness of 10.0 cm and a density of 300 kg/m^3. When a 75.0-kg swimmer is resting on it, the slab floats in fresh water with its top at the same level as the water's surface. Find the area of the slab.

22. A Styrofoam slab has thickness h and density ρ_S. What is the area of the slab if it floats with its upper surface just awash in fresh water, when a swimmer of mass m is on top?

23. A piece of aluminum with mass 1.00 kg and density 2 700 kg/m^3 is suspended from a string and then completely immersed in a container of water (Fig. P15.23). Calculate the tension in the string (a) before and (b) after the metal is immersed.

24. A 10.0-kg block of metal measuring 12.0 cm $\times$ 10.0 cm $\times$ 10.0 cm is suspended from a scale and immersed in water, as shown in Figure P15.23b. The 12.0-cm dimension is vertical, and the top of the block is 5.00 cm from the surface of the water. (a) What are the forces acting on the top and on the bottom of the block? (Take $P_0 = 1.013\,0 \times 10^5$ N/m^2.) (b) What is the reading of the spring scale? (c) Show that the buoyant force equals the difference between the forces at the top and bottom of the block.

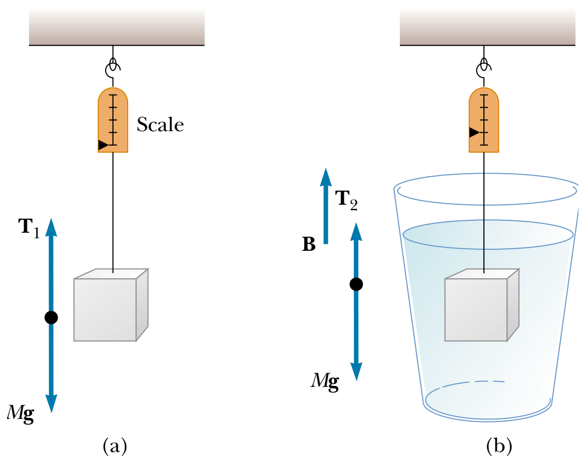


Figure P15.23 Problems 23 and 24.

WEB **25.** A cube of wood having a side dimension of 20.0 cm and a density of 650 kg/m^3 floats on water. (a) What is the distance from the horizontal top surface of the cube to the water level? (b) How much lead weight must be placed on top of the cube so that its top is just level with the water?

26. To an order of magnitude, how many helium-filled toy balloons would be required to lift you? Because helium is an irreplaceable resource, develop a theoretical answer rather than an experimental answer. In your solution, state what physical quantities you take as data and the values you measure or estimate for them.

27. A plastic sphere floats in water with 50.0% of its volume submerged. This same sphere floats in glycerin with 40.0% of its volume submerged. Determine the densities of the glycerin and the sphere.

28. A frog in a hemispherical pod finds that he just floats without sinking into a sea of blue-green ooze having a density of 1.35 g/cm^3 (Fig. P15.28). If the pod has a radius of 6.00 cm and a negligible mass, what is the mass of the frog?

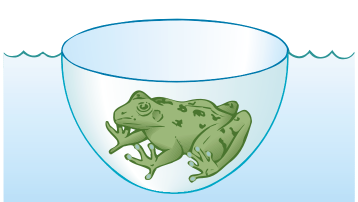


Figure P15.28

29. How many cubic meters of helium are required to lift a balloon with a 400-kg payload to a height of 8 000 m? (Take $\rho_{\text{He}} = 0.180$ kg/m^3.) Assume that the balloon maintains a constant volume and that the density of air decreases with the altitude z according to the expression $\rho_{\text{air}} = \rho_0 e^{-z/8\,000}$, where z is in meters and $\rho_0 = 1.25$ kg/m^3 is the density of air at sea level.

30. **Review Problem.** A long cylindrical tube of radius r is weighted on one end so that it floats upright in a fluid having a density ρ. It is pushed downward a distance x from its equilibrium position and then released. Show that the tube will execute simple harmonic motion if the resistive effects of the water are neglected, and determine the period of the oscillations.

31. A bathysphere used for deep-sea exploration has a radius of 1.50 m and a mass of 1.20×10^4 kg. To dive, this submarine takes on mass in the form of seawater. Determine the amount of mass that the submarine must take on if it is to descend at a constant speed of 1.20 m/s, when the resistive force on it is 1 100 N in the upward direction. Take 1.03×10^3 kg/m^3 as the density of seawater.

32. The United States possesses the eight largest warships in the world—aircraft carriers of the *Nimitz* class—and it is building one more. Suppose that one of the ships bobs up to float 11.0 cm higher in the water when 50 fighters take off from it at a location where $g = 9.78$ m/s^2. The planes have an average mass of 29 000 kg. Find the horizontal area enclosed by the waterline of the ship. (By comparison, its flight deck has an area of 18 000 m^2.)

Section 15.5 Fluid Dynamics

Section 15.6 Streamlines and the Equation of Continuity

Section 15.7 Bernoulli's Equation

33. (a) A water hose 2.00 cm in diameter is used to fill a 20.0-L bucket. If it takes 1.00 min to fill the bucket, what is the speed v at which water moves through the hose? (*Note:* 1 L = 1 000 cm^3.) (b) If the hose has a nozzle 1.00 cm in diameter, find the speed of the water at the nozzle.

34. A horizontal pipe 10.0 cm in diameter has a smooth reduction to a pipe 5.00 cm in diameter. If the pressure of the water in the larger pipe is 8.00×10^4 Pa and the pressure in the smaller pipe is 6.00×10^4 Pa, at what rate does water flow through the pipes?

35. A large storage tank, open at the top and filled with water, develops a small hole in its side at a point 16.0 m below the water level. If the rate of flow from the leak is 2.50×10^{-3} m^3/min, determine (a) the speed at which the water leaves the hole and (b) the diameter of the hole.

36. Through a pipe of diameter 15.0 cm, water is pumped from the Colorado River up to Grand Canyon Village, located on the rim of the canyon. The river is at an elevation of 564 m, and the village is at an elevation of 2 096 m. (a) What is the minimum pressure at which the water must be pumped if it is to arrive at the village?

(b) If 4 500 m^3 are pumped per day, what is the speed of the water in the pipe? (c) What additional pressure is necessary to deliver this flow? (*Note:* You may assume that the acceleration due to gravity and the density of air are constant over this range of elevations.)

37. Water flows through a fire hose of diameter 6.35 cm at a rate of 0.012 0 m^3/s. The fire hose ends in a nozzle with an inner diameter of 2.20 cm. What is the speed at which the water exits the nozzle?

38. Old Faithful Geyser in Yellowstone National Park erupts at approximately 1-h intervals, and the height of the water column reaches 40.0 m (Fig. P15.38). (a) Consider the rising stream as a series of separate drops. Analyze the free-fall motion of one of these drops to determine the speed at which the water leaves the ground. (b) Treating the rising stream as an ideal fluid in streamline flow, use Bernoulli's equation to determine the speed of the water as it leaves ground level. (c) What is the pressure (above atmospheric) in the heated underground chamber if its depth is 175 m? You may assume that the chamber is large compared with the geyser's vent.

Figure P15.38

(Optional)

Section 15.8 Other Applications of Bernoulli's Equation

39. An airplane has a mass of 1.60×10^4 kg, and each wing has an area of 40.0 m^2. During level flight, the pressure on the lower wing surface is 7.00×10^4 Pa. Determine the pressure on the upper wing surface.

40. A Venturi tube may be used as a fluid flow meter (see Fig. 15.21). If the difference in pressure is $P_1 - P_2 = 21.0$ kPa, find the fluid flow rate in cubic meters per second, given that the radius of the outlet tube is 1.00 cm, the radius of the inlet tube is 2.00 cm, and the fluid is gasoline ($\rho = 700$ kg/m^3).

41. A Pitot tube can be used to determine the velocity of air flow by measuring the difference between the total pressure and the static pressure (Fig. P15.41). If the fluid in the tube is mercury, whose density is $\rho_{Hg} =$ 13 600 kg/m^3, and if $\Delta h = 5.00$ cm, find the speed of air flow. (Assume that the air is stagnant at point A, and take $\rho_{air} = 1.25$ kg/m^3.)

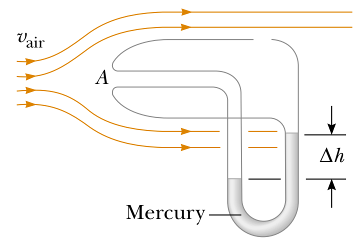


Figure P15.41

42. An airplane is cruising at an altitude of 10 km. The pressure outside the craft is 0.287 atm; within the passenger compartment, the pressure is 1.00 atm and the temperature is 20°C. A small leak occurs in one of the window seals in the passenger compartment. Model the air as an ideal fluid to find the speed of the stream of air flowing through the leak.

43. A siphon is used to drain water from a tank, as illustrated in Figure P15.43. The siphon has a uniform diameter. Assume steady flow without friction. (a) If the distance $h = 1.00$ m, find the speed of outflow at the end of the siphon. (b) What is the limitation on the height of the top of the siphon above the water surface? (For the flow of liquid to be continuous, the pressure must not drop below the vapor pressure of the liquid.)

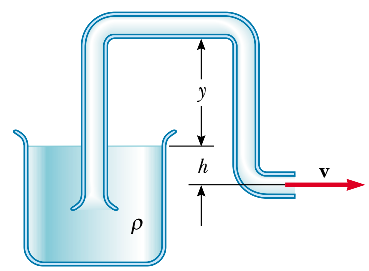


Figure P15.43

44. A hypodermic syringe contains a medicine with the density of water (Fig. P15.44). The barrel of the syringe has a cross-sectional area $A = 2.50 \times 10^{-5}$ m^2, and the needle has a cross-sectional area $a = 1.00 \times 10^{-8}$ m^2. In the absence of a force on the plunger, the pressure everywhere is 1 atm. A force **F** of magnitude 2.00 N acts on the plunger, making the medicine squirt horizontally from the needle. Determine the speed of the medicine as it leaves the needle's tip.

WEB **45.** A large storage tank is filled to a height h_0. The tank is punctured at a height h above the bottom of the tank (Fig. P15.45). Find an expression for how far from the tank the exiting stream lands.

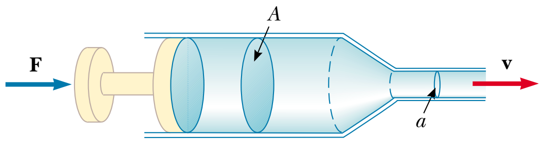


Figure P15.44

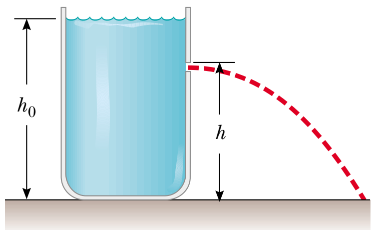


Figure P15.45 Problems 45 and 46.

46. A hole is punched at a height h in the side of a container of height h_0. The container is full of water, as shown in Figure P15.45. If the water is to shoot as far as possible horizontally, (a) how far from the bottom of the container should the hole be punched? (b) Neglecting frictional losses, how far (initially) from the side of the container will the water land?

ADDITIONAL PROBLEMS

47. A Ping–Pong ball has a diameter of 3.80 cm and an average density of 0.084 0 g/cm^3. What force would be required to hold it completely submerged under water?

48. Figure P15.48 shows a tank of water with a valve at the bottom. If this valve is opened, what is the maximum height attained by the water stream exiting the right side of the tank? Assume that $h = 10.0$ m, $L = 2.00$ m, and $\theta = 30.0°$, and that the cross-sectional area at point A is very large compared with that at point B.

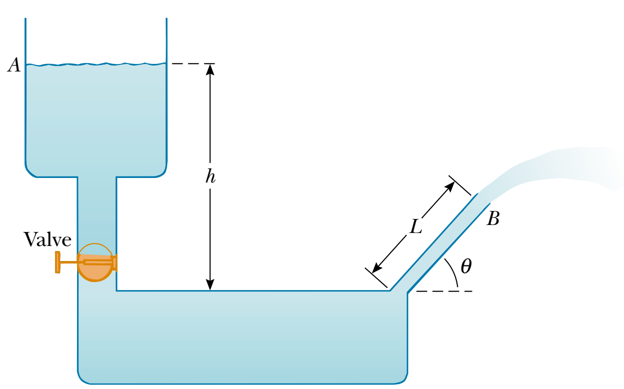


Figure P15.48

49. A helium-filled balloon is tied to a 2.00-m-long, 0.050 0-kg uniform string. The balloon is spherical with a radius of 0.400 m. When released, the balloon lifts a length h of string and then remains in equilibrium, as shown in Figure P15.49. Determine the value of h. The envelope of the balloon has a mass of 0.250 kg.

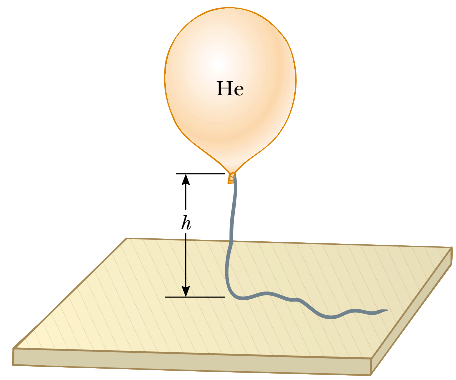


Figure P15.49

50. Water is forced out of a fire extinguisher by air pressure, as shown in Figure P15.50. How much gauge air pressure in the tank (above atmospheric) is required for the water jet to have a speed of 30.0 m/s when the water level is 0.500 m below the nozzle?

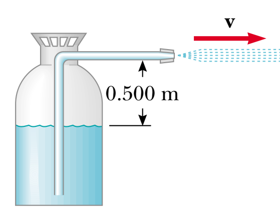


Figure P15.50

51. The true weight of an object is measured in a vacuum, where buoyant forces are absent. An object of volume V is weighed in air on a balance with the use of weights of density ρ. If the density of air is ρ_{air} and the balance reads F_g', show that the true weight F_g is

$$F_g = F_g' + \left(V - \frac{F_g'}{\rho g}\right)\rho_{air} g$$

52. Evangelista Torricelli was the first to realize that we live at the bottom of an ocean of air. He correctly surmised that the pressure of our atmosphere is attributable to the weight of the air. The density of air at 0°C at the Earth's surface is 1.29 kg/m^3. The density decreases with increasing altitude (as the atmosphere thins). On the other hand, if we assume that the density is constant

(1.29 kg/m^3) up to some altitude h, and zero above that altitude, then h would represent the thickness of our atmosphere. Use this model to determine the value of h that gives a pressure of 1.00 atm at the surface of the Earth. Would the peak of Mt. Everest rise above the surface of such an atmosphere?

53. A wooden dowel has a diameter of 1.20 cm. It floats in water with 0.400 cm of its diameter above water level (Fig. P15.53). Determine the density of the dowel.

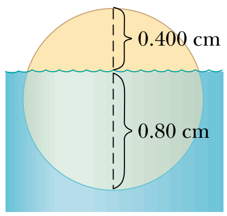
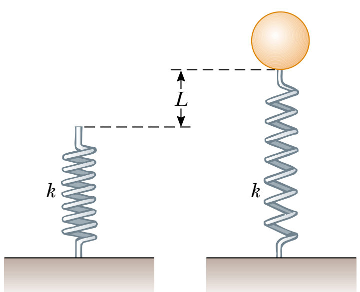


Figure P15.53

54. A light spring of constant k = 90.0 N/m rests vertically on a table (Fig. P15.54a). A 2.00-g balloon is filled with helium (density = 0.180 kg/m^3) to a volume of 5.00 m^3 and is then connected to the spring, causing it to stretch as shown in Figure P15.54b. Determine the extension distance L when the balloon is in equilibrium.



(a) (b)

Figure P15.54

55. A 1.00-kg beaker containing 2.00 kg of oil (density = 916.0 kg/m^3) rests on a scale. A 2.00-kg block of iron is suspended from a spring scale and completely submerged in the oil, as shown in Figure P15.55. Determine the equilibrium readings of both scales.

56. A beaker of mass m_b containing oil of mass m_0 (density = ρ_0) rests on a scale. A block of iron of mass m_{Fe} is suspended from a spring scale and completely submerged in the oil, as shown in Figure P15.55. Determine the equilibrium readings of both scales.

WEB **57.** **Review Problem.** With reference to Figure 15.7, show that the total torque exerted by the water behind the dam about an axis through O is $\frac{1}{6}\rho g w H^3$. Show that the effective line of action of the total force exerted by the water is at a distance $\frac{1}{3}H$ above O.

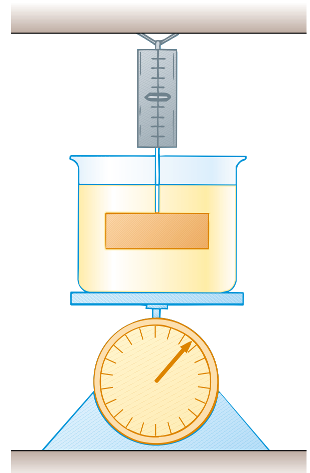


Figure P15.55 Problems 55 and 56.

58. In about 1657 Otto von Guericke, inventor of the air pump, evacuated a sphere made of two brass hemispheres. Two teams of eight horses each could pull the hemispheres apart only on some trials, and then "with greatest difficulty," with the resulting sound likened to a cannon firing (Fig. P15.58). (a) Show that the force F

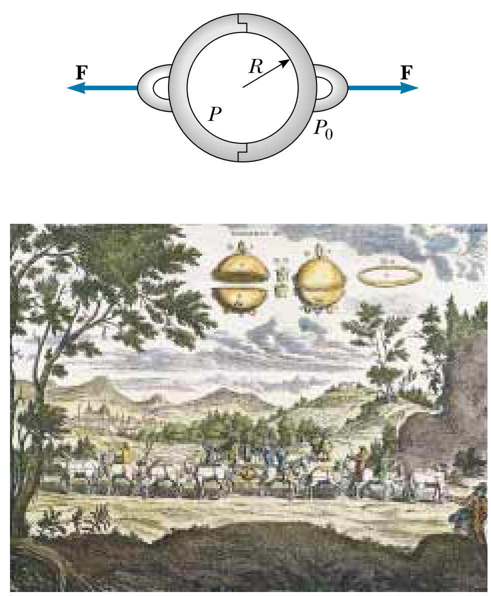


Figure P15.58 The colored engraving, dated 1672, illustrates Otto von Guericke's demonstration of the force due to air pressure as performed before Emperor Ferdinand III in 1657. (

required to pull the evacuated hemispheres apart is $\pi R^2(P_0 - P)$, where R is the radius of the hemispheres and P is the pressure inside the hemispheres, which is much less than P_0. (b) Determine the force if $P = 0.100P_0$ and $R = 0.300$ m.

59. In 1983 the United States began coining the cent piece out of copper-clad zinc rather than pure copper. The mass of the old copper cent is 3.083 g, whereas that of the new cent is 2.517 g. Calculate the percent of zinc (by volume) in the new cent. The density of copper is 8.960 g/cm^3, and that of zinc is 7.133 g/cm^3. The new and old coins have the same volume.

60. A thin spherical shell with a mass of 4.00 kg and a diameter of 0.200 m is filled with helium (density = 0.180 kg/m^3). It is then released from rest on the bottom of a pool of water that is 4.00 m deep. (a) Neglecting frictional effects, show that the shell rises with constant acceleration and determine the value of that acceleration. (b) How long does it take for the top of the shell to reach the water's surface?

61. An incompressible, nonviscous fluid initially rests in the vertical portion of the pipe shown in Figure P15.61a, where $L = 2.00$ m. When the valve is opened, the fluid flows into the horizontal section of the pipe. What is the speed of the fluid when all of it is in the horizontal section, as in Figure P15.61b? Assume that the cross-sectional area of the entire pipe is constant.

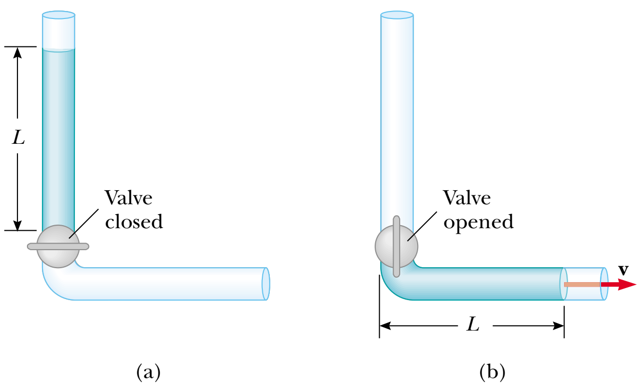


Figure P15.61

62. Review Problem. A uniform disk with a mass of 10.0 kg and a radius of 0.250 m spins at 300 rev/min on a low-friction axle. It must be brought to a stop in 1.00 min by a brake pad that makes contact with the disk at an average distance of 0.220 m from the axis. The coefficient of friction between the pad and the disk is 0.500. A piston in a cylinder with a diameter of 5.00 cm presses the brake pad against the disk. Find the pressure that the brake fluid in the cylinder must have.

63. Figure P15.63 shows Superman attempting to drink water through a very long straw. With his great strength, he achieves maximum possible suction. The walls of the tubular straw do not collapse. (a) Find the maximum height through which he can lift the water. (b) Still thirsty, the Man of Steel repeats his attempt on the Moon, which has no atmosphere. Find the difference between the water levels inside and outside the straw.

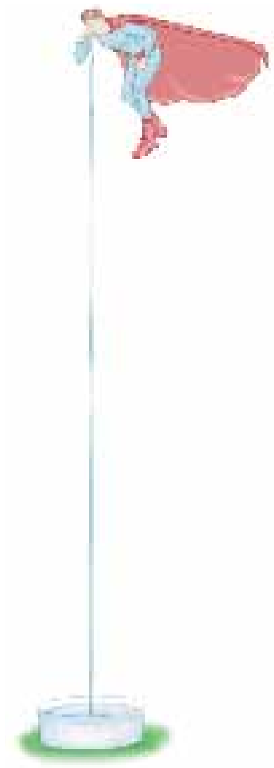


Figure P15.63

64. Show that the variation of atmospheric pressure with altitude is given by $P = P_0 e^{-\alpha h}$, where $\alpha = \rho_0 g/P_0$, P_0 is atmospheric pressure at some reference level $y = 0$, and ρ_0 is the atmospheric density at this level. Assume that the decrease in atmospheric pressure with increasing altitude is given by Equation 15.4, so that $dP/dy = -\rho g$, and assume that the density of air is proportional to the pressure.

65. A cube of ice whose edge measures 20.0 mm is floating in a glass of ice-cold water with one of its faces parallel to the water's surface. (a) How far below the water surface is the bottom face of the block? (b) Ice-cold ethyl alcohol is gently poured onto the water's surface to form a layer 5.00 mm thick above the water. The alcohol does not mix with the water. When the ice cube again attains hydrostatic equilibrium, what is the distance from the top of the water to the bottom face of the block? (c) Additional cold ethyl alcohol is poured onto the water's surface until the top surface of the alcohol coincides with the top surface of the ice cube (in

hydrostatic equilibrium). How thick is the required layer of ethyl alcohol?

66. **Review Problem.** A light balloon filled with helium with a density of 0.180 kg/m^3 is tied to a light string of length L = 3.00 m. The string is tied to the ground, forming an "inverted" simple pendulum, as shown in Figure P15.66a. If the balloon is displaced slightly from its equilibrium position as shown in Figure P15.66b, (a) show that the ensuing motion is simple harmonic and (b) determine the period of the motion. Take the density of air to be 1.29 kg/m^3 and ignore any energy loss due to air friction.

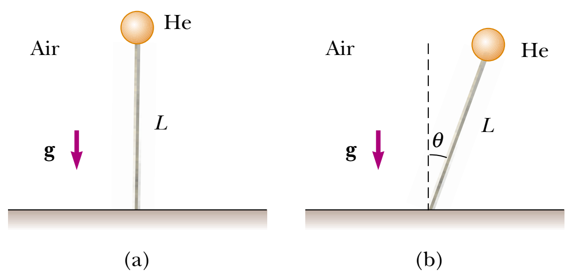


Figure P15.66

67. The water supply of a building is fed through a main 6.00-cm-diameter pipe. A 2.00-cm-diameter faucet tap located 2.00 m above the main pipe is observed to fill a 25.0-L container in 30.0 s. (a) What is the speed at which the water leaves the faucet? (b) What is the gauge pressure in the 6-cm main pipe? (Assume that the faucet is the only "leak" in the building.)

68. The *spirit-in-glass thermometer,* invented in Florence, Italy, around 1654, consists of a tube of liquid (the spirit) containing a number of submerged glass spheres with slightly different masses (Fig. P15.68). At sufficiently low temperatures, all the spheres float, but as the temperature rises, the spheres sink one after the other. The device is a crude but interesting tool for measuring temperature. Suppose that the tube is filled with ethyl alcohol, whose density is 0.789 45 g/cm^3 at 20.0°C and decreases to 0.780 97 g/cm^3 at 30.0°C. (a) If one of the spheres has a radius of 1.000 cm and is in equilibrium halfway up the tube at 20.0°C, determine its mass. (b) When the temperature increases to 30.0°C, what mass must a second sphere of the same radius have to be in equilibrium at the halfway point? (c) At 30.0°C the first sphere has fallen to the bottom of the tube. What upward force does the bottom of the tube exert on this sphere?

Figure P15.68

69. A U-tube open at both ends is partially filled with water (Fig. P15.69a). Oil having a density of 750 kg/m^3 is then poured into the right arm and forms a column L = 5.00 cm in height (Fig. P15.69b). (a) Determine the difference h in the heights of the two liquid surfaces. (b) The right arm is shielded from any air motion while air is blown across the top of the left arm until the surfaces of the two liquids are at the same height (Fig. P15.69c). Determine the speed of the air being blown across the left arm. (Take the density of air as 1.29 kg/m^3.)

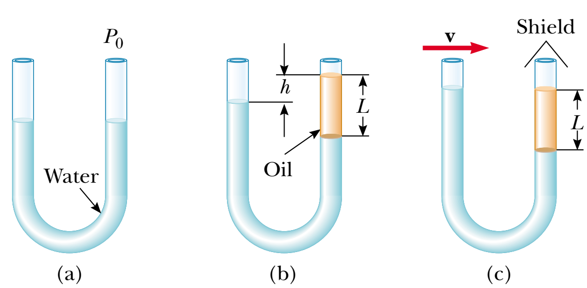


Figure P15.69

ANSWERS TO QUICK QUIZZES

15.1 You would be better off with the basketball player. Although weight is distributed over the larger surface area, equal to about half of the total surface area of the sneaker sole, the pressure (F/A) that he applies is relatively small. The woman's lesser weight is distributed over the very small cross-sectional area of the spiked heel. Some museums make women in high-heeled shoes wear slippers or special heel attachments so that they do not damage the wood floors.

15.2 If the professor were to try to support his entire weight on a single nail, the pressure exerted on his skin would be his entire weight divided by the very small surface area of the nail point. This extremely great pressure would cause the nail to puncture his skin. However, if the professor distributes his weight over several hundred nails, as shown in the photograph, the pressure exerted on his skin is considerably reduced because the surface area that supports his weight is now the total surface area of all the nail points. (Lying on the bed of nails is much more comfortable than sitting on the bed, and standing on the bed without shoes is definitely not recommended. Do not lie on a bed of nails unless you have been shown how to do so safely.)

15.3 Because the horizontal force exerted by the outside fluid on an element of the cylinder is equal and opposite the horizontal force exerted by the fluid on another element diametrically opposite the first, the net force on the cylinder in the horizontal direction is zero.

15.4 If you think of the grain stored in the silo as a fluid, then the pressure it exerts on the walls increases with increasing depth. The spacing between bands is smaller at the lower portions so that the greater outward forces acting on the walls can be overcome. The silo on the right shows another way of accomplishing the same thing: double banding at the bottom.

15.5 Because water is so much less dense than mercury, the column for a water barometer would have to be $h = P_0/\rho g = 10.3$ m high, and such a column is inconveniently tall.

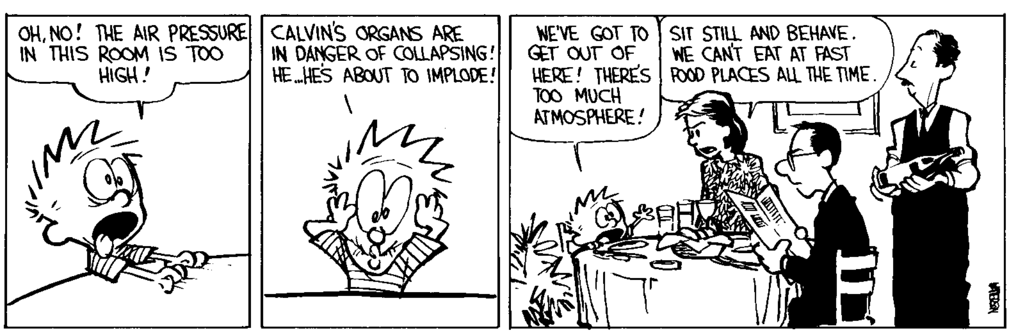
15.6 The entire hull of a ship is full of air, and the density of air is about one-thousandth the density of water. Hence, the total weight of the ship equals the weight of the volume of water that is displaced by the portion of the ship that is below sea level.

15.7 Remains the same. In effect, the ice creates a "hole" in the water, and the weight of the water displaced from the hole is the same as all the weight of the cube. When the cube changes from ice to water, the water just fills the hole.

15.8 Goes down because the anchor displaces more water while in the boat than it does in the pond. While it is in the boat, the anchor can be thought of as a floating object that displaces a volume of water weighing as much as it does. When the anchor is thrown overboard, it sinks and displaces a volume of water equal to its own volume. Because the density of the anchor is greater than that of water, the volume of water that weighs the same as the anchor is greater than the volume of the anchor.

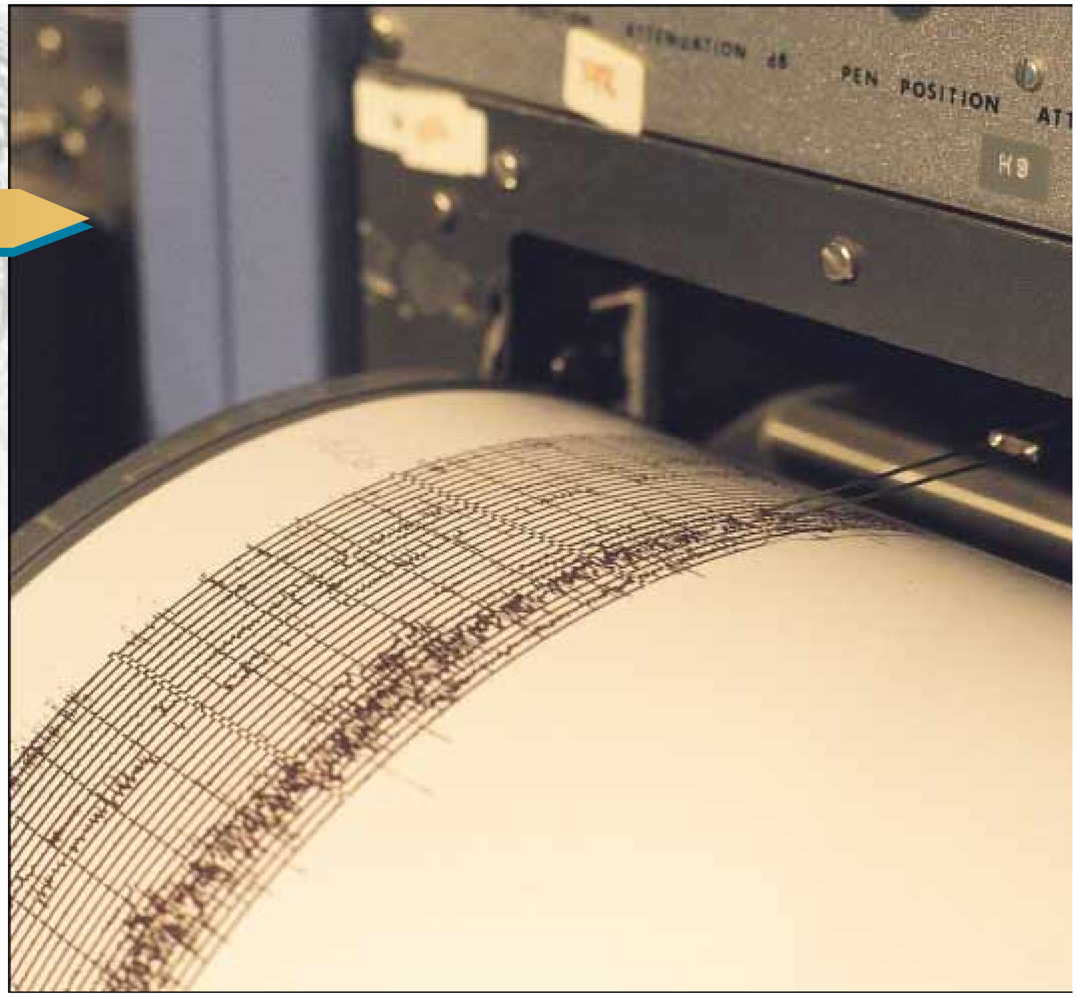
15.9 As the water falls, its speed increases. Because the flow rate Av must remain constant at all cross sections (see Eq. 15.7), the stream must become narrower as the speed increases.

15.10 The rapidly moving air characteristic of a tornado is at a pressure below atmospheric pressure. The stationary air inside the building remains at atmospheric pressure. The pressure difference results in an outward force on the roof and walls, and this force can be great enough to lift the roof off the building. Opening the windows helps to equalize the inside and outside pressures.



PUZZLER

A simple seismograph can be constructed with a spring-suspended pen that draws a line on a slowly unrolling strip of paper. The paper is mounted on a structure attached to the ground. During an earthquake, the pen remains nearly stationary while the paper shakes beneath it. How can a few jagged lines on a piece of paper allow scientists at a seismograph station to determine the distance to the origin of an earthquake? *(Ken M. Johns/Photo Researchers, Inc.)*



chapter

16 Wave Motion

Chapter Outline

Most of us experienced waves as children when we dropped a pebble into a pond. At the point where the pebble hits the water's surface, waves are created. These waves move outward from the creation point in expanding circles until they reach the shore. If you were to examine carefully the motion of a leaf floating on the disturbed water, you would see that the leaf moves up, down, and sideways about its original position but does not undergo any net displacement away from or toward the point where the pebble hit the water. The water molecules just beneath the leaf, as well as all the other water molecules on the pond's surface, behave in the same way. That is, the water *wave* moves from the point of origin to the shore, but the water is not carried with it.

An excerpt from a book by Einstein and Infeld gives the following remarks concerning wave phenomena:[1]

> A bit of gossip starting in Washington reaches New York [by word of mouth] very quickly, even though not a single individual who takes part in spreading it travels between these two cities. There are two quite different motions involved, that of the rumor, Washington to New York, and that of the persons who spread the rumor. The wind, passing over a field of grain, sets up a wave which spreads out across the whole field. Here again we must distinguish between the motion of the wave and the motion of the separate plants, which undergo only small oscillations... The particles constituting the medium perform only small vibrations, but the whole motion is that of a progressive wave. The essentially new thing here is that for the first time we consider the motion of something which is not matter, but energy propagated through matter.

The world is full of waves, the two main types being *mechanical* waves and *electromagnetic* waves. We have already mentioned examples of mechanical waves: sound waves, water waves, and "grain waves." In each case, some physical medium is being disturbed—in our three particular examples, air molecules, water molecules, and stalks of grain. Electromagnetic waves do not require a medium to propagate; some examples of electromagnetic waves are visible light, radio waves, television signals, and x-rays. Here, in Part 2 of this book, we study only mechanical waves.

The wave concept is abstract. When we observe what we call a water wave, what we see is a rearrangement of the water's surface. Without the water, there would be no wave. A wave traveling on a string would not exist without the string. Sound waves could not travel through air if there were no air molecules. With mechanical waves, what we interpret as a wave corresponds to the propagation of a disturbance through a medium.

Interference patterns produced by outward-spreading waves from many drops of liquid falling into a body of water.

[1] A. Einstein and L. Infeld, *The Evolution of Physics,* New York, Simon & Schuster, 1961. Excerpt from "What Is a Wave?"

The mechanical waves discussed in this chapter require (1) some source of disturbance, (2) a medium that can be disturbed, and (3) some physical connection through which adjacent portions of the medium can influence each other. We shall find that all waves carry energy. The amount of energy transmitted through a medium and the mechanism responsible for that transport of energy differ from case to case. For instance, the power of ocean waves during a storm is much greater than the power of sound waves generated by a single human voice.

16.1 BASIC VARIABLES OF WAVE MOTION

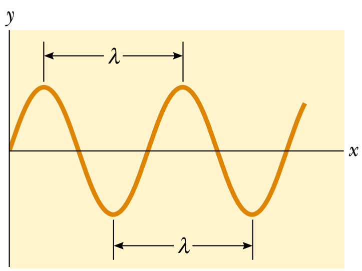


Figure 16.1 The wavelength λ of a wave is the distance between adjacent crests, adjacent troughs, or any other comparable adjacent identical points.

Imagine you are floating on a raft in a large lake. You slowly bob up and down as waves move past you. As you look out over the lake, you may be able to see the individual waves approaching. The point at which the displacement of the water from its normal level is highest is called the **crest** of the wave. The distance from one crest to the next is called the **wavelength** λ (Greek letter lambda). More generally, the wavelength is **the minimum distance between any two identical points (such as the crests) on adjacent waves,** as shown in Figure 16.1.

If you count the number of seconds between the arrivals of two adjacent waves, you are measuring the **period** T of the waves. In general, the period is **the time required for two identical points (such as the crests) of adjacent waves to pass by a point.**

The same information is more often given by the inverse of the period, which is called the **frequency** f. In general, the frequency of a periodic wave is **the number of crests (or troughs, or any other point on the wave) that pass a given point in a unit time interval.** The maximum displacement of a particle of the medium is called the **amplitude** A of the wave. For our water wave, this represents the highest distance of a water molecule above the undisturbed surface of the water as the wave passes by.

Waves travel with a specific speed, and this speed depends on the properties of the medium being disturbed. For instance, sound waves travel through room-temperature air with a speed of about 343 m/s (781 mi/h), whereas they travel through most solids with a speed greater than 343 m/s.

16.2 DIRECTION OF PARTICLE DISPLACEMENT

One way to demonstrate wave motion is to flick one end of a long rope that is under tension and has its opposite end fixed, as shown in Figure 16.2. In this manner, a single wave bump (called a *wave pulse*) is formed and travels along the rope with a definite speed. This type of disturbance is called a **traveling wave,** and Figure 16.2 represents four consecutive "snapshots" of the creation and propagation of the traveling wave. The rope is the medium through which the wave travels. Such a single pulse, in contrast to a train of pulses, has no frequency, no period, and no wavelength. However, the pulse does have definite amplitude and definite speed. As we shall see later, the properties of this particular medium that determine the speed of the wave are the tension in the rope and its mass per unit length. The shape of the wave pulse changes very little as it travels along the rope.[2]

As the wave pulse travels, each small segment of the rope, as it is disturbed, moves in a direction perpendicular to the wave motion. Figure 16.3 illustrates this

[2] Strictly speaking, the pulse changes shape and gradually spreads out during the motion. This effect is called *dispersion* and is common to many mechanical waves, as well as to electromagnetic waves. We do not consider dispersion in this chapter.

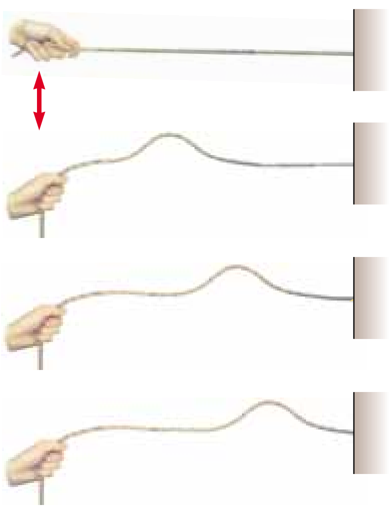


Figure 16.2 A wave pulse traveling down a stretched rope. The shape of the pulse is approximately unchanged as it travels along the rope.

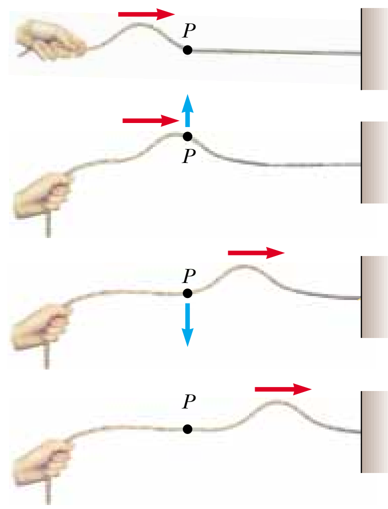


Figure 16.3 A pulse traveling on a stretched rope is a transverse wave. The direction of motion of any element P of the rope (blue arrows) is perpendicular to the direction of wave motion (red arrows).

point for one particular segment, labeled P. Note that no part of the rope ever moves in the direction of the wave.

A traveling wave that causes the particles of the disturbed medium to move perpendicular to the wave motion is called a **transverse wave.**

Transverse wave

Compare this with another type of wave—one moving down a long, stretched spring, as shown in Figure 16.4. The left end of the spring is pushed briefly to the right and then pulled briefly to the left. This movement creates a sudden compression of a region of the coils. The compressed region travels along the spring (to the right in Figure 16.4). The compressed region is followed by a region where the coils are extended. Notice that the direction of the displacement of the coils is *parallel* to the direction of propagation of the compressed region.

A traveling wave that causes the particles of the medium to move parallel to the direction of wave motion is called a **longitudinal wave.**

Longitudinal wave

Sound waves, which we shall discuss in Chapter 17, are another example of longitudinal waves. The disturbance in a sound wave is a series of high-pressure and low-pressure regions that travel through air or any other material medium.

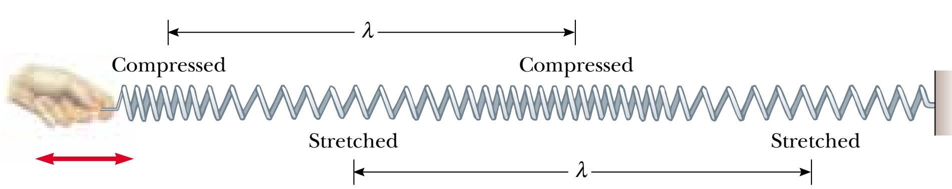


Figure 16.4 A longitudinal wave along a stretched spring. The displacement of the coils is in the direction of the wave motion. Each compressed region is followed by a stretched region.

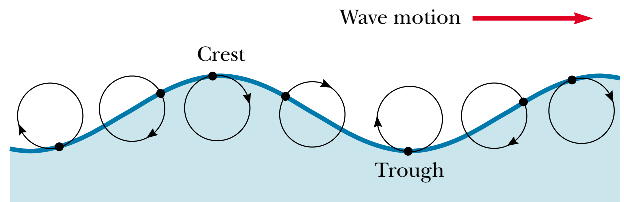


Figure 16.5 The motion of water molecules on the surface of deep water in which a wave is propagating is a combination of transverse and longitudinal displacements, with the result that molecules at the surface move in nearly circular paths. Each molecule is displaced both horizontally and vertically from its equilibrium position.

QuickLab

Make a "telephone" by poking a small hole in the bottom of two paper cups, threading a string through the holes, and tying knots in the ends of the string. If you speak into one cup while pulling the string taut, a friend can hear your voice in the other cup. What kind of wave is present in the string?

Some waves in nature exhibit a combination of transverse and longitudinal displacements. Surface water waves are a good example. When a water wave travels on the surface of deep water, water molecules at the surface move in nearly circular paths, as shown in Figure 16.5. Note that the disturbance has both transverse and longitudinal components. The transverse displacement is seen in Figure 16.5 as the variations in vertical position of the water molecules. The longitudinal displacement can be explained as follows: As the wave passes over the water's surface, water molecules at the crests move in the direction of propagation of the wave, whereas molecules at the troughs move in the direction opposite the propagation. Because the molecule at the labeled crest in Figure 16.5 will be at a trough after half a period, its movement in the direction of the propagation of the wave will be canceled by its movement in the opposite direction. This holds for every other water molecule disturbed by the wave. Thus, there is no net displacement of any water molecule during one complete cycle. Although the *molecules* experience no net displacement, the *wave* propagates along the surface of the water.

The three-dimensional waves that travel out from the point under the Earth's surface at which an earthquake occurs are of both types—transverse and longitudinal. The longitudinal waves are the faster of the two, traveling at speeds in the range of 7 to 8 km/s near the surface. These are called **P waves,** with "P" standing for *primary* because they travel faster than the transverse waves and arrive at a seismograph first. The slower transverse waves, called **S waves** (with "S" standing for *secondary*), travel through the Earth at 4 to 5 km/s near the surface. By recording the time interval between the arrival of these two sets of waves at a seismograph, the distance from the seismograph to the point of origin of the waves can be determined. A single such measurement establishes an imaginary sphere centered on the seismograph, with the radius of the sphere determined by the difference in arrival times of the P and S waves. The origin of the waves is located somewhere on that sphere. The imaginary spheres from three or more monitoring stations located far apart from each other intersect at one region of the Earth, and this region is where the earthquake occurred.

Quick Quiz 16.1

(a) In a long line of people waiting to buy tickets, the first person leaves and a pulse of motion occurs as people step forward to fill the gap. As each person steps forward, the gap moves through the line. Is the propagation of this gap transverse or longitudinal? (b) Consider the "wave" at a baseball game: people stand up and shout as the wave arrives at their location, and the resultant pulse moves around the stadium. Is this wave transverse or longitudinal?

16.3 ONE-DIMENSIONAL TRAVELING WAVES

Consider a wave pulse traveling to the right with constant speed v on a long, taut string, as shown in Figure 16.6. The pulse moves along the x axis (the axis of the string), and the transverse (vertical) displacement of the string (the medium) is measured along the y axis. Figure 16.6a represents the shape and position of the pulse at time $t = 0$. At this time, the shape of the pulse, whatever it may be, can be represented as $y = f(x)$. That is, y, which is the vertical position of any point on the string, is some definite function of x. The displacement y, sometimes called the *wave function,* depends on both x and t. For this reason, it is often written $y(x, t)$, which is read "y as a function of x and t." Consider a particular point P on the string, identified by a specific value of its x coordinate. Before the pulse arrives at P, the y coordinate of this point is zero. As the wave passes P, the y coordinate of this point increases, reaches a maximum, and then decreases to zero. Therefore, **the wave function y represents the y coordinate of any point P of the medium at any time t.**

Because its speed is v, the wave pulse travels to the right a distance vt in a time t (see Fig. 16.6b). If the shape of the pulse does not change with time, we can represent the wave function y for all times after $t = 0$. Measured in a stationary reference frame having its origin at O, the wave function is

$$y = f(x - vt) \tag{16.1}$$

Wave traveling to the right

If the wave pulse travels to the left, the string displacement is

$$y = f(x + vt) \tag{16.2}$$

Wave traveling to the left

For any given time t, the wave function y as a function of x defines a curve representing the shape of the pulse at this time. This curve is equivalent to a "snapshot" of the wave at this time. For a pulse that moves without changing shape, the speed of the pulse is the same as that of any feature along the pulse, such as the crest shown in Figure 16.6. To find the speed of the pulse, we can calculate how far the crest moves in a short time and then divide this distance by the time interval. To follow the motion of the crest, we must substitute some particular value, say x_0, in Equation 16.1 for $x - vt$. Regardless of how x and t change individually, we must require that $x - vt = x_0$ in order to stay with the crest. This expression therefore represents the equation of motion of the crest. At $t = 0$, the crest is at $x = x_0$; at a

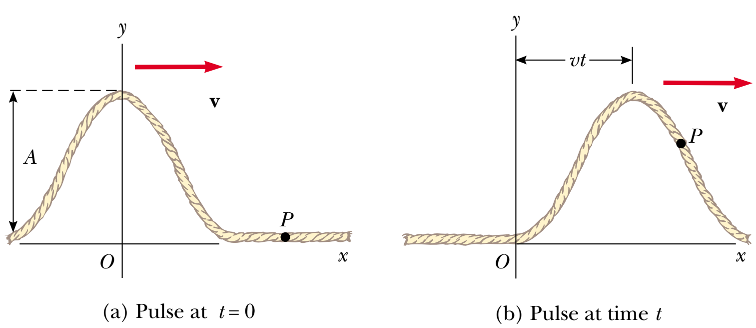


Figure 16.6 A one-dimensional wave pulse traveling to the right with a speed v. (a) At $t = 0$, the shape of the pulse is given by $y = f(x)$. (b) At some later time t, the shape remains unchanged and the vertical displacement of any point P of the medium is given by $y = f(x - vt)$.

time dt later, the crest is at $x = x_0 + v\,dt$. Therefore, in a time dt, the crest has moved a distance $dx = (x_0 + v\,dt) - x_0 = v\,dt$. Hence, the wave speed is

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} \tag{16.3}$$

EXAMPLE 16.1 A Pulse Moving to the Right

A wave pulse moving to the right along the x axis is represented by the wave function

$$y(x, t) = \frac{2}{(x - 3.0t)^2 + 1}$$

where x and y are measured in centimeters and t is measured in seconds. Plot the wave function at $t = 0$, $t = 1.0$ s, and $t = 2.0$ s.

Solution First, note that this function is of the form $y = f(x - vt)$. By inspection, we see that the wave speed is $v = 3.0$ cm/s. Furthermore, the wave amplitude (the maximum value of y) is given by $A = 2.0$ cm. (We find the maximum value of the function representing y by letting $x - 3.0t = 0$.) The wave function expressions are

$$y(x, 0) = \frac{2}{x^2 + 1} \qquad \text{at } t = 0$$

$$y(x, 1.0) = \frac{2}{(x - 3.0)^2 + 1} \qquad \text{at } t = 1.0 \text{ s}$$

$$y(x, 2.0) = \frac{2}{(x - 6.0)^2 + 1} \qquad \text{at } t = 2.0 \text{ s}$$

We now use these expressions to plot the wave function versus x at these times. For example, let us evaluate $y(x, 0)$ at $x = 0.50$ cm:

$$y(0.50, 0) = \frac{2}{(0.50)^2 + 1} = 1.6 \text{ cm}$$

Likewise, at $x = 1.0$ cm, $y(1.0, 0) = 1.0$ cm, and at $x = 2.0$ cm, $y(2.0, 0) = 0.40$ cm. Continuing this procedure for other values of x yields the wave function shown in Figure 16.7a. In a similar manner, we obtain the graphs of $y(x, 1.0)$ and $y(x, 2.0)$, shown in Figure 16.7b and c, respectively. These snapshots show that the wave pulse moves to the right without changing its shape and that it has a constant speed of 3.0 cm/s.

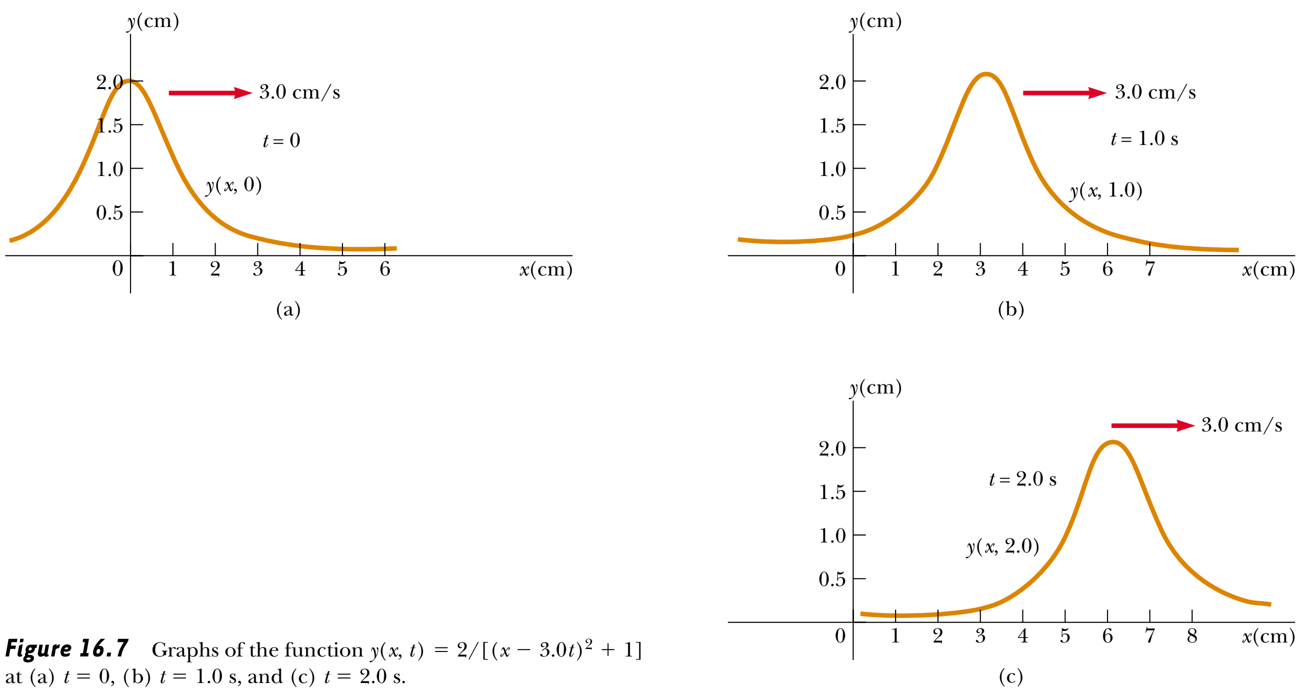


Figure 16.7 Graphs of the function $y(x, t) = 2/[(x - 3.0t)^2 + 1]$ at (a) $t = 0$, (b) $t = 1.0$ s, and (c) $t = 2.0$ s.

16.4 SUPERPOSITION AND INTERFERENCE

Many interesting wave phenomena in nature cannot be described by a single moving pulse. Instead, one must analyze complex waves in terms of a combination of many traveling waves. To analyze such wave combinations, one can make use of the **superposition principle:**

> If two or more traveling waves are moving through a medium, the resultant wave function at any point is the algebraic sum of the wave functions of the individual waves.

Linear waves obey the superposition principle

Waves that obey this principle are called *linear waves* and are generally characterized by small amplitudes. Waves that violate the superposition principle are called *nonlinear waves* and are often characterized by large amplitudes. In this book, we deal only with linear waves.

One consequence of the superposition principle is that **two traveling waves can pass through each other without being destroyed or even altered.** For instance, when two pebbles are thrown into a pond and hit the surface at different places, the expanding circular surface waves do not destroy each other but rather pass through each other. The complex pattern that is observed can be viewed as two independent sets of expanding circles. Likewise, when sound waves from two sources move through air, they pass through each other. The resulting sound that one hears at a given point is the resultant of the two disturbances.

Figure 16.8 is a pictorial representation of superposition. The wave function for the pulse moving to the right is y_1, and the wave function for the pulse moving

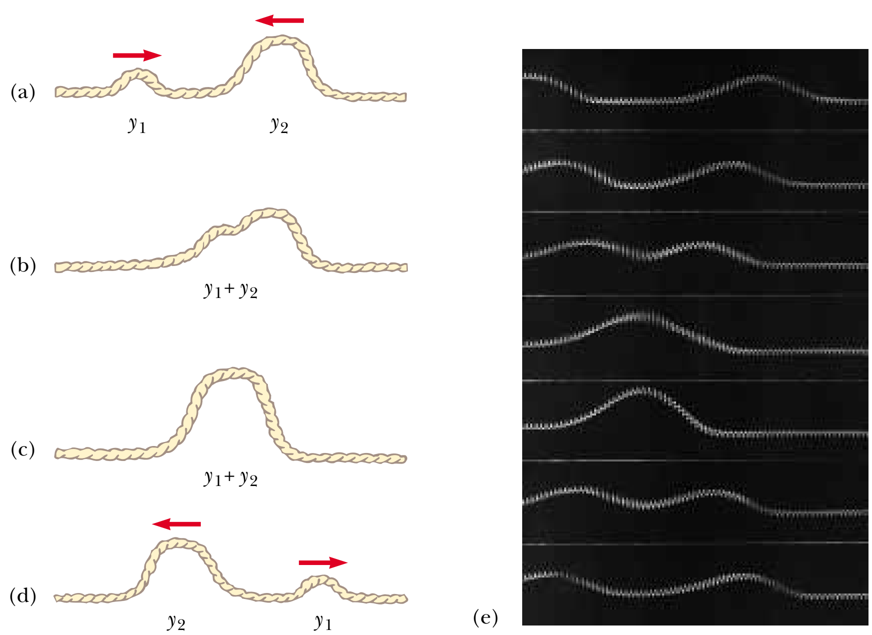


Figure 16.8 (a–d) Two wave pulses traveling on a stretched string in opposite directions pass through each other. When the pulses overlap, as shown in (b) and (c), the net displacement of the string equals the sum of the displacements produced by each pulse. Because each pulse displaces the string in the positive direction, we refer to the superposition of the two pulses as *constructive interference.* (e) Photograph of superposition of two equal, symmetric pulses traveling in opposite directions on a stretched spring.

Interference of water waves produced in a ripple tank. The sources of the waves are two objects that oscillate perpendicular to the surface of the tank.

to the left is y_2. The pulses have the same speed but different shapes. Each pulse is assumed to be symmetric, and the displacement of the medium is in the positive y direction for both pulses. (Note, however, that the superposition principle applies even when the two pulses are not symmetric.) When the waves begin to overlap (Fig. 16.8b), the wave function for the resulting complex wave is given by $y_1 + y_2$.

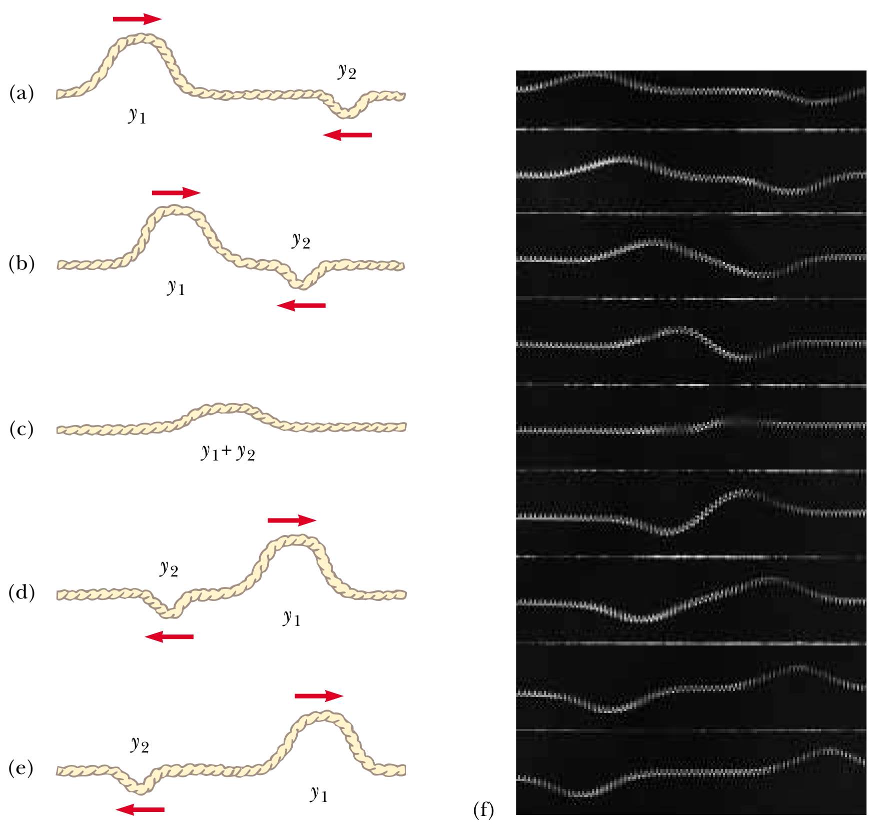


Figure 16.9 (a–e) Two wave pulses traveling in opposite directions and having displacements that are inverted relative to each other. When the two overlap in (c), their displacements partially cancel each other. (f) Photograph of superposition of two symmetric pulses traveling in opposite directions, where one pulse is inverted relative to the other.

When the crests of the pulses coincide (Fig. 16.8c), the resulting wave given by $y_1 + y_2$ is symmetric. The two pulses finally separate and continue moving in their original directions (Fig. 16.8d). Note that the pulse shapes remain unchanged, as if the two pulses had never met!

The combination of separate waves in the same region of space to produce a resultant wave is called **interference.** For the two pulses shown in Figure 16.8, the displacement of the medium is in the positive y direction for both pulses, and the resultant wave (created when the pulses overlap) exhibits a displacement greater than that of either individual pulse. Because the displacements caused by the two pulses are in the same direction, we refer to their superposition as **constructive interference.**

Now consider two pulses traveling in opposite directions on a taut string where one pulse is inverted relative to the other, as illustrated in Figure 16.9. In this case, when the pulses begin to overlap, the resultant wave is given by $y_1 + y_2$, but the values of the function y_2 are negative. Again, the two pulses pass through each other; however, because the displacements caused by the two pulses are in opposite directions, we refer to their superposition as **destructive interference.**

Quick Quiz 16.2

Two pulses are traveling toward each other at 10 cm/s on a long string, as shown in Figure 16.10. Sketch the shape of the string at $t = 0.6$ s.

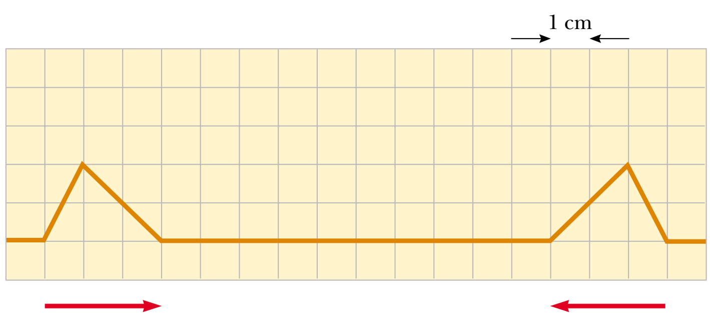


Figure 16.10 The pulses on this string are traveling at 10 cm/s.

16.5 THE SPEED OF WAVES ON STRINGS

In this section, we focus on determining the speed of a transverse pulse traveling on a taut string. Let us first conceptually argue the parameters that determine the speed. If a string under tension is pulled sideways and then released, the tension is responsible for accelerating a particular segment of the string back toward its equilibrium position. According to Newton's second law, the acceleration of the segment increases with increasing tension. If the segment returns to equilibrium more rapidly due to this increased acceleration, we would intuitively argue that the wave speed is greater. Thus, we expect the wave speed to increase with increasing tension.

Likewise, we can argue that the wave speed decreases if the mass per unit length of the string increases. This is because it is more difficult to accelerate a massive segment of the string than a light segment. If the tension in the string is T (not to be confused with the same symbol used for the period) and its mass per

The strings of this piano vary in both tension and mass per unit length. These differences in tension and density, in combination with the different lengths of the strings, allow the instrument to produce a wide range of sounds.

unit length is μ (Greek letter mu), then, as we shall show, the wave speed is

Speed of a wave on a stretched string

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \tag{16.4}$$

First, let us verify that this expression is dimensionally correct. The dimensions of T are ML/T^2, and the dimensions of μ are M/L. Therefore, the dimensions of T/μ are L^2/T^2; hence, the dimensions of $\sqrt{T/\mu}$ are L/T—indeed, the dimensions of speed. No other combination of T and μ is dimensionally correct if we assume that they are the only variables relevant to the situation.

Now let us use a mechanical analysis to derive Equation 16.4. On our string under tension, consider a pulse moving to the right with a uniform speed v measured relative to a stationary frame of reference. Instead of staying in this reference frame, it is more convenient to choose as our reference frame one that moves along with the pulse with the same speed as the pulse, so that the pulse is at rest within the frame. This change of reference frame is permitted because Newton's laws are valid in either a stationary frame or one that moves with constant velocity. In our new reference frame, a given segment of the string initially to the right of the pulse moves to the left, rises up and follows the shape of the pulse, and then continues to move to the left. Figure 16.11a shows such a segment at the instant it is located at the top of the pulse.

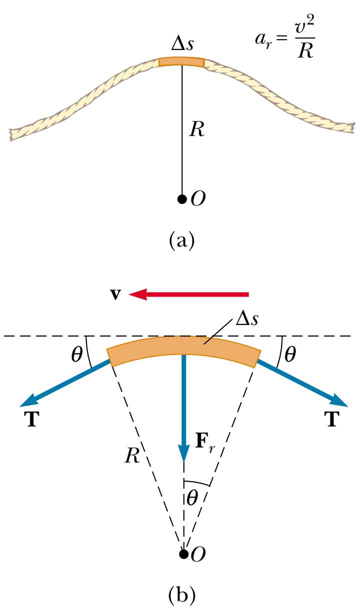


Figure 16.11 (a) To obtain the speed v of a wave on a stretched string, it is convenient to describe the motion of a small segment of the string in a moving frame of reference. (b) In the moving frame of reference, the small segment of length Δs moves to the left with speed v. The net force on the segment is in the radial direction because the horizontal components of the tension force cancel.

The small segment of the string of length Δs shown in Figure 16.11a, and magnified in Figure 16.11b, forms an approximate arc of a circle of radius R. In our moving frame of reference (which is moving to the right at a speed v along with the pulse), the shaded segment is moving to the left with a speed v. This segment has a centripetal acceleration equal to v^2/R, which is supplied by components of the tension **T** in the string. The force **T** acts on either side of the segment and tangent to the arc, as shown in Figure 16.11b. The horizontal components of **T** cancel, and each vertical component $T \sin \theta$ acts radially toward the center of the arc. Hence, the total radial force is $2T \sin \theta$. Because the segment is small, θ is small, and we can use the small-angle approximation $\sin \theta \approx \theta$. Therefore, the total radial force is

$$\sum F_r = 2T \sin \theta \approx 2T\theta$$

The segment has a mass $m = \mu \Delta s$. Because the segment forms part of a circle and subtends an angle 2θ at the center, $\Delta s = R(2\theta)$, and hence

$$m = \mu \Delta s = 2\mu R\theta$$

If we apply Newton's second law to this segment, the radial component of motion gives

$$\sum F_r = ma = \frac{mv^2}{R}$$

$$2T\theta = \frac{2\mu R\theta v^2}{R}$$

Solving for v gives Equation 16.4.

Notice that this derivation is based on the assumption that the pulse height is small relative to the length of the string. Using this assumption, we were able to use the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$. Furthermore, the model assumes that the tension T is not affected by the presence of the pulse; thus, T is the same at all points on the string. Finally, this proof does *not* assume any particular shape for the pulse. Therefore, we conclude that a pulse of *any shape* travels along the string with speed $v = \sqrt{T/\mu}$ without any change in pulse shape.

EXAMPLE 16.2 The Speed of a Pulse on a Cord

A uniform cord has a mass of 0.300 kg and a length of 6.00 m (Fig. 16.12). The cord passes over a pulley and supports a 2.00-kg object. Find the speed of a pulse traveling along this cord.

Solution The tension T in the cord is equal to the weight of the suspended 2.00-kg mass:

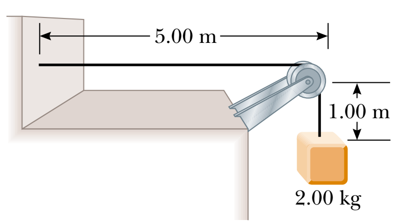


Figure 16.12 The tension T in the cord is maintained by the suspended object. The speed of any wave traveling along the cord is given by $v = \sqrt{T/\mu}$.

$$T = mg = (2.00 \text{ kg})(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2) = 19.6 \text{ N}$$

(This calculation of the tension neglects the small mass of the cord. Strictly speaking, the cord can never be exactly horizontal, and therefore the tension is not uniform.) The mass per unit length μ of the cord is

$$\mu = \frac{m}{\ell} = \frac{0.300 \text{ kg}}{6.00 \text{ m}} = 0.050\,0 \text{ kg/m}$$

Therefore, the wave speed is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} = \sqrt{\frac{19.6 \text{ N}}{0.050\,0 \text{ kg/m}}} = \boxed{19.8 \text{ m/s}}$$

Exercise Find the time it takes the pulse to travel from the wall to the pulley.

Answer 0.253 s.

Quick Quiz 16.3

Suppose you create a pulse by moving the free end of a taut string up and down once with your hand. The string is attached at its other end to a distant wall. The pulse reaches the wall in a time t. Which of the following actions, taken by itself, decreases the time it takes the pulse to reach the wall? More than one choice may be correct.
(a) Moving your hand more quickly, but still only up and down once by the same amount.
(b) Moving your hand more slowly, but still only up and down once by the same amount.
(c) Moving your hand a greater distance up and down in the same amount of time.
(d) Moving your hand a lesser distance up and down in the same amount of time.
(e) Using a heavier string of the same length and under the same tension.
(f) Using a lighter string of the same length and under the same tension.
(g) Using a string of the same linear mass density but under decreased tension.
(h) Using a string of the same linear mass density but under increased tension.

16.6 REFLECTION AND TRANSMISSION

We have discussed traveling waves moving through a uniform medium. We now consider how a traveling wave is affected when it encounters a change in the medium. For example, consider a pulse traveling on a string that is rigidly attached to a support at one end (Fig. 16.13). When the pulse reaches the support, a severe change in the medium occurs—the string ends. The result of this change is that the wave undergoes **reflection**—that is, the pulse moves back along the string in the opposite direction.

Note that the reflected pulse is inverted. This inversion can be explained as follows: When the pulse reaches the fixed end of the string, the string produces an upward force on the support. By Newton's third law, the support must exert an equal and opposite (downward) reaction force on the string. This downward force causes the pulse to invert upon reflection.

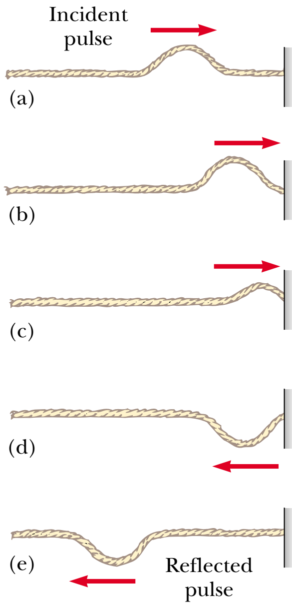


Figure 16.13 The reflection of a traveling wave pulse at the fixed end of a stretched string. The reflected pulse is inverted, but its shape is unchanged.

Now consider another case: this time, the pulse arrives at the end of a string that is free to move vertically, as shown in Figure 16.14. The tension at the free end is maintained because the string is tied to a ring of negligible mass that is free to slide vertically on a smooth post. Again, the pulse is reflected, but this time it is not inverted. When it reaches the post, the pulse exerts a force on the free end of the string, causing the ring to accelerate upward. The ring overshoots the height of the incoming pulse, and then the downward component of the tension force pulls the ring back down. This movement of the ring produces a reflected pulse that is not inverted and that has the same amplitude as the incoming pulse.

Finally, we may have a situation in which the boundary is intermediate between these two extremes. In this case, part of the incident pulse is reflected and part undergoes **transmission**—that is, some of the pulse passes through the boundary. For instance, suppose a light string is attached to a heavier string, as shown in Figure 16.15. When a pulse traveling on the light string reaches the boundary between the two, part of the pulse is reflected and inverted and part is transmitted to the heavier string. The reflected pulse is inverted for the same reasons described earlier in the case of the string rigidly attached to a support.

Note that the reflected pulse has a smaller amplitude than the incident pulse. In Section 16.8, we shall learn that the energy carried by a wave is related to its amplitude. Thus, according to the principle of the conservation of energy, when the pulse breaks up into a reflected pulse and a transmitted pulse at the boundary, the sum of the energies of these two pulses must equal the energy of the incident pulse. Because the reflected pulse contains only part of the energy of the incident pulse, its amplitude must be smaller.

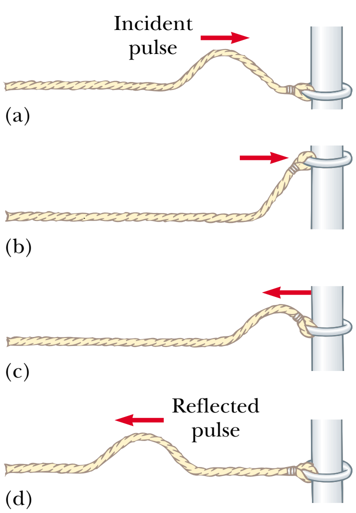


Figure 16.14 The reflection of a traveling wave pulse at the free end of a stretched string. The reflected pulse is not inverted.

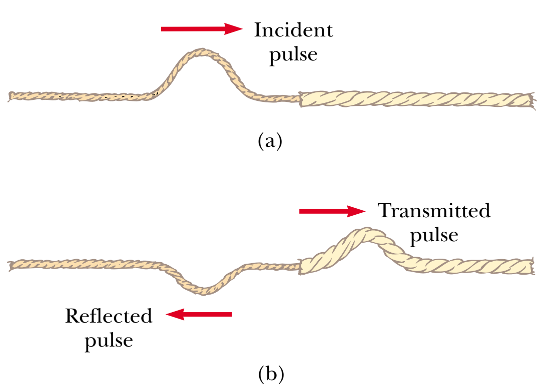


Figure 16.15 (a) A pulse traveling to the right on a light string attached to a heavier string. (b) Part of the incident pulse is reflected (and inverted), and part is transmitted to the heavier string.

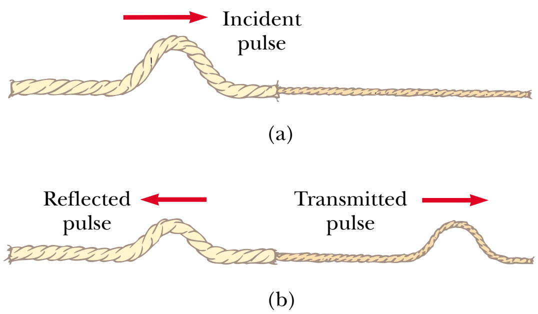


Figure 16.16 (a) A pulse traveling to the right on a heavy string attached to a lighter string. (b) The incident pulse is partially reflected and partially transmitted, and the reflected pulse is not inverted.

When a pulse traveling on a heavy string strikes the boundary between the heavy string and a lighter one, as shown in Figure 16.16, again part is reflected and part is transmitted. In this case, the reflected pulse is not inverted.

In either case, the relative heights of the reflected and transmitted pulses depend on the relative densities of the two strings. If the strings are identical, there is no discontinuity at the boundary and no reflection takes place.

According to Equation 16.4, the speed of a wave on a string increases as the mass per unit length of the string decreases. In other words, a pulse travels more slowly on a heavy string than on a light string if both are under the same tension. The following general rules apply to reflected waves: **When a wave pulse travels from medium A to medium B and $v_A > v_B$ (that is, when B is denser than A), the pulse is inverted upon reflection. When a wave pulse travels from medium A to medium B and $v_A < v_B$ (that is, when A is denser than B), the pulse is not inverted upon reflection.**

16.7 SINUSOIDAL WAVES

In this section, we introduce an important wave function whose shape is shown in Figure 16.17. The wave represented by this curve is called a **sinusoidal wave** because the curve is the same as that of the function sin θ plotted against θ. The sinusoidal wave is the simplest example of a periodic continuous wave and can be used to build more complex waves, as we shall see in Section 18.8. The red curve represents a snapshot of a traveling sinusoidal wave at $t = 0$, and the blue curve represents a snapshot of the wave at some later time t. At $t = 0$, the function describing the positions of the particles of the medium through which the sinusoidal wave is traveling can be written

$$y = A\sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}x\right) \tag{16.5}$$

where the constant A represents the wave amplitude and the constant λ is the wavelength. Thus, we see that the position of a particle of the medium is the same whenever x is increased by an integral multiple of λ. If the wave moves to the right with a speed v, then the wave function at some later time t is

$$y = A\sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(x - vt)\right] \tag{16.6}$$

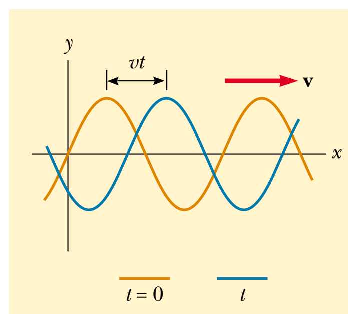


Figure 16.17 A one-dimensional sinusoidal wave traveling to the right with a speed v. The red curve represents a snapshot of the wave at $t = 0$, and the blue curve represents a snapshot at some later time t.

That is, the traveling sinusoidal wave moves to the right a distance vt in the time t, as shown in Figure 16.17. Note that the wave function has the form $f(x - vt)$ and

so represents a wave traveling to the right. If the wave were traveling to the left, the quantity $x - vt$ would be replaced by $x + vt$, as we learned when we developed Equations 16.1 and 16.2.

By definition, the wave travels a distance of one wavelength in one period T. Therefore, the wave speed, wavelength, and period are related by the expression

$$v = \frac{\lambda}{T} \tag{16.7}$$

Substituting this expression for v into Equation 16.6, we find that

$$y = A \sin\left[2\pi\left(\frac{x}{\lambda} - \frac{t}{T}\right)\right] \tag{16.8}$$

This form of the wave function clearly shows the *periodic* nature of y. At any given time t (a snapshot of the wave), y has the *same* value at the positions x, $x + \lambda$, $x + 2\lambda$, and so on. Furthermore, at any given position x, the value of y is the same at times t, $t + T$, $t + 2T$, and so on.

We can express the wave function in a convenient form by defining two other quantities, the **angular wave number** k and the **angular frequency** ω:

Angular wave number

$$k \equiv \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \tag{16.9}$$

Angular frequency

$$\omega \equiv \frac{2\pi}{T} \tag{16.10}$$

Using these definitions, we see that Equation 16.8 can be written in the more compact form

Wave function for a sinusoidal wave

$$y = A \sin(kx - \omega t) \tag{16.11}$$

The frequency of a sinusoidal wave is related to the period by the expression

Frequency

$$f = \frac{1}{T} \tag{16.12}$$

The most common unit for frequency, as we learned in Chapter 13, is second^{-1}, or **hertz** (Hz). The corresponding unit for T is seconds.

Using Equations 16.9, 16.10, and 16.12, we can express the wave speed v originally given in Equation 16.7 in the alternative forms

Speed of a sinusoidal wave

$$v = \frac{\omega}{k} \tag{16.13}$$

$$v = \lambda f \tag{16.14}$$

The wave function given by Equation 16.11 assumes that the vertical displacement y is zero at $x = 0$ and $t = 0$. This need not be the case. If it is not, we generally express the wave function in the form

General expression for a sinusoidal wave

$$y = A \sin(kx - \omega t + \phi) \tag{16.15}$$

where ϕ is the **phase constant,** just as we learned in our study of periodic motion in Chapter 13. This constant can be determined from the initial conditions.

EXAMPLE 16.3 A Traveling Sinusoidal Wave

A sinusoidal wave traveling in the positive x direction has an amplitude of 15.0 cm, a wavelength of 40.0 cm, and a frequency of 8.00 Hz. The vertical displacement of the medium at $t = 0$ and $x = 0$ is also 15.0 cm, as shown in Figure 16.18. (a) Find the angular wave number k, period T, angular frequency ω, and speed v of the wave.

Solution (a) Using Equations 16.9, 16.10, 16.12, and 16.14, we find the following:

$$k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} = \frac{2\pi \text{ rad}}{40.0 \text{ cm}} = \boxed{0.157 \text{ rad/cm}}$$

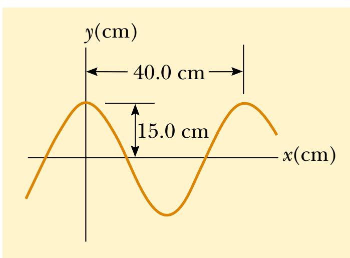


Figure 16.18 A sinusoidal wave of wavelength $\lambda = 40.0$ cm and amplitude $A = 15.0$ cm. The wave function can be written in the form $y = A\cos(kx - \omega t)$.

$$\omega = 2\pi f = 2\pi(8.00 \text{ s}^{-1}) = \boxed{50.3 \text{ rad/s}}$$

$$T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{8.00 \text{ s}^{-1}} = \boxed{0.125 \text{ s}}$$

$$v = \lambda f = (40.0 \text{ cm})(8.00 \text{ s}^{-1}) = \boxed{320 \text{ cm/s}}$$

(b) Determine the phase constant ϕ, and write a general expression for the wave function.

Solution Because $A = 15.0$ cm and because $y = 15.0$ cm at $x = 0$ and $t = 0$, substitution into Equation 16.15 gives

$$15.0 = (15.0)\sin\phi \qquad \text{or} \qquad \sin\phi = 1$$

We may take the principal value $\phi = \pi/2$ rad (or 90°). Hence, the wave function is of the form

$$y = A\sin\left(kx - \omega t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = A\cos(kx - \omega t)$$

By inspection, we can see that the wave function must have this form, noting that the cosine function has the same shape as the sine function displaced by 90°. Substituting the values for A, k, and ω into this expression, we obtain

$$\boxed{y = (15.0 \text{ cm})\cos(0.157x - 50.3t)}$$

Sinusoidal Waves on Strings

In Figure 16.2, we demonstrated how to create a pulse by jerking a taut string up and down once. To create a train of such pulses, normally referred to as a *wave train,* or just plain *wave,* we can replace the hand with an oscillating blade. If the wave consists of a train of identical cycles, whatever their shape, the relationships $f = 1/T$ and $v = f\lambda$ among speed, frequency, period, and wavelength hold true. We can make more definite statements about the wave function if the source of the waves vibrates in simple harmonic motion. Figure 16.19 represents snapshots of the wave created in this way at intervals of $T/4$. Note that because the end of the blade oscillates in simple harmonic motion, **each particle of the string, such as that at *P*, also oscillates vertically with simple harmonic motion.** This must be the case because each particle follows the simple harmonic motion of the blade. Therefore, every segment of the string can be treated as a simple harmonic oscillator vibrating with a frequency equal to the frequency of oscillation of the blade.[3] Note that although each segment oscillates in the y direction, the wave travels in the x direction with a speed v. Of course, this is the definition of a transverse wave.

[3] In this arrangement, we are assuming that a string segment always oscillates in a vertical line. The tension in the string would vary if a segment were allowed to move sideways. Such motion would make the analysis very complex.

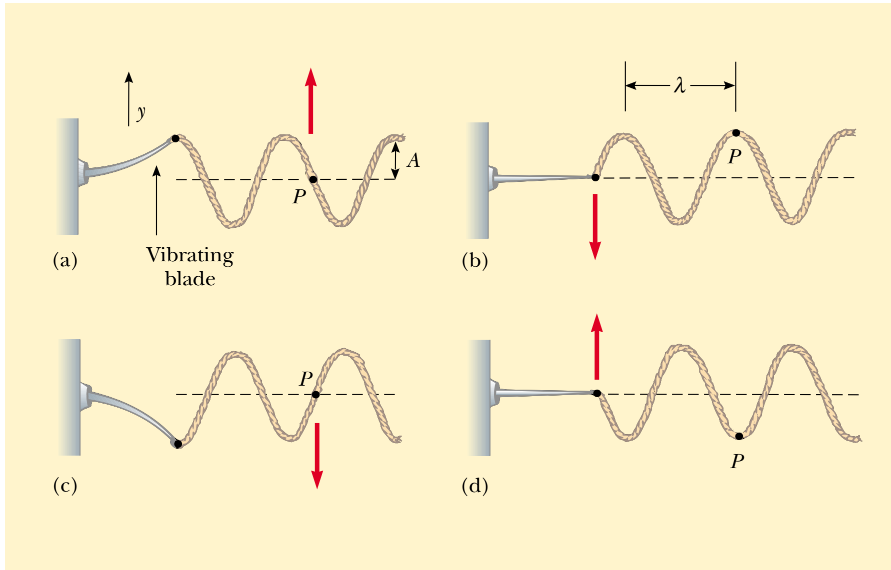


Figure 16.19 One method for producing a train of sinusoidal wave pulses on a string. The left end of the string is connected to a blade that is set into oscillation. Every segment of the string, such as the point P, oscillates with simple harmonic motion in the vertical direction.

If the wave at $t = 0$ is as described in Figure 16.19b, then the wave function can be written as

$$y = A\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

We can use this expression to describe the motion of any point on the string. The point P (or any other point on the string) moves only vertically, and so its x coordinate remains constant. Therefore, the **transverse speed v_y** (not to be confused with the wave speed v) and the **transverse acceleration a_y** are

$$v_y = \left.\frac{dy}{dt}\right]_{x\,=\,\text{constant}} = \frac{\partial y}{\partial t} = -\omega A\cos(kx - \omega t) \tag{16.16}$$

$$a_y = \left.\frac{dv_y}{dt}\right]_{x\,=\,\text{constant}} = \frac{\partial v_y}{\partial t} = -\omega^2 A\sin(kx - \omega t) \tag{16.17}$$

In these expressions, we must use partial derivatives (see Section 8.6) because y depends on both x and t. In the operation $\partial y/\partial t$, for example, we take a derivative with respect to t while holding x constant. The maximum values of the transverse speed and transverse acceleration are simply the absolute values of the coefficients of the cosine and sine functions:

$$v_{y,\,\max} = \omega A \tag{16.18}$$

$$a_{y,\,\max} = \omega^2 A \tag{16.19}$$

The transverse speed and transverse acceleration do not reach their maximum values simultaneously. The transverse speed reaches its maximum value (ωA) when $y = 0$, whereas the transverse acceleration reaches its maximum value ($\omega^2 A$) when $y = \pm A$. Finally, Equations 16.18 and 16.19 are identical in mathematical form to the corresponding equations for simple harmonic motion, Equations 13.10 and 13.11.

Quick Quiz 16.4

A sinusoidal wave is moving on a string. If you increase the frequency f of the wave, how do the transverse speed, wave speed, and wavelength change?

EXAMPLE 16.4 A Sinusoidally Driven String

The string shown in Figure 16.19 is driven at a frequency of 5.00 Hz. The amplitude of the motion is 12.0 cm, and the wave speed is 20.0 m/s. Determine the angular frequency ω and angular wave number k for this wave, and write an expression for the wave function.

Solution Using Equations 16.10, 16.12, and 16.13, we find that

$$\omega = \frac{2\pi}{T} = 2\pi f = 2\pi(5.00\text{ Hz}) = \boxed{31.4\text{ rad/s}}$$

$$k = \frac{\omega}{v} = \frac{31.4\text{ rad/s}}{20.0\text{ m/s}} = \boxed{1.57\text{ rad/m}}$$

Because $A = 12.0$ cm $= 0.120$ m, we have

$$\boxed{y = A\sin(kx - \omega t) = (0.120\text{ m})\sin(1.57x - 31.4t)}$$

Exercise Calculate the maximum values for the transverse speed and transverse acceleration of any point on the string.

Answer 3.77 m/s; 118 m/s^2.

16.8 RATE OF ENERGY TRANSFER BY SINUSOIDAL WAVES ON STRINGS

As waves propagate through a medium, they transport energy. We can easily demonstrate this by hanging an object on a stretched string and then sending a pulse down the string, as shown in Figure 16.20. When the pulse meets the suspended object, the object is momentarily displaced, as illustrated in Figure 16.20b. In the process, energy is transferred to the object because work must be done for it to move upward. This section examines the rate at which energy is transported along a string. We shall assume a one-dimensional sinusoidal wave in the calculation of the energy transferred.

Consider a sinusoidal wave traveling on a string (Fig. 16.21). The source of the energy being transported by the wave is some external agent at the left end of the string; this agent does work in producing the oscillations. As the external agent performs work on the string, moving it up and down, energy enters the system of the string and propagates along its length. Let us focus our attention on a segment of the string of length Δx and mass Δm. Each such segment moves vertically with simple harmonic motion. Furthermore, all segments have the same angular frequency ω and the same amplitude A. As we found in Chapter 13, the elastic potential energy U associated with a particle in simple harmonic motion is $U = \frac{1}{2}ky^2$, where the simple harmonic motion is in the y direction. Using the relationship $\omega^2 = k/m$ developed in Equations 13.16 and 13.17, we can write this as

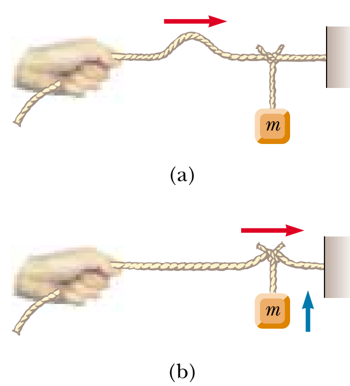


Figure 16.20 (a) A pulse traveling to the right on a stretched string on which an object has been suspended. (b) Energy is transmitted to the suspended object when the pulse arrives.

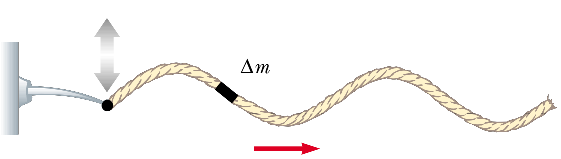


Figure 16.21 A sinusoidal wave traveling along the x axis on a stretched string. Every segment moves vertically, and every segment has the same total energy.

$U = \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2 y^2$. If we apply this equation to the segment of mass Δm, we see that the potential energy of this segment is

$$\Delta U = \tfrac{1}{2}(\Delta m)\,\omega^2 y^2$$

Because the mass per unit length of the string is $\mu = \Delta m/\Delta x$, we can express the potential energy of the segment as

$$\Delta U = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mu \Delta x)\,\omega^2 y^2$$

As the length of the segment shrinks to zero, $\Delta x \rightarrow dx$, and this expression becomes a differential relationship:

$$dU = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mu\, dx)\,\omega^2 y^2$$

We replace the general displacement y of the segment with the wave function for a sinusoidal wave:

$$dU = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2[A\sin(kx - \omega t)]^2\, dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 \sin^2(kx - \omega t)\, dx$$

If we take a snapshot of the wave at time $t = 0$, then the potential energy in a given segment is

$$dU = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 \sin^2 kx\, dx$$

To obtain the total potential energy in one wavelength, we integrate this expression over all the string segments in one wavelength:

$$U_\lambda = \int dU = \int_0^\lambda \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 \sin^2 kx\, dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 \int_0^\lambda \sin^2 kx\, dx$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2\left[\tfrac{1}{2}x - \tfrac{1}{4k}\sin 2kx\right]_0^\lambda = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2(\tfrac{1}{2}\lambda) = \tfrac{1}{4}\mu\omega^2 A^2 \lambda$$

Because it is in motion, each segment of the string also has kinetic energy. When we use this procedure to analyze the total kinetic energy in one wavelength of the string, we obtain the same result:

$$K_\lambda = \int dK = \tfrac{1}{4}\mu\omega^2 A^2\lambda$$

The total energy in one wavelength of the wave is the sum of the potential and kinetic energies:

$$E_\lambda = U_\lambda + K_\lambda = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 \lambda \qquad \textbf{(16.20)}$$

As the wave moves along the string, this amount of energy passes by a given point on the string during one period of the oscillation. Thus, the power, or rate of energy transfer, associated with the wave is

$$\mathcal{P} = \frac{E_\lambda}{\Delta t} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 \lambda}{T} = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2\left(\frac{\lambda}{T}\right)$$

Power of a wave

$$\mathcal{P} = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 v \qquad \textbf{(16.21)}$$

This shows that the rate of energy transfer by a sinusoidal wave on a string is proportional to (a) the wave speed, (b) the square of the frequency, and (c) the square of the amplitude. In fact: **the rate of energy transfer in any sinusoidal wave is proportional to the square of the angular frequency and to the square of the amplitude.**

EXAMPLE 16.5 Power Supplied to a Vibrating String

A taut string for which $\mu = 5.00 \times 10^{-2}$ kg/m is under a tension of 80.0 N. How much power must be supplied to the string to generate sinusoidal waves at a frequency of 60.0 Hz and an amplitude of 6.00 cm?

Solution The wave speed on the string is, from Equation 16.4,

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} = \sqrt{\frac{80.0\ \text{N}}{5.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{kg/m}}} = 40.0\ \text{m/s}$$

Because $f = 60.0$ Hz, the angular frequency ω of the sinusoidal waves on the string has the value

$$\omega = 2\pi f = 2\pi(60.0\ \text{Hz}) = 377\ \text{s}^{-1}$$

Using these values in Equation 16.21 for the power, with $A = 6.00 \times 10^{-2}$ m, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{P} &= \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2v \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}(5.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{kg/m})(377\ \text{s}^{-1})^2 \\ &= \times\ (6.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})^2(40.0\ \text{m/s}) \\ &= \boxed{512\ \text{W}}\end{aligned}$$

Optional Section

16.9 THE LINEAR WAVE EQUATION

In Section 16.3 we introduced the concept of the wave function to represent waves traveling on a string. All wave functions $y(x, t)$ represent solutions of an equation called the *linear wave equation.* This equation gives a complete description of the wave motion, and from it one can derive an expression for the wave speed. Furthermore, the linear wave equation is basic to many forms of wave motion. In this section, we derive this equation as applied to waves on strings.

Suppose a traveling wave is propagating along a string that is under a tension T. Let us consider one small string segment of length Δx (Fig. 16.22). The ends of the segment make small angles θ_A and θ_B with the x axis. The net force acting on the segment in the vertical direction is

$$\sum F_y = T\sin\theta_B - T\sin\theta_A = T(\sin\theta_B - \sin\theta_A)$$

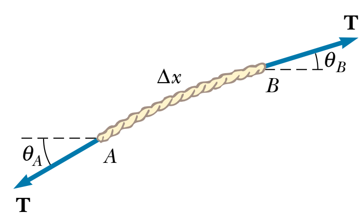


Figure 16.22 A segment of a string under tension T. The slopes at points A and B are given by $\tan\theta_A$ and $\tan\theta_B$, respectively.

Because the angles are small, we can use the small-angle approximation $\sin\theta \approx \tan\theta$ to express the net force as

$$\sum F_y \approx T(\tan\theta_B - \tan\theta_A)$$

However, the tangents of the angles at A and B are defined as the slopes of the string segment at these points. Because the slope of a curve is given by $\partial y/\partial x$, we have

$$\sum F_y \approx T\left[\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_B - \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_A\right] \quad \textbf{(16.22)}$$

We now apply Newton's second law to the segment, with the mass of the segment given by $m = \mu\Delta x$:

$$\sum F_y = ma_y = \mu\Delta x\left(\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2}\right) \quad \textbf{(16.23)}$$

Combining Equation 16.22 with Equation 16.23, we obtain

$$\mu\Delta x\left(\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2}\right) = T\left[\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_B - \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_A\right]$$

$$\frac{\mu}{T}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} = \frac{(\partial y/\partial x)_B - (\partial y/\partial x)_A}{\Delta x} \quad \textbf{(16.24)}$$

The right side of this equation can be expressed in a different form if we note that the partial derivative of any function is defined as

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \equiv \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{f(x + \Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x}$$

If we associate $f(x + \Delta x)$ with $(\partial y/\partial x)_B$ and $f(x)$ with $(\partial y/\partial x)_A$, we see that, in the limit $\Delta x \to 0$, Equation 16.24 becomes

Linear wave equation

$$\frac{\mu}{T}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} = \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} \qquad \textbf{(16.25)}$$

This is the linear wave equation as it applies to waves on a string.

We now show that the sinusoidal wave function (Eq. 16.11) represents a solution of the linear wave equation. If we take the sinusoidal wave function to be of the form $y(x, t) = A\sin(kx - \omega t)$, then the appropriate derivatives are

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} = -\omega^2 A\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = -k^2 A\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

Substituting these expressions into Equation 16.25, we obtain

$$-\frac{\mu\omega^2}{T}\sin(kx - \omega t) = -k^2\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

This equation must be true for all values of the variables x and t in order for the sinusoidal wave function to be a solution of the wave equation. Both sides of the equation depend on x and t through the same function $\sin(kx - \omega t)$. Because this function divides out, we do indeed have an identity, provided that

$$k^2 = \frac{\mu\omega^2}{T}$$

Using the relationship $v = \omega/k$ (Eq. 16.13) in this expression, we see that

$$v^2 = \frac{\omega^2}{k^2} = \frac{T}{\mu}$$

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}}$$

which is Equation 16.4. This derivation represents another proof of the expression for the wave speed on a taut string.

The linear wave equation (Eq. 16.25) is often written in the form

Linear wave equation in general

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{v^2}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad \textbf{(16.26)}$$

This expression applies in general to various types of traveling waves. For waves on strings, y represents the vertical displacement of the string. For sound waves, y corresponds to displacement of air molecules from equilibrium or variations in either the pressure or the density of the gas through which the sound waves are propagating. In the case of electromagnetic waves, y corresponds to electric or magnetic field components.

We have shown that the sinusoidal wave function (Eq. 16.11) is one solution of the linear wave equation (Eq. 16.26). Although we do not prove it here, the linear

wave equation is satisfied by *any* wave function having the form $y = f(x \pm vt)$. Furthermore, we have seen that the linear wave equation is a direct consequence of Newton's second law applied to any segment of the string.

SUMMARY

A **transverse wave** is one in which the particles of the medium move in a direction *perpendicular* to the direction of the wave velocity. An example is a wave on a taut string. A **longitudinal wave** is one in which the particles of the medium move in a direction *parallel* to the direction of the wave velocity. Sound waves in fluids are longitudinal. You should be able to identify examples of both types of waves.

Any one-dimensional wave traveling with a speed v in the x direction can be represented by a wave function of the form

$$y = f(x \pm vt) \qquad \textbf{(16.1, 16.2)}$$

where the positive sign applies to a wave traveling in the negative x direction and the negative sign applies to a wave traveling in the positive x direction. The shape of the wave at any instant in time (a snapshot of the wave) is obtained by holding t constant.

The **superposition principle** specifies that when two or more waves move through a medium, the resultant wave function equals the algebraic sum of the individual wave functions. When two waves combine in space, they interfere to produce a resultant wave. The **interference** may be **constructive** (when the individual displacements are in the same direction) or **destructive** (when the displacements are in opposite directions).

The **speed** of a wave traveling on a taut string of mass per unit length μ and tension T is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \qquad \textbf{(16.4)}$$

A wave is totally or partially reflected when it reaches the end of the medium in which it propagates or when it reaches a boundary where its speed changes discontinuously. If a wave pulse traveling on a string meets a fixed end, the pulse is reflected and inverted. If the pulse reaches a free end, it is reflected but not inverted.

The **wave function** for a one-dimensional sinusoidal wave traveling to the right can be expressed as

$$y = A \sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(x - vt)\right] = A \sin(kx - \omega t) \qquad \textbf{(16.6, 16.11)}$$

where A is the **amplitude,** λ is the **wavelength,** k is the **angular wave number,** and ω is the **angular frequency.** If T is the **period** and f the **frequency,** v, k and ω can be written

$$v = \frac{\lambda}{T} = \lambda f \qquad \textbf{(16.7, 16.14)}$$

$$k \equiv \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \qquad \textbf{(16.9)}$$

$$\omega \equiv \frac{2\pi}{T} = 2\pi f \qquad \textbf{(16.10, 16.12)}$$

You should know how to find the equation describing the motion of particles in a wave from a given set of physical parameters.

The **power** transmitted by a sinusoidal wave on a stretched string is

$$\mathcal{P} = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 v \qquad \textbf{(16.21)}$$

QUESTIONS

1. Why is a wave pulse traveling on a string considered a transverse wave?
2. How would you set up a longitudinal wave in a stretched spring? Would it be possible to set up a transverse wave in a spring?
3. By what factor would you have to increase the tension in a taut string to double the wave speed?
4. When traveling on a taut string, does a wave pulse always invert upon reflection? Explain.
5. Can two pulses traveling in opposite directions on the same string reflect from each other? Explain.
6. Does the vertical speed of a segment of a horizontal, taut string, through which a wave is traveling, depend on the wave speed?
7. If you were to shake one end of a taut rope periodically three times each second, what would be the period of the sinusoidal waves set up in the rope?
8. A vibrating source generates a sinusoidal wave on a string under constant tension. If the power delivered to the string is doubled, by what factor does the amplitude change? Does the wave speed change under these circumstances?
9. Consider a wave traveling on a taut rope. What is the difference, if any, between the speed of the wave and the speed of a small segment of the rope?
10. If a long rope is hung from a ceiling and waves are sent up the rope from its lower end, they do not ascend with constant speed. Explain.
11. What happens to the wavelength of a wave on a string when the frequency is doubled? Assume that the tension in the string remains the same.
12. What happens to the speed of a wave on a taut string when the frequency is doubled? Assume that the tension in the string remains the same.
13. How do transverse waves differ from longitudinal waves?
14. When all the strings on a guitar are stretched to the same tension, will the speed of a wave along the more massive bass strings be faster or slower than the speed of a wave on the lighter strings?
15. If you stretch a rubber hose and pluck it, you can observe a pulse traveling up and down the hose. What happens to the speed of the pulse if you stretch the hose more tightly? What happens to the speed if you fill the hose with water?
16. In a longitudinal wave in a spring, the coils move back and forth in the direction of wave motion. Does the speed of the wave depend on the maximum speed of each coil?
17. When two waves interfere, can the amplitude of the resultant wave be greater than either of the two original waves? Under what conditions?
18. A solid can transport both longitudinal waves and transverse waves, but a fluid can transport only longitudinal waves. Why?

PROBLEMS

1, 2, 3 = straightforward, intermediate, challenging ☐ = full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide*
WEB = solution posted at **http://www.saunderscollege.com/physics/** = Computer useful in solving problem = Interactive Physics
 = paired numerical/symbolic problems

Section 16.1 Basic Variables of Wave Motion

Section 16.2 Direction of Particle Displacement

Section 16.3 One-Dimensional Traveling Waves

1. At $t = 0$, a transverse wave pulse in a wire is described by the function

$$y = \frac{6}{x^2 + 3}$$

where x and y are in meters. Write the function $y(x, t)$ that describes this wave if it is traveling in the positive x direction with a speed of 4.50 m/s.

2. Two wave pulses A and B are moving in opposite directions along a taut string with a speed of 2.00 cm/s. The amplitude of A is twice the amplitude of B. The pulses are shown in Figure P16.2 at $t = 0$. Sketch the shape of the string at $t = 1$, 1.5, 2, 2.5, and 3 s.

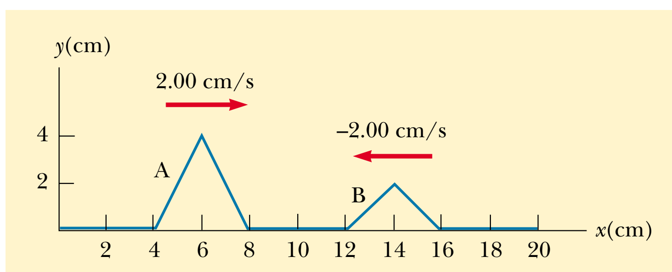


Figure P16.2

3. A wave moving along the x axis is described by

$$y(x, t) = 5.00e^{-(x+5.00t)^2}$$

where x is in meters and t is in seconds. Determine (a) the direction of the wave motion and (b) the speed of the wave.

4. Ocean waves with a crest-to-crest distance of 10.0 m can be described by the equation

$$y(x, t) = (0.800 \text{ m}) \sin[0.628(x - vt)]$$

where $v = 1.20$ m/s. (a) Sketch $y(x, t)$ at $t = 0$. (b) Sketch $y(x, t)$ at $t = 2.00$ s. Note how the entire wave form has shifted 2.40 m in the positive x direction in this time interval.

5. Two points, A and B, on the surface of the Earth are at the same longitude and 60.0° apart in latitude. Suppose that an earthquake at point A sends two waves toward point B. A transverse wave travels along the surface of the Earth at 4.50 km/s, and a longitudinal wave travels straight through the body of the Earth at 7.80 km/s. (a) Which wave arrives at point B first? (b) What is the time difference between the arrivals of the two waves at point B? Take the radius of the Earth to be 6 370 km.

6. A seismographic station receives S and P waves from an earthquake, 17.3 s apart. Suppose that the waves have traveled over the same path at speeds of 4.50 km/s and 7.80 km/s, respectively. Find the distance from the seismometer to the epicenter of the quake.

Section 16.4 Superposition and Interference

WEB **7.** Two sinusoidal waves in a string are defined by the functions

$$y_1 = (2.00 \text{ cm}) \sin(20.0x - 32.0t)$$

and

$$y_2 = (2.00 \text{ cm}) \sin(25.0x - 40.0t)$$

where y and x are in centimeters and t is in seconds. (a) What is the phase difference between these two waves at the point $x = 5.00$ cm at $t = 2.00$ s? (b) What is the positive x value closest to the origin for which the two phases differ by $\pm \pi$ at $t = 2.00$ s? (This is where the sum of the two waves is zero.)

8. Two waves in one string are described by the wave functions

$$y_1 = 3.0 \cos(4.0x - 1.6t)$$

and

$$y_2 = 4.0 \sin(5.0x - 2.0t)$$

where y and x are in centimeters and t is in seconds. Find the superposition of the waves $y_1 + y_2$ at the points (a) $x = 1.00$, $t = 1.00$; (b) $x = 1.00$, $t = 0.500$; (c) $x = 0.500$, $t = 0$. (Remember that the arguments of the trigonometric functions are in radians.)

9. Two pulses traveling on the same string are described by the functions

$$y_1 = \frac{5}{(3x - 4t)^2 + 2}$$

and

$$y_2 = \frac{-5}{(3x + 4t - 6)^2 + 2}$$

(a) In which direction does each pulse travel? (b) At what time do the two cancel? (c) At what point do the two waves always cancel?

Section 16.5 The Speed of Waves on Strings

10. A phone cord is 4.00 m long. The cord has a mass of 0.200 kg. A transverse wave pulse is produced by plucking one end of the taut cord. The pulse makes four trips down and back along the cord in 0.800 s. What is the tension in the cord?

11. Transverse waves with a speed of 50.0 m/s are to be produced in a taut string. A 5.00-m length of string with a total mass of 0.060 0 kg is used. What is the required tension?

12. A piano string having a mass per unit length 5.00×10^{-3} kg/m is under a tension of 1 350 N. Find the speed with which a wave travels on this string.

13. An astronaut on the Moon wishes to measure the local value of g by timing pulses traveling down a wire that has a large mass suspended from it. Assume that the wire has a mass of 4.00 g and a length of 1.60 m, and that a 3.00-kg mass is suspended from it. A pulse requires 36.1 ms to traverse the length of the wire. Calculate g_{Moon} from these data. (You may neglect the mass of the wire when calculating the tension in it.)

14. Transverse pulses travel with a speed of 200 m/s along a taut copper wire whose diameter is 1.50 mm. What is the tension in the wire? (The density of copper is 8.92 g/cm^3.)

15. Transverse waves travel with a speed of 20.0 m/s in a string under a tension of 6.00 N. What tension is required to produce a wave speed of 30.0 m/s in the same string?

16. A simple pendulum consists of a ball of mass M hanging from a uniform string of mass m and length L, with $m \ll M$. If the period of oscillation for the pendulum is T, determine the speed of a transverse wave in the string when the pendulum hangs at rest.

17. The elastic limit of a piece of steel wire is 2.70×10^9 Pa. What is the maximum speed at which transverse wave pulses can propagate along this wire before this stress is exceeded? (The density of steel is 7.86×10^3 kg/m^3.)

18. **Review Problem.** A light string with a mass per unit length of 8.00 g/m has its ends tied to two walls separated by a distance equal to three-fourths the length of the string (Fig. P16.18). An object of mass m is sus-

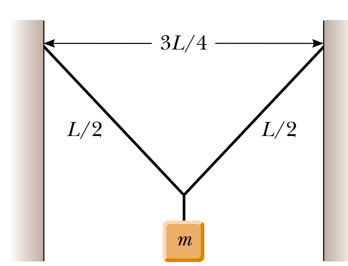


Figure P16.18

pended from the center of the string, putting a tension in the string. (a) Find an expression for the transverse wave speed in the string as a function of the hanging mass. (b) How much mass should be suspended from the string to produce a wave speed of 60.0 m/s?

19. **Review Problem.** A light string with a mass of 10.0 g and a length $L = 3.00$ m has its ends tied to two walls that are separated by the distance $D = 2.00$ m. Two objects, each with a mass $M = 2.00$ kg, are suspended from the string, as shown in Figure P16.19. If a wave pulse is sent from point A, how long does it take for it to travel to point B?

20. **Review Problem.** A light string of mass m and length L has its ends tied to two walls that are separated by the distance D. Two objects, each of mass M, are suspended from the string, as shown in Figure P16.19. If a wave pulse is sent from point A, how long does it take to travel to point B?

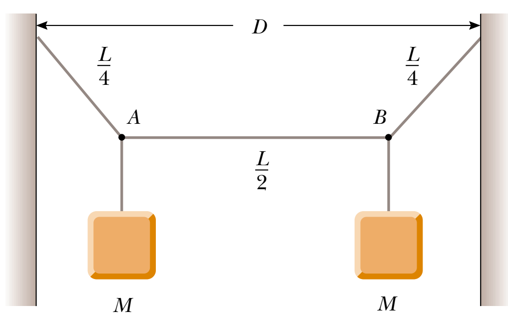


Figure P16.19 Problems 19 and 20.

WEB 21. A 30.0-m steel wire and a 20.0-m copper wire, both with 1.00-mm diameters, are connected end to end and are stretched to a tension of 150 N. How long does it take a transverse wave to travel the entire length of the two wires?

Section 16.6 Reflection and Transmission

22. A series of pulses, each of amplitude 0.150 m, are sent down a string that is attached to a post at one end. The pulses are reflected at the post and travel back along the string without loss of amplitude. What is the displacement at a point on the string where two pulses are crossing (a) if the string is rigidly attached to the post? (b) if the end at which reflection occurs is free to slide up and down?

Section 16.7 Sinusoidal Waves

23. (a) Plot y versus t at $x = 0$ for a sinusoidal wave of the form $y = (15.0 \text{ cm}) \cos(0.157x - 50.3t)$, where x and y are in centimeters and t is in seconds. (b) Determine the period of vibration from this plot and compare your result with the value found in Example 16.3.

24. For a certain transverse wave, the distance between two successive crests is 1.20 m, and eight crests pass a given point along the direction of travel every 12.0 s. Calculate the wave speed.

25. A sinusoidal wave is traveling along a rope. The oscillator that generates the wave completes 40.0 vibrations in 30.0 s. Also, a given maximum travels 425 cm along the rope in 10.0 s. What is the wavelength?

26. Consider the sinusoidal wave of Example 16.3, with the wave function

$$y = (15.0 \text{ cm}) \cos(0.157x - 50.3t)$$

At a certain instant, let point A be at the origin and point B be the first point along the x axis where the wave is 60.0° out of phase with point A. What is the coordinate of point B?

27. When a particular wire is vibrating with a frequency of 4.00 Hz, a transverse wave of wavelength 60.0 cm is produced. Determine the speed of wave pulses along the wire.

28. A sinusoidal wave traveling in the $-x$ direction (to the left) has an amplitude of 20.0 cm, a wavelength of 35.0 cm, and a frequency of 12.0 Hz. The displacement of the wave at $t = 0$, $x = 0$ is $y = -3.00$ cm; at this same point, a particle of the medium has a positive velocity. (a) Sketch the wave at $t = 0$. (b) Find the angular wave number, period, angular frequency, and wave speed of the wave. (c) Write an expression for the wave function $y(x, t)$.

29. A sinusoidal wave train is described by the equation

$$y = (0.25 \text{ m}) \sin(0.30x - 40t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. Determine for this wave the (a) amplitude, (b) angular frequency, (c) angular wave number, (d) wavelength, (e) wave speed, and (f) direction of motion.

30. A transverse wave on a string is described by the expression

$$y = (0.120 \text{ m}) \sin(\pi x/8 + 4\pi t)$$

(a) Determine the transverse speed and acceleration of the string at $t = 0.200$ s for the point on the string located at $x = 1.60$ m. (b) What are the wavelength, period, and speed of propagation of this wave?

WEB 31. (a) Write the expression for y as a function of x and t for a sinusoidal wave traveling along a rope in the *negative* x direction with the following characteristics: $A = 8.00$ cm, $\lambda = 80.0$ cm, $f = 3.00$ Hz, and $y(0, t) = 0$ at $t = 0$. (b) Write the expression for y as a function of x and t for the wave in part (a), assuming that $y(x, 0) = 0$ at the point $x = 10.0$ cm.

32. A transverse sinusoidal wave on a string has a period $T = 25.0$ ms and travels in the negative x direction with a speed of 30.0 m/s. At $t = 0$, a particle on the string at

$x = 0$ has a displacement of 2.00 cm and travels downward with a speed of 2.00 m/s. (a) What is the amplitude of the wave? (b) What is the initial phase angle? (c) What is the maximum transverse speed of the string? (d) Write the wave function for the wave.

33. A sinusoidal wave of wavelength 2.00 m and amplitude 0.100 m travels on a string with a speed of 1.00 m/s to the right. Initially, the left end of the string is at the origin. Find (a) the frequency and angular frequency, (b) the angular wave number, and (c) the wave function for this wave. Determine the equation of motion for (d) the left end of the string and (e) the point on the string at $x = 1.50$ m to the right of the left end. (f) What is the maximum speed of any point on the string?

34. A sinusoidal wave on a string is described by the equation

$$y = (0.51\text{ cm})\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

where $k = 3.10$ rad/cm and $\omega = 9.30$ rad/s. How far does a wave crest move in 10.0 s? Does it move in the positive or negative x direction?

35. A wave is described by $y = (2.00\text{ cm})\sin(kx - \omega t)$, where $k = 2.11$ rad/m, $\omega = 3.62$ rad/s, x is in meters, and t is in seconds. Determine the amplitude, wavelength, frequency, and speed of the wave.

36. A transverse traveling wave on a taut wire has an amplitude of 0.200 mm and a frequency of 500 Hz. It travels with a speed of 196 m/s. (a) Write an equation in SI units of the form $y = A\sin(kx - \omega t)$ for this wave. (b) The mass per unit length of this wire is 4.10 g/m. Find the tension in the wire.

37. A wave on a string is described by the wave function

$$y = (0.100\text{ m})\sin(0.50x - 20t)$$

(a) Show that a particle in the string at $x = 2.00$ m executes simple harmonic motion. (b) Determine the frequency of oscillation of this particular point.

Section 16.8 Rate of Energy Transfer by Sinusoidal Waves on Strings

38. A taut rope has a mass of 0.180 kg and a length of 3.60 m. What power must be supplied to the rope to generate sinusoidal waves having an amplitude of 0.100 m and a wavelength of 0.500 m and traveling with a speed of 30.0 m/s?

39. A two-dimensional water wave spreads in circular wave fronts. Show that the amplitude A at a distance r from the initial disturbance is proportional to $1/\sqrt{r}$. (*Hint:* Consider the energy carried by one outward-moving ripple.)

40. Transverse waves are being generated on a rope under constant tension. By what factor is the required power increased or decreased if (a) the length of the rope is doubled and the angular frequency remains constant, (b) the amplitude is doubled and the angular frequency is halved, (c) both the wavelength and the amplitude are doubled, and (d) both the length of the rope and the wavelength are halved?

WEB **41.** Sinusoidal waves 5.00 cm in amplitude are to be transmitted along a string that has a linear mass density of 4.00×10^{-2} kg/m. If the source can deliver a maximum power of 300 W and the string is under a tension of 100 N, what is the highest vibrational frequency at which the source can operate?

42. It is found that a 6.00-m segment of a long string contains four complete waves and has a mass of 180 g. The string is vibrating sinusoidally with a frequency of 50.0 Hz and a peak-to-valley displacement of 15.0 cm. (The "peak-to-valley" distance is the vertical distance from the farthest positive displacement to the farthest negative displacement.) (a) Write the function that describes this wave traveling in the positive x direction. (b) Determine the power being supplied to the string.

43. A sinusoidal wave on a string is described by the equation

$$y = (0.15\text{ m})\sin(0.80x - 50t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. If the mass per unit length of this string is 12.0 g/m, determine (a) the speed of the wave, (b) the wavelength, (c) the frequency, and (d) the power transmitted to the wave.

44. A horizontal string can transmit a maximum power of $\mathcal{P}$ (without breaking) if a wave with amplitude A and angular frequency ω is traveling along it. To increase this maximum power, a student folds the string and uses the "double string" as a transmitter. Determine the maximum power that can be transmitted along the "double string," supposing that the tension is constant.

(Optional)

Section 16.9 The Linear Wave Equation

45. (a) Evaluate A in the scalar equality $(7 + 3)4 = A$. (b) Evaluate A, B, and C in the vector equality $7.00\mathbf{i} + 3.00\mathbf{k} = A\mathbf{i} + B\mathbf{j} + C\mathbf{k}$. Explain how you arrive at your answers. (c) The functional equality or identity

$$A + B\cos(Cx + Dt + E) = (7.00\text{ mm})\cos(3x + 4t + 2)$$

is true for all values of the variables x and t, which are measured in meters and in seconds, respectively. Evaluate the constants A, B, C, D, and E. Explain how you arrive at your answers.

46. Show that the wave function $y = e^{b(x - vt)}$ is a solution of the wave equation (Eq. 16.26), where b is a constant.

47. Show that the wave function $y = \ln[b(x - vt)]$ is a solution to Equation 16.26, where b is a constant.

48. (a) Show that the function $y(x, t) = x^2 + v^2t^2$ is a solution to the wave equation. (b) Show that the function above can be written as $f(x + vt) + g(x - vt)$, and determine the functional forms for f and g. (c) Repeat parts (a) and (b) for the function $y(x, t) = \sin(x)\cos(vt)$.

ADDITIONAL PROBLEMS

49. The "wave" is a particular type of wave pulse that can sometimes be seen propagating through a large crowd gathered at a sporting arena to watch a soccer or American football match (Fig. P16.49). The particles of the medium are the spectators, with zero displacement corresponding to their being in the seated position and maximum displacement corresponding to their being in the standing position and raising their arms. When a large fraction of the spectators participate in the wave motion, a somewhat stable pulse shape can develop. The wave speed depends on people's reaction time, which is typically on the order of 0.1 s. Estimate the order of magnitude, in minutes, of the time required for such a wave pulse to make one circuit around a large sports stadium. State the quantities you measure or estimate and their values.

Figure P16.49

50. A traveling wave propagates according to the expression $y = (4.0 \text{ cm}) \sin(2.0x - 3.0t)$, where x is in centimeters and t is in seconds. Determine (a) the amplitude, (b) the wavelength, (c) the frequency, (d) the period, and (e) the direction of travel of the wave.

WEB **51.** The wave function for a traveling wave on a taut string is (in SI units)

$$y(x, t) = (0.350 \text{ m}) \sin(10\pi t - 3\pi x + \pi/4)$$

(a) What are the speed and direction of travel of the wave? (b) What is the vertical displacement of the string at $t = 0$, $x = 0.100$ m? (c) What are the wavelength and frequency of the wave? (d) What is the maximum magnitude of the transverse speed of the string?

52. Motion picture film is projected at 24.0 frames per second. Each frame is a photograph 19.0 mm in height. At what constant speed does the film pass into the projector?

53. **Review Problem.** A block of mass M, supported by a string, rests on an incline making an angle θ with the horizontal (Fig. P16.53). The string's length is L, and its mass is $m \ll M$. Derive an expression for the time it takes a transverse wave to travel from one end of the string to the other.

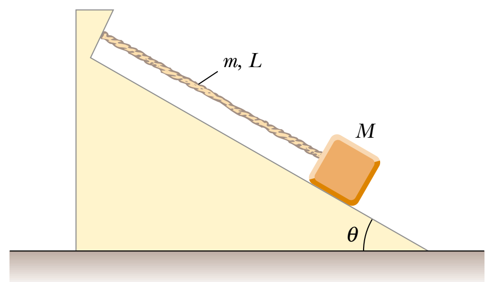


Figure P16.53

54. (a) Determine the speed of transverse waves on a string under a tension of 80.0 N if the string has a length of 2.00 m and a mass of 5.00 g. (b) Calculate the power required to generate these waves if they have a wavelength of 16.0 cm and an amplitude of 4.00 cm.

55. **Review Problem.** A 2.00-kg block hangs from a rubber cord. The block is supported so that the cord is not stretched. The unstretched length of the cord is 0.500 m, and its mass is 5.00 g. The "spring constant" for the cord is 100 N/m. The block is released and stops at the lowest point. (a) Determine the tension in the cord when the block is at this lowest point. (b) What is the length of the cord in this "stretched" position? (c) Find the speed of a transverse wave in the cord if the block is held in this lowest position.

56. **Review Problem.** A block of mass M hangs from a rubber cord. The block is supported so that the cord is not stretched. The unstretched length of the cord is L_0, and its mass is m, much less than M. The "spring constant" for the cord is k. The block is released and stops at the lowest point. (a) Determine the tension in the cord when the block is at this lowest point. (b) What is the length of the cord in this "stretched" position? (c) Find the speed of a transverse wave in the cord if the block is held in this lowest position.

57. A sinusoidal wave in a rope is described by the wave function

$$y = (0.20 \text{ m}) \sin(0.75\pi x + 18\pi t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. The rope has a linear mass density of 0.250 kg/m. If the tension in the rope is provided by an arrangement like the one illustrated in Figure 16.12, what is the value of the suspended mass?

58. A wire of density ρ is tapered so that its cross-sectional area varies with x, according to the equation

$$A = (1.0 \times 10^{-3}x + 0.010) \text{ cm}^2$$

(a) If the wire is subject to a tension T, derive a relationship for the speed of a wave as a function of position. (b) If the wire is aluminum and is subject to a tension of 24.0 N, determine the speed at the origin and at $x = 10.0$ m.

59. A rope of total mass m and length L is suspended vertically. Show that a transverse wave pulse travels the length of the rope in a time $t = 2\sqrt{L/g}$. (*Hint:* First find an expression for the wave speed at any point a distance x from the lower end by considering the tension in the rope as resulting from the weight of the segment below that point.)

60. If mass M is suspended from the bottom of the rope in Problem 59, (a) show that the time for a transverse wave to travel the length of the rope is

$$t = 2\sqrt{\frac{L}{mg}}\left[\sqrt{(M+m)} - \sqrt{M}\right]$$

(b) Show that this reduces to the result of Problem 59 when $M = 0$. (c) Show that for $m \ll M$, the expression in part (a) reduces to

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{mL}{Mg}}$$

61. It is stated in Problem 59 that a wave pulse travels from the bottom to the top of a rope of length L in a time $t = 2\sqrt{L/g}$. Use this result to answer the following questions. (It is *not* necessary to set up any new integrations.) (a) How long does it take for a wave pulse to travel halfway up the rope? (Give your answer as a fraction of the quantity $2\sqrt{L/g}$.) (b) A pulse starts traveling up the rope. How far has it traveled after a time $\sqrt{L/g}$?

62. Determine the speed and direction of propagation of each of the following sinusoidal waves, assuming that x is measured in meters and t in seconds:
(a) $y = 0.60 \cos(3.0x - 15t + 2)$
(b) $y = 0.40 \cos(3.0x + 15t - 2)$
(c) $y = 1.2 \sin(15t + 2.0x)$
(d) $y = 0.20 \sin(12t - x/2 + \pi)$

63. **Review Problem.** An aluminum wire under zero tension at room temperature is clamped at each end. The tension in the wire is increased by reducing the temperature, which results in a decrease in the wire's equilibrium length. What strain ($\Delta L/L$) results in a transverse wave speed of 100 m/s? Take the cross-sectional area of the wire to be 5.00×10^{-6} m^2, the density of the material to be 2.70×10^3 kg/m^3, and Young's modulus to be 7.00×10^{10} N/m^2.

64. (a) Show that the speed of longitudinal waves along a spring of force constant k is $v = \sqrt{kL/\mu}$, where L is the unstretched length of the spring and μ is the mass per unit length. (b) A spring with a mass of 0.400 kg has an unstretched length of 2.00 m and a force constant of 100 N/m. Using the result you obtained in (a), determine the speed of longitudinal waves along this spring.

65. A string of length L consists of two sections: The left half has mass per unit length $\mu = \mu_0/2$, whereas the right half has a mass per unit length $\mu' = 3\mu = 3\mu_0/2$. Tension in the string is T_0. Notice from the data given that this string has the same total mass as a uniform string of length L and of mass per unit length μ_0. (a) Find the speeds v and v' at which transverse wave pulses travel in the two sections. Express the speeds in terms of T_0 and μ_0, and also as multiples of the speed $v_0 = (T_0/\mu_0)^{1/2}$. (b) Find the time required for a pulse to travel from one end of the string to the other. Give your result as a multiple of $t_0 = L/v_0$.

66. A wave pulse traveling along a string of linear mass density μ is described by the relationship

$$y = [A_0 e^{-bx}] \sin(kx - \omega t)$$

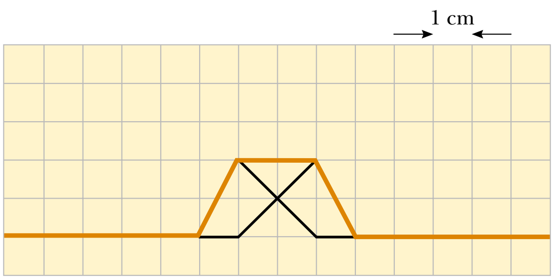
where the factor in brackets before the sine function is said to be the amplitude. (a) What is the power $\mathcal{P}(x)$ carried by this wave at a point x? (b) What is the power carried by this wave at the origin? (c) Compute the ratio $\mathcal{P}(x)/\mathcal{P}(0)$.

67. An earthquake on the ocean floor in the Gulf of Alaska produces a *tsunami* (sometimes called a "tidal wave") that reaches Hilo, Hawaii, 4 450 km away, in a time of 9 h 30 min. Tsunamis have enormous wavelengths (100–200 km), and the propagation speed of these waves is $v \approx \sqrt{g\bar{d}}$, where $\bar{d}$ is the average depth of the water. From the information given, find the average wave speed and the average ocean depth between Alaska and Hawaii. (This method was used in 1856 to estimate the average depth of the Pacific Ocean long before soundings were made to obtain direct measurements.)

ANSWERS TO QUICK QUIZZES

16.1 (a) It is longitudinal because the disturbance (the shift of position) is parallel to the direction in which the wave travels. (b) It is transverse because the people stand up and sit down (vertical motion), whereas the wave moves either to the left or to the right (motion perpendicular to the disturbance).

16.2



16.3 Only answers (f) and (h) are correct. (a) and (b) affect the transverse speed of a particle of the string, but not the wave speed along the string. (c) and (d) change the amplitude. (e) and (g) increase the time by decreasing the wave speed.

16.4 The transverse speed increases because $v_{y,\,\max} = \omega A = 2\pi f A$. The wave speed does not change because it depends only on the tension and mass per length of the string, neither of which has been modified. The wavelength must decrease because the wave speed $v = \lambda f$ remains constant.

PUZZLER

You can estimate the distance to an approaching storm by listening carefully to the sound of the thunder. How is this done? Why is the sound that follows a lightning strike sometimes a short, sharp thunderclap and other times a long-lasting rumble? *(Richard Kaylin/Tony Stone Images)*

chapter

17

Sound Waves

Chapter Outline

Sound waves are the most important example of longitudinal waves. They can travel through any material medium with a speed that depends on the properties of the medium. As the waves travel, the particles in the medium vibrate to produce changes in density and pressure along the direction of motion of the wave. These changes result in a series of high-pressure and low-pressure regions. If the source of the sound waves vibrates sinusoidally, the pressure variations are also sinusoidal. We shall find that the mathematical description of sinusoidal sound waves is identical to that of sinusoidal string waves, which was discussed in the previous chapter.

Sound waves are divided into three categories that cover different frequency ranges. (1) *Audible waves* are waves that lie within the range of sensitivity of the human ear. They can be generated in a variety of ways, such as by musical instruments, human vocal cords, and loudspeakers. (2) *Infrasonic waves* are waves having frequencies below the audible range. Elephants can use infrasonic waves to communicate with each other, even when separated by many kilometers. (3) *Ultrasonic waves* are waves having frequencies above the audible range. You may have used a "silent" whistle to retrieve your dog. The ultrasonic sound it emits is easily heard by dogs, although humans cannot detect it at all. Ultrasonic waves are also used in medical imaging.

We begin this chapter by discussing the speed of sound waves and then wave intensity, which is a function of wave amplitude. We then provide an alternative description of the intensity of sound waves that compresses the wide range of intensities to which the ear is sensitive to a smaller range. Finally, we treat effects of the motion of sources and/or listeners.

17.1 SPEED OF SOUND WAVES

Let us describe pictorially the motion of a one-dimensional longitudinal pulse moving through a long tube containing a compressible gas (Fig. 17.1). A piston at the left end can be moved to the right to compress the gas and create the pulse. Before the piston is moved, the gas is undisturbed and of uniform density, as represented by the uniformly shaded region in Figure 17.1a. When the piston is suddenly pushed to the right (Fig. 17.1b), the gas just in front of it is compressed (as represented by the more heavily shaded region); the pressure and density in this region are now higher than they were before the piston moved. When the piston comes to rest (Fig. 17.1c), the compressed region of the gas continues to move to the right, corresponding to a longitudinal pulse traveling through the tube with

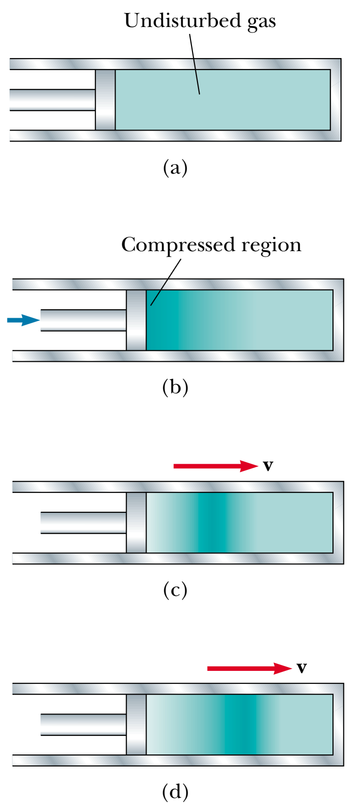


Figure 17.1 Motion of a longitudinal pulse through a compressible gas. The compression (darker region) is produced by the moving piston.

An ultrasound image of a human fetus in the womb after 20 weeks of development, showing the head, body, arms, and legs in profile.

speed v. Note that the piston speed does *not* equal v. Furthermore, the compressed region does not "stay with" the piston as the piston moves, because the speed of the wave may be greater than the speed of the piston.

The speed of sound waves depends on the compressibility and inertia of the medium. If the medium has a bulk modulus B (see Section 12.4) and density ρ, the speed of sound waves in that medium is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}} \tag{17.1}$$

Speed of sound

It is interesting to compare this expression with Equation 16.4 for the speed of transverse waves on a string, $v = \sqrt{T/\mu}$. In both cases, the wave speed depends on an elastic property of the medium—bulk modulus B or string tension T—and on an inertial property of the medium—ρ or μ. In fact, the speed of *all mechanical waves* follows an expression of the general form

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\text{elastic property}}{\text{inertial property}}}$$

The speed of sound also depends on the temperature of the medium. For sound traveling through air, the relationship between wave speed and medium temperature is

$$v = (331 \text{ m/s}) \sqrt{1 + \frac{T_C}{273°C}}$$

where 331 m/s is the speed of sound in air at 0°C, and T_C is the temperature in degrees Celsius. Using this equation, one finds that at 20°C the speed of sound in air is approximately 343 m/s.

This information provides a convenient way to estimate the distance to a thunderstorm, as demonstrated in the QuickLab. During a lightning flash, the temperature of a long channel of air rises rapidly as the bolt passes through it. This temperature increase causes the air in the channel to expand rapidly, and this expansion creates a sound wave. The channel produces sound throughout its entire length at essentially the same instant. If the orientation of the channel is such that all of its parts are approximately the same distance from you, sounds from the different parts reach you at the same time, and you hear a short, intense thunderclap. However, if the distances between your ear and different portions of the channel vary, sounds from different portions arrive at your ears at different times. If the channel were a straight line, the resulting sound would be a steady roar, but the zigzag shape of the path produces variations in loudness.

QuickLab

The next time a thunderstorm approaches, count the seconds between a flash of lightning (which reaches you almost instantaneously) and the following thunderclap. Divide this time by 3 to determine the approximate number of kilometers (or by 5 to estimate the miles) to the storm.

To learn more about lightning, read E. Williams, "The Electrification of Thunderstorms" *Sci. Am.* 259(5):88–89, 1988.

Quick Quiz 17.1

The speed of sound in air is a function of (a) wavelength, (b) frequency, (c) temperature, (d) amplitude.

Quick Quiz 17.2

As a result of a distant explosion, an observer first senses a ground tremor and then hears the explosion later. Explain.

EXAMPLE 17.1 Speed of Sound in a Solid

If a solid bar is struck at one end with a hammer, a longitudinal pulse propagates down the bar with a speed $v = \sqrt{Y/\rho}$, where Y is the Young's modulus for the material (see Section 12.4). Find the speed of sound in an aluminum bar.

Solution From Table 12.1 we obtain $Y = 7.0 \times 10^{10}\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$ for aluminum, and from Table 1.5 we obtain $\rho = 2.70 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$. Therefore,

$$v_{\mathrm{Al}} = \sqrt{\frac{Y}{\rho}} = \sqrt{\frac{7.0 \times 10^{10}\ \mathrm{N/m^2}}{2.70 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}}} \approx \boxed{5.1\ \mathrm{km/s}}$$

This typical value for the speed of sound in solids is much greater than the speed of sound in gases, as Table 17.1 shows. This difference in speeds makes sense because the molecules of a solid are bound together into a much more rigid structure than those in a gas and hence respond more rapidly to a disturbance.

EXAMPLE 17.2 Speed of Sound in a Liquid

(a) Find the speed of sound in water, which has a bulk modulus of $2.1 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N/m^2}$ and a density of $1.00 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$.

Solution Using Equation 17.1, we find that

$$v_{\mathrm{water}} = \sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}} = \sqrt{\frac{2.1 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{N/m^2}}{1.00 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{kg/m^3}}} = \boxed{1.4\ \mathrm{km/s}}$$

In general, sound waves travel more slowly in liquids than in solids because liquids are more compressible than solids.

(b) Dolphins use sound waves to locate food. Experiments have shown that a dolphin can detect a 7.5-cm target 110 m away, even in murky water. For a bit of "dinner" at that distance, how much time passes between the moment the dolphin emits a sound pulse and the moment the dolphin hears its reflection and thereby detects the distant target?

Solution The total distance covered by the sound wave as it travels from dolphin to target and back is $2 \times 110\ \mathrm{m} = 220\ \mathrm{m}$. From Equation 2.2, we have

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta x}{v_x} = \frac{220\ \mathrm{m}}{1\,400\ \mathrm{m/s}} = \boxed{0.16\ \mathrm{s}}$$

Bottle-nosed dolphin. *(Stuart Westmoreland/Tony Stone Images)*

17.2 PERIODIC SOUND WAVES

This section will help you better comprehend the nature of sound waves. You will learn that pressure variations control what we hear—an important fact for understanding how our ears work.

One can produce a one-dimensional periodic sound wave in a long, narrow tube containing a gas by means of an oscillating piston at one end, as shown in Figure 17.2. The darker parts of the colored areas in this figure represent re-

gions where the gas is compressed and thus the density and pressure are above their equilibrium values. A compressed region is formed whenever the piston is pushed into the tube. This compressed region, called a **condensation,** moves through the tube as a pulse, continuously compressing the region just in front of itself. When the piston is pulled back, the gas in front of it expands, and the pressure and density in this region fall below their equilibrium values (represented by the lighter parts of the colored areas in Fig. 17.2). These low-pressure regions, called **rarefactions,** also propagate along the tube, following the condensations. Both regions move with a speed equal to the speed of sound in the medium.

As the piston oscillates sinusoidally, regions of condensation and rarefaction are continuously set up. The distance between two successive condensations (or two successive rarefactions) equals the wavelength λ. As these regions travel through the tube, any small volume of the medium moves with simple harmonic motion parallel to the direction of the wave. If $s(x, t)$ is the displacement of a small volume element from its equilibrium position, we can express this harmonic displacement function as

$$s(x, t) = s_{\max} \cos(kx - \omega t) \tag{17.2}$$

where $s_{\max}$ **is the maximum displacement of the medium from equilibrium** (in other words, the **displacement amplitude** of the wave), k is the angular wavenumber, and ω is the angular frequency of the piston. Note that the displacement of the medium is along x, in the direction of motion of the sound wave, which means we are describing a longitudinal wave.

As we shall demonstrate shortly, the variation in the gas pressure ΔP, measured from the equilibrium value, is also periodic and for the displacement function in Equation 17.2 is given by

$$\Delta P = \Delta P_{\max} \sin(kx - \omega t) \tag{17.3}$$

where **the pressure amplitude $\Delta P_{\max}$**—which is the **maximum change in pres-**

TABLE 17.1
Speeds of Sound in Various Media

Medium	v (m/s)
Gases	
Hydrogen (0°C)	1 286
Helium (0°C)	972
Air (20°C)	343
Air (0°C)	331
Oxygen (0°C)	317
Liquids at 25°C	
Glycerol	1 904
Sea water	1 533
Water	1 493
Mercury	1 450
Kerosene	1 324
Methyl alcohol	1 143
Carbon tetrachloride	926
Solids	
Diamond	12 000
Pyrex glass	5 640
Iron	5 130
Aluminum	5 100
Brass	4 700
Copper	3 560
Gold	3 240
Lucite	2 680
Lead	1 322
Rubber	1 600

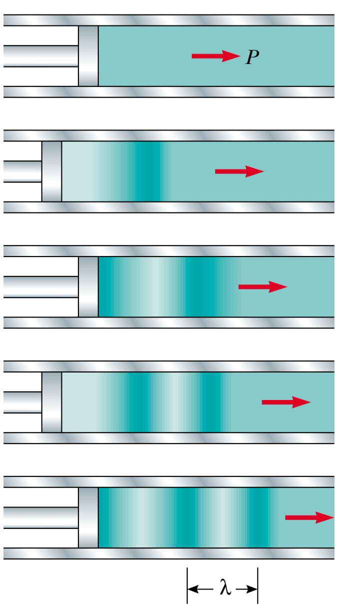


Figure 17.2 A sinusoidal longitudinal wave propagating through a gas-filled tube. The source of the wave is a sinusoidally oscillating piston at the left. The high-pressure and low-pressure regions are colored darkly and lightly, respectively.

sure from the equilibrium value—is given by

Pressure amplitude

$$\Delta P_{\max} = \rho v \omega s_{\max} \tag{17.4}$$

Thus, we see that a sound wave may be considered as either a displacement wave or a pressure wave. A comparison of Equations 17.2 and 17.3 shows that **the pressure wave is 90° out of phase with the displacement wave.** Graphs of these functions are shown in Figure 17.3. Note that the pressure variation is a maximum when the displacement is zero, and the displacement is a maximum when the pressure variation is zero.

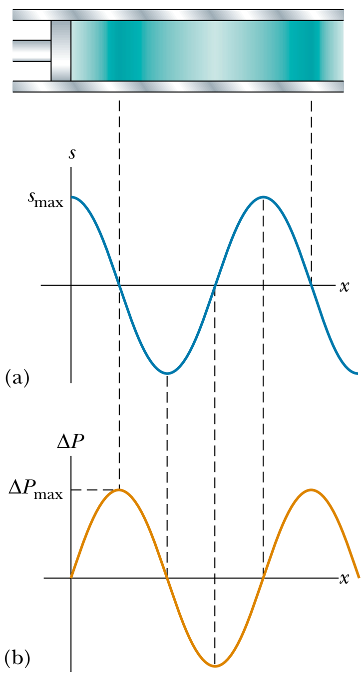


Figure 17.3 (a) Displacement amplitude versus position and (b) pressure amplitude versus position for a sinusoidal longitudinal wave. The displacement wave is 90° out of phase with the pressure wave.

Quick Quiz 17.3

If you blow across the top of an empty soft-drink bottle, a pulse of air travels down the bottle. At the moment the pulse reaches the bottom of the bottle, compare the displacement of air molecules with the pressure variation.

Derivation of Equation 17.3

From the definition of bulk modulus (see Eq. 12.8), the pressure variation in the gas is

$$\Delta P = -B\frac{\Delta V}{V_i}$$

The volume of gas that has a thickness Δx in the horizontal direction and a cross-sectional area A is $V_i = A\,\Delta x$. The change in volume ΔV accompanying the pressure change is equal to $A\,\Delta s$, where Δs is the difference between the value of s at $x + \Delta x$ and the value of s at x. Hence, we can express ΔP as

$$\Delta P = -B\frac{\Delta V}{V_i} = -B\frac{A\,\Delta s}{A\,\Delta x} = -B\frac{\Delta s}{\Delta x}$$

As Δx approaches zero, the ratio $\Delta s/\Delta x$ becomes $\partial s/\partial x$. (The partial derivative indicates that we are interested in the variation of s with position at a *fixed* time.) Therefore,

$$\Delta P = -B\frac{\partial s}{\partial x}$$

If the displacement is the simple sinusoidal function given by Equation 17.2, we find that

$$\Delta P = -B\frac{\partial}{\partial x}[s_{\max}\cos(kx - \omega t)] = Bks_{\max}\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

Because the bulk modulus is given by $B = \rho v^2$ (see Eq. 17.1), the pressure variation reduces to

$$\Delta P = \rho v^2 k s_{\max}\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

From Equation 16.13, we can write $k = \omega/v$; hence, ΔP can be expressed as

$$\Delta P = \rho v \omega s_{\max}\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

Because the sine function has a maximum value of 1, we see that the maximum value of the pressure variation is $\Delta P_{\max} = \rho v \omega s_{\max}$ (see Eq. 17.4), and we arrive at Equation 17.3:

$$\Delta P = \Delta P_{\max}\sin(kx - \omega t)$$

17.3 INTENSITY OF PERIODIC SOUND WAVES

In the previous chapter, we showed that a wave traveling on a taut string transports energy. The same concept applies to sound waves. Consider a volume of air of mass Δm and width Δx in front of a piston oscillating with a frequency ω, as shown in Figure 17.4. The piston transmits energy to this volume of air in the tube, and the energy is propagated away from the piston by the sound wave.[1] To evaluate the rate of energy transfer for the sound wave, we shall evaluate the kinetic energy of this volume of air, which is undergoing simple harmonic motion. We shall follow a procedure similar to that in Section 16.8, in which we evaluated the rate of energy transfer for a wave on a string.

As the sound wave propagates away from the piston, the displacement of any volume of air in front of the piston is given by Equation 17.2. To evaluate the kinetic energy of this volume of air, we need to know its speed. We find the speed by taking the time derivative of Equation 17.2:

$$v(x, t) = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} s(x, t) = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} [s_{\text{max}} \cos(kx - \omega t)] = \omega s_{\text{max}} \sin(kx - \omega t)$$

Imagine that we take a "snapshot" of the wave at $t = 0$. The kinetic energy of a given volume of air at this time is

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta K &= \tfrac{1}{2}\,\Delta m v^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\,\Delta m(\omega s_{\text{max}} \sin kx)^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho A\,\Delta x(\omega s_{\text{max}} \sin kx)^2 \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\rho A\,\Delta x(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2 \sin^2 kx\end{aligned}$$

where A is the cross-sectional area of the moving air and $A\,\Delta x$ is its volume. Now, as in Section 16.8, we integrate this expression over a full wavelength to find the total kinetic energy in one wavelength. Letting the volume of air shrink to infinitesimal thickness, so that $\Delta x \rightarrow dx$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}K_\lambda &= \int dK = \int_0^\lambda \tfrac{1}{2}\rho A(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2 \sin^2 kx\, dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho A(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2 \int_0^\lambda \sin^2 kx\, dx \\ &= \tfrac{1}{2}\rho A(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2 \left(\tfrac{1}{2}\lambda\right) = \tfrac{1}{4}\rho A(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2 \lambda\end{aligned}$$

As in the case of the string wave in Section 16.8, the total potential energy for one wavelength has the same value as the total kinetic energy; thus, the total mechani-

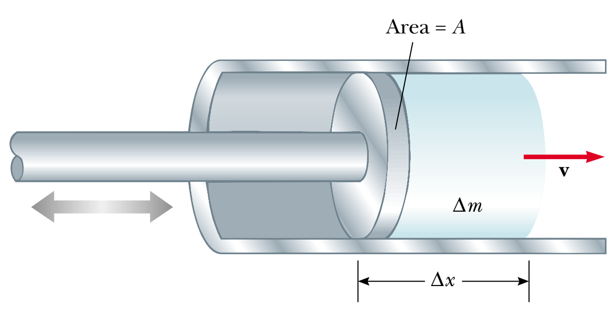


Figure 17.4 An oscillating piston transfers energy to the air in the tube, initially causing the volume of air of width Δx and mass Δm to oscillate with an amplitude s_{max}.

[1] Although it is not proved here, the work done by the piston equals the energy carried away by the wave. For a detailed mathematical treatment of this concept, see Chapter 4 in Frank S. Crawford, Jr., *Waves,* Berkeley Physics Course, vol. 3, New York, McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1968.

cal energy is

$$E_\lambda = K_\lambda + U_\lambda = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho A(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2\lambda$$

As the sound wave moves through the air, this amount of energy passes by a given point during one period of oscillation. Hence, the rate of energy transfer is

$$\mathcal{P} = \frac{E_\lambda}{\Delta t} = \frac{\tfrac{1}{2}\rho A(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2\lambda}{T} = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho A(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2\left(\frac{\lambda}{T}\right) = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho A v(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2$$

where v is the speed of sound in air.

We define the **intensity *I*** of a wave, or the power per unit area, to be the rate at which the energy being transported by the wave flows through a unit area A perpendicular to the direction of travel of the wave.

In the present case, therefore, the intensity is

Intensity of a sound wave

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{P}}{A} = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v(\omega s_{\text{max}})^2 \quad \textbf{(17.5)}$$

Thus, we see that the intensity of a periodic sound wave is proportional to the square of the displacement amplitude and to the square of the angular frequency (as in the case of a periodic string wave). This can also be written in terms of the pressure amplitude ΔP_{max}; in this case, we use Equation 17.4 to obtain

$$I = \frac{\Delta P_{\text{max}}^2}{2\rho v} \quad \textbf{(17.6)}$$

EXAMPLE 17.3 Hearing Limits

The faintest sounds the human ear can detect at a frequency of 1 000 Hz correspond to an intensity of about 1.00×10^{-12} W/m^2—the so-called *threshold of hearing*. The loudest sounds the ear can tolerate at this frequency correspond to an intensity of about 1.00 W/m^2—the *threshold of pain*. Determine the pressure amplitude and displacement amplitude associated with these two limits.

Solution First, consider the faintest sounds. Using Equation 17.6 and taking $v = 343$ m/s as the speed of sound waves in air and $\rho = 1.20$ kg/m^3 as the density of air, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta P_{\text{max}} &= \sqrt{2\rho v I}\\ &= \sqrt{2(1.20\ \text{kg/m}^3)(343\ \text{m/s})(1.00 \times 10^{-12}\ \text{W/m}^2)}\\ &= \boxed{2.87 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{N/m}^2}\end{aligned}$$

Because atmospheric pressure is about 10^5 N/m^2, this result tells us that the ear can discern pressure fluctuations as small as 3 parts in 10^{10}!

We can calculate the corresponding displacement amplitude by using Equation 17.4, recalling that $\omega = 2\pi f$ (see Eqs. 16.10 and 16.12):

$$\begin{aligned}s_{\text{max}} &= \frac{\Delta P_{\text{max}}}{\rho v \omega} = \frac{2.87 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{N/m}^2}{(1.20\ \text{kg/m}^3)(343\ \text{m/s})(2\pi \times 1\,000\ \text{Hz})}\\ &= \boxed{1.11 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{m}}\end{aligned}$$

This is a remarkably small number! If we compare this result for s_{max} with the diameter of a molecule (about 10^{-10} m), we see that the ear is an extremely sensitive detector of sound waves.

In a similar manner, one finds that the loudest sounds the human ear can tolerate correspond to a pressure amplitude of 28.7 N/m^2 and a displacement amplitude equal to 1.11×10^{-5} m.

Sound Level in Decibels

The example we just worked illustrates the wide range of intensities the human ear can detect. Because this range is so wide, it is convenient to use a logarithmic scale, where the **sound level** β (Greek letter beta) is defined by the equation

$$\beta = 10 \log\left(\frac{I}{I_0}\right) \qquad (17.7)$$

The constant I_0 is the *reference intensity,* taken to be at the threshold of hearing ($I_0 = 1.00 \times 10^{-12}$ W/m^2), and I is the intensity, in watts per square meter, at the sound level β, where β is measured in **decibels** (dB).[2] On this scale, the threshold of pain ($I = 1.00$ W/m^2) corresponds to a sound level of $\beta = 10 \log[(1\text{ W/m}^2)/(10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2)] = 10 \log(10^{12}) = 120$ dB, and the threshold of hearing corresponds to $\beta = 10 \log[(10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2)/(10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2)] = 0$ dB.

Prolonged exposure to high sound levels may seriously damage the ear. Ear plugs are recommended whenever sound levels exceed 90 dB. Recent evidence suggests that "noise pollution" may be a contributing factor to high blood pressure, anxiety, and nervousness. Table 17.2 gives some typical sound-level values.

TABLE 17.2
Sound Levels

Source of Sound	β (dB)
Nearby jet airplane	150
Jackhammer; machine gun	130
Siren; rock concert	120
Subway; power mower	100
Busy traffic	80
Vacuum cleaner	70
Normal conversation	50
Mosquito buzzing	40
Whisper	30
Rustling leaves	10
Threshold of hearing	0

EXAMPLE 17.4 Sound Levels

Two identical machines are positioned the same distance from a worker. The intensity of sound delivered by each machine at the location of the worker is 2.0×10^{-7} W/m^2. Find the sound level heard by the worker (a) when one machine is operating and (b) when both machines are operating.

Solution (a) The sound level at the location of the worker with one machine operating is calculated from Equation 17.7:

$$\beta_1 = 10 \log\left(\frac{2.0 \times 10^{-7}\text{ W/m}^2}{1.00 \times 10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2}\right) = 10 \log(2.0 \times 10^5)$$

$$= \boxed{53\text{ dB}}$$

(b) When both machines are operating, the intensity is doubled to 4.0×10^{-7} W/m^2; therefore, the sound level now is

$$\beta_2 = 10 \log\left(\frac{4.0 \times 10^{-7}\text{ W/m}^2}{1.00 \times 10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2}\right) = 10 \log(4.0 \times 10^5)$$

$$= \boxed{56\text{ dB}}$$

From these results, we see that when the intensity is doubled, the sound level increases by only 3 dB.

Quick Quiz 17.4

A violin plays a melody line and is then joined by nine other violins, all playing at the same intensity as the first violin, in a repeat of the same melody. (a) When all of the violins are playing together, by how many decibels does the sound level increase? (b) If ten more violins join in, how much has the sound level increased over that for the single violin?

[2] The unit *bel* is named after the inventor of the telephone, Alexander Graham Bell (1847–1922). The prefix *deci-* is the SI prefix that stands for 10^{-1}.

17.4 SPHERICAL AND PLANE WAVES

If a spherical body oscillates so that its radius varies sinusoidally with time, a spherical sound wave is produced (Fig. 17.5). The wave moves outward from the source at a constant speed if the medium is uniform.

Because of this uniformity, we conclude that the energy in a spherical wave propagates equally in all directions. That is, no one direction is preferred over any other. If $\mathcal{P}_{\text{av}}$ is the average power emitted by the source, then this power at any distance r from the source must be distributed over a spherical surface of area $4\pi r^2$. Hence, the wave intensity at a distance r from the source is

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{av}}}{A} = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{av}}}{4\pi r^2} \tag{17.8}$$

Because $\mathcal{P}_{\text{av}}$ is the same for any spherical surface centered at the source, we see that the intensities at distances r_1 and r_2 are

$$I_1 = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{av}}}{4\pi {r_1}^2} \qquad \text{and} \qquad I_2 = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{av}}}{4\pi {r_2}^2}$$

Therefore, the ratio of intensities on these two spherical surfaces is

$$\frac{I_1}{I_2} = \frac{{r_2}^2}{{r_1}^2}$$

This inverse-square law states that the intensity decreases in proportion to the square of the distance from the source. Equation 17.5 tells us that the intensity is proportional to s_{max}^2. Setting the right side of Equation 17.5 equal to the right side

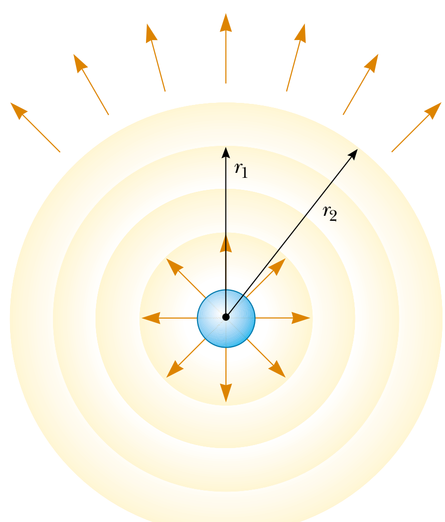


Figure 17.5 A spherical sound wave propagating radially outward from an oscillating spherical body. The intensity of the spherical wave varies as $1/r^2$.

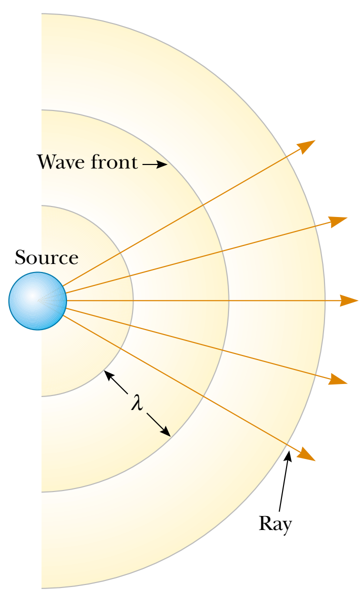


Figure 17.6 Spherical waves emitted by a point source. The circular arcs represent the spherical wave fronts that are concentric with the source. The rays are radial lines pointing outward from the source, perpendicular to the wave fronts.

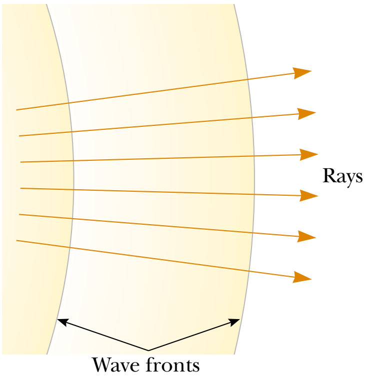


Figure 17.7 Far away from a point source, the wave fronts are nearly parallel planes, and the rays are nearly parallel lines perpendicular to the planes. Hence, a small segment of a spherical wave front is approximately a plane wave.

of Equation 17.8, we conclude that the displacement amplitude s_{max} of a spherical wave must vary as $1/r$. Therefore, we can write the wave function ψ (Greek letter psi) for an outgoing spherical wave in the form

$$\psi(r, t) = \frac{s_0}{r} \sin(kr - \omega t) \tag{17.9}$$

where s_0, the displacement amplitude at unit distance from the source, is a constant parameter characterizing the whole wave.

It is useful to represent spherical waves with a series of circular arcs concentric with the source, as shown in Figure 17.6. Each arc represents a surface over which the phase of the wave is constant. We call such a surface of constant phase a **wave front.** The distance between adjacent wave fronts equals the wavelength λ. The radial lines pointing outward from the source are called **rays.**

Now consider a small portion of a wave front far from the source, as shown in Figure 17.7. In this case, the rays passing through the wave front are nearly parallel to one another, and the wave front is very close to being planar. Therefore, at distances from the source that are great compared with the wavelength, we can approximate a wave front with a plane. Any small portion of a spherical wave far from its source can be considered a **plane wave.**

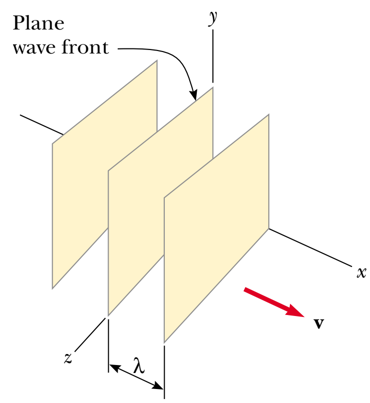


Figure 17.8 A representation of a plane wave moving in the positive x direction with a speed v. The wave fronts are planes parallel to the yz plane.

Figure 17.8 illustrates a plane wave propagating along the x axis, which means that the wave fronts are parallel to the yz plane. In this case, the wave function depends only on x and t and has the form

Representation of a plane wave

$$\psi(x, t) = A \sin(kx - \omega t) \tag{17.10}$$

That is, the wave function for a plane wave is identical in form to that for a one-dimensional traveling wave.

The intensity is the same at all points on a given wave front of a plane wave.

EXAMPLE 17.5 Intensity Variations of a Point Source

A point source emits sound waves with an average power output of 80.0 W. (a) Find the intensity 3.00 m from the source.

Solution A point source emits energy in the form of spherical waves (see Fig. 17.5). At a distance r from the source, the power is distributed over the surface area of a sphere, $4\pi r^2$. Therefore, the intensity at the distance r is given by Equation 17.8:

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{av}}{4\pi r^2} = \frac{80.0\text{ W}}{4\pi(3.00\text{ m})^2} = \boxed{0.707\text{ W/m}^2}$$

an intensity that is close to the threshold of pain.

(b) Find the distance at which the sound level is 40 dB.

Solution We can find the intensity at the 40-dB sound level by using Equation 17.7 with $I_0 = 1.00 \times 10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2$:

$$10 \log\left(\frac{I}{I_0}\right) = 40 \text{ dB}$$

$$\log I - \log I_0 = \frac{40}{10} = 4$$

$$\log I = 4 + \log 10^{-12}$$

$$\log I = -8$$

$$I = 1.00 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W/m}^2$$

Using this value for I in Equation 17.8 and solving for r, we obtain

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{av}}}{4\pi I}} = \sqrt{\frac{80.0 \text{ W}}{4\pi \times 1.00 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W/m}^2}}$$

$$= \boxed{2.52 \times 10^4 \text{ m}}$$

which equals about 16 miles!

17.5 THE DOPPLER EFFECT

QuickLab

(Before attempting to do this QuickLab, you should check to see whether it is legal to sound a horn in your area.) Sound your car horn while driving toward and away from a friend in a campus parking lot or on a country road. Try this at different speeds while driving toward and past the friend (not *at* the friend). Do the frequencies of the sounds your friend hears agree with what is described in the text?

Perhaps you have noticed how the sound of a vehicle's horn changes as the vehicle moves past you. The frequency of the sound you hear as the vehicle approaches you is higher than the frequency you hear as it moves away from you (see QuickLab). This is one example of the **Doppler effect.**[3]

To see what causes this apparent frequency change, imagine you are in a boat that is lying at anchor on a gentle sea where the waves have a period of $T = 3.0$ s. This means that every 3.0 s a crest hits your boat. Figure 17.9a shows this situation, with the water waves moving toward the left. If you set your watch to $t = 0$ just as one crest hits, the watch reads 3.0 s when the next crest hits, 6.0 s when the third crest hits, and so on. From these observations you conclude that the wave frequency is $f = 1/T = (1/3.0)$ Hz. Now suppose you start your motor and head directly into the oncoming waves, as shown in Figure 17.9b. Again you set your watch to $t = 0$ as a crest hits the front of your boat. Now, however, because you are moving toward the next wave crest as it moves toward you, it hits you less than 3.0 s after the first hit. In other words, the period you observe is shorter than the 3.0-s period you observed when you were stationary. Because $f = 1/T$, you observe a higher wave frequency than when you were at rest.

If you turn around and move in the same direction as the waves (see Fig. 17.9c), you observe the opposite effect. You set your watch to $t = 0$ as a crest hits the back of the boat. Because you are now moving away from the next crest, more than 3.0 s has elapsed on your watch by the time that crest catches you. Thus, you observe a lower frequency than when you were at rest.

These effects occur because the relative speed between your boat and the waves depends on the direction of travel and on the speed of your boat. When you are moving toward the right in Figure 17.9b, this relative speed is higher than that of the wave speed, which leads to the observation of an increased frequency. When you turn around and move to the left, the relative speed is lower, as is the observed frequency of the water waves.

Let us now examine an analogous situation with sound waves, in which the water waves become sound waves, the water becomes the air, and the person on the boat becomes an observer listening to the sound. In this case, an observer O is moving and a sound source S is stationary. For simplicity, we assume that the air is also stationary and that the observer moves directly toward the source. The observer moves with a speed v_O toward a stationary point source ($v_S = 0$) (Fig. 17.10). In general, *at rest* means at rest with respect to the medium, air.

[3] Named after the Austrian physicist Christian Johann Doppler (1803–1853), who discovered the effect for light waves.

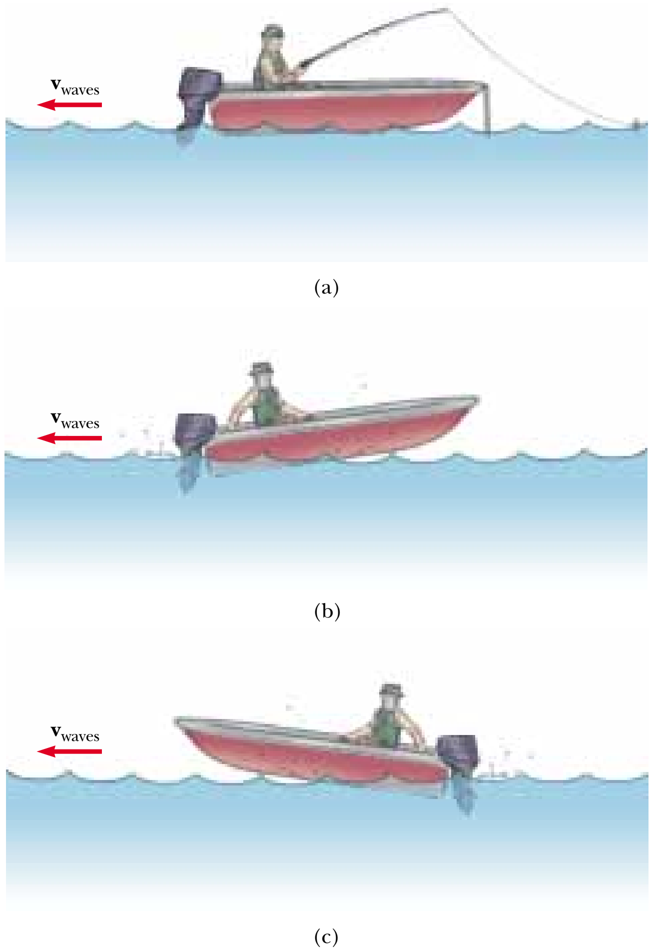


Figure 17.9 (a) Waves moving toward a stationary boat. The waves travel to the left, and their source is far to the right of the boat, out of the frame of the drawing. (b) The boat moving toward the wave source. (c) The boat moving away from the wave source.

We take the frequency of the source to be f, the wavelength to be λ, and the speed of sound to be v. If the observer were also stationary, he or she would detect f wave fronts per second. (That is, when $v_O = 0$ and $v_S = 0$, the observed frequency equals the source frequency.) When the observer moves toward the source,

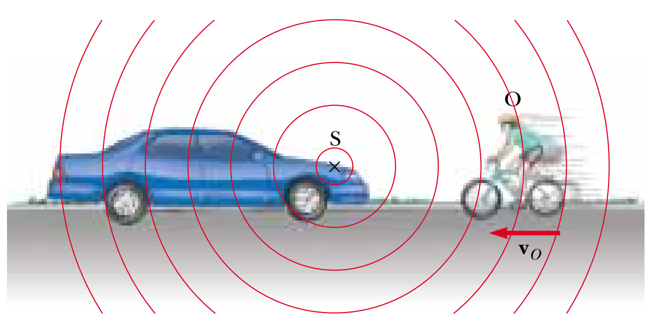


Figure 17.10 An observer O (the cyclist) moves with a speed v_O toward a stationary point source S, the horn of a parked car. The observer hears a frequency f' that is greater than the source frequency.

the speed of the waves relative to the observer is $v' = v + v_O$, as in the case of the boat, but the wavelength λ is unchanged. Hence, using Equation 16.14, $v = \lambda f$, we can say that the frequency heard by the observer is *increased* and is given by

$$f' = \frac{v'}{\lambda} = \frac{v + v_O}{\lambda}$$

Because $\lambda = v/f$, we can express f' as

$$f' = \left(1 + \frac{v_O}{v}\right)f \qquad \text{(observer moving toward source)} \qquad \textbf{(17.11)}$$

If the observer is moving away from the source, the speed of the wave relative to the observer is $v' = v - v_O$. The frequency heard by the observer in this case is *decreased* and is given by

$$f' = \left(1 - \frac{v_O}{v}\right)f \qquad \text{(observer moving away from source)} \qquad \textbf{(17.12)}$$

In general, whenever an observer moves with a speed v_O relative to a stationary source, the frequency heard by the observer is

Frequency heard with an observer in motion

$$f' = \left(1 \pm \frac{v_O}{v}\right)f \qquad \textbf{(17.13)}$$

where the positive sign is used when the observer moves toward the source and the negative sign is used when the observer moves away from the source.

Now consider the situation in which the source is in motion and the observer is at rest. If the source moves directly toward observer A in Figure 17.11a, the wave fronts heard by the observer are closer together than they would be if the source were not moving. As a result, the wavelength λ' measured by observer A is shorter than the wavelength λ of the source. During each vibration, which lasts for a time T (the period), the source moves a distance $v_S T = v_S/f$ and the wavelength is

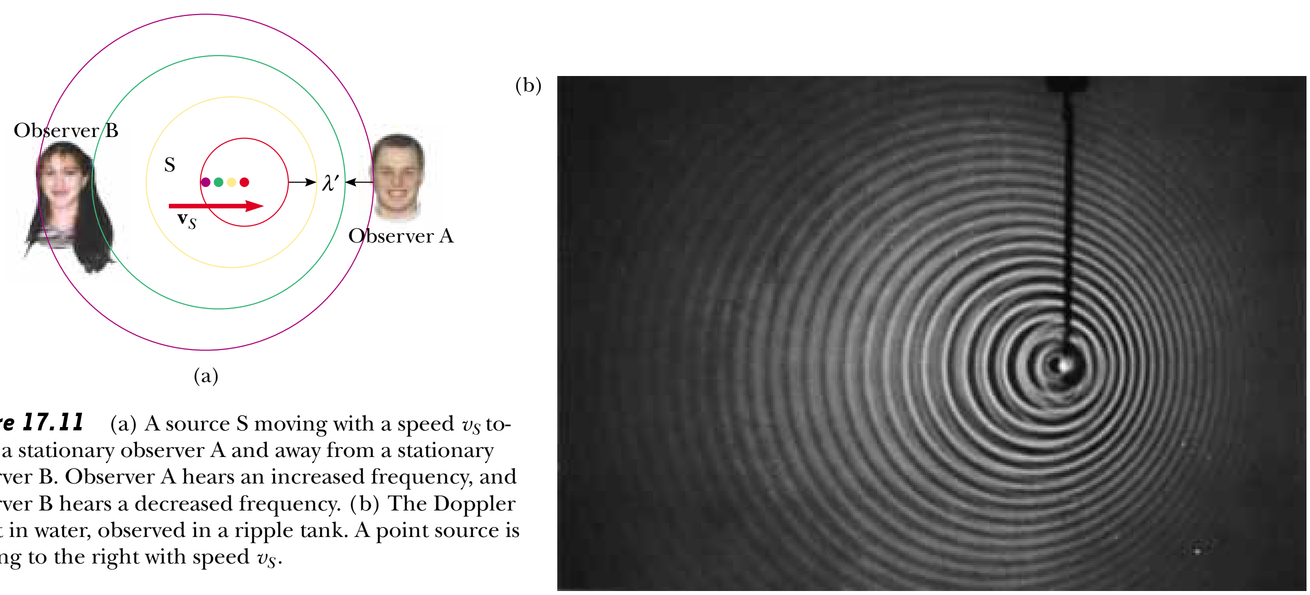


Figure 17.11 (a) A source S moving with a speed v_S toward a stationary observer A and away from a stationary observer B. Observer A hears an increased frequency, and observer B hears a decreased frequency. (b) The Doppler effect in water, observed in a ripple tank. A point source is moving to the right with speed v_S.

shortened by this amount. Therefore, the observed wavelength λ' is

$$\lambda' = \lambda - \Delta\lambda = \lambda - \frac{v_S}{f}$$

Because $\lambda = v/f$, the frequency heard by observer A is

$$f' = \frac{v}{\lambda'} = \frac{v}{\lambda - \dfrac{v_S}{f}} = \frac{v}{\dfrac{v}{f} - \dfrac{v_S}{f}}$$

$$f' = \left(\frac{1}{1 - \dfrac{v_S}{v}}\right) f \qquad \textbf{(17.14)}$$

"I love hearing that lonesome wail of the train whistle as the magnitude of the frequency of the wave changes due to the Doppler effect."

That is, the observed frequency is *increased* whenever the source is moving toward the observer.

When the source moves away from a stationary observer, as is the case for observer B in Figure 17.11a, the observer measures a wavelength λ' that is *greater* than λ and hears a *decreased* frequency:

$$f' = \left(\frac{1}{1 + \dfrac{v_S}{v}}\right) f \qquad \textbf{(17.15)}$$

Combining Equations 17.14 and 17.15, we can express the general relationship for the observed frequency when a source is moving and an observer is at rest as

Frequency heard with source in motion

$$f' = \left(\frac{1}{1 \mp \dfrac{v_S}{v}}\right) f \qquad \textbf{(17.16)}$$

Finally, if both source and observer are in motion, we find the following general relationship for the observed frequency:

Frequency heard with observer and source in motion

$$f' = \left(\frac{v \pm v_O}{v \mp v_S}\right) f \qquad \textbf{(17.17)}$$

In this expression, the upper signs ($+ v_O$ and $- v_S$) refer to motion of one toward the other, and the lower signs ($- v_O$ and $+ v_S$) refer to motion of one away from the other.

A convenient rule concerning signs for you to remember when working with all Doppler-effect problems is as follows:

The word *toward* is associated with an *increase* in observed frequency. The words *away from* are associated with a *decrease* in observed frequency.

Although the Doppler effect is most typically experienced with sound waves, it is a phenomenon that is common to all waves. For example, the relative motion of source and observer produces a frequency shift in light waves. The Doppler effect is used in police radar systems to measure the speeds of motor vehicles. Likewise, astronomers use the effect to determine the speeds of stars, galaxies, and other celestial objects relative to the Earth.

EXAMPLE 17.6 The Noisy Siren

As an ambulance travels east down a highway at a speed of 33.5 m/s (75 mi/h), its siren emits sound at a frequency of 400 Hz. What frequency is heard by a person in a car traveling west at 24.6 m/s (55 mi/h) (a) as the car approaches the ambulance and (b) as the car moves away from the ambulance?

Solution (a) We can use Equation 17.17 in both cases, taking the speed of sound in air to be $v = 343$ m/s. As the ambulance and car approach each other, the person in the car hears the frequency

$$f' = \left(\frac{v + v_O}{v - v_S}\right)f = \left(\frac{343 \text{ m/s} + 24.6 \text{ m/s}}{343 \text{ m/s} - 33.5 \text{ m/s}}\right)(400 \text{ Hz})$$

$$= \boxed{475 \text{ Hz}}$$

(b) As the vehicles recede from each other, the person hears the frequency

$$f' = \left(\frac{v - v_O}{v + v_S}\right)f = \left(\frac{343 \text{ m/s} - 24.6 \text{ m/s}}{343 \text{ m/s} + 33.5 \text{ m/s}}\right)(400 \text{ Hz})$$

$$= \boxed{338 \text{ Hz}}$$

The *change* in frequency detected by the person in the car is $475 - 338 = 137$ Hz, which is more than 30% of the true frequency.

Exercise Suppose the car is parked on the side of the highway as the ambulance speeds by. What frequency does the person in the car hear as the ambulance (a) approaches and (b) recedes?

Answer (a) 443 Hz. (b) 364 Hz.

Shock Waves

Now let us consider what happens when the speed v_S of a source *exceeds* the wave speed v. This situation is depicted graphically in Figure 17.12a. The circles represent spherical wave fronts emitted by the source at various times during its motion. At $t = 0$, the source is at S_0, and at a later time t, the source is at S_n. In the time t,

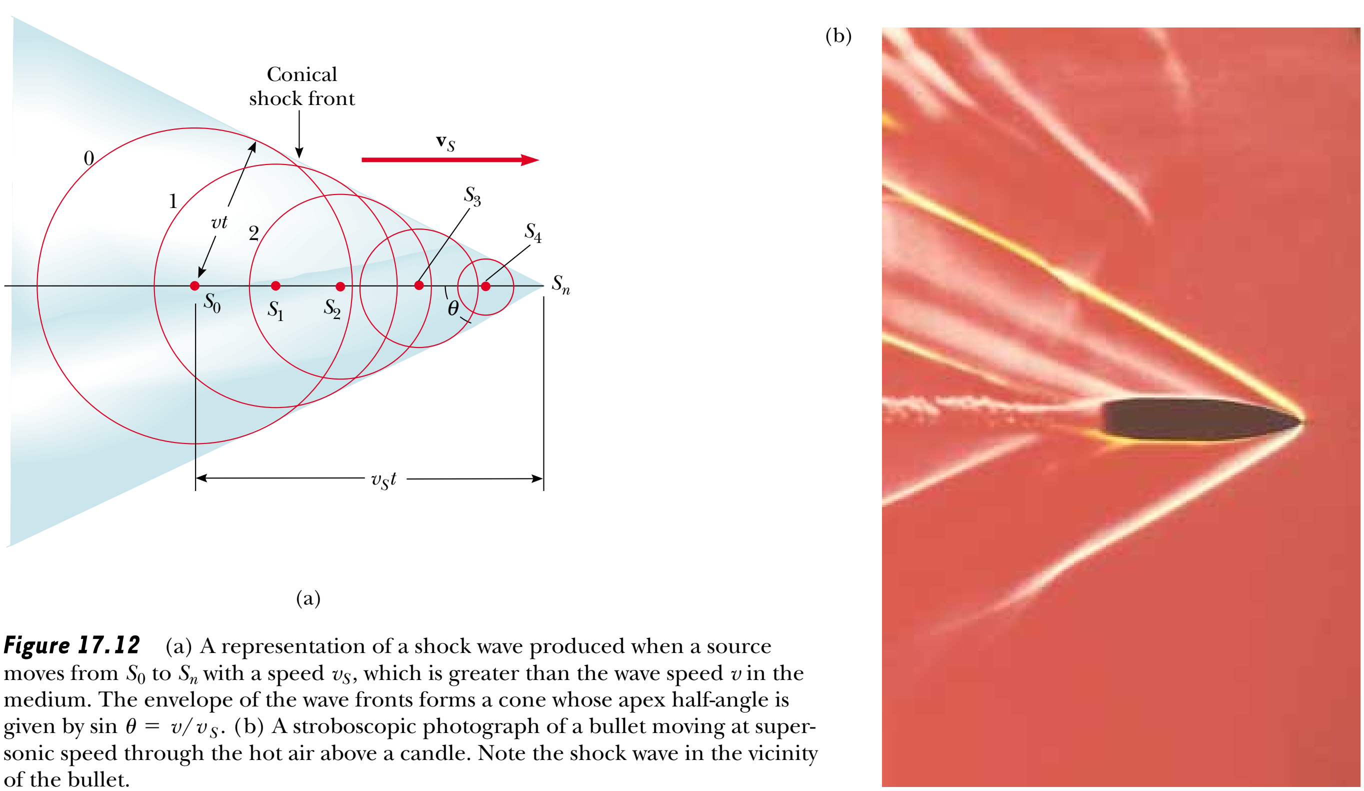


Figure 17.12 (a) A representation of a shock wave produced when a source moves from S_0 to S_n with a speed v_S, which is greater than the wave speed v in the medium. The envelope of the wave fronts forms a cone whose apex half-angle is given by $\sin\theta = v/v_S$. (b) A stroboscopic photograph of a bullet moving at supersonic speed through the hot air above a candle. Note the shock wave in the vicinity of the bullet.

Figure 17.13 The V-shaped bow wave of a boat is formed because the boat speed is greater than the speed of the water waves. A bow wave is analogous to a shock wave formed by an airplane traveling faster than sound.

the wave front centered at S_0 reaches a radius of vt. In this same amount of time, the source travels a distance v_St to S_n. At the instant the source is at S_n, waves are just beginning to be generated at this location, and hence the wave front has zero radius at this point. The tangent line drawn from S_n to the wave front centered on S_0 is tangent to all other wave fronts generated at intermediate times. Thus, we see that the envelope of these wave fronts is a cone whose apex half-angle θ is given by

$$\sin\theta = \frac{vt}{v_St} = \frac{v}{v_S}$$

The ratio v_S/v is referred to as the *Mach number,* and the conical wave front produced when $v_S > v$ (supersonic speeds) is known as a *shock wave.* An interesting analogy to shock waves is the V-shaped wave fronts produced by a boat (the *bow wave*) when the boat's speed exceeds the speed of the surface-water waves (Fig. 17.13).

Jet airplanes traveling at supersonic speeds produce shock waves, which are responsible for the loud "sonic boom" one hears. The shock wave carries a great deal of energy concentrated on the surface of the cone, with correspondingly great pressure variations. Such shock waves are unpleasant to hear and can cause damage to buildings when aircraft fly supersonically at low altitudes. In fact, an airplane flying at supersonic speeds produces a double boom because two shock fronts are formed, one from the nose of the plane and one from the tail (Fig. 17.14). People near the path of the space shuttle as it glides toward its landing point often report hearing what sounds like two very closely spaced cracks of thunder.

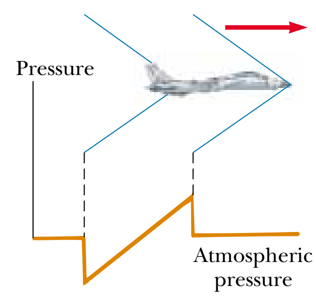


Figure 17.14 The two shock waves produced by the nose and tail of a jet airplane traveling at supersonic speeds.

Quick Quiz 17.5

An airplane flying with a constant velocity moves from a cold air mass into a warm air mass. Does the Mach number increase, decrease, or stay the same?

Quick Quiz 17.6

Suppose that an observer and a source of sound are both at rest and that a strong wind blows from the source toward the observer. Describe the effect of the wind (if any) on

(a) the observed frequency of the sound waves, (b) the observed wave speed, and (c) the observed wavelength.

SUMMARY

Sound waves are longitudinal and travel through a compressible medium with a speed that depends on the compressibility and inertia of that medium. The speed of sound in a medium having a bulk modulus B and density ρ is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}} \qquad \textbf{(17.1)}$$

With this formula you can determine the speed of a sound wave in many different materials.

For sinusoidal sound waves, the variation in the displacement is given by

$$s(x, t) = s_{\max} \cos(kx - \omega t) \qquad \textbf{(17.2)}$$

and the variation in pressure from the equilibrium value is

$$\Delta P = \Delta P_{\max} \sin(kx - \omega t) \qquad \textbf{(17.3)}$$

where $\Delta P_{\max}$ is the **pressure amplitude.** The pressure wave is 90° out of phase with the displacement wave. The relationship between $s_{\max}$ and $\Delta P_{\max}$ is given by

$$\Delta P_{\max} = \rho v \omega s_{\max} \qquad \textbf{(17.4)}$$

The intensity of a periodic sound wave, which is the power per unit area, is

$$I = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v(\omega s_{\max})^2 = \frac{\Delta P_{\max}^2}{2\rho v} \qquad \textbf{(17.5, 17.6)}$$

The sound level of a sound wave, in decibels, is given by

$$\beta = 10 \log\left(\frac{I}{I_0}\right) \qquad \textbf{(17.7)}$$

The constant I_0 is a reference intensity, usually taken to be at the threshold of hearing (1.00×10^{-12} W/m^2), and I is the intensity of the sound wave in watts per square meter.

The intensity of a spherical wave produced by a point source is proportional to the average power emitted and inversely proportional to the square of the distance from the source:

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{\text{av}}}{4\pi r^2} \qquad \textbf{(17.8)}$$

The change in frequency heard by an observer whenever there is relative motion between a source of sound waves and the observer is called the **Doppler effect.** The observed frequency is

$$f' = \left(\frac{v \pm v_O}{v \mp v_S}\right) f \qquad \textbf{(17.17)}$$

The upper signs ($+ v_O$ and $- v_S$) are used with motion of one toward the other, and the lower signs ($- v_O$ and $+ v_S$) are used with motion of one away from the other. You can also use this formula when v_O or v_S is zero.

QUESTIONS

1. Why are sound waves characterized as longitudinal?
2. If an alarm clock is placed in a good vacuum and then activated, no sound is heard. Explain.
3. A sonic ranger is a device that determines the position of an object by sending out an ultrasonic sound pulse and measuring how long it takes for the sound wave to return after it reflects from the object. Typically, these devices cannot reliably detect an object that is less than half a meter from the sensor. Why is that?
4. In Example 17.5, we found that a point source with a power output of 80 W reduces to a sound level of 40 dB at a distance of about 16 miles. Why do you suppose you cannot normally hear a rock concert that is going on 16 miles away? (See Table 17.2.)
5. If the distance from a point source is tripled, by what factor does the intensity decrease?
6. Explain how the Doppler effect is used with microwaves to determine the speed of an automobile.
7. Explain what happens to the frequency of your echo as you move in a vehicle *toward* a canyon wall. What happens to the frequency as you move *away* from the wall?
8. Of the following sounds, which is most likely to have a sound level of 60 dB—a rock concert, the turning of a page in this text, normal conversation, or a cheering crowd at a football game?
9. Estimate the decibel level of each of the sounds in the previous question.
10. A binary star system consists of two stars revolving about their common center of mass. If we observe the light reaching us from one of these stars as it makes one complete revolution, what does the Doppler effect predict will happen to this light?
11. How can an object move with respect to an observer so that the sound from it is not shifted in frequency?
12. Why is it not possible to use sonar (sound waves) to determine the speed of an object traveling faster than the speed of sound in a given medium?
13. Why is it so quiet after a snowfall?
14. Why is the intensity of an echo less than that of the original sound?
15. If the wavelength of a sound source is reduced by a factor of 2, what happens to its frequency? Its speed?
16. In a recent discovery, a nearby star was found to have a large planet orbiting about it, although the planet could not be seen. In terms of the concept of a system rotating about its center of mass and the Doppler shift for light (which is in many ways similar to that for sound), explain how an astronomer could determine the presence of the invisible planet.
17. A friend sitting in her car far down the road waves to you and beeps her horn at the same time. How far away must her car be for you to measure the speed of sound to two significant figures by measuring the time it takes for the sound to reach you?

PROBLEMS

1, 2, 3 = straightforward, intermediate, challenging ☐ = full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide*
WEB = solution posted at **http://www.saunderscollege.com/physics/** = Computer useful in solving problem = Interactive Physics
☐ = paired numerical/symbolic problems

Section 17.1 Speed of Sound Waves

1. Suppose that you hear a clap of thunder 16.2 s after seeing the associated lightning stroke. The speed of sound waves in air is 343 m/s, and the speed of light in air is 3.00×10^8 m/s. How far are you from the lightning stroke?
2. Find the speed of sound in mercury, which has a bulk modulus of approximately 2.80×10^{10} N/m^2 and a density of 13 600 kg/m^3.
3. A flower pot is knocked off a balcony 20.0 m above the sidewalk and falls toward an unsuspecting 1.75-m-tall man who is standing below. How close to the sidewalk can the flower pot fall before it is too late for a shouted warning from the balcony to reach the man in time? Assume that the man below requires 0.300 s to respond to the warning.
4. You are watching a pier being constructed on the far shore of a saltwater inlet when some blasting occurs. You hear the sound in the water 4.50 s before it reaches you through the air. How wide is the inlet? (*Hint:* See Table 17.1. Assume that the air temperature is 20°C.)
5. Another approximation of the temperature dependence of the speed of sound in air (in meters per second) is given by the expression

$$v = 331.5 + 0.607T_C$$

where T_C is the Celsius temperature. In dry air the temperature decreases about 1°C for every 150-m rise in altitude. (a) Assuming that this change is constant up to an altitude of 9 000 m, how long will it take the sound from an airplane flying at 9 000 m to reach the ground on a day when the ground temperature is 30°C? (b) Compare this to the time it would take if the air were at 30°C at all altitudes. Which interval is longer?
6. A bat can detect very small objects, such as an insect whose length is approximately equal to one wavelength

of the sound the bat makes. If bats emit a chirp at a frequency of 60.0 kHz, and if the speed of sound in air is 340 m/s, what is the smallest insect a bat can detect?

7. An airplane flies horizontally at a constant speed, piloted by rescuers who are searching for a disabled boat. When the plane is directly above the boat, the boat's crew blows a loud horn. By the time the plane's sound detector receives the horn's sound, the plane has traveled a distance equal to one-half its altitude above the ocean. If it takes the sound 2.00 s to reach the plane, determine (a) the speed of the plane and (b) its altitude. Take the speed of sound to be 343 m/s.

Section 17.2 Periodic Sound Waves

Note: In this section, use the following values as needed, unless otherwise specified. The equilibrium density of air is $\rho = 1.20\ \text{kg/m}^3$; the speed of sound in air is $v = 343$ m/s. Pressure variations ΔP are measured relative to atmospheric pressure, 1.013×10^5 Pa.

8. A sound wave in air has a pressure amplitude equal to 4.00×10^{-3} Pa. Calculate the displacement amplitude of the wave at a frequency of 10.0 kHz.

9. A sinusoidal sound wave is described by the displacement

$$s(x, t) = (2.00\ \mu\text{m}) \cos[(15.7\ \text{m}^{-1})x - (858\ \text{s}^{-1})t]$$

(a) Find the amplitude, wavelength, and speed of this wave. (b) Determine the instantaneous displacement of the molecules at the position $x = 0.050\ 0$ m at $t = 3.00$ ms. (c) Determine the maximum speed of a molecule's oscillatory motion.

10. As a sound wave travels through the air, it produces pressure variations (above and below atmospheric pressure) that are given by $\Delta P = 1.27 \sin(\pi x - 340\pi t)$ in SI units. Find (a) the amplitude of the pressure variations, (b) the frequency of the sound wave, (c) its wavelength in air, and (d) its speed.

11. Write an expression that describes the pressure variation as a function of position and time for a sinusoidal sound wave in air, if $\lambda = 0.100$ m and $\Delta P_{max} = 0.200$ Pa.

12. Write the function that describes the displacement wave corresponding to the pressure wave in Problem 11.

13. The tensile stress in a thick copper bar is 99.5% of its elastic breaking point of $13.0 \times 10^{10}\ \text{N/m}^2$. A 500-Hz sound wave is transmitted through the material. (a) What displacement amplitude will cause the bar to break? (b) What is the maximum speed of the particles at this moment?

14. Calculate the pressure amplitude of a 2.00-kHz sound wave in air if the displacement amplitude is equal to 2.00×10^{-8} m.

WEB **15.** An experimenter wishes to generate in air a sound wave that has a displacement amplitude of 5.50×10^{-6} m. The pressure amplitude is to be limited to 8.40×10^{-1} Pa. What is the minimum wavelength the sound wave can have?

16. A sound wave in air has a pressure amplitude of 4.00 Pa and a frequency of 5.00 kHz. Take $\Delta P = 0$ at the point $x = 0$ when $t = 0$. (a) What is ΔP at $x = 0$ when $t = 2.00 \times 10^{-4}$ s? (b) What is ΔP at $x = 0.020\ 0$ m when $t = 0$?

Section 17.3 Intensity of Periodic Sound Waves

17. Calculate the sound level, in decibels, of a sound wave that has an intensity of $4.00\ \mu\text{W/m}^2$.

18. A vacuum cleaner has a measured sound level of 70.0 dB. (a) What is the intensity of this sound in watts per square meter? (b) What is the pressure amplitude of the sound?

19. The intensity of a sound wave at a fixed distance from a speaker vibrating at 1.00 kHz is $0.600\ \text{W/m}^2$. (a) Determine the intensity if the frequency is increased to 2.50 kHz while a constant displacement amplitude is maintained. (b) Calculate the intensity if the frequency is reduced to 0.500 kHz and the displacement amplitude is doubled.

20. The intensity of a sound wave at a fixed distance from a speaker vibrating at a frequency f is I. (a) Determine the intensity if the frequency is increased to f' while a constant displacement amplitude is maintained. (b) Calculate the intensity if the frequency is reduced to $f/2$ and the displacement amplitude is doubled.

WEB **21.** A family ice show is held in an enclosed arena. The skaters perform to music with a sound level of 80.0 dB. This is too loud for your baby, who consequently yells at a level of 75.0 dB. (a) What total sound intensity engulfs you? (b) What is the combined sound level?

Section 17.4 Spherical and Plane Waves

22. For sound radiating from a point source, show that the difference in sound levels, β_1 and β_2, at two receivers is related to the ratio of the distances r_1 and r_2 from the source to the receivers by the expression

$$\beta_2 - \beta_1 = 20 \log\left(\frac{r_1}{r_2}\right)$$

23. A fireworks charge is detonated many meters above the ground. At a distance of 400 m from the explosion, the acoustic pressure reaches a maximum of $10.0\ \text{N/m}^2$. Assume that the speed of sound is constant at 343 m/s throughout the atmosphere over the region considered, that the ground absorbs all the sound falling on it, and that the air absorbs sound energy as described by the rate 7.00 dB/km. What is the sound level (in decibels) at 4.00 km from the explosion?

24. A loudspeaker is placed between two observers who are 110 m apart, along the line connecting them. If one observer records a sound level of 60.0 dB and the other records a sound level of 80.0 dB, how far is the speaker from each observer?

25. Two small speakers emit spherical sound waves of different frequencies. Speaker A has an output of 1.00 mW, and speaker B has an output of 1.50 mW. Determine the sound level (in decibels) at point C (Fig. P17.25) if (a) only speaker A emits sound, (b) only speaker B emits sound, (c) both speakers emit sound.

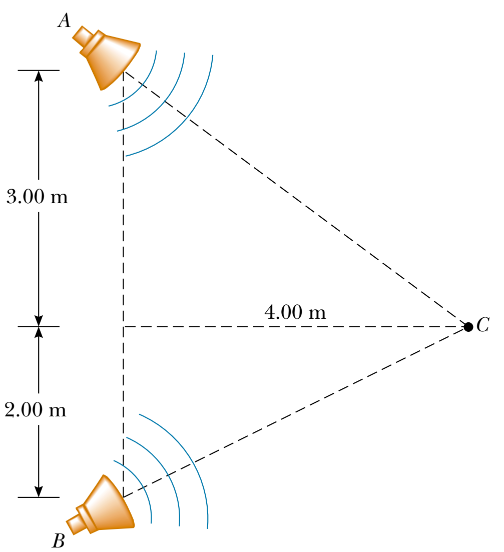


Figure P17.25

26. An experiment requires a sound intensity of 1.20 W/m^2 at a distance of 4.00 m from a speaker. What power output is required? Assume that the speaker radiates sound equally in all directions.

27. A source of sound (1 000 Hz) emits uniformly in all directions. An observer 3.00 m from the source measures a sound level of 40.0 dB. Calculate the average power output of the source.

28. A jackhammer, operated continuously at a construction site, behaves as a point source of spherical sound waves. A construction supervisor stands 50.0 m due north of this sound source and begins to walk due west. How far does she have to walk in order for the amplitude of the wave function to drop by a factor of 2.00?

29. The sound level at a distance of 3.00 m from a source is 120 dB. At what distances is the sound level (a) 100 dB and (b) 10.0 dB?

30. A fireworks rocket explodes 100 m above the ground. An observer directly under the explosion experiences an average sound intensity of 7.00×10^{-2} W/m^2 for 0.200 s. (a) What is the total sound energy of the explosion? (b) What sound level, in decibels, is heard by the observer?

31. As the people in a church sing on a summer morning, the sound level everywhere inside the church is 101 dB. The massive walls are opaque to sound, but all the windows and doors are open. Their total area is 22.0 m^2. (a) How much sound energy is radiated in 20.0 min? (b) Suppose the ground is a good reflector and sound radiates uniformly in all horizontal and upward directions. Find the sound level 1.00 km away.

32. A spherical wave is radiating from a point source and is described by the wave function

$$\Delta P(r, t) = \left[\frac{25.0}{r}\right] \sin(1.25r - 1\,870t)$$

where ΔP is in pascals, r in meters, and t in seconds. (a) What is the pressure amplitude 4.00 m from the source? (b) Determine the speed of the wave and hence the material the wave might be traveling through. (c) Find the sound level of the wave, in decibels, 4.00 m from the source. (d) Find the instantaneous pressure 5.00 m from the source at 0.080 0 s.

Section 17.5 The Doppler Effect

33. A commuter train passes a passenger platform at a constant speed of 40.0 m/s. The train horn is sounded at its characteristic frequency of 320 Hz. (a) What change in frequency is detected by a person on the platform as the train passes? (b) What wavelength is detected by a person on the platform as the train approaches?

34. A driver travels northbound on a highway at a speed of 25.0 m/s. A police car, traveling southbound at a speed of 40.0 m/s, approaches with its siren sounding at a frequency of 2 500 Hz. (a) What frequency does the driver observe as the police car approaches? (b) What frequency does the driver detect after the police car passes him? (c) Repeat parts (a) and (b) for the case in which the police car is northbound.

WEB **35.** Standing at a crosswalk, you hear a frequency of 560 Hz from the siren of an approaching police car. After the police car passes, the observed frequency of the siren is 480 Hz. Determine the car's speed from these observations.

36. Expectant parents are thrilled to hear their unborn baby's heartbeat, revealed by an ultrasonic motion detector. Suppose the fetus's ventricular wall moves in simple harmonic motion with an amplitude of 1.80 mm and a frequency of 115 per minute. (a) Find the maximum linear speed of the heart wall. Suppose the motion detector in contact with the mother's abdomen produces sound at 2 000 000.0 Hz, which travels through tissue at 1.50 km/s. (b) Find the maximum frequency at which sound arrives at the wall of the baby's heart. (c) Find the maximum frequency at which reflected sound is received by the motion detector. (By electronically "listening" for echoes at a frequency different from the broadcast frequency, the motion detector can produce beeps of audible sound in synchronization with the fetal heartbeat.)

37. A tuning fork vibrating at 512 Hz falls from rest and accelerates at 9.80 m/s^2. How far below the point of release is the tuning fork when waves with a frequency of 485 Hz reach the release point? Take the speed of sound in air to be 340 m/s.

38. A block with a speaker bolted to it is connected to a spring having spring constant $k = 20.0$ N/m, as shown in Figure P17.38. The total mass of the block and speaker is 5.00 kg, and the amplitude of this unit's motion is 0.500 m. (a) If the speaker emits sound waves of frequency 440 Hz, determine the highest and lowest frequencies heard by the person to the right of the speaker. (b) If the maximum sound level heard by the person is 60.0 dB when he is closest to the speaker, 1.00 m away, what is the minimum sound level heard by the observer? Assume that the speed of sound is 343 m/s.

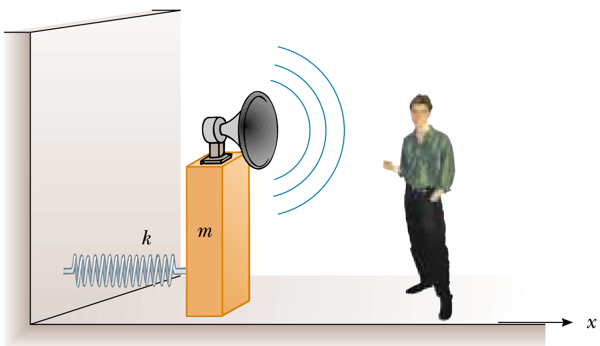


Figure P17.38

39. A train is moving parallel to a highway with a constant speed of 20.0 m/s. A car is traveling in the same direction as the train with a speed of 40.0 m/s. The car horn sounds at a frequency of 510 Hz, and the train whistle sounds at a frequency of 320 Hz. (a) When the car is behind the train, what frequency does an occupant of the car observe for the train whistle? (b) When the car is in front of the train, what frequency does a train passenger observe for the car horn just after the car passes?

40. At the Winter Olympics, an athlete rides her luge down the track while a bell just above the wall of the chute rings continuously. When her sled passes the bell, she hears the frequency of the bell fall by the musical interval called a minor third. That is, the frequency she hears drops to five sixths of its original value. (a) Find the speed of sound in air at the ambient temperature $-10.0°C$. (b) Find the speed of the athlete.

41. A jet fighter plane travels in horizontal flight at Mach 1.20 (that is, 1.20 times the speed of sound in air). At the instant an observer on the ground hears the shock wave, what is the angle her line of sight makes with the horizontal as she looks at the plane?

42. When high-energy charged particles move through a transparent medium with a speed greater than the speed of light in that medium, a shock wave, or bow wave, of light is produced. This phenomenon is called the *Cerenkov effect* and can be observed in the vicinity of the core of a swimming-pool nuclear reactor due to high-speed electrons moving through the water. In a particular case, the Cerenkov radiation produces a wave front with an apex half-angle of 53.0°. Calculate the speed of the electrons in the water. (The speed of light in water is 2.25×10^8 m/s.)

WEB 43. A supersonic jet traveling at Mach 3.00 at an altitude of 20 000 m is directly over a person at time $t = 0$, as in Figure P17.43. (a) How long will it be before the person encounters the shock wave? (b) Where will the plane be when it is finally heard? (Assume that the speed of sound in air is 335 m/s.)

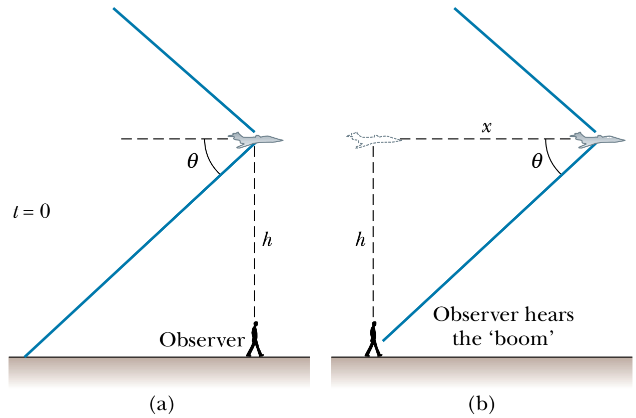


Figure P17.43

44. The tip of a circus ringmaster's whip travels at Mach 1.38 (that is, $v_S/v = 1.38$). What angle does the shock front make with the direction of the whip's motion?

ADDITIONAL PROBLEMS

45. A stone is dropped into a deep canyon and is heard to strike the bottom 10.2 s after release. The speed of sound waves in air is 343 m/s. How deep is the canyon? What would be the percentage error in the calculated depth if the time required for the sound to reach the canyon rim were ignored?

46. Unoccupied by spectators, a large set of football bleachers has solid seats and risers. You stand on the field in front of it and fire a starter's pistol or sharply clap two wooden boards together once. The sound pulse you produce has no frequency and no wavelength. You hear back from the bleachers a sound with definite pitch, which may remind you of a short toot on a trumpet, or of a buzzer or a kazoo. Account for this sound. Compute order-of-magnitude estimates for its frequency, wavelength, and duration on the basis of data that you specify.

47. Many artists sing very high notes in ornaments and cadenzas. The highest note written for a singer in a published score was F-sharp above high C, 1.480 kHz, sung

by Zerbinetta in the original version of Richard Strauss's opera *Ariadne auf Naxos.* (a) Find the wavelength of this sound in air. (b) Suppose that the people in the fourth row of seats hear this note with a level of 81.0 dB. Find the displacement amplitude of the sound. (c) In response to complaints, Strauss later transposed the note down to F above high C, 1.397 kHz. By what increment did the wavelength change?

48. A sound wave in a cylinder is described by Equations 17.2 through 17.4. Show that $\Delta P = \pm \rho v \omega \sqrt{s_{\text{max}}^2 - s^2}$.

49. On a Saturday morning, pickup trucks carrying garbage to the town dump form a nearly steady procession on a country road, all traveling at 19.7 m/s. From this direction, two trucks arrive at the dump every three minutes. A bicyclist also is traveling toward the dump at 4.47 m/s. (a) With what frequency do the trucks pass him? (b) A hill does not slow the trucks but makes the out-of-shape cyclist's speed drop to 1.56 m/s. How often do the noisy trucks whiz past him now?

50. The ocean floor is underlain by a layer of basalt that constitutes the crust, or uppermost layer, of the Earth in that region. Below the crust is found denser peridotite rock, which forms the Earth's mantle. The boundary between these two layers is called the Mohorovicic discontinuity ("Moho" for short). If an explosive charge is set off at the surface of the basalt, it generates a seismic wave that is reflected back out at the Moho. If the speed of the wave in basalt is 6.50 km/s and the two-way travel time is 1.85 s, what is the thickness of this oceanic crust?

51. A worker strikes a steel pipeline with a hammer, generating both longitudinal and transverse waves. Reflected waves return 2.40 s apart. How far away is the reflection point? (For steel, $v_{\text{long}} = 6.20$ km/s and $v_{\text{trans}} =$ 3.20 km/s.)

52. For a certain type of steel, stress is proportional to strain with Young's modulus as given in Table 12.1. The steel has the density listed for iron in Table 15.1. It bends permanently if subjected to compressive stress greater than its elastic limit, $\sigma = 400$ MPa, also called its *yield strength.* A rod 80.0 cm long, made of this steel, is projected at 12.0 m/s straight at a hard wall. (a) Find the speed of compressional waves moving along the rod. (b) After the front end of the rod hits the wall and stops, the back end of the rod keeps moving, as described by Newton's first law, until it is stopped by the excess pressure in a sound wave moving back through the rod. How much time elapses before the back end of the rod gets the message? (c) How far has the back end of the rod moved in this time? (d) Find the strain in the rod and (e) the stress. (f) If it is not to fail, show that the maximum impact speed a rod can have is given by the expression $\sigma/\sqrt{\rho Y}$.

53. To determine her own speed, a sky diver carries a buzzer that emits a steady tone at 1 800 Hz. A friend at the landing site on the ground directly below the sky diver listens to the amplified sound he receives from the buzzer. Assume that the air is calm and that the speed of sound is 343 m/s, independent of altitude. While the sky diver is falling at terminal speed, her friend on the ground receives waves with a frequency of 2 150 Hz. (a) What is the sky diver's speed of descent? (b) Suppose the sky diver is also carrying sound-receiving equipment that is sensitive enough to detect waves reflected from the ground. What frequency does she receive?

54. A train whistle ($f = 400$ Hz) sounds higher or lower in pitch depending on whether it is approaching or receding. (a) Prove that the difference in frequency between the approaching and receding train whistle is

$$\Delta f = \frac{2(u/v)}{1 - (u^2/v^2)} f$$

where u is the speed of the train and v is the speed of sound. (b) Calculate this difference for a train moving at a speed of 130 km/h. Take the speed of sound in air to be 340 m/s.

55. A bat, moving at 5.00 m/s, is chasing a flying insect. If the bat emits a 40.0-kHz chirp and receives back an echo at 40.4 kHz, at what relative speed is the bat moving toward or away from the insect? (Take the speed of sound in air to be $v = 340$ m/s.)

Figure P17.55

56. A supersonic aircraft is flying parallel to the ground. When the aircraft is directly overhead, an observer on the ground sees a rocket fired from the aircraft. Ten seconds later the observer hears the sonic boom, which is followed 2.80 s later by the sound of the rocket engine. What is the Mach number of the aircraft?

57. A police car is traveling east at 40.0 m/s along a straight road, overtaking a car that is moving east at 30.0 m/s. The police car has a malfunctioning siren that is stuck at 1 000 Hz. (a) Sketch the appearance of the wave fronts of the sound produced by the siren. Show the

wave fronts both to the east and to the west of the police car. (b) What would be the wavelength in air of the siren sound if the police car were at rest? (c) What is the wavelength in front of the car? (d) What is the wavelength behind the police car? (e) What frequency is heard by the driver being chased?

58. A copper bar is given a sharp compressional blow at one end. The sound of the blow, traveling through air at 0°C, reaches the opposite end of the bar 6.40 ms later than the sound transmitted through the metal of the bar. What is the length of the bar? (Refer to Table 17.1.)

59. The power output of a certain public address speaker is 6.00 W. Suppose it broadcasts equally in all directions. (a) Within what distance from the speaker would the sound be painful to the ear? (b) At what distance from the speaker would the sound be barely audible?

60. A jet flies toward higher altitude at a constant speed of 1 963 m/s in a direction that makes an angle θ with the horizontal (Fig. P17.60). An observer on the ground hears the jet for the first time when it is directly overhead. Determine the value of θ if the speed of sound in air is 340 m/s.

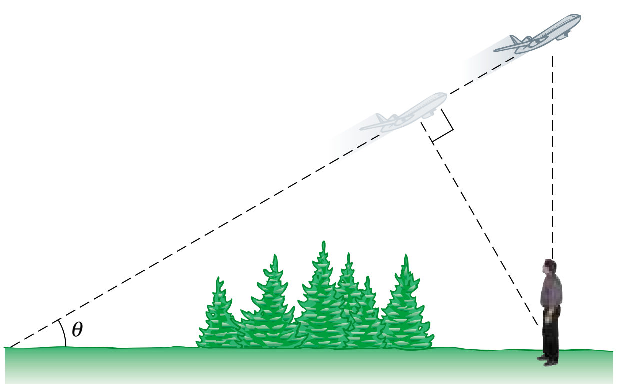


Figure P17.60

61. Two ships are moving along a line due east. The trailing vessel has a speed of 64.0 km/h relative to a land-based observation point, and the leading ship has a speed of 45.0 km/h relative to that point. The two ships are in a region of the ocean where the current is moving uniformly due west at 10.0 km/h. The trailing ship transmits a sonar signal at a frequency of 1 200.0 Hz. What frequency is monitored by the leading ship? (Use 1 520 m/s as the speed of sound in ocean water.)

62. A microwave oven generates a sound with intensity level 40.0 dB everywhere just outside it, when consuming 1.00 kW of power. Find the fraction of this power that is converted into the energy of sound waves. Assume the dimensions of the oven are 40.0 cm × 40.0 cm × 50.0 cm.

63. A meteoroid the size of a truck enters the Earth's atmosphere at a speed of 20.0 km/s and is not significantly slowed before entering the ocean. (a) What is the Mach angle of the shock wave from the meteoroid in the atmosphere? (Use 331 m/s as the sound speed.) (b) Assuming that the meteoroid survives the impact with the ocean surface, what is the (initial) Mach angle of the shock wave that the meteoroid produces in the water? (Use the wave speed for sea water given in Table 17.1.)

64. Consider a longitudinal (compressional) wave of wavelength λ traveling with speed v along the x direction through a medium of density ρ. The *displacement* of the molecules of the medium from their equilibrium position is

$$s = s_{\max} \sin(kx - \omega t)$$

Show that the pressure variation in the medium is given by

$$\Delta P = -\left(\frac{2\pi\rho v^2}{\lambda} s_{\max}\right)\cos(kx - \omega t)$$

WEB **65.** By proper excitation, it is possible to produce both longitudinal and transverse waves in a long metal rod. A particular metal rod is 150 cm long and has a radius of 0.200 cm and a mass of 50.9 g. Young's modulus for the material is 6.80×10^{10} N/m^2. What must the tension in the rod be if the ratio of the speed of longitudinal waves to the speed of transverse waves is 8.00?

66. An interstate highway has been built through a neighborhood in a city. In the afternoon, the sound level in a rented room is 80.0 dB as 100 cars per minute pass outside the window. Late at night, the traffic flow on the freeway is only five cars per minute. What is the average late-night sound level in the room?

67. A siren creates a sound level of 60.0 dB at a location 500 m from the speaker. The siren is powered by a battery that delivers a total energy of 1.00 kJ. Assuming that the efficiency of the siren is 30.0% (that is, 30.0% of the supplied energy is transformed into sound energy), determine the total time the siren can sound.

68. A siren creates a sound level β at a distance d from the speaker. The siren is powered by a battery that delivers a total energy E. Assuming that the efficiency of the siren is e (that is, e is equal to the output sound energy divided by the supplied energy), determine the total time the siren can sound.

69. The Doppler equation presented in the text is valid when the motion between the observer and the source occurs on a straight line, so that the source and observer are moving either directly toward or directly away from each other. If this restriction is relaxed, one must use the more general Doppler equation

$$f' = \left(\frac{v + v_O \cos\theta_O}{v - v_S \cos\theta_S}\right) f$$

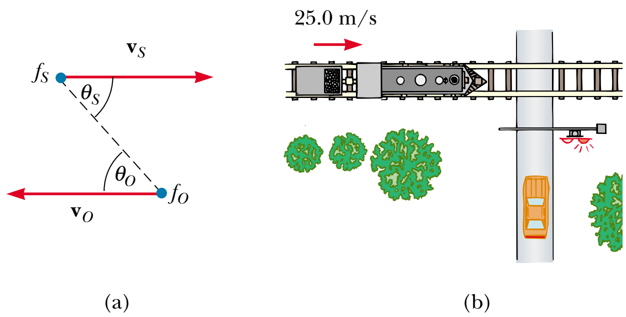


Figure P17.69

where θ_O and θ_S are defined in Figure P17.69a. (a) Show that if the observer and source are moving away from each other, the preceding equation reduces to Equation 17.17 with lower signs. (b) Use the preceding equation to solve the following problem. A train moves at a constant speed of 25.0 m/s toward the intersection shown in Figure P17.69b. A car is stopped near the intersection, 30.0 m from the tracks. If the train's horn emits a frequency of 500 Hz, what frequency is heard by the passengers in the car when the train is 40.0 m from the intersection? Take the speed of sound to be 343 m/s.

70. Figure 17.5 illustrates that at distance r from a point source with power $\mathcal{P}_{av}$, the wave intensity is $I = \mathcal{P}_{av}/4\pi r^2$. Study Figure 17.11a and prove that at distance r straight in front of a point source with power $\mathcal{P}_{av}$, moving with constant speed v_S, the wave intensity is

$$I = \frac{\mathcal{P}_{av}}{4\pi r^2}\left(\frac{v - v_S}{v}\right)$$

71. Three metal rods are located relative to each other as shown in Figure P17.71, where $L_1 + L_2 = L_3$. The density values and Young's moduli for the three materials are $\rho_1 = 2.70 \times 10^3$ kg/m^3, $Y_1 = 7.00 \times 10^{10}$ N/m^2; $\rho_2 = 11.3 \times 10^3$ kg/m^3, $Y_2 = 1.60 \times 10^{10}$ N/m^2; $\rho_3 = 8.80 \times 10^3$ kg/m^3, $Y_3 = 11.0 \times 10^{10}$ N/m^2. (a) If $L_3 = 1.50$ m, what must the ratio L_1/L_2 be if a sound wave is to travel the combined length of rods 1 and 2 in the same time it takes to travel the length of rod 3? (b) If the frequency of the source is 4.00 kHz, determine the phase difference between the wave traveling along rods 1 and 2 and the one traveling along rod 3.

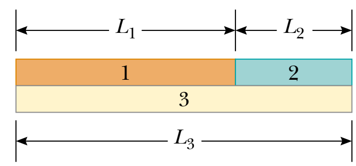


Figure P17.71

72. The volume knob on a radio has what is known as a "logarithmic taper." The electrical device connected to the knob (called a potentiometer) has a resistance R whose logarithm is proportional to the angular position of the knob: that is, $\log R \propto \theta$. If the intensity of the sound I (in watts per square meter) produced by the speaker is proportional to the resistance R, show that the sound level β (in decibels) is a linear function of θ.

73. The smallest wavelength possible for a sound wave in air is on the order of the separation distance between air molecules. Find the order of magnitude of the highest-frequency sound wave possible in air, assuming a wave speed of 343 m/s, a density of 1.20 kg/m^3, and an average molecular mass of 4.82×10^{-26} kg.

ANSWERS TO QUICK QUIZZES

17.1 The only correct answer is (c). Although the speed of a wave is given by the product of its wavelength and frequency, it is not affected by changes in either one. For example, if the sound from a musical instrument increases in frequency, the wavelength decreases, and thus $v = \lambda f$ remains constant. The amplitude of a sound wave determines the size of the oscillations of air molecules but does not affect the speed of the wave through the air.

17.2 The ground tremor represents a sound wave moving through the Earth. Sound waves move faster through the Earth than through air because rock and other ground materials are much stiffer against compression. Therefore—the vibration through the ground and the sound in the air having started together—the vibration through the ground reaches the observer first.

17.3 Because the bottom of the bottle does not allow molecular motion, the displacement in this region is at its minimum value. Because the pressure variation is a maximum when the displacement is a minimum, the pressure variation at the bottom is a maximum.

17.4 (a) 10 dB. If we call the intensity of each violin I, the total intensity when all the violins are playing is $I + 9I = 10I$. Therefore, the addition of the nine violins increases the intensity of the sound over that of one violin by a factor of 10. From Equation 17.7 we see that an increase in intensity by a factor of 10 increases the sound level by 10 dB. (b) 13 dB. The intensity is now increased by a factor of 20 over that of a single violin.

17.5 The Mach number is the ratio of the plane's speed (which does not change) to the speed of sound, which is greater in the warm air than in the cold, as we learned

in Section 17.1 (see Quick Quiz 17.1). The denominator of this fraction increases while the numerator stays constant. Therefore, the fraction as a whole—the Mach number—decreases.

17.6 (a) In the reference frame of the air, the observer is moving toward the source at the wind speed through stationary air, and the source is moving away from the observer with the same speed. In Equation 17.17, therefore, a plus sign is needed in both the numerator and the denominator:

$$f' = \left(\frac{v_{\text{sound}} + v_{\text{wind}}}{v_{\text{sound}} + v_{\text{wind}}}\right) f$$

meaning the observed frequency is the same as if no wind were blowing. (b) The observer "sees" the sound waves coming toward him at a higher speed $(v_{\text{sound}} + v_{\text{wind}})$. (c) At this higher speed, he attributes a greater wavelength $\lambda' = (v_{\text{sound}} + v_{\text{wind}})/f$ to the wave.

PUZZLER

A speaker for a stereo system operates even if the wires connecting it to the amplifier are reversed, that is, + for − and − for + (or red for black and black for red). Nonetheless, the owner's manual says that for best performance you should be careful to connect the two speakers properly, so that they are "in phase." Why is this such an important consideration for the quality of the sound you hear? *(George Semple)*

chapter 18

Superposition and Standing Waves

Chapter Outline

Important in the study of waves is the combined effect of two or more waves traveling in the same medium. For instance, what happens to a string when a wave traveling along it hits a fixed end and is reflected back on itself? What is the air pressure variation at a particular seat in a theater when the instruments of an orchestra sound together?

When analyzing a linear medium—that is, one in which the restoring force acting on the particles of the medium is proportional to the displacement of the particles—we can apply the principle of superposition to determine the resultant disturbance. In Chapter 16 we discussed this principle as it applies to wave pulses. In this chapter we study the superposition principle as it applies to sinusoidal waves. If the sinusoidal waves that combine in a linear medium have the same frequency and wavelength, a stationary pattern—called a *standing wave*—can be produced at certain frequencies under certain circumstances. For example, a taut string fixed at both ends has a discrete set of oscillation patterns, called *modes of vibration,* that are related to the tension and linear mass density of the string. These modes of vibration are found in stringed musical instruments. Other musical instruments, such as the organ and the flute, make use of the natural frequencies of sound waves in hollow pipes. Such frequencies are related to the length and shape of the pipe and depend on whether the pipe is open at both ends or open at one end and closed at the other.

We also consider the superposition and interference of waves having different frequencies and wavelengths. When two sound waves having nearly the same frequency interfere, we hear variations in the loudness called *beats.* The beat frequency corresponds to the rate of alternation between constructive and destructive interference. Finally, we discuss how any non-sinusoidal periodic wave can be described as a sum of sine and cosine functions.

18.1 SUPERPOSITION AND INTERFERENCE OF SINUSOIDAL WAVES

9.6 & 9.7

Imagine that you are standing in a swimming pool and that a beach ball is floating a couple of meters away. You use your right hand to send a series of waves toward the beach ball, causing it to repeatedly move upward by 5 cm, return to its original position, and then move downward by 5 cm. After the water becomes still, you use your left hand to send an identical set of waves toward the beach ball and observe the same behavior. What happens if you use both hands at the same time to send two waves toward the beach ball? How the beach ball responds to the waves depends on whether the waves work together (that is, both waves make the beach ball go up at the same time and then down at the same time) or work against each other (that is, one wave tries to make the beach ball go up, while the other wave tries to make it go down). Because it is possible to have two or more waves in the same location at the same time, we have to consider how waves interact with each other and with their surroundings.

The superposition principle states that when two or more waves move in the same linear medium, the net displacement of the medium (that is, the resultant wave) at any point equals the algebraic sum of all the displacements caused by the individual waves. Let us apply this principle to two sinusoidal waves traveling in the same direction in a linear medium. If the two waves are traveling to the right and have the same frequency, wavelength, and amplitude but differ in phase, we can

express their individual wave functions as

$$y_1 = A\sin(kx - \omega t) \qquad y_2 = A\sin(kx - \omega t + \phi)$$

where, as usual, $k = 2\pi/\lambda$, $\omega = 2\pi f$, and ϕ is the phase constant, which we introduced in the context of simple harmonic motion in Chapter 13. Hence, the resultant wave function y is

$$y = y_1 + y_2 = A[\sin(kx - \omega t) + \sin(kx - \omega t + \phi)]$$

To simplify this expression, we use the trigonometric identity

$$\sin a + \sin b = 2\cos\left(\frac{a-b}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)$$

If we let $a = kx - \omega t$ and $b = kx - \omega t + \phi$, we find that the resultant wave function y reduces to

$$y = 2A\cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\sin\left(kx - \omega t + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

Resultant of two traveling sinusoidal waves

This result has several important features. The resultant wave function y also is sinusoidal and has the same frequency and wavelength as the individual waves, since the sine function incorporates the same values of k and ω that appear in the original wave functions. The amplitude of the resultant wave is $2A\cos(\phi/2)$, and its phase is $\phi/2$. If the phase constant ϕ equals 0, then $\cos(\phi/2) = \cos 0 = 1$, and the amplitude of the resultant wave is $2A$—twice the amplitude of either individual wave. In this case, in which $\phi = 0$, the waves are said to be everywhere *in phase* and thus **interfere constructively.** That is, the crests and troughs of the individual waves y_1 and y_2 occur at the same positions and combine to form the red curve y of amplitude $2A$ shown in Figure 18.1a. Because the individual waves are in phase, they are indistinguishable in Figure 18.1a, in which they appear as a single blue curve. In general, constructive interference occurs when $\cos(\phi/2) = \pm 1$. This is true, for example, when $\phi = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi, \ldots$ rad—that is, when ϕ is an *even* multiple of π.

Constructive interference

When ϕ is equal to π rad or to any *odd* multiple of π, then $\cos(\phi/2) = \cos(\pi/2) = 0$, and the crests of one wave occur at the same positions as the troughs of the second wave (Fig. 18.1b). Thus, the resultant wave has *zero* amplitude everywhere, as a consequence of **destructive interference.** Finally, when the phase constant has an arbitrary value other than 0 or other than an integer multiple of π rad (Fig. 18.1c), the resultant wave has an amplitude whose value is somewhere between 0 and $2A$.

Destructive interference

Interference of Sound Waves

One simple device for demonstrating interference of sound waves is illustrated in Figure 18.2. Sound from a loudspeaker S is sent into a tube at point P, where there is a T-shaped junction. Half of the sound power travels in one direction, and half travels in the opposite direction. Thus, the sound waves that reach the receiver R can travel along either of the two paths. The distance along any path from speaker to receiver is called the **path length *r*.** The lower path length r_1 is fixed, but the upper path length r_2 can be varied by sliding the U-shaped tube, which is similar to that on a slide trombone. When the difference in the path lengths $\Delta r = |r_2 - r_1|$ is either zero or some integer multiple of the wavelength λ (that is, $r = n\lambda$, where $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$), the two waves reaching the receiver at any instant are in phase and interfere constructively, as shown in Figure 18.1a. For this case, a maximum in the sound intensity is detected at the receiver. If the path length r_2 is ad-

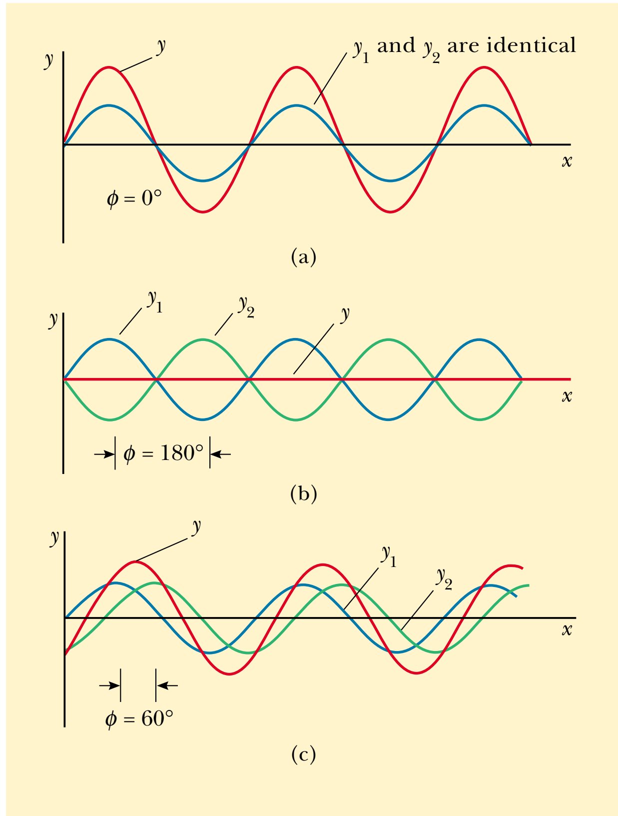


Figure 18.1 The superposition of two identical waves y_1 and y_2 (blue) to yield a resultant wave (red). (a) When y_1 and y_2 are in phase, the result is constructive interference. (b) When y_1 and y_2 are π rad out of phase, the result is destructive interference. (c) When the phase angle has a value other than 0 or π rad, the resultant wave y falls somewhere between the extremes shown in (a) and (b).

justed such that the path difference $\Delta r = \lambda/2, 3\lambda/2, \ldots, n\lambda/2$ (for n odd), the two waves are exactly π rad, or 180°, out of phase at the receiver and hence cancel each other. In this case of destructive interference, no sound is detected at the receiver. This simple experiment demonstrates that a phase difference may arise between two waves generated by the same source when they travel along paths of unequal lengths. This important phenomenon will be indispensable in our investigation of the interference of light waves in Chapter 37.

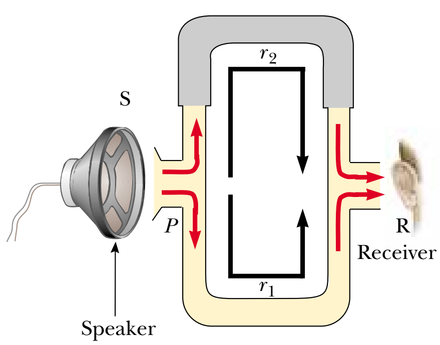


Figure 18.2 An acoustical system for demonstrating interference of sound waves. A sound wave from the speaker (S) propagates into the tube and splits into two parts at point P. The two waves, which superimpose at the opposite side, are detected at the receiver (R). The upper path length r_2 can be varied by sliding the upper section.

It is often useful to express the path difference in terms of the phase angle ϕ between the two waves. Because a path difference of one wavelength corresponds to a phase angle of 2π rad, we obtain the ratio $\phi/2\pi = \Delta r/\lambda$, or

$$\Delta r = \frac{\phi}{2\pi}\lambda \tag{18.1}$$

Relationship between path difference and phase angle

Using the notion of path difference, we can express our conditions for constructive and destructive interference in a different way. If the path difference is any even multiple of $\lambda/2$, then the phase angle $\phi = 2n\pi$, where $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, and the interference is constructive. For path differences of odd multiples of $\lambda/2$, $\phi = (2n + 1)\pi$, where $n = 0, 1, 2, 3 \ldots$, and the interference is destructive. Thus, we have the conditions

$$\Delta r = (2n)\frac{\lambda}{2} \quad \text{for constructive interference}$$

and **(18.2)**

$$\Delta r = (2n+1)\frac{\lambda}{2} \quad \text{for destructive interference}$$

EXAMPLE 18.1 Two Speakers Driven by the Same Source

A pair of speakers placed 3.00 m apart are driven by the same oscillator (Fig. 18.3). A listener is originally at point O, which is located 8.00 m from the center of the line connecting the two speakers. The listener then walks to point P, which is a perpendicular distance 0.350 m from O, before reaching the *first minimum* in sound intensity. What is the frequency of the oscillator?

Solution To find the frequency, we need to know the wavelength of the sound coming from the speakers. With this information, combined with our knowledge of the speed of sound, we can calculate the frequency. We can determine the wavelength from the interference information given. The first minimum occurs when the two waves reaching the listener at point P are 180° out of phase—in other words, when their path difference Δr equals $\lambda/2$. To calculate the path difference, we must first find the path lengths r_1 and r_2.

Figure 18.3 shows the physical arrangement of the speakers, along with two shaded right triangles that can be drawn on the basis of the lengths described in the problem. From these triangles, we find that the path lengths are

$$r_1 = \sqrt{(8.00\text{ m})^2 + (1.15\text{ m})^2} = 8.08\text{ m}$$

and

$$r_2 = \sqrt{(8.00\text{ m})^2 + (1.85\text{ m})^2} = 8.21\text{ m}$$

Hence, the path difference is $r_2 - r_1 = 0.13$ m. Because we require that this path difference be equal to $\lambda/2$ for the first minimum, we find that $\lambda = 0.26$ m.

To obtain the oscillator frequency, we use Equation 16.14, $v = \lambda f$, where v is the speed of sound in air, 343 m/s:

$$f = \frac{v}{\lambda} = \frac{343\text{ m/s}}{0.26\text{ m}} = \boxed{1.3\text{ kHz}}$$

Exercise If the oscillator frequency is adjusted such that the first location at which a listener hears no sound is at a distance of 0.75 m from O, what is the new frequency?

Answer 0.63 kHz.

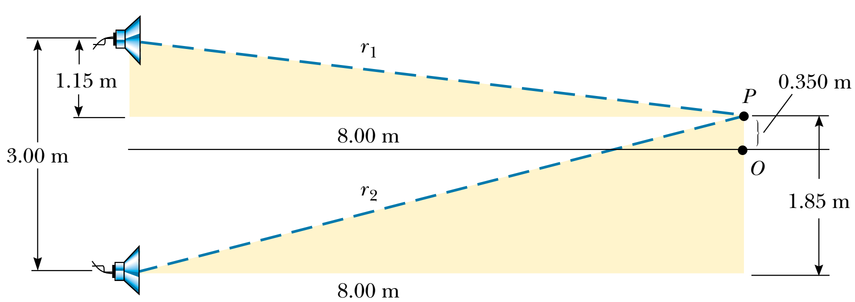


Figure 18.3

You can now understand why the speaker wires in a stereo system should be connected properly. When connected the wrong way—that is, when the positive (or red) wire is connected to the negative (or black) terminal—the speakers are said to be "out of phase" because the sound wave coming from one speaker destructively interferes with the wave coming from the other. In this situation, one speaker cone moves outward while the other moves inward. Along a line midway between the two, a rarefaction region from one speaker is superposed on a condensation region from the other speaker. Although the two sounds probably do not completely cancel each other (because the left and right stereo signals are usually not identical), a substantial loss of sound quality still occurs at points along this line.

18.2 STANDING WAVES

The sound waves from the speakers in Example 18.1 left the speakers in the forward direction, and we considered interference at a point in space in front of the speakers. Suppose that we turn the speakers so that they face each other and then have them emit sound of the same frequency and amplitude. We now have a situation in which two identical waves travel in opposite directions in the same medium. These waves combine in accordance with the superposition principle.

We can analyze such a situation by considering wave functions for two transverse sinusoidal waves having the same amplitude, frequency, and wavelength but traveling in opposite directions in the same medium:

$$y_1 = A\sin(kx - \omega t) \qquad y_2 = A\sin(kx + \omega t)$$

where y_1 represents a wave traveling to the right and y_2 represents one traveling to the left. Adding these two functions gives the resultant wave function y:

$$y = y_1 + y_2 = A\sin(kx - \omega t) + A\sin(kx + \omega t)$$

When we use the trigonometric identity $\sin(a \pm b) = \sin a \cos b \pm \cos a \sin b$, this expression reduces to

Wave function for a standing wave

$$y = (2A\sin kx)\cos \omega t \tag{18.3}$$

which is the wave function of a standing wave. A **standing wave,** such as the one shown in Figure 18.4, is an oscillation pattern with a stationary outline that results from the superposition of two identical waves traveling in opposite directions.

Notice that Equation 18.3 does not contain a function of $kx \pm \omega t$. Thus, it is not an expression for a traveling wave. If we observe a standing wave, we have no sense of motion in the direction of propagation of either of the original waves. If we compare this equation with Equation 13.3, we see that Equation 18.3 describes a special kind of simple harmonic motion. Every particle of the medium oscillates in simple harmonic motion with the same frequency ω (according to the $\cos \omega t$ factor in the equation). However, the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of a given particle (given by the factor $2A \sin kx$, the coefficient of the cosine function) depends on the location x of the particle in the medium. We need to distinguish carefully between the amplitude A of the individual waves and the amplitude $2A \sin kx$ of the simple harmonic motion of the particles of the medium. A given particle in a standing wave vibrates within the constraints of the *envelope* function $2A \sin kx$, where x is the particle's position in the medium. This is in contrast to the situation in a traveling sinusoidal wave, in which all particles oscillate with the

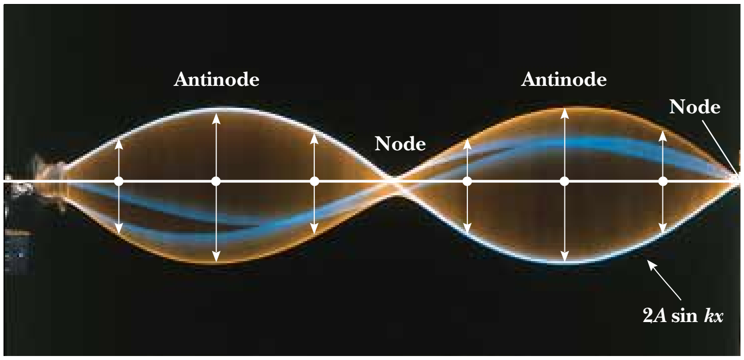


Figure 18.4 Multiflash photograph of a standing wave on a string. The time behavior of the vertical displacement from equilibrium of an individual particle of the string is given by cos ωt. That is, each particle vibrates at an angular frequency ω. The amplitude of the vertical oscillation of any particle on the string depends on the horizontal position of the particle. Each particle vibrates within the confines of the envelope function $2A \sin kx$.

same amplitude and the same frequency and in which the amplitude of the wave is the same as the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of the particles.

The maximum displacement of a particle of the medium has a minimum value of zero when x satisfies the condition $\sin kx = 0$, that is, when

$$kx = \pi, 2\pi, 3\pi, \ldots$$

Because $k = 2\pi/\lambda$, these values for kx give

$$x = \frac{\lambda}{2}, \lambda, \frac{3\lambda}{2}, \ldots = \frac{n\lambda}{2} \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{18.4}$$

Position of nodes

These points of zero displacement are called **nodes.**

The particle with the greatest possible displacement from equilibrium has an amplitude of $2A$, and we define this as the amplitude of the standing wave. The positions in the medium at which this maximum displacement occurs are called **antinodes.** The antinodes are located at positions for which the coordinate x satisfies the condition $\sin kx = \pm 1$, that is, when

$$kx = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2}, \ldots$$

Thus, the positions of the antinodes are given by

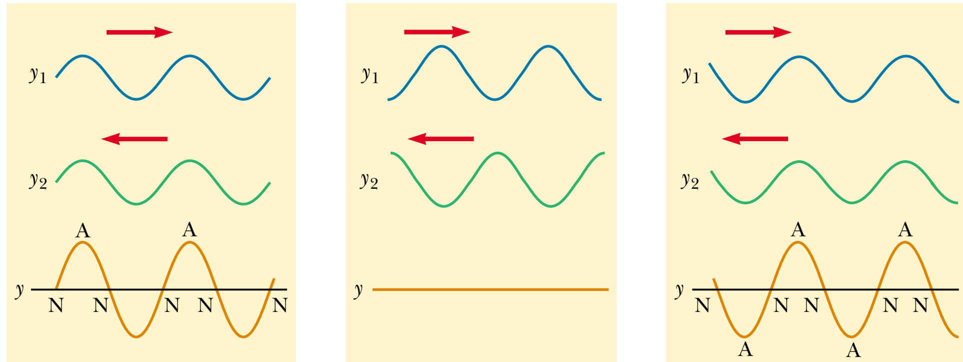
$$x = \frac{\lambda}{4}, \frac{3\lambda}{4}, \frac{5\lambda}{4}, \ldots = \frac{n\lambda}{4} \qquad n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots \tag{18.5}$$

Position of antinodes

In examining Equations 18.4 and 18.5, we note the following important features of the locations of nodes and antinodes:

The distance between adjacent antinodes is equal to $\lambda/2$.
The distance between adjacent nodes is equal to $\lambda/2$.
The distance between a node and an adjacent antinode is $\lambda/4$.

Displacement patterns of the particles of the medium produced at various times by two waves traveling in opposite directions are shown in Figure 18.5. The blue and green curves are the individual traveling waves, and the red curves are



(a) $t = 0$ (b) $t = T/4$ (c) $t = T/2$

Figure 18.5 Standing-wave patterns produced at various times by two waves of equal amplitude traveling in opposite directions. For the resultant wave y, the nodes (N) are points of zero displacement, and the antinodes (A) are points of maximum displacement.

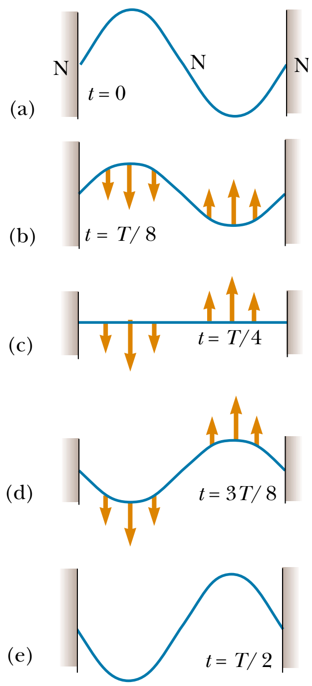


Figure 18.6 A standing-wave pattern in a taut string. The five "snapshots" were taken at half-cycle intervals. (a) At $t = 0$, the string is momentarily at rest; thus, $K = 0$, and all the energy is potential energy U associated with the vertical displacements of the string particles. (b) At $t = T/8$, the string is in motion, as indicated by the brown arrows, and the energy is half kinetic and half potential. (c) At $t = T/4$, the string is moving but horizontal (undeformed); thus, $U = 0$, and all the energy is kinetic. (d) The motion continues as indicated. (e) At $t = T/2$, the string is again momentarily at rest, but the crests and troughs of (a) are reversed. The cycle continues until ultimately, when a time interval equal to T has passed, the configuration shown in (a) is repeated.

the displacement patterns. At $t = 0$ (Fig. 18.5a), the two traveling waves are in phase, giving a displacement pattern in which each particle of the medium is experiencing its maximum displacement from equilibrium. One quarter of a period later, at $t = T/4$ (Fig. 18.5b), the traveling waves have moved one quarter of a wavelength (one to the right and the other to the left). At this time, the traveling waves are out of phase, and each particle of the medium is passing through the equilibrium position in its simple harmonic motion. The result is zero displacement for particles at all values of x—that is, the displacement pattern is a straight line. At $t = T/2$ (Fig. 18.5c), the traveling waves are again in phase, producing a displacement pattern that is inverted relative to the $t = 0$ pattern. In the standing wave, the particles of the medium alternate in time between the extremes shown in Figure 18.5a and c.

Energy in a Standing Wave

It is instructive to describe the energy associated with the particles of a medium in which a standing wave exists. Consider a standing wave formed on a taut string fixed at both ends, as shown in Figure 18.6. Except for the nodes, which are always stationary, all points on the string oscillate vertically with the same frequency but with different amplitudes of simple harmonic motion. Figure 18.6 represents snapshots of the standing wave at various times over one half of a period.

In a traveling wave, energy is transferred along with the wave, as we discussed in Chapter 16. We can imagine this transfer to be due to work done by one segment of the string on the next segment. As one segment moves upward, it exerts a force on the next segment, moving it through a displacement—that is, work is done. A particle of the string at a node, however, experiences no displacement. Thus, it cannot do work on the neighboring segment. As a result, no energy is transmitted along the string across a node, and energy does not propagate in a standing wave. For this reason, standing waves are often called **stationary waves.**

The energy of the oscillating string continuously alternates between elastic potential energy, when the string is momentarily stationary (see Fig. 18.6a), and kinetic energy, when the string is horizontal and the particles have their maximum speed (see Fig. 18.6c). At intermediate times (see Fig. 18.6b and d), the string particles have both potential energy and kinetic energy.

Quick Quiz 18.1

A standing wave described by Equation 18.3 is set up on a string. At what points on the string do the particles move the fastest?

EXAMPLE 18.2 Formation of a Standing Wave

Two waves traveling in opposite directions produce a standing wave. The individual wave functions $y = A\sin(kx - \omega t)$ are

$$y_1 = (4.0\text{ cm})\sin(3.0x - 2.0t)$$

and

$$y_2 = (4.0\text{ cm})\sin(3.0x + 2.0t)$$

where x and y are measured in centimeters. (a) Find the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of the particle of the medium located at $x = 2.3$ cm.

Solution The standing wave is described by Equation 18.3; in this problem, we have $A = 4.0$ cm, $k = 3.0$ rad/cm, and $\omega = 2.0$ rad/s. Thus,

$$y = (2A\sin kx)\cos\omega t = [(8.0\text{ cm})\sin 3.0x]\cos 2.0t$$

Thus, we obtain the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of the particle at the position $x = 2.3$ cm by evaluating the coefficient of the cosine function at this position:

$$y_{\text{max}} = (8.0\text{ cm})\sin 3.0x|_{x=2.3}$$
$$= (8.0\text{ cm})\sin(6.9\text{ rad}) = \boxed{4.6\text{ cm}}$$

(b) Find the positions of the nodes and antinodes.

Solution With $k = 2\pi/\lambda = 3.0$ rad/cm, we see that $\lambda = 2\pi/3$ cm. Therefore, from Equation 18.4 we find that the nodes are located at

$$x = n\frac{\lambda}{2} = \boxed{n\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)\text{ cm}} \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, 3\ \ldots$$

and from Equation 18.5 we find that the antinodes are located at

$$x = n\frac{\lambda}{4} = \boxed{n\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)\text{ cm}} \qquad n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots$$

(c) What is the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of a particle located at an antinode?

Solution According to Equation 18.3, the maximum displacement of a particle at an antinode is the amplitude of the standing wave, which is twice the amplitude of the individual traveling waves:

$$y_{\text{max}} = 2A = 2(4.0\text{ cm}) = \boxed{8.0\text{ cm}}$$

Let us check this result by evaluating the coefficient of our standing-wave function at the positions we found for the antinodes:

$$y_{\text{max}} = (8.0\text{ cm})\sin 3.0x|_{x=n(\pi/6)}$$
$$= (8.0\text{ cm})\sin\left[3.0n\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)\text{rad}\right]$$
$$= (8.0\text{ cm})\sin\left[n\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\text{rad}\right] = 8.0\text{ cm}$$

In evaluating this expression, we have used the fact that n is an odd integer; thus, the sine function is equal to unity.

18.3 STANDING WAVES IN A STRING FIXED AT BOTH ENDS

9.9 Consider a string of length L fixed at both ends, as shown in Figure 18.7. Standing waves are set up in the string by a continuous superposition of waves incident on and reflected from the ends. Note that the ends of the string, because they are fixed and must necessarily have zero displacement, are nodes by definition. The string has a number of natural patterns of oscillation, called **normal modes,** each of which has a characteristic frequency that is easily calculated.

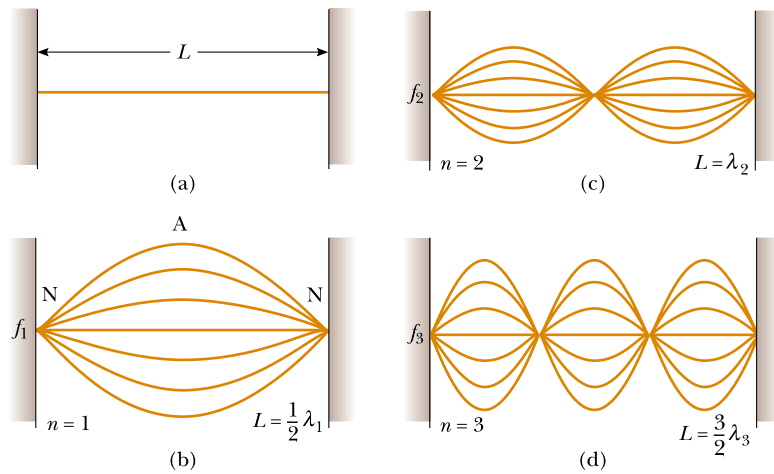


Figure 18.7 (a) A string of length L fixed at both ends. The normal modes of vibration form a harmonic series: (b) the fundamental, or first harmonic; (c) the second harmonic; (d) the third harmonic.

In general, the motion of an oscillating string fixed at both ends is described by the superposition of several normal modes. Exactly which normal modes are present depends on how the oscillation is started. For example, when a guitar string is plucked near its middle, the modes shown in Figure 18.7b and d, as well as other modes not shown, are excited.

In general, we can describe the normal modes of oscillation for the string by imposing the requirements that the ends be nodes and that the nodes and antinodes be separated by one fourth of a wavelength. The first normal mode, shown in Figure 18.7b, has nodes at its ends and one antinode in the middle. This is the longest-wavelength mode, and this is consistent with our requirements. This first normal mode occurs when the wavelength λ_1 is twice the length of the string, that is, $\lambda_1 = 2L$. The next normal mode, of wavelength λ_2 (see Fig. 18.7c), occurs when the wavelength equals the length of the string, that is, $\lambda_2 = L$. The third normal mode (see Fig. 18.7d) corresponds to the case in which $\lambda_3 = 2L/3$. In general, the wavelengths of the various normal modes for a string of length L fixed at both ends are

Wavelengths of normal modes

$$\lambda_n = \frac{2L}{n} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{18.6}$$

where the index n refers to the nth normal mode of oscillation. These are the *possible* modes of oscillation for the string. The *actual* modes that are excited by a given pluck of the string are discussed below.

The natural frequencies associated with these modes are obtained from the relationship $f = v/\lambda$, where the wave speed v is the same for all frequencies. Using Equation 18.6, we find that the natural frequencies f_n of the normal modes are

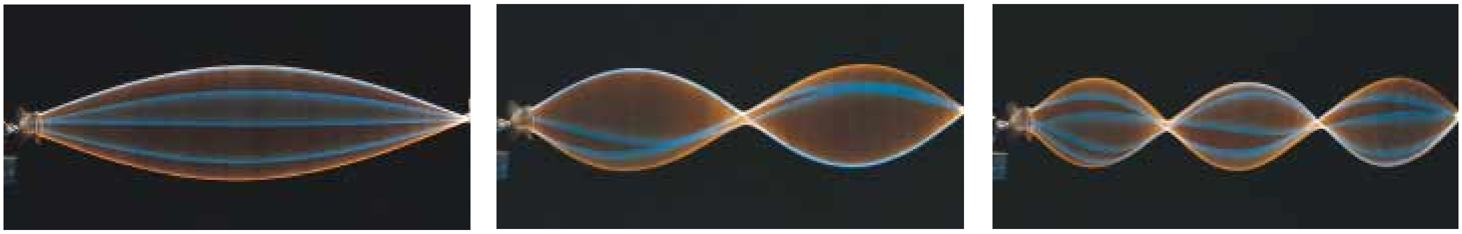
Frequencies of normal modes as functions of wave speed and length of string

$$f_n = \frac{v}{\lambda_n} = n\frac{v}{2L} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{18.7}$$

Because $v = \sqrt{T/\mu}$ (see Eq. 16.4), where T is the tension in the string and μ is its linear mass density, we can also express the natural frequencies of a taut string as

Frequencies of normal modes as functions of string tension and linear mass density

$$f_n = \frac{n}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{18.8}$$



Multiflash photographs of standing-wave patterns in a cord driven by a vibrator at its left end. The single-loop pattern represents the first normal mode ($n = 1$). The double-loop pattern represents the second normal mode ($n = 2$), and the triple-loop pattern represents the third normal mode ($n = 3$).

The lowest frequency f_1, which corresponds to $n = 1$, is called either the **fundamental** or the **fundamental frequency** and is given by

Fundamental frequency of a taut string

$$f_1 = \frac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \tag{18.9}$$

The frequencies of the remaining normal modes are integer multiples of the fundamental frequency. Frequencies of normal modes that exhibit an integer-multiple relationship such as this form a **harmonic series,** and the normal modes are called **harmonics.** The fundamental frequency f_1 is the frequency of the first harmonic; the frequency $f_2 = 2f_1$ is the frequency of the second harmonic; and the frequency $f_n = nf_1$ is the frequency of the nth harmonic. Other oscillating systems, such as a drumhead, exhibit normal modes, but the frequencies are not related as integer multiples of a fundamental. Thus, we do not use the term *harmonic* in association with these types of systems.

In obtaining Equation 18.6, we used a technique based on the separation distance between nodes and antinodes. We can obtain this equation in an alternative manner. Because we require that the string be fixed at $x = 0$ and $x = L$, the wave function $y(x, t)$ given by Equation 18.3 must be zero at these points for all times. That is, the *boundary conditions* require that $y(0, t) = 0$ and that $y(L, t) = 0$ for all values of t. Because the standing wave is described by $y = (2A \sin kx) \cos \omega t$, the first boundary condition, $y(0, t) = 0$, is automatically satisfied because $\sin kx = 0$ at $x = 0$. To meet the second boundary condition, $y(L, t) = 0$, we require that $\sin kL = 0$. This condition is satisfied when the angle kL equals an integer multiple of π rad. Therefore, the allowed values of k are given by[1]

$$k_nL = n\pi \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{18.10}$$

Because $k_n = 2\pi/\lambda_n$, we find that

$$\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda_n}\right)L = n\pi \qquad \text{or} \qquad \lambda_n = \frac{2L}{n}$$

which is identical to Equation 18.6.

Let us now examine how these various harmonics are created in a string. If we wish to excite just a single harmonic, we need to distort the string in such a way that its distorted shape corresponded to that of the desired harmonic. After being released, the string vibrates at the frequency of that harmonic. This maneuver is difficult to perform, however, and it is not how we excite a string of a musical in-

QuickLab

Compare the sounds of a guitar string plucked first near its center and then near one of its ends. More of the higher harmonics are present in the second situation. Can you hear the difference?

[1] We exclude $n = 0$ because this value corresponds to the trivial case in which no wave exists ($k = 0$).

strument. If the string is distorted such that its distorted shape is not that of just one harmonic, the resulting vibration includes various harmonics. Such a distortion occurs in musical instruments when the string is plucked (as in a guitar), bowed (as in a cello), or struck (as in a piano). When the string is distorted into a non-sinusoidal shape, only waves that satisfy the boundary conditions can persist on the string. These are the harmonics.

The frequency of a stringed instrument can be varied by changing either the tension or the string's length. For example, the tension in guitar and violin strings is varied by a screw adjustment mechanism or by tuning pegs located on the neck of the instrument. As the tension is increased, the frequency of the normal modes increases in accordance with Equation 18.8. Once the instrument is "tuned," players vary the frequency by moving their fingers along the neck, thereby changing the length of the oscillating portion of the string. As the length is shortened, the frequency increases because, as Equation 18.8 specifies, the normal-mode frequencies are inversely proportional to string length.

EXAMPLE 18.3 Give Me a C Note!

Middle C on a piano has a fundamental frequency of 262 Hz, and the first A above middle C has a fundamental frequency of 440 Hz. (a) Calculate the frequencies of the next two harmonics of the C string.

Solution Knowing that the frequencies of higher harmonics are integer multiples of the fundamental frequency $f_1 = 262$ Hz, we find that

$$f_2 = 2f_1 = \boxed{524 \text{ Hz}}$$

$$f_3 = 3f_1 = \boxed{786 \text{ Hz}}$$

(b) If the A and C strings have the same linear mass density μ and length L, determine the ratio of tensions in the two strings.

Solution Using Equation 18.8 for the two strings vibrating at their fundamental frequencies gives

$$f_{1A} = \frac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T_A}{\mu}} \quad \text{and} \quad f_{1C} = \frac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T_C}{\mu}}$$

Setting up the ratio of these frequencies, we find that

$$\frac{f_{1A}}{f_{1C}} = \sqrt{\frac{T_A}{T_C}}$$

$$\frac{T_A}{T_C} = \left(\frac{f_{1A}}{f_{1C}}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{440}{262}\right)^2 = \boxed{2.82}$$

(c) With respect to a real piano, the assumption we made in (b) is only partially true. The string densities are equal, but the length of the A string is only 64 percent of the length of the C string. What is the ratio of their tensions?

Solution Using Equation 18.8 again, we set up the ratio of frequencies:

$$\frac{f_{1A}}{f_{1C}} = \frac{L_C}{L_A}\sqrt{\frac{T_A}{T_C}} = \left(\frac{100}{64}\right)\sqrt{\frac{T_A}{T_C}}$$

$$\frac{T_A}{T_C} = (0.64)^2\left(\frac{440}{262}\right)^2 = \boxed{1.16}$$

EXAMPLE 18.4 Guitar Basics

The high E string on a guitar measures 64.0 cm in length and has a fundamental frequency of 330 Hz. By pressing down on it at the first fret (Fig. 18.8), the string is shortened so that it plays an F note that has a frequency of 350 Hz. How far is the fret from the neck end of the string?

Solution Equation 18.7 relates the string's length to the fundamental frequency. With $n = 1$, we can solve for the speed of the wave on the string,

$$v = \frac{2L}{n} f_n = \frac{2(0.640 \text{ m})}{1}(330 \text{ Hz}) = 422 \text{ m/s}$$

Because we have not adjusted the tuning peg, the tension in the string, and hence the wave speed, remain constant. We can again use Equation 18.7, this time solving for L and sub-

Figure 18.8 Playing an F note on a guitar. *(Charles D. Winters)*

stituting the new frequency to find the shortened string length:

$$L = n\frac{v}{2f_n} = (1)\frac{422\ \text{m/s}}{2(350\ \text{Hz})} = 0.603\ \text{m}$$

The difference between this length and the measured length of 64.0 cm is the distance from the fret to the neck end of the string, or 3.70 cm.

18.4 RESONANCE

9.9

We have seen that a system such as a taut string is capable of oscillating in one or more normal modes of oscillation. **If a periodic force is applied to such a system, the amplitude of the resulting motion is greater than normal when the frequency of the applied force is equal to or nearly equal to one of the natural frequencies of the system.** We discussed this phenomenon, known as *resonance,* briefly in Section 13.7. Although a block–spring system or a simple pendulum has only one natural frequency, standing-wave systems can have a whole set of natural frequencies. Because an oscillating system exhibits a large amplitude when driven at any of its natural frequencies, these frequencies are often referred to as **resonance frequencies.**

Figure 18.9 shows the response of an oscillating system to various driving frequencies, where one of the resonance frequencies of the system is denoted by f_0. Note that the amplitude of oscillation of the system is greatest when the frequency of the driving force equals the resonance frequency. The maximum amplitude is limited by friction in the system. If a driving force begins to work on an oscillating system initially at rest, the input energy is used both to increase the amplitude of the oscillation and to overcome the frictional force. Once maximum amplitude is reached, the work done by the driving force is used only to overcome friction.

A system is said to be *weakly damped* when the amount of friction to be overcome is small. Such a system has a large amplitude of motion when driven at one of its resonance frequencies, and the oscillations persist for a long time after the driving force is removed. A system in which considerable friction must be overcome is said to be *strongly damped.* For a given driving force applied at a resonance frequency, the maximum amplitude attained by a strongly damped oscillator is smaller than that attained by a comparable weakly damped oscillator. Once the driving force in a strongly damped oscillator is removed, the amplitude decreases rapidly with time.

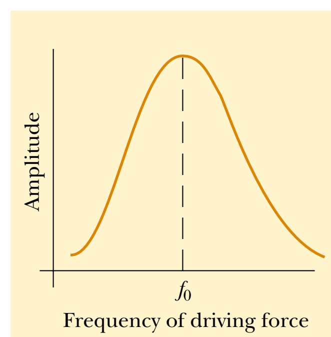


Figure 18.9 Graph of the amplitude (response) versus driving frequency for an oscillating system. The amplitude is a maximum at the resonance frequency f_0. Note that the curve is not symmetric.

Examples of Resonance

A playground swing is a pendulum having a natural frequency that depends on its length. Whenever we use a series of regular impulses to push a child in a swing, the swing goes higher if the frequency of the periodic force equals the natural fre-

quency of the swing. We can demonstrate a similar effect by suspending pendulums of different lengths from a horizontal support, as shown in Figure 18.10. If pendulum A is set into oscillation, the other pendulums begin to oscillate as a result of the longitudinal waves transmitted along the beam. However, pendulum C, the length of which is close to the length of A, oscillates with a much greater amplitude than pendulums B and D, the lengths of which are much different from that of pendulum A. Pendulum C moves the way it does because its natural frequency is nearly the same as the driving frequency associated with pendulum A.

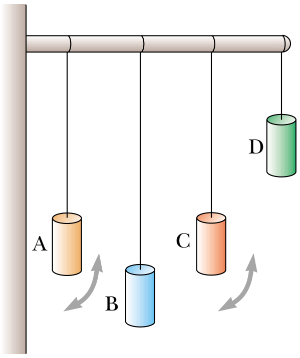


Figure 18.10 An example of resonance. If pendulum A is set into oscillation, only pendulum C, whose length matches that of A, eventually oscillates with large amplitude, or resonates. The arrows indicate motion perpendicular to the page.

Next, consider a taut string fixed at one end and connected at the opposite end to an oscillating blade, as illustrated in Figure 18.11. The fixed end is a node, and the end connected to the blade is very nearly a node because the amplitude of the blade's motion is small compared with that of the string. As the blade oscillates, transverse waves sent down the string are reflected from the fixed end. As we learned in Section 18.3, the string has natural frequencies that are determined by its length, tension, and linear mass density (see Eq. 18.8). When the frequency of the blade equals one of the natural frequencies of the string, standing waves are produced and the string oscillates with a large amplitude. In this resonance case, the wave generated by the oscillating blade is in phase with the reflected wave, and the string absorbs energy from the blade. If the string is driven at a frequency that is not one of its natural frequencies, then the oscillations are of low amplitude and exhibit no stable pattern.

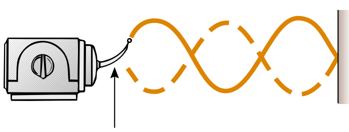
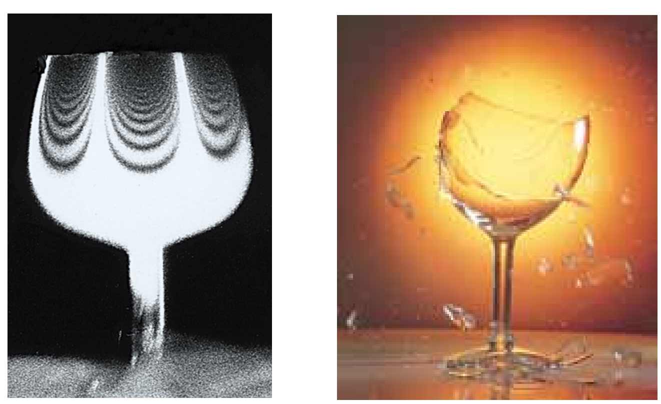


Figure 18.11 Standing waves are set up in a string when one end is connected to a vibrating blade. When the blade vibrates at one of the natural frequencies of the string, large-amplitude standing waves are created.

Once the amplitude of the standing-wave oscillations is a maximum, the mechanical energy delivered by the blade and absorbed by the system is lost because of the damping forces caused by friction in the system. If the applied frequency differs from one of the natural frequencies, energy is transferred to the string at first, but later the phase of the wave becomes such that it forces the blade to receive energy from the string, thereby reducing the energy in the string.

Quick Quiz 18.2

Some singers can shatter a wine glass by maintaining a certain frequency of their voice for several seconds. Figure 18.12a shows a side view of a wine glass vibrating because of a sound wave. Sketch the standing-wave pattern in the rim of the glass as seen from above. If an inte-



(a) (b)

Figure 18.12 (a) Standing-wave pattern in a vibrating wine glass. The glass shatters if the amplitude of vibration becomes too great.
(b) A wine glass shattered by the amplified sound of a human voice.

gral number of waves "fit" around the circumference of the vibrating rim, how many wavelengths fit around the rim in Figure 18.12a?

Quick Quiz 18.3

"Rumble strips" (Fig. 18.13) are sometimes placed across a road to warn drivers that they are approaching a stop sign, or laid along the sides of the road to alert drivers when they are drifting out of their lane. Why are these sets of small bumps so effective at getting a driver's attention?

Figure 18.13 Rumble strips along the side of a highway.

18.5 STANDING WAVES IN AIR COLUMNS

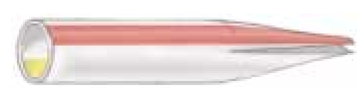
9.9 Standing waves can be set up in a tube of air, such as that in an organ pipe, as the result of interference between longitudinal sound waves traveling in opposite directions. The phase relationship between the incident wave and the wave reflected from one end of the pipe depends on whether that end is open or closed. This relationship is analogous to the phase relationships between incident and reflected transverse waves at the end of a string when the end is either fixed or free to move (see Figs. 16.13 and 16.14).

In a pipe closed at one end, **the closed end is a displacement node because the wall at this end does not allow longitudinal motion of the air molecules.** As a result, at a closed end of a pipe, the reflected sound wave is 180° out of phase with the incident wave. Furthermore, because the pressure wave is 90° out of phase with the displacement wave (see Section 17.2), **the closed end of an air column corresponds to a pressure antinode** (that is, a point of maximum pressure variation).

The open end of an air column is approximately a displacement antinode[2] **and a pressure node.** We can understand why no pressure variation occurs at an open end by noting that the end of the air column is open to the atmosphere; thus, the pressure at this end must remain constant at atmospheric pressure.

QuickLab

Snip off pieces at one end of a drinking straw so that the end tapers to a point. Chew on this end to flatten it, and you'll have created a double-reed instrument! Put your lips around the tapered end, press them tightly together, and blow through the straw. When you hear a steady tone, slowly snip off pieces of the straw from the other end. Be careful to maintain a constant pressure with your lips. How does the frequency change as the straw is shortened?



[2] Strictly speaking, the open end of an air column is not exactly a displacement antinode. A condensation reaching an open end does not reflect until it passes beyond the end. For a thin-walled tube of circular cross section, this end correction is approximately $0.6R$, where R is the tube's radius. Hence, the effective length of the tube is longer than the true length L. We ignore this end correction in this discussion.

You may wonder how a sound wave can reflect from an open end, since there may not appear to be a change in the medium at this point. It is indeed true that the medium through which the sound wave moves is air both inside and outside the pipe. Remember that sound is a pressure wave, however, and a compression region of the sound wave is constrained by the sides of the pipe as long as the region is inside the pipe. As the compression region exits at the open end of the pipe, the constraint is removed and the compressed air is free to expand into the atmosphere. Thus, there is a change in the *character* of the medium between the inside of the pipe and the outside even though there is no change in the *material* of the medium. This change in character is sufficient to allow some reflection.

The first three normal modes of oscillation of a pipe open at both ends are shown in Figure 18.14a. When air is directed against an edge at the left, longitudinal standing waves are formed, and the pipe resonates at its natural frequencies. All normal modes are excited simultaneously (although not with the same amplitude). Note that both ends are displacement antinodes (approximately). In the first normal mode, the standing wave extends between two adjacent antinodes,

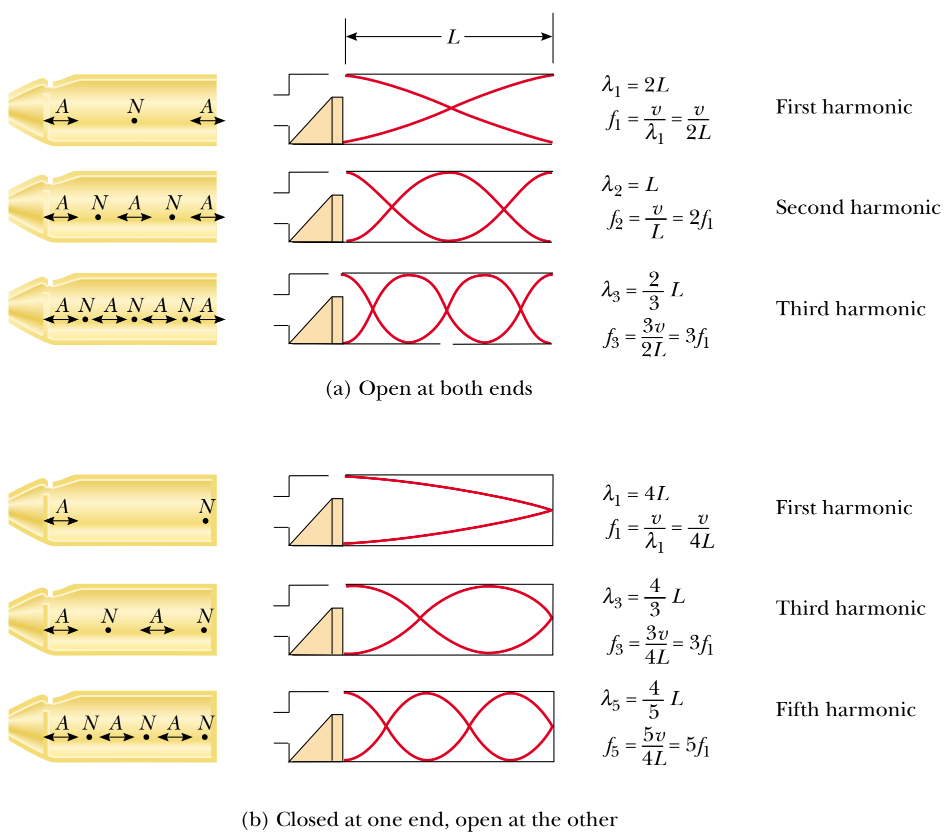


Figure 18.14 Motion of air molecules in standing longitudinal waves in a pipe, along with schematic representations of the waves. The graphs represent the displacement amplitudes, not the pressure amplitudes. (a) In a pipe open at both ends, the harmonic series created consists of all integer multiples of the fundamental frequency: $f_1, 2f_1, 3f_1, \ldots$. (b) In a pipe closed at one end and open at the other, the harmonic series created consists of only odd-integer multiples of the fundamental frequency: $f_1, 3f_1, 5f_1, \ldots$.

which is a distance of half a wavelength. Thus, the wavelength is twice the length of the pipe, and the fundamental frequency is $f_1 = v/2L$. As Figure 18.14a shows, the frequencies of the higher harmonics are $2f_1, 3f_1, \ldots$. Thus, we can say that

in a pipe open at both ends, the natural frequencies of oscillation form a harmonic series that includes all integral multiples of the fundamental frequency.

Because all harmonics are present, and because the fundamental frequency is given by the same expression as that for a string (see Eq. 18.7), we can express the natural frequencies of oscillation as

Natural frequencies of a pipe open at both ends

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{2L} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3 \ldots \tag{18.11}$$

Despite the similarity between Equations 18.7 and 18.11, we must remember that v in Equation 18.7 is the speed of waves on the string, whereas v in Equation 18.11 is the speed of sound in air.

If a pipe is closed at one end and open at the other, the closed end is a displacement node (see Fig. 18.14b). In this case, the standing wave for the fundamental mode extends from an antinode to the adjacent node, which is one fourth of a wavelength. Hence, the wavelength for the first normal mode is $4L$, and the fundamental frequency is $f_1 = v/4L$. As Figure 18.14b shows, the higher-frequency waves that satisfy our conditions are those that have a node at the closed end and an antinode at the open end; this means that the higher harmonics have frequencies $3f_1, 5f_1, \ldots$:

QuickLab

Blow across the top of an empty soda-pop bottle. From a measurement of the height of the bottle, estimate the frequency of the sound you hear. Note that the cross-sectional area of the bottle is not constant; thus, this is not a perfect model of a cylindrical air column.

In a pipe closed at one end and open at the other, the natural frequencies of oscillation form a harmonic series that includes only odd integer multiples of the fundamental frequency.

We express this result mathematically as

Natural frequencies of a pipe closed at one end and open at the other

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{4L} \qquad n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots \tag{18.12}$$

It is interesting to investigate what happens to the frequencies of instruments based on air columns and strings during a concert as the temperature rises. The sound emitted by a flute, for example, becomes sharp (increases in frequency) as it warms up because the speed of sound increases in the increasingly warmer air inside the flute (consider Eq. 18.11). The sound produced by a violin becomes flat (decreases in frequency) as the strings expand thermally because the expansion causes their tension to decrease (see Eq. 18.8).

Quick Quiz 18.4

A pipe open at both ends resonates at a fundamental frequency f_{open}. When one end is covered and the pipe is again made to resonate, the fundamental frequency is f_{closed}. Which of the following expressions describes how these two resonant frequencies compare? (a) $f_{\text{closed}} = f_{\text{open}}$ (b) $f_{\text{closed}} = \frac{1}{2}f_{\text{open}}$ (c) $f_{\text{closed}} = 2f_{\text{open}}$ (d) $f_{\text{closed}} = \frac{3}{2}f_{\text{open}}$

EXAMPLE 18.5 Wind in a Culvert

A section of drainage culvert 1.23 m in length makes a howling noise when the wind blows. (a) Determine the frequencies of the first three harmonics of the culvert if it is open at both ends. Take $v = 343$ m/s as the speed of sound in air.

Solution The frequency of the first harmonic of a pipe open at both ends is

$$f_1 = \frac{v}{2L} = \frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{2(1.23 \text{ m})} = \boxed{139 \text{ Hz}}$$

Because both ends are open, all harmonics are present; thus,

$f_2 = 2f_1 = \boxed{278 \text{ Hz}}$ and $f_3 = 3f_1 = \boxed{417 \text{ Hz.}}$

(b) What are the three lowest natural frequencies of the culvert if it is blocked at one end?

Solution The fundamental frequency of a pipe closed at one end is

$$f_1 = \frac{v}{4L} = \frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{4(1.23 \text{ m})} = \boxed{69.7 \text{ Hz}}$$

In this case, only odd harmonics are present; hence, the next two harmonics have frequencies $f_3 = 3f_1 = \boxed{209 \text{ Hz}}$ and $f_5 = 5f_1 = \boxed{349 \text{ Hz.}}$

(c) For the culvert open at both ends, how many of the harmonics present fall within the normal human hearing range (20 to 17 000 Hz)?

Solution Because all harmonics are present, we can express the frequency of the highest harmonic heard as $f_n = nf_1$, where n is the number of harmonics that we can hear. For $f_n = 17\,000$ Hz, we find that the number of harmonics present in the audible range is

$$n = \frac{17\,000 \text{ Hz}}{139 \text{ Hz}} = \boxed{122}$$

Only the first few harmonics are of sufficient amplitude to be heard.

EXAMPLE 18.6 Measuring the Frequency of a Tuning Fork

A simple apparatus for demonstrating resonance in an air column is depicted in Figure 18.15. A vertical pipe open at both ends is partially submerged in water, and a tuning fork vibrating at an unknown frequency is placed near the top of the pipe. The length L of the air column can be adjusted by moving the pipe vertically. The sound waves generated by the fork are reinforced when L corresponds to one of the resonance frequencies of the pipe.

For a certain tube, the smallest value of L for which a peak occurs in the sound intensity is 9.00 cm. What are (a) the frequency of the tuning fork and (b) the value of L for the next two resonance frequencies?

Solution (a) Although the pipe is open at its lower end to allow the water to enter, the water's surface acts like a wall at one end. Therefore, this setup represents a pipe closed at one end, and so the fundamental frequency is $f_1 = v/4L$. Taking $v = 343$ m/s for the speed of sound in air and $L = 0.090\,0$ m, we obtain

$$f_1 = \frac{v}{4L} = \frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{4(0.090\,0 \text{ m})} = \boxed{953 \text{ Hz}}$$

Because the tuning fork causes the air column to resonate at this frequency, this must be the frequency of the tuning fork.

(b) Because the pipe is closed at one end, we know from Figure 18.14b that the wavelength of the fundamental mode is $\lambda = 4L = 4(0.090\,0 \text{ m}) = 0.360$ m. Because the frequency of the tuning fork is constant, the next two normal modes (see Fig. 18.15b) correspond to lengths of $L = 3\lambda/4 = \boxed{0.270 \text{ m}}$ and $L = 5\lambda/4 = \boxed{0.450 \text{ m.}}$

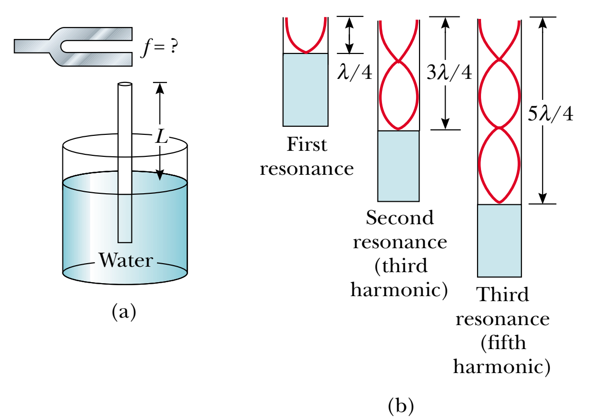


Figure 18.15 (a) Apparatus for demonstrating the resonance of sound waves in a tube closed at one end. The length L of the air column is varied by moving the tube vertically while it is partially submerged in water. (b) The first three normal modes of the system shown in part (a).

Optional Section

18.6 STANDING WAVES IN RODS AND PLATES

Standing waves can also be set up in rods and plates. A rod clamped in the middle and stroked at one end oscillates, as depicted in Figure 18.16a. The oscillations of the particles of the rod are longitudinal, and so the broken lines in Figure 18.16 represent *longitudinal* displacements of various parts of the rod. For clarity, we have drawn them in the transverse direction, just as we did for air columns. The midpoint is a displacement node because it is fixed by the clamp, whereas the ends are displacement antinodes because they are free to oscillate. The oscillations in this setup are analogous to those in a pipe open at both ends. The broken lines in Figure 18.16a represent the first normal mode, for which the wavelength is $2L$ and the frequency is $f = v/2L$, where v is the speed of longitudinal waves in the rod. Other normal modes may be excited by clamping the rod at different points. For example, the second normal mode (Fig. 18.16b) is excited by clamping the rod a distance $L/4$ away from one end.

Two-dimensional oscillations can be set up in a flexible membrane stretched over a circular hoop, such as that in a drumhead. As the membrane is struck at some point, wave pulses that arrive at the fixed boundary are reflected many times. The resulting sound is not harmonic because the oscillating drumhead and the drum's hollow interior together produce a set of standing waves having frequencies that are *not* related by integer multiples. Without this relationship, the sound may be more correctly described as *noise* than as music. This is in contrast to the situation in wind and stringed instruments, which produce sounds that we describe as musical.

Some possible normal modes of oscillation for a two-dimensional circular membrane are shown in Figure 18.17. The lowest normal mode, which has a frequency f_1, contains only one nodal curve; this curve runs around the outer edge of the membrane. The other possible normal modes show additional nodal curves that are circles and straight lines across the diameter of the membrane.

The sound from a tuning fork is produced by the vibrations of each of its prongs.

Wind chimes are usually designed so that the waves emanating from the vibrating rods blend into a harmonious sound.

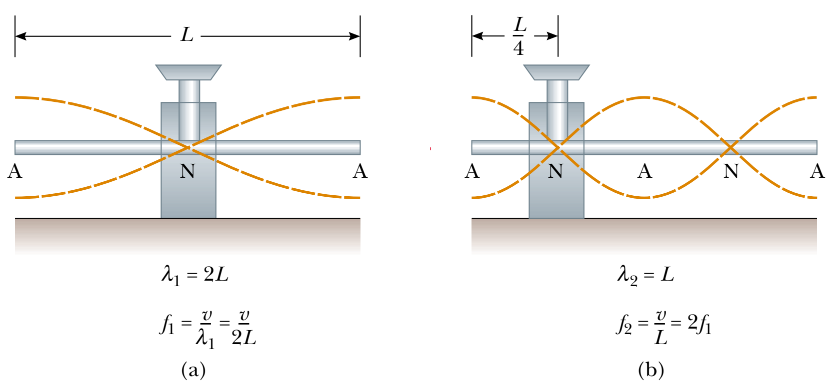


Figure 18.16 Normal-mode longitudinal vibrations of a rod of length L (a) clamped at the middle to produce the first normal mode and (b) clamped at a distance $L/4$ from one end to produce the second normal mode. Note that the dashed lines represent amplitudes parallel to the rod (longitudinal waves).

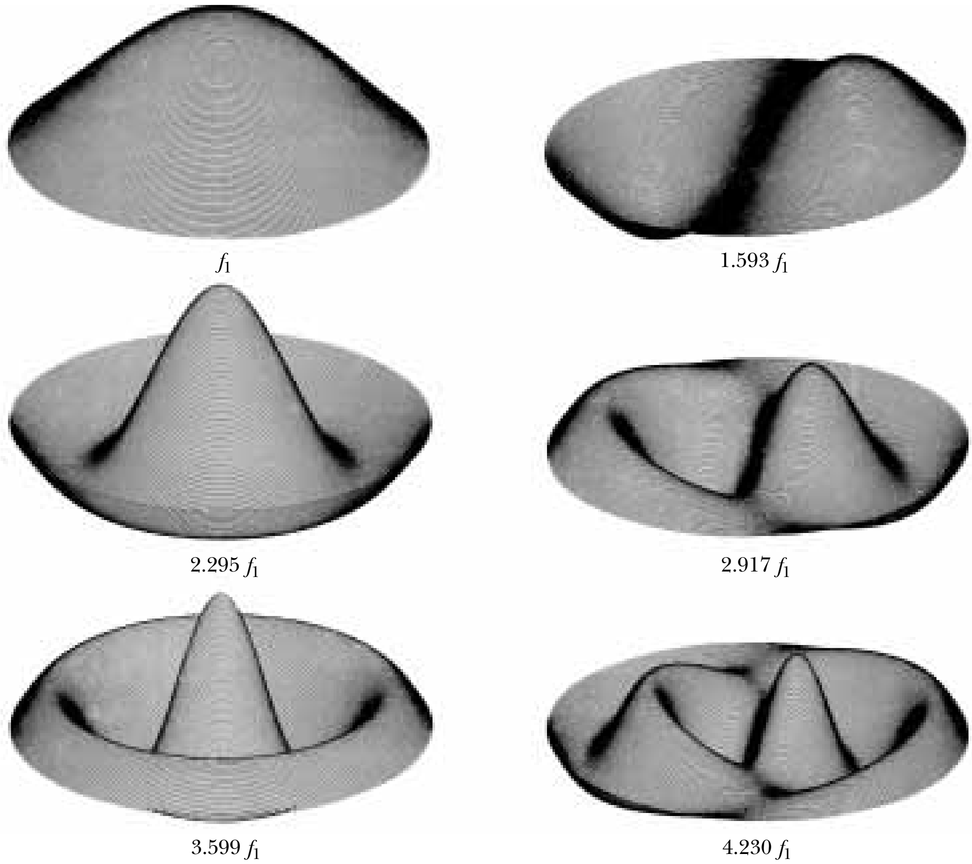


Figure 18.17 Representation of some of the normal modes possible in a circular membrane fixed at its perimeter. The frequencies of oscillation do not form a harmonic series.

18.7 BEATS: INTERFERENCE IN TIME

The interference phenomena with which we have been dealing so far involve the superposition of two or more waves having the same frequency. Because the resultant wave depends on the coordinates of the disturbed medium, we refer to the phenomenon as *spatial interference*. Standing waves in strings and pipes are common examples of spatial interference.

We now consider another type of interference, one that results from the superposition of two waves having slightly *different* frequencies. In this case, when the two waves are observed at the point of superposition, they are periodically in and out of phase. That is, there is a *temporal* (time) alternation between constructive and destructive interference. Thus, we refer to this phenomenon as *interference in time* or *temporal interference*. For example, if two tuning forks of slightly different frequencies are struck, one hears a sound of periodically varying intensity. This phenomenon is called **beating:**

Definition of beating

Beating is the periodic variation in intensity at a given point due to the superposition of two waves having slightly different frequencies.

The number of intensity maxima one hears per second, or the *beat frequency,* equals the difference in frequency between the two sources, as we shall show below. The maximum beat frequency that the human ear can detect is about 20 beats/s. When the beat frequency exceeds this value, the beats blend indistinguishably with the compound sounds producing them.

A piano tuner can use beats to tune a stringed instrument by "beating" a note against a reference tone of known frequency. The tuner can then adjust the string tension until the frequency of the sound it emits equals the frequency of the reference tone. The tuner does this by tightening or loosening the string until the beats produced by it and the reference source become too infrequent to notice.

Consider two sound waves of equal amplitude traveling through a medium with slightly different frequencies f_1 and f_2. We use equations similar to Equation 16.11 to represent the wave functions for these two waves at a point that we choose as $x = 0$:

$$y_1 = A\cos\omega_1 t = A\cos 2\pi f_1 t$$

$$y_2 = A\cos\omega_2 t = A\cos 2\pi f_2 t$$

Using the superposition principle, we find that the resultant wave function at this point is

$$y = y_1 + y_2 = A(\cos 2\pi f_1 t + \cos 2\pi f_2 t)$$

The trigonometric identity

$$\cos a + \cos b = 2\cos\left(\frac{a-b}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)$$

allows us to write this expression in the form

$$y = \left[2A\cos 2\pi\left(\frac{f_1 - f_2}{2}\right)t\right]\cos 2\pi\left(\frac{f_1 + f_2}{2}\right)t \qquad \textbf{(18.13)}$$

Resultant of two waves of different frequencies but equal amplitude

Graphs of the individual waves and the resultant wave are shown in Figure 18.18. From the factors in Equation 18.13, we see that the resultant sound for a listener standing at any given point has an effective frequency equal to the average frequency $(f_1 + f_2)/2$ and an amplitude given by the expression in the square

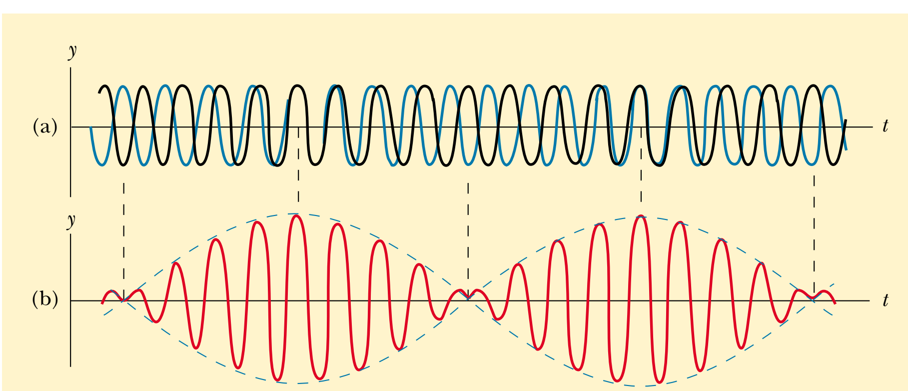


Figure 18.18 Beats are formed by the combination of two waves of slightly different frequencies. (a) The individual waves. (b) The combined wave has an amplitude (broken line) that oscillates in time.

brackets:

$$A_{\text{resultant}} = 2A \cos 2\pi\left(\frac{f_1 - f_2}{2}\right)t \qquad \textbf{(18.14)}$$

That is, the **amplitude and therefore the intensity of the resultant sound vary in time.** The broken blue line in Figure 18.18b is a graphical representation of Equation 18.14 and is a sine wave varying with frequency $(f_1 - f_2)/2$.

Note that a maximum in the amplitude of the resultant sound wave is detected whenever

$$\cos 2\pi\left(\frac{f_1 - f_2}{2}\right)t = \pm 1$$

This means there are *two* maxima in each period of the resultant wave. Because the amplitude varies with frequency as $(f_1 - f_2)/2$, the number of beats per second, or the beat frequency f_b, is twice this value. That is,

Beat frequency

$$\boxed{f_b = |f_1 - f_2|} \qquad \textbf{(18.15)}$$

For instance, if one tuning fork vibrates at 438 Hz and a second one vibrates at 442 Hz, the resultant sound wave of the combination has a frequency of 440 Hz (the musical note A) and a beat frequency of 4 Hz. A listener would hear a 440-Hz sound wave go through an intensity maximum four times every second.

Optional Section

18.8 NON-SINUSOIDAL WAVE PATTERNS

9.6

The sound-wave patterns produced by the majority of musical instruments are non-sinusoidal. Characteristic patterns produced by a tuning fork, a flute, and a clarinet, each playing the same note, are shown in Figure 18.19. Each instrument has its own characteristic pattern. Note, however, that despite the differences in the patterns, each pattern is periodic. This point is important for our analysis of these waves, which we now discuss.

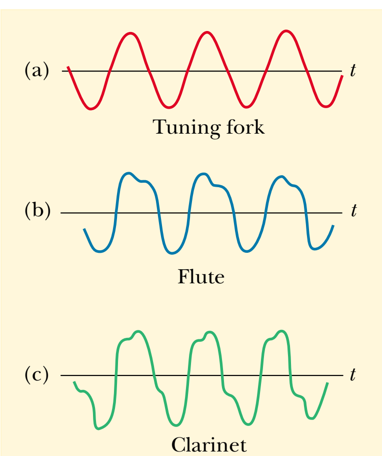


Figure 18.19 Sound wave patterns produced by (a) a tuning fork, (b) a flute, and (c) a clarinet, each at approximately the same frequency.

We can distinguish the sounds coming from a trumpet and a saxophone even when they are both playing the same note. On the other hand, we may have difficulty distinguishing a note played on a clarinet from the same note played on an oboe. We can use the pattern of the sound waves from various sources to explain these effects.

The wave patterns produced by a musical instrument are the result of the superposition of various harmonics. This superposition results in the corresponding richness of musical tones. The human perceptive response associated with various mixtures of harmonics is the *quality* or *timbre* of the sound. For instance, the sound of the trumpet is perceived to have a "brassy" quality (that is, we have learned to associate the adjective *brassy* with that sound); this quality enables us to distinguish the sound of the trumpet from that of the saxophone, whose quality is perceived as "reedy." The clarinet and oboe, however, are both straight air columns excited by reeds; because of this similarity, it is more difficult for the ear to distinguish them on the basis of their sound quality.

The problem of analyzing non-sinusoidal wave patterns appears at first sight to be a formidable task. However, if the wave pattern is periodic, it can be represented as closely as desired by the combination of a sufficiently large number of si-

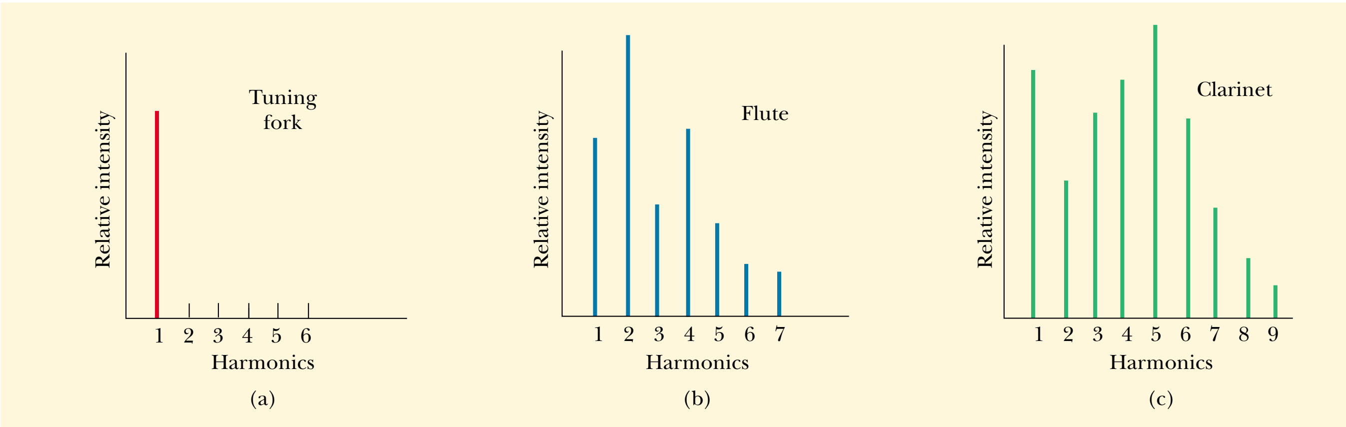


Figure 18.20 Harmonics of the wave patterns shown in Figure 18.19. Note the variations in intensity of the various harmonics.

nusoidal waves that form a harmonic series. In fact, we can represent any periodic function as a series of sine and cosine terms by using a mathematical technique based on **Fourier's theorem.**[3] The corresponding sum of terms that represents the periodic wave pattern is called a **Fourier series.**

Let $y(t)$ be any function that is periodic in time with period T, such that $y(t + T) = y(t)$. Fourier's theorem states that this function can be written as

$$y(t) = \sum_n (A_n \sin 2\pi f_n t + B_n \cos 2\pi f_n t) \quad \textbf{(18.16)}$$

Fourier's theorem

where the lowest frequency is $f_1 = 1/T$. The higher frequencies are integer multiples of the fundamental, $f_n = nf_1$, and the coefficients A_n and B_n represent the amplitudes of the various waves. Figure 18.20 represents a harmonic analysis of the wave patterns shown in Figure 18.19. Note that a struck tuning fork produces only one harmonic (the first), whereas the flute and clarinet produce the first and many higher ones.

Note the variation in relative intensity of the various harmonics for the flute and the clarinet. In general, any musical sound consists of a fundamental frequency f plus other frequencies that are integer multiples of f, all having different intensities.

We have discussed the *analysis* of a wave pattern using Fourier's theorem. The analysis involves determining the coefficients of the harmonics in Equation 18.16 from a knowledge of the wave pattern. The reverse process, called *Fourier synthesis,* can also be performed. In this process, the various harmonics are added together to form a resultant wave pattern. As an example of Fourier synthesis, consider the building of a square wave, as shown in Figure 18.21. The symmetry of the square wave results in only odd multiples of the fundamental frequency combining in its synthesis. In Figure 18.21a, the orange curve shows the combination of f and $3f$. In Figure 18.21b, we have added $5f$ to the combination and obtained the green curve. Notice how the general shape of the square wave is approximated, even though the upper and lower portions are not flat as they should be.

[3] Developed by Jean Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1786–1830).

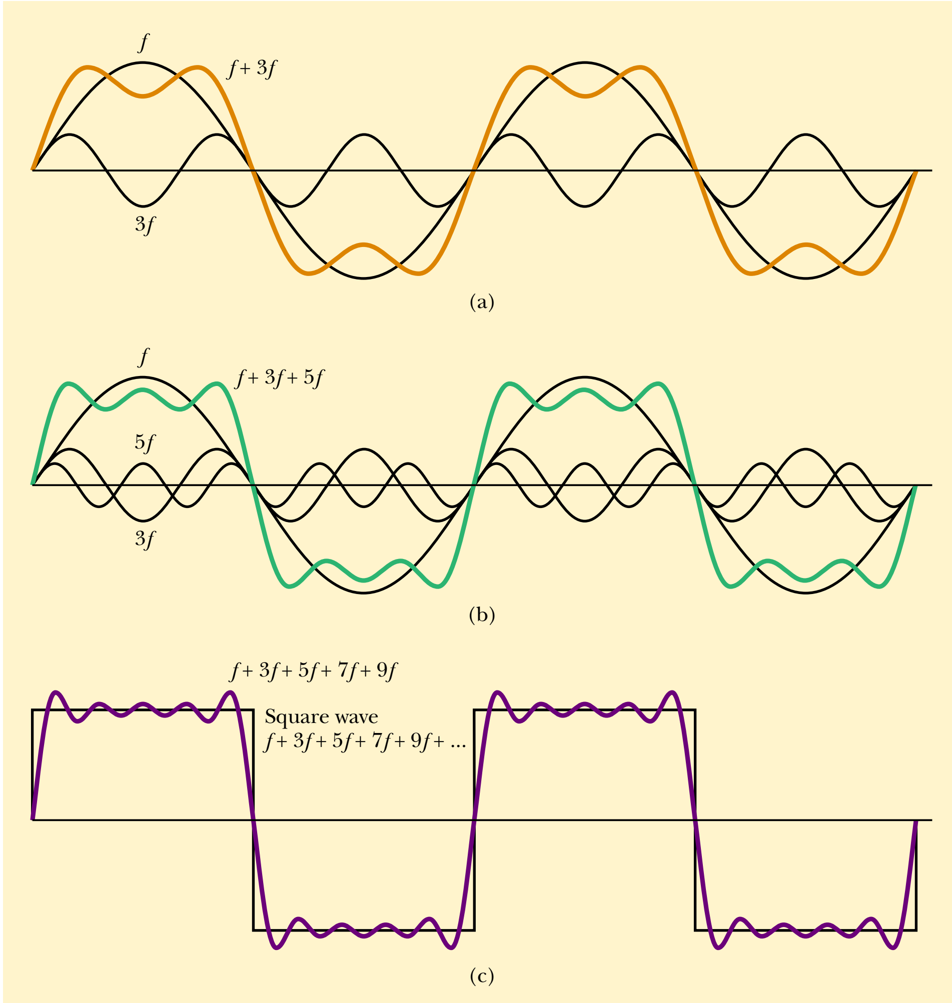


Figure 18.21 Fourier synthesis of a square wave, which is represented by the sum of odd multiples of the first harmonic, which has frequency f. (a) Waves of frequency f and $3f$ are added. (b) One more odd harmonic of frequency $5f$ is added. (c) The synthesis curve approaches the square wave when odd frequencies up to $9f$ are added.

This synthesizer can produce the characteristic sounds of different instruments by properly combining frequencies from electronic oscillators.

Figure 18.21c shows the result of adding odd frequencies up to $9f$. This approximation to the square wave (purple curve) is better than the approximations in parts a and b. To approximate the square wave as closely as possible, we would need to add all odd multiples of the fundamental frequency, up to infinite frequency.

Using modern technology, we can generate musical sounds electronically by mixing different amplitudes of any number of harmonics. These widely used electronic music synthesizers are capable of producing an infinite variety of musical tones.

SUMMARY

When two traveling waves having equal amplitudes and frequencies superimpose, the resultant wave has an amplitude that depends on the phase angle ϕ between

the two waves. **Constructive interference** occurs when the two waves are in phase, corresponding to $\phi = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi, \ldots$ rad. **Destructive interference** occurs when the two waves are 180° out of phase, corresponding to $\phi = \pi, 3\pi, 5\pi, \ldots$ rad. Given two wave functions, you should be able to determine which if either of these two situations applies.

Standing waves are formed from the superposition of two sinusoidal waves having the same frequency, amplitude, and wavelength but traveling in opposite directions. The resultant standing wave is described by the wave function

$$y = (2A \sin kx) \cos \omega t \qquad \textbf{(18.3)}$$

Hence, the amplitude of the standing wave is $2A$, and the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of any particle of the medium varies according to its position as $2A \sin kx$. The points of zero amplitude (called **nodes**) occur at $x = n\lambda/2$ ($n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$). The maximum amplitude points (called **antinodes**) occur at $x = n\lambda/4$ ($n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots$). Adjacent antinodes are separated by a distance $\lambda/2$. Adjacent nodes also are separated by a distance $\lambda/2$. You should be able to sketch the standing-wave pattern resulting from the superposition of two traveling waves.

The natural frequencies of vibration of a taut string of length L and fixed at both ends are

$$f_n = \frac{n}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \qquad \textbf{(18.8)}$$

where T is the tension in the string and μ is its linear mass density. The natural frequencies of vibration $f_1, 2f_1, 3f_1, \ldots$ form a **harmonic series.**

An oscillating system is in **resonance** with some driving force whenever the frequency of the driving force matches one of the natural frequencies of the system. When the system is resonating, it responds by oscillating with a relatively large amplitude.

Standing waves can be produced in a column of air inside a pipe. If the pipe is open at both ends, all harmonics are present and the natural frequencies of oscillation are

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{2L} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \qquad \textbf{(18.11)}$$

If the pipe is open at one end and closed at the other, only the odd harmonics are present, and the natural frequencies of oscillation are

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{4L} \qquad n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots \qquad \textbf{(18.12)}$$

The phenomenon of **beating** is the periodic variation in intensity at a given point due to the superposition of two waves having slightly different frequencies.

Questions

1. For certain positions of the movable section shown in Figure 18.2, no sound is detected at the receiver—a situation corresponding to destructive interference. This suggests that perhaps energy is somehow lost! What happens to the energy transmitted by the speaker?
2. Does the phenomenon of wave interference apply only to sinusoidal waves?
3. When two waves interfere constructively or destructively, is there any gain or loss in energy? Explain.
4. A standing wave is set up on a string, as shown in Figure 18.6. Explain why no energy is transmitted along the string.
5. What is common to *all* points (other than the nodes) on a string supporting a standing wave?
6. What limits the amplitude of motion of a real vibrating system that is driven at one of its resonant frequencies?
7. In Balboa Park in San Diego, CA, there is a huge outdoor organ. Does the fundamental frequency of a particular

pipe of this organ change on hot and cold days? How about on days with high and low atmospheric pressure?

8. Explain why your voice seems to sound better than usual when you sing in the shower.
9. What is the purpose of the slide on a trombone or of the valves on a trumpet?
10. Explain why all harmonics are present in an organ pipe open at both ends, but only the odd harmonics are present in a pipe closed at one end.
11. Explain how a musical instrument such as a piano may be tuned by using the phenomenon of beats.
12. An airplane mechanic notices that the sound from a twin-engine aircraft rapidly varies in loudness when both engines are running. What could be causing this variation from loudness to softness?
13. Why does a vibrating guitar string sound louder when placed on the instrument than it would if it were allowed to vibrate in the air while off the instrument?
14. When the base of a vibrating tuning fork is placed against a chalkboard, the sound that it emits becomes louder. This is due to the fact that the vibrations of the tuning fork are transmitted to the chalkboard. Because it has a larger area than that of the tuning fork, the vibrating chalkboard sets a larger number of air molecules into vibration. Thus, the chalkboard is a better radiator of sound than the tuning fork. How does this affect the length of time during which the fork vibrates? Does this agree with the principle of conservation of energy?
15. To keep animals away from their cars, some people mount short thin pipes on the front bumpers. The pipes produce a high-frequency wail when the cars are moving. How do they create this sound?
16. Guitarists sometimes play a "harmonic" by lightly touching a string at the exact center and plucking the string. The result is a clear note one octave higher than the fundamental frequency of the string, even though the string is not pressed to the fingerboard. Why does this happen?
17. If you wet your fingers and lightly run them around the rim of a fine wine glass, a high-frequency sound is heard. Why? How could you produce various musical notes with a set of wine glasses, each of which contains a different amount of water?
18. Despite a reasonably steady hand, one often spills coffee when carrying a cup of it from one place to another. Discuss resonance as a possible cause of this difficulty, and devise a means for solving the problem.

PROBLEMS

1, 2, 3 = straightforward, intermediate, challenging □ = full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide*
WEB = solution posted at **http://www.saunderscollege.com/physics/** = Computer useful in solving problem = Interactive Physics
□ = paired numerical/symbolic problems

Section 18.1 Superposition and Interference of Sinusoidal Waves

WEB 1. Two sinusoidal waves are described by the equations

$$y_1 = (5.00\text{ m})\sin[\pi(4.00x - 1\,200t)]$$

and

$$y_2 = (5.00\text{ m})\sin[\pi(4.00x - 1\,200t - 0.250)]$$

where x, y_1, and y_2 are in meters and t is in seconds. (a) What is the amplitude of the resultant wave? (b) What is the frequency of the resultant wave?

2. A sinusoidal wave is described by the equation

$$y_1 = (0.080\,0\text{ m})\sin[2\pi(0.100x - 80.0t)]$$

where y_1 and x are in meters and t is in seconds. Write an expression for a wave that has the same frequency, amplitude, and wavelength as y_1 but which, when added to y_1, gives a resultant with an amplitude of $8\sqrt{3}$ cm.

3. Two waves are traveling in the same direction along a stretched string. The waves are 90.0° out of phase. Each wave has an amplitude of 4.00 cm. Find the amplitude of the resultant wave.

4. Two identical sinusoidal waves with wavelengths of 3.00 m travel in the same direction at a speed of 2.00 m/s. The second wave originates from the same point as the first, but at a later time. Determine the minimum possible time interval between the starting moments of the two waves if the amplitude of the resultant wave is the same as that of each of the two initial waves.

5. A tuning fork generates sound waves with a frequency of 246 Hz. The waves travel in opposite directions along a hallway, are reflected by walls, and return. The hallway is 47.0 m in length, and the tuning fork is located 14.0 m from one end. What is the phase difference between the reflected waves when they meet? The speed of sound in air is 343 m/s.

6. Two identical speakers 10.0 m apart are driven by the same oscillator with a frequency of $f = 21.5$ Hz (Fig. P18.6). (a) Explain why a receiver at point A records a minimum in sound intensity from the two speakers. (b) If the receiver is moved in the plane of the speakers, what path should it take so that the intensity remains at a minimum? That is, determine the relationship between x and y (the coordinates of the receiver) that causes the receiver to record a minimum in sound intensity. Take the speed of sound to be 343 m/s.

7. Two speakers are driven by the same oscillator with frequency of 200 Hz. They are located 4.00 m apart on a

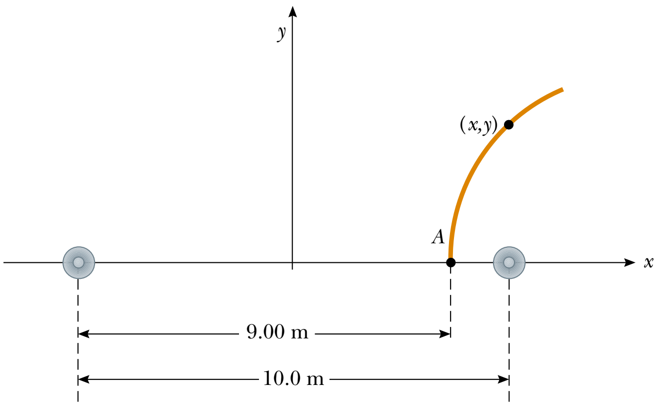


Figure P18.6

vertical pole. A man walks straight toward the lower speaker in a direction perpendicular to the pole, as shown in Figure P18.7. (a) How many times will he hear a minimum in sound intensity, and (b) how far is he from the pole at these moments? Take the speed of sound to be 330 m/s, and ignore any sound reflections coming off the ground.

8. Two speakers are driven by the same oscillator of frequency f. They are located a distance d from each other on a vertical pole. A man walks straight toward the lower speaker in a direction perpendicular to the pole, as shown in Figure P18.7. (a) How many times will he hear a minimum in sound intensity, and (b) how far is he from the pole at these moments? Take the speed of sound to be v, and ignore any sound reflections coming off the ground.

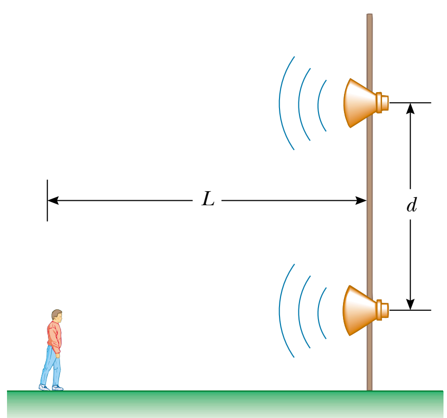


Figure P18.7 Problems 7 and 8.

Section 18.2 Standing Waves

9. Two sinusoidal waves traveling in opposite directions interfere to produce a standing wave described by the equation

$$y = (1.50 \text{ m}) \sin(0.400x) \cos(200t)$$

where x is in meters and t is in seconds. Determine the wavelength, frequency, and speed of the interfering waves.

10. Two waves in a long string are described by the equations

$$y_1 = (0.015\,0 \text{ m}) \cos\left(\frac{x}{2} - 40t\right)$$

and

$$y_2 = (0.015\,0 \text{ m}) \cos\left(\frac{x}{2} + 40t\right)$$

where y_1, y_2, and x are in meters and t is in seconds. (a) Determine the positions of the nodes of the resulting standing wave. (b) What is the maximum displacement at the position $x = 0.400$ m?

WEB **11.** Two speakers are driven by a common oscillator at 800 Hz and face each other at a distance of 1.25 m. Locate the points along a line joining the two speakers where relative minima of sound pressure would be expected. (Use $v = 343$ m/s.)

12. Two waves that set up a standing wave in a long string are given by the expressions

$$y_1 = A \sin(kx - \omega t + \phi)$$

and

$$y_2 = A \sin(kx + \omega t)$$

Show (a) that the addition of the arbitrary phase angle changes only the position of the nodes, and (b) that the distance between the nodes remains constant in time.

13. Two sinusoidal waves combining in a medium are described by the equations

$$y_1 = (3.0 \text{ cm}) \sin \pi(x + 0.60t)$$

and

$$y_2 = (3.0 \text{ cm}) \sin \pi(x - 0.60t)$$

where x is in centimeters and t is in seconds. Determine the *maximum* displacement of the medium at (a) $x = 0.250$ cm, (b) $x = 0.500$ cm, and (c) $x = 1.50$ cm. (d) Find the three smallest values of x corresponding to antinodes.

14. A standing wave is formed by the interference of two traveling waves, each of which has an amplitude $A = \pi$ cm, angular wave number $k = (\pi/2)$ cm^{-1}, and angular frequency $\omega = 10\pi$ rad/s. (a) Calculate the distance between the first two antinodes. (b) What is the amplitude of the standing wave at $x = 0.250$ cm?

15. Verify by direct substitution that the wave function for a standing wave given in Equation 18.3, $y = 2A \sin kx \cos \omega t$, is a solution of the general linear

wave equation, Equation 16.26:

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{v^2}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2}$$

Section 18.3 Standing Waves in a String Fixed at Both Ends

16. A 2.00-m-long wire having a mass of 0.100 kg is fixed at both ends. The tension in the wire is maintained at 20.0 N. What are the frequencies of the first three allowed modes of vibration? If a node is observed at a point 0.400 m from one end, in what mode and with what frequency is it vibrating?

17. Find the fundamental frequency and the next three frequencies that could cause a standing-wave pattern on a string that is 30.0 m long, has a mass per length of 9.00×10^{-3} kg/m, and is stretched to a tension of 20.0 N.

18. A standing wave is established in a 120-cm-long string fixed at both ends. The string vibrates in four segments when driven at 120 Hz. (a) Determine the wavelength. (b) What is the fundamental frequency of the string?

19. A cello A-string vibrates in its first normal mode with a frequency of 220 vibrations/s. The vibrating segment is 70.0 cm long and has a mass of 1.20 g. (a) Find the tension in the string. (b) Determine the frequency of vibration when the string vibrates in three segments.

20. A string of length L, mass per unit length μ, and tension T is vibrating at its fundamental frequency. Describe the effect that each of the following conditions has on the fundamental frequency: (a) The length of the string is doubled, but all other factors are held constant. (b) The mass per unit length is doubled, but all other factors are held constant. (c) The tension is doubled, but all other factors are held constant.

21. A 60.0-cm guitar string under a tension of 50.0 N has a mass per unit length of 0.100 g/cm. What is the highest resonance frequency of the string that can be heard by a person able to hear frequencies of up to 20 000 Hz?

22. A stretched wire vibrates in its first normal mode at a frequency of 400 Hz. What would be the fundamental frequency if the wire were half as long, its diameter were doubled, and its tension were increased four-fold?

23. A violin string has a length of 0.350 m and is tuned to concert G, with $f_G = 392$ Hz. Where must the violinist place her finger to play concert A, with $f_A = 440$ Hz? If this position is to remain correct to one-half the width of a finger (that is, to within 0.600 cm), what is the maximum allowable percentage change in the string's tension?

24. **Review Problem.** A sphere of mass M is supported by a string that passes over a light horizontal rod of length L (Fig. P18.24). Given that the angle is θ and that the fundamental frequency of standing waves in the section of the string above the horizontal rod is f, determine the mass of this section of the string.

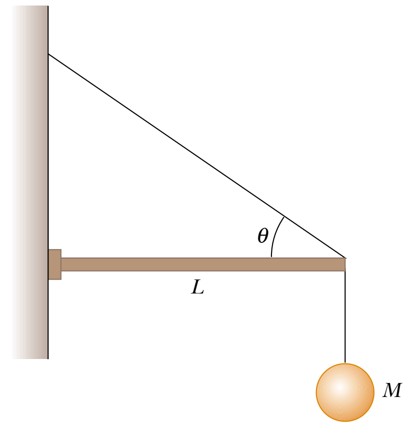


Figure P18.24

25. In the arrangement shown in Figure P18.25, a mass can be hung from a string (with a linear mass density of $\mu = 0.002\,00$ kg/m) that passes over a light pulley. The string is connected to a vibrator (of constant frequency f), and the length of the string between point P and the pulley is $L = 2.00$ m. When the mass m is either 16.0 kg or 25.0 kg, standing waves are observed; however, no standing waves are observed with any mass between these values. (a) What is the frequency of the vibrator? (*Hint:* The greater the tension in the string, the smaller the number of nodes in the standing wave.) (b) What is the largest mass for which standing waves could be observed?

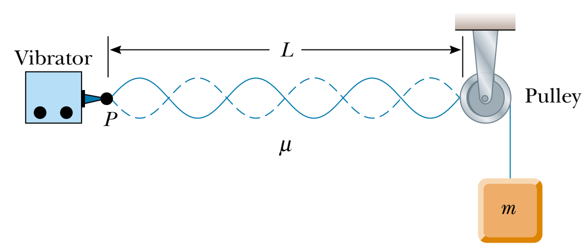


Figure P18.25

26. On a guitar, the fret closest to the bridge is a distance of 21.4 cm from it. The top string, pressed down at this last fret, produces the highest frequency that can be played on the guitar, 2 349 Hz. The next lower note has a frequency of 2 217 Hz. How far away from the last fret should the next fret be?

Section 18.4 Resonance

27. The chains suspending a child's swing are 2.00 m long. At what frequency should a big brother push to make the child swing with greatest amplitude?

28. Standing-wave vibrations are set up in a crystal goblet with four nodes and four antinodes equally spaced

around the 20.0-cm circumference of its rim. If transverse waves move around the glass at 900 m/s, an opera singer would have to produce a high harmonic with what frequency to shatter the glass with a resonant vibration?

29. An earthquake can produce a *seiche* (pronounced "saysh") in a lake, in which the water sloshes back and forth from end to end with a remarkably large amplitude and long period. Consider a seiche produced in a rectangular farm pond, as diagrammed in the cross-sectional view of Figure P18.29 (figure not drawn to scale). Suppose that the pond is 9.15 m long and of uniform depth. You measure that a wave pulse produced at one end reaches the other end in 2.50 s. (a) What is the wave speed? (b) To produce the seiche, you suggest that several people stand on the bank at one end and paddle together with snow shovels, moving them in simple harmonic motion. What must be the frequency of this motion?

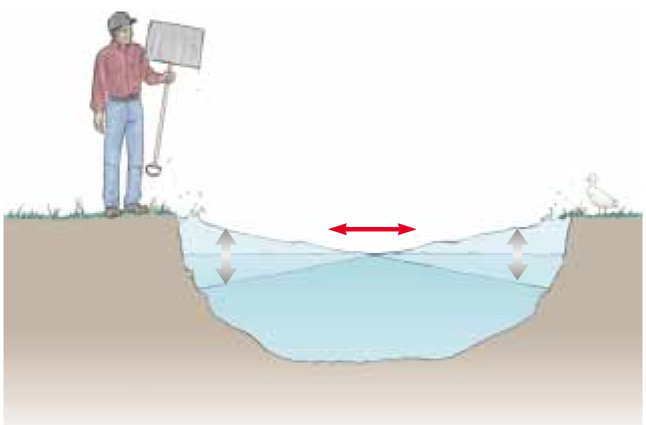


Figure P18.29

30. The Bay of Fundy, Nova Scotia, has the highest tides in the world. Assume that in mid-ocean and at the mouth of the bay, the Moon's gravity gradient and the Earth's rotation make the water surface oscillate with an amplitude of a few centimeters and a period of 12 h 24 min. At the head of the bay, the amplitude is several meters. Argue for or against the proposition that the tide is amplified by standing-wave resonance. Suppose that the bay has a length of 210 km and a depth everywhere of 36.1 m. The speed of long-wavelength water waves is given by $\sqrt{gd}$, where d is the water's depth.

Section 18.5 Standing Waves in Air Columns

Note: In this section, assume that the speed of sound in air is 343 m/s at 20°C and is described by the equation

$$v = (331 \text{ m/s})\sqrt{1 + \frac{T_C}{273°}}$$

at any Celsius temperature T_C.

31. Calculate the length of a pipe that has a fundamental frequency of 240 Hz if the pipe is (a) closed at one end and (b) open at both ends.

32. A glass tube (open at both ends) of length L is positioned near an audio speaker of frequency f = 0.680 kHz. For what values of L will the tube resonate with the speaker?

33. The overall length of a piccolo is 32.0 cm. The resonating air column vibrates as a pipe open at both ends. (a) Find the frequency of the lowest note that a piccolo can play, assuming that the speed of sound in air is 340 m/s. (b) Opening holes in the side effectively shortens the length of the resonant column. If the highest note that a piccolo can sound is 4 000 Hz, find the distance between adjacent antinodes for this mode of vibration.

34. The fundamental frequency of an open organ pipe corresponds to middle C (261.6 Hz on the chromatic musical scale). The third resonance of a closed organ pipe has the same frequency. What are the lengths of the two pipes?

35. Estimate the length of your ear canal, from its opening at the external ear to the eardrum. (Do not stick anything into your ear!) If you regard the canal as a tube that is open at one end and closed at the other, at approximately what fundamental frequency would you expect your hearing to be most sensitive? Explain why you can hear especially soft sounds just around this frequency.

36. An open pipe 0.400 m in length is placed vertically in a cylindrical bucket and nearly touches the bottom of the bucket, which has an area of 0.100 m^2. Water is slowly poured into the bucket until a sounding tuning fork of frequency 440 Hz, held over the pipe, produces resonance. Find the mass of water in the bucket at this moment.

WEB **37.** A shower stall measures 86.0 cm × 86.0 cm × 210 cm. If you were singing in this shower, which frequencies would sound the richest (because of resonance)? Assume that the stall acts as a pipe closed at both ends, with nodes at opposite sides. Assume that the voices of various singers range from 130 Hz to 2 000 Hz. Let the speed of sound in the hot shower stall be 355 m/s.

38. When a metal pipe is cut into two pieces, the lowest resonance frequency in one piece is 256 Hz and that for the other is 440 Hz. (a) What resonant frequency would have been produced by the original length of pipe? (b) How long was the original pipe?

39. As shown in Figure P18.39, water is pumped into a long vertical cylinder at a rate of 18.0 cm^3/s. The radius of the cylinder is 4.00 cm, and at the open top of the cylinder is a tuning fork vibrating with a frequency of 200 Hz. As the water rises, how much time elapses between successive resonances?

40. As shown in Figure P18.39, water is pumped into a long vertical cylinder at a volume flow rate R. The radius of

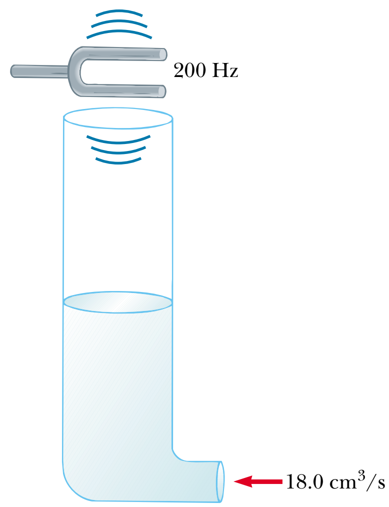


Figure P18.39 Problems 39 and 40.

the cylinder is r, and at the open top of the cylinder is a tuning fork vibrating with a frequency f. As the water rises, how much time elapses between successive resonances?

41. A tuning fork with a frequency of 512 Hz is placed near the top of the tube shown in Figure 18.15a. The water level is lowered so that the length L slowly increases from an initial value of 20.0 cm. Determine the next two values of L that correspond to resonant modes.

42. A student uses an audio oscillator of adjustable frequency to measure the depth of a water well. Two successive resonances are heard at 51.5 Hz and 60.0 Hz. How deep is the well?

43. A glass tube is open at one end and closed at the other by a movable piston. The tube is filled with air warmer than that at room temperature, and a 384-Hz tuning fork is held at the open end. Resonance is heard when the piston is 22.8 cm from the open end and again when it is 68.3 cm from the open end. (a) What speed of sound is implied by these data? (b) How far from the open end will the piston be when the next resonance is heard?

44. The longest pipe on an organ that has pedal stops is often 4.88 m. What is the fundamental frequency (at 0.00°C) if the nondriven end of the pipe is (a) closed and (b) open? (c) What are the frequencies at 20.0°C?

45. With a particular fingering, a flute sounds a note with a frequency of 880 Hz at 20.0°C. The flute is open at both ends. (a) Find the length of the air column. (b) Find the frequency it produces during the half-time performance at a late-season football game, when the ambient temperature is -5.00°C.

(Optional)

Section 18.6 Standing Waves in Rods and Plates

46. An aluminum rod is clamped one quarter of the way along its length and set into longitudinal vibration by a variable-frequency driving source. The lowest frequency that produces resonance is 4 400 Hz. The speed of sound in aluminum is 5 100 m/s. Determine the length of the rod.

47. An aluminum rod 1.60 m in length is held at its center. It is stroked with a rosin-coated cloth to set up a longitudinal vibration. (a) What is the fundamental frequency of the waves established in the rod? (b) What harmonics are set up in the rod held in this manner? (c) What would be the fundamental frequency if the rod were made of copper?

48. A 60.0-cm metal bar that is clamped at one end is struck with a hammer. If the speed of longitudinal (compressional) waves in the bar is 4 500 m/s, what is the lowest frequency with which the struck bar resonates?

Section 18.7 Beats: Interference in Time

WEB **49.** In certain ranges of a piano keyboard, more than one string is tuned to the same note to provide extra loudness. For example, the note at 110 Hz has two strings that vibrate at this frequency. If one string slips from its normal tension of 600 N to 540 N, what beat frequency is heard when the hammer strikes the two strings simultaneously?

50. While attempting to tune the note C at 523 Hz, a piano tuner hears 2 beats/s between a reference oscillator and the string. (a) What are the possible frequencies of the string? (b) When she tightens the string slightly, she hears 3 beats/s. What is the frequency of the string now? (c) By what percentage should the piano tuner now change the tension in the string to bring it into tune?

51. A student holds a tuning fork oscillating at 256 Hz. He walks toward a wall at a constant speed of 1.33 m/s. (a) What beat frequency does he observe between the tuning fork and its echo? (b) How fast must he walk away from the wall to observe a beat frequency of 5.00 Hz?

(Optional)

Section 18.8 Non-Sinusoidal Wave Patterns

52. Suppose that a flutist plays a 523-Hz C note with first harmonic displacement amplitude $A_1 = 100$ nm. From Figure 18.20b, read, by proportion, the displacement amplitudes of harmonics 2 through 7. Take these as the values A_2 through A_7 in the Fourier analysis of the sound, and assume that $B_1 = B_2 = \ldots = B_7 = 0$. Construct a graph of the waveform of the sound. Your waveform will not look exactly like the flute waveform in Figure 18.19b because you simplify by ignoring cosine terms; nevertheless, it produces the same sensation to human hearing.

53. An A-major chord consists of the notes called A, C♯, and E. It can be played on a piano by simultaneously striking strings that have fundamental frequencies of 440.00 Hz, 554.37 Hz, and 659.26 Hz. The rich consonance of the chord is associated with the near equality of the frequencies of some of the higher harmonics of the three tones. Consider the first five harmonics of each string and determine which harmonics show near equality.

ADDITIONAL PROBLEMS

54. **Review Problem.** For the arrangement shown in Figure P18.54, $\theta = 30.0°$, the inclined plane and the small pulley are frictionless, the string supports the mass M at the bottom of the plane, and the string has a mass m that is small compared with M. The system is in equilibrium, and the vertical part of the string has a length h. Standing waves are set up in the vertical section of the string. Find (a) the tension in the string, (b) the whole length of the string (ignoring the radius of curvature of the pulley), (c) the mass per unit length of the string, (d) the speed of waves on the string, (e) the lowest-frequency standing wave, (f) the period of the standing wave having three nodes, (g) the wavelength of the standing wave having three nodes, and (h) the frequency of the beats resulting from the interference of the sound wave of lowest frequency generated by the string with another sound wave having a frequency that is 2.00% greater.

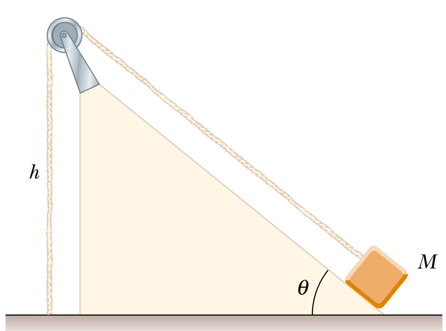


Figure P18.54

55. Two loudspeakers are placed on a wall 2.00 m apart. A listener stands 3.00 m from the wall directly in front of one of the speakers. The speakers are being driven by a single oscillator at a frequency of 300 Hz. (a) What is the phase difference between the two waves when they reach the observer? (b) What is the frequency closest to 300 Hz to which the oscillator may be adjusted such that the observer hears minimal sound?

56. On a marimba (Fig. P18.56), the wooden bar that sounds a tone when it is struck vibrates in a transverse standing wave having three antinodes and two nodes. The lowest-frequency note is 87.0 Hz; this note is produced by a bar 40.0 cm long. (a) Find the speed of transverse waves on the bar. (b) The loudness of the emitted sound is enhanced by a resonant pipe suspended vertically below the center of the bar. If the pipe is open at the top end only and the speed of sound in air is 340 m/s, what is the length of the pipe required to resonate with the bar in part (a)?

Figure P18.56 Marimba players in Mexico City. *(Murray Greenberg)*

57. Two train whistles have identical frequencies of 180 Hz. When one train is at rest in the station and is sounding its whistle, a beat frequency of 2.00 Hz is heard from a train moving nearby. What are the two possible speeds and directions that the moving train can have?

58. A speaker at the front of a room and an identical speaker at the rear of the room are being driven by the same oscillator at 456 Hz. A student walks at a uniform rate of 1.50 m/s along the length of the room. How many beats does the student hear per second?

59. While Jane waits on a railroad platform, she observes two trains approaching from the same direction at equal speeds of 8.00 m/s. Both trains are blowing their whistles (which have the same frequency), and one train is some distance behind the other. After the first train passes Jane, but before the second train passes her, she hears beats having a frequency of 4.00 Hz. What is the frequency of the trains' whistles?

60. A string fixed at both ends and having a mass of 4.80 g, a length of 2.00 m, and a tension of 48.0 N vibrates in its second ($n = 2$) natural mode. What is the wavelength in air of the sound emitted by this vibrating string?

61. A string 0.400 m in length has a mass per unit length of 9.00×10^{-3} kg/m. What must be the tension in the string if its second harmonic is to have the same frequency as the second resonance mode of a 1.75-m-long pipe open at one end?

62. In a major chord on the physical pitch musical scale, the frequencies are in the ratios 4:5:6:8. A set of pipes, closed at one end, must be cut so that, when they are sounded in their first normal mode, they produce a major chord. (a) What is the ratio of the lengths of the pipes? (b) What are the lengths of the pipes needed if the lowest frequency of the chord is 256 Hz? (c) What are the frequencies of this chord?

63. Two wires are welded together. The wires are made of the same material, but the diameter of one wire is twice that of the other. They are subjected to a tension of 4.60 N. The thin wire has a length of 40.0 cm and a linear mass density of 2.00 g/m. The combination is fixed at both ends and vibrated in such a way that two antinodes are present, with the node between them being right at the weld. (a) What is the frequency of vibration? (b) How long is the thick wire?

64. Two identical strings, each fixed at both ends, are arranged near each other. If string A starts oscillating in its first normal mode, string B begins vibrating in its third ($n = 3$) natural mode. Determine the ratio of the tension of string B to the tension of string A.

65. A standing wave is set up in a string of variable length and tension by a vibrator of variable frequency. When the vibrator has a frequency f, in a string of length L and under a tension T, n antinodes are set up in the string. (a) If the length of the string is doubled, by what factor should the frequency be changed so that the same number of antinodes is produced? (b) If the frequency and length are held constant, what tension produces $n + 1$ antinodes? (c) If the frequency is tripled and the length of the string is halved, by what factor should the tension be changed so that twice as many antinodes are produced?

66. A 0.010 0-kg, 2.00-m-long wire is fixed at both ends and vibrates in its simplest mode under a tension of 200 N. When a tuning fork is placed near the wire, a beat frequency of 5.00 Hz is heard. (a) What could the frequency of the tuning fork be? (b) What should the tension in the wire be if the beats are to disappear?

WEB **67.** If two adjacent natural frequencies of an organ pipe are determined to be 0.550 kHz and 0.650 kHz, calculate the fundamental frequency and length of the pipe. (Use $v = 340$ m/s.)

68. Two waves are described by the equations

$$y_1(x, t) = 5.0 \sin(2.0x - 10t)$$

and

$$y_2(x, t) = 10 \cos(2.0x - 10t)$$

where x is in meters and t is in seconds. Show that the resulting wave is sinusoidal, and determine the amplitude and phase of this sinusoidal wave.

69. The wave function for a standing wave is given in Equation 18.3 as $y = (2A \sin kx) \cos \omega t$. (a) Rewrite this wave function in terms of the wavelength λ and the wave speed v of the wave. (b) Write the wave function of the simplest standing-wave vibration of a stretched string of length L. (c) Write the wave function for the second harmonic. (d) Generalize these results, and write the wave function for the nth resonance vibration.

70. **Review Problem.** A 12.0-kg mass hangs in equilibrium from a string with a total length of $L = 5.00$ m and a linear mass density of $\mu = 0.001\,00$ kg/m. The string is wrapped around two light, frictionless pulleys that are separated by a distance of $d = 2.00$ m (Fig. P18.70a). (a) Determine the tension in the string. (b) At what frequency must the string between the pulleys vibrate to form the standing-wave pattern shown in Figure P18.70b?

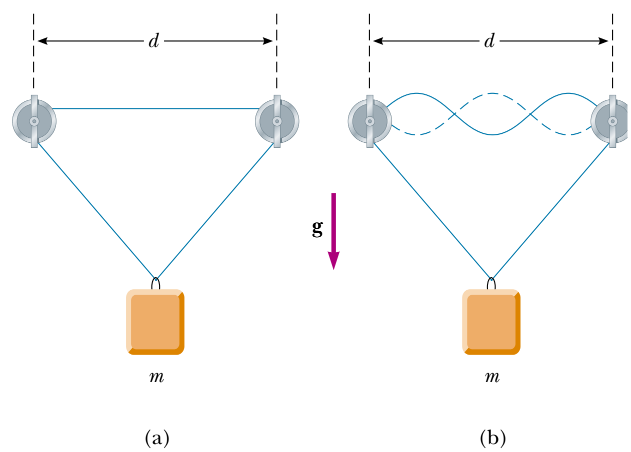


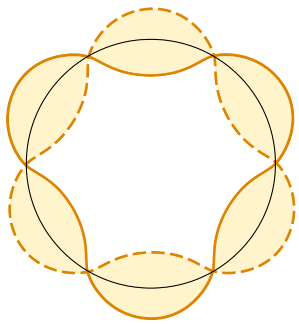
Figure P18.70

Answers to Quick Quizzes

18.1 At the antinodes. All particles have the same period $T = 2\pi/\omega$, but a particle at an antinode must travel through the greatest vertical distance in this amount of time and therefore must travel fastest.

18.2 For each natural frequency of the glass, the standing wave must "fit" exactly around the rim. In Figure 18.12a we see three antinodes on the near side of the glass, and thus there must be another three on the far side. This

corresponds to three complete waves. In a top view, the wave pattern looks like this (although we have greatly exaggerated the amplitude):



18.3 At highway speeds, a car crosses the ridges on the rumble strip at a rate that matches one of the car's natural frequencies of oscillation. This causes the car to oscillate substantially more than when it is traveling over the randomly spaced bumps of regular pavement. This sudden resonance oscillation alerts the driver that he or she must pay attention.

18.4 (b). With both ends open, the pipe has a fundamental frequency given by Equation 18.11: $f_{\text{open}} = v/2L$. With one end closed, the pipe has a fundamental frequency given by Equation 18.12:

$$f_{\text{closed}} = \frac{v}{4L} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{v}{2L} = \frac{1}{2}f_{\text{open}}$$